SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY

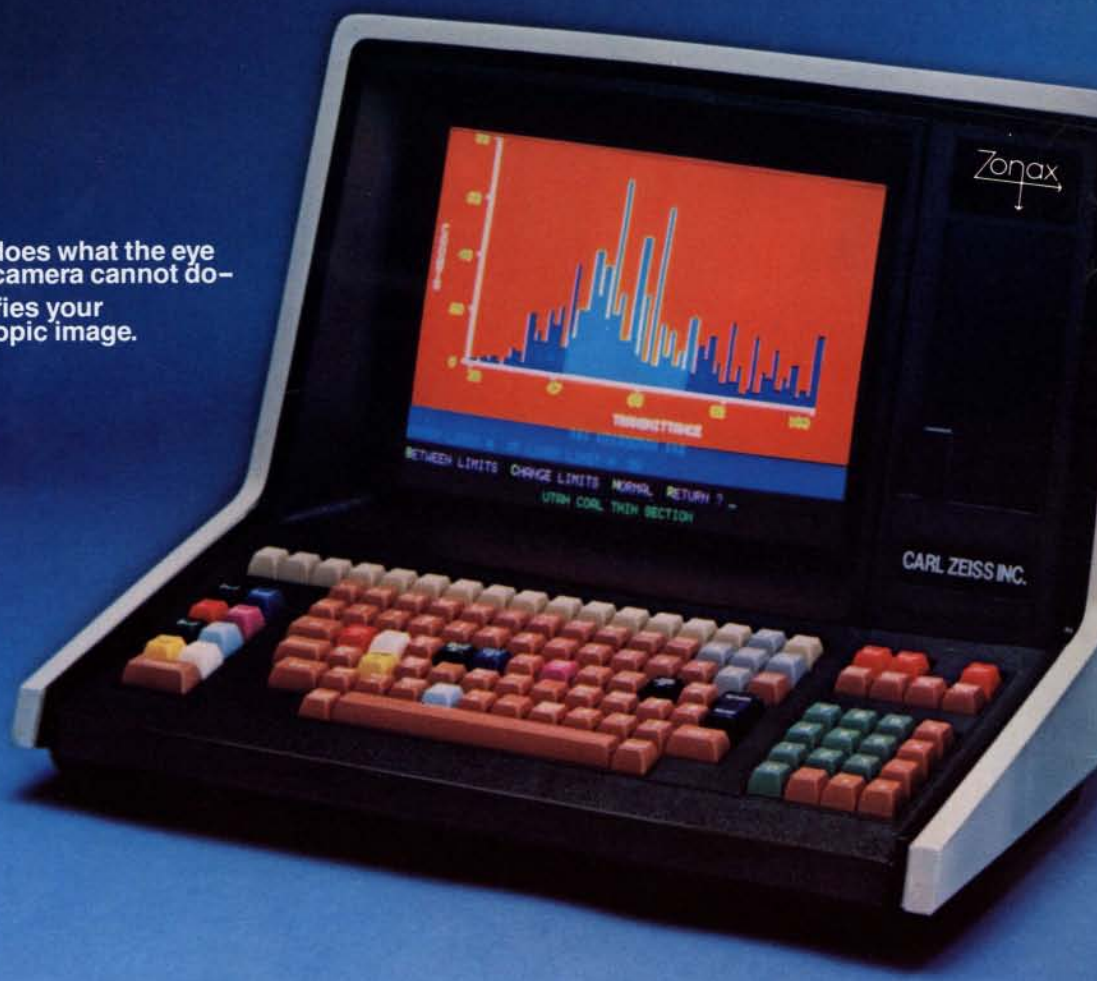
$2.50

September 1981

Introducing Zonax

The next step in microscopy!

ZONAX does what the eye and the camera cannot do–
it quantifies your microscopic image.



A quantitative microscopy system that makes full use of Zeiss optics.

Now, any Zeiss Microscope Photometer can become an advanced analytical system that displays results with brilliant color graphics.

Zonax so smart, it's simple!

You can use ZONAX from the moment you set it up. No programming to learn! Data analysis at your fingertips.

But, if you want to program it yourself, you can. It comes with complete software documentation for BASIC, FORTRAN or ASSEMBLER. It easily talks with larger computers through its RS232C port.

Zonax respects optics!

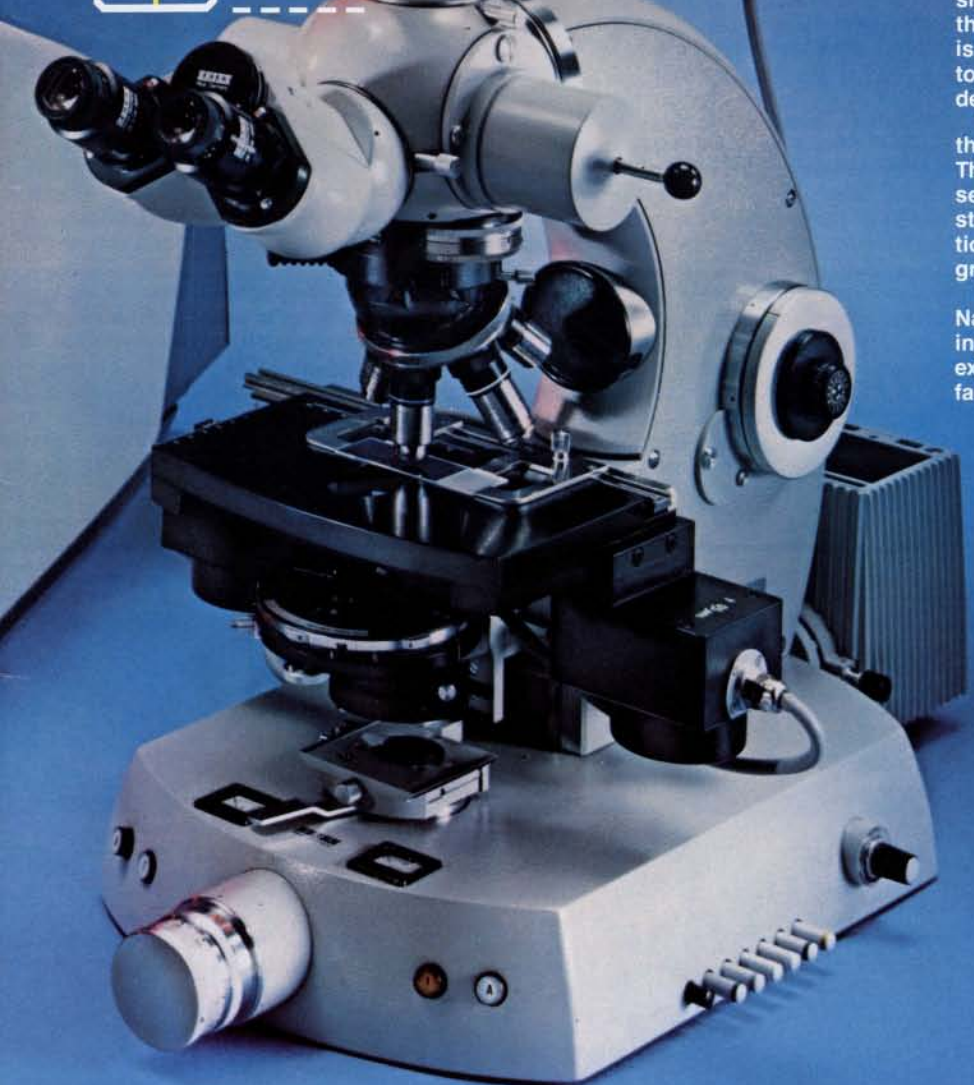
ZONAX, with Zeiss optics, is the only system that lets you use microscope optics to the fullest. All measurements are made on the optical axis. The specimen moves, not the optics. You take advantage of the maximum resolution of the microscope. Light goes directly from the objective lens to the photomultiplier to give the best signal quality possible in any system. Only the part of the specimen that's being measured is illuminated; there's no stray light to dilute the signal reaching the detector.

Because the optics are Zeiss, they're the best in the world. They're accompanied by the finest selection of accessories: scanning stages including a 0.125μ resolution stage, illuminators, photographic attachments.

You get everything that the Great Name in Optics can offer: engineering of the highest precision and expert service nationwide from factory-trained personnel.

For a demonstration, call your local Zeiss dealer, or contact any Zeiss office.

ZONAX respects Zeiss optics. All measurements are made on the optical axis.



The great name in optics

ZEISS

West Germany

Carl Zeiss, Inc., 444 5th Ave. New York, N.Y. 10018 (212) 730-4400. Branches: Atlanta, Boston, Chicago, Houston, Los Angeles, San Francisco, Washington, D.C.

Introducing Allied's latest acquisitions.

We've invested in 100 new scientists. All members of the latest group of researchers hired by Allied Chemical, one of our operating companies. We acquired these new scientists right after we acquired a new attitude about research.

These smart people chose our company when they could have worked for any chemical company in the world. Why was Allied such a smart choice? Because our new attitude was to offer them some of the most intriguing projects in the industry.

Some are using bioengineering to turn meek, ordinary vegetables into muscular specimens strong enough to fight world hunger.

Others are tailoring new ways to put information on silicon chips, so they can shrink to fit when today's tiny computers become even tinier.

Still others are plunging into the murky depths of industrial waste water, treating it to remove the murk and leave only fresh water.

Our new attitude also applies to money. We're spending it. In the last two years, we quadrupled our chemicals research budget. During the next 5 years, we'll spend $250 million, and that's just for our chemical company. Combine that with some of Allied's other major businesses—Fibers and Plastics, and Electrical Products—and we'll be spending $900 million.

One hundred new scientists, creative research projects, and millions of dollars to support them.

When we say acquisitions, we mean business.

ALLIED Corporation

We mean business.

Established 1845 **SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN** September 1981 Volume 245 Number 3

ARTICLES

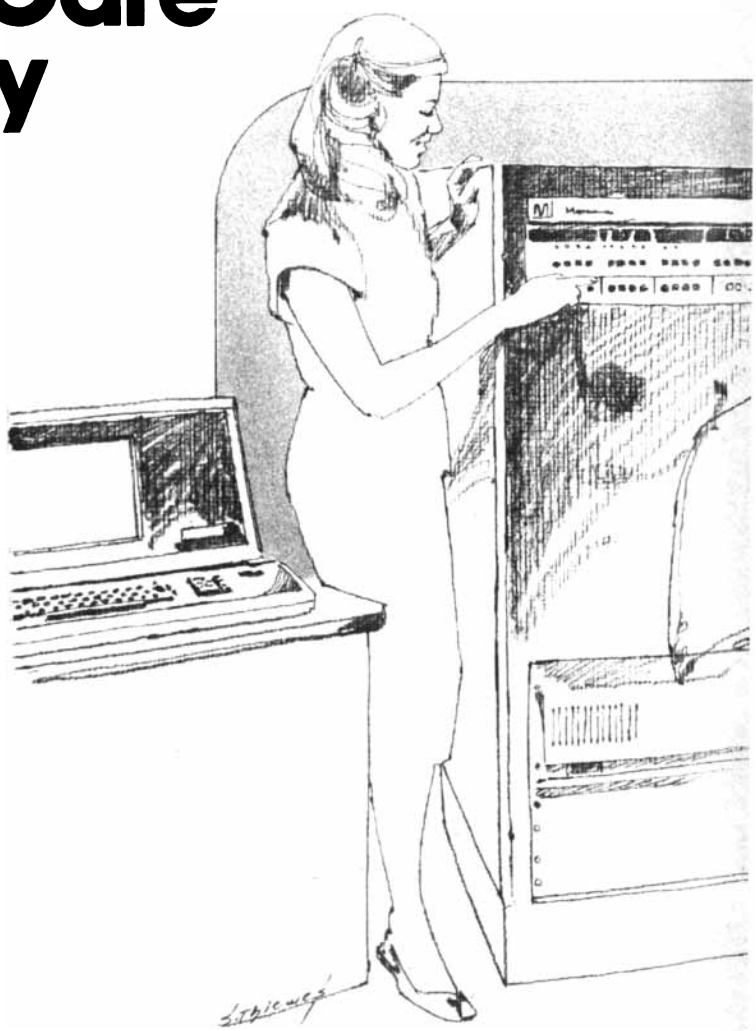
DEPARTMENTS

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN (ISSN 0036-8733), PUBLISHED MONTHLY BY SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, INC., 415 MADISON AVENUE, NEW YORK, N.Y. 10017

Hospital data systems from the leader in health care data processing—MCAUTO.

Check into a hospital in the U.S. and there's one chance in seven that hospital will be using a data system furnished by our MCAUTO Health Services Division, the largest supplier of its kind in the country. MCAUTO provides proven, comprehensive systems that record and report financial data, patient care activity, and medical records information from virtually every department in the hospital.

McDonnell Douglas at work in the Health Care Industry

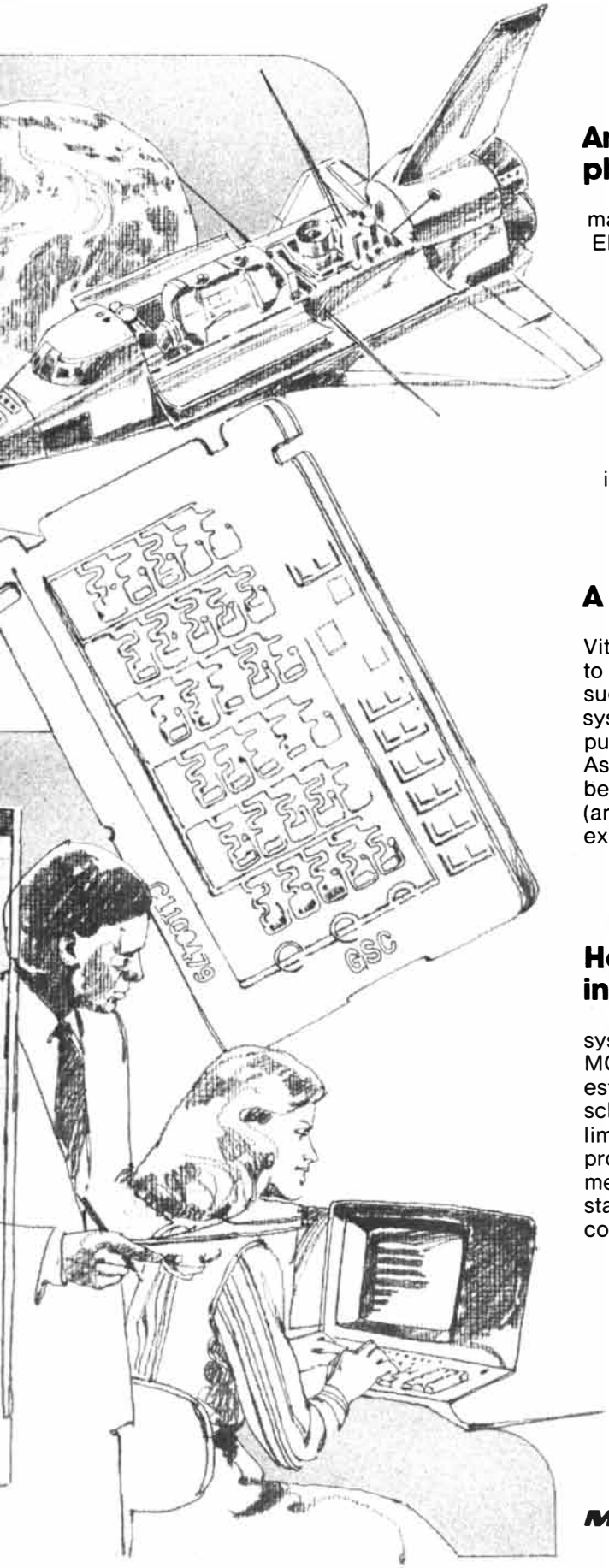


Our computer or yours—hospitals get a welcome choice.

While many of MCAUTO's hospital data systems operate on a shared basis (the hospital shares our big computers with other hospitals), our newest financial control system uses a hospital-located minicomputer system designed and built by Microdata Corporation, a wholly-owned subsidiary of McDonnell Douglas. The reliability of Microdata systems has earned the solid respect of our health care clients.

Lease or Finance: Medical equipment from The Yes People.

McDonnell Douglas Finance Corporation provides leasing and financing programs for the health care industry, from X-ray machines to blood analysis—and of course, to computers. Our financial consultants know medical equipment as well as they know financing. They approach your health care finance requirements with a "Yes, we can help" attitude. This makes your financing arrangements a pleasure rather than a chore.



An Earth-circling pharmaceutical factory.

A process called electrophoresis separates materials in fluids by means of electrical charges. Electrophoresis is far more efficient in the microgravity of space. There, enzymes, hormones, and other proteins that are normally present in humans in small amounts might be processed in sufficient quantities to help patients who lack their own supply.

Our work is experimental, of course, but we're planning flights aboard the Space Shuttle to determine whether space-processing can improve upon Earth processing for drugs either in short supply or not pure.

A get-well card for the lab from Vitek.

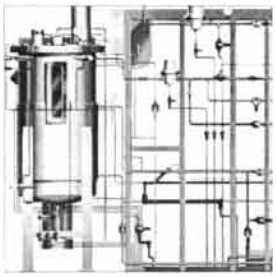
The AutoMicrobic® System, developed by our Vitek subsidiary, pinpoints infectious microbes 50% to 80% faster than conventional testing, and also suggests the most effective antibiotic. Heart of the system is the unique Vitek test card which the computer reads to make the microbial identification. As new test capabilities for additional microbes become available, the lab needs only the new cards (and perhaps a minor software change), avoiding the expense of replacing obsolete equipment.

Help with your hospital insurance claims.

The MCAUTO Group Claims Processing system speeds claim processing as never before. MCAUTO computers verify claimant eligibility, establish dollar amounts according to fee schedules, and calculate claims based on policy limits, deductibles, and coordination-of-benefits provisions. The result is a fast, fair, accurate settlement for the patient and the hospital—at a substantially lower processing cost to the insurance company.

If we've caught your interest with any of our work in health care, we'd welcome your comments and inquiries. Please be as specific as you can about your needs. Drop us a note at McDonnell Douglas, Box 14526, St. Louis, MO 63178.

MCDONNELL DOUGLAS



THE COVER

The painting on the cover symbolizes the theme of this issue of SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN: industrial microbiology. The tank at the left is a fermenter, the type of vessel in which the microorganisms that manufacture the products of industrial microbiology are grown. The piping associated with the vessel provides services to satisfy the requirements of the microorganism. The red pipes carry steam to sterilize the assembly and the growth medium before an inoculum of the organism is introduced into the vessel. The green pipes carry cold or steam-heated water to control the temperature of the culture. The black pipes carry the air needed by the organism. (Some of the organisms of industrial microbiology are anaerobic: they grow in the absence of air and do not need any.) The medium in the fermenter is stirred by a motor-driven agitator. The fermenter in the painting is made by the New Brunswick Scientific Co. Its capacity is 250 liters, so that it is suitable for pilot-plant work. Fermenters with a capacity of 50,000 gallons (about 200,000 liters) are common in industry.

THE ILLUSTRATIONS

Cover painting by Ted Lodigensky

Page	Source
66	M. J. Vinkesteyn, National Museum of Antiquities, Leiden
68	Royal Society of London (*top*); Astor, Lenox and Tilden Foundations, New York Public Library (*bottom*)
69	Pasteur Museum, Pasteur Institute, Paris
70–71	H. Moor, Swiss Federal Institute of Technology
73	Chicago Aerial Survey
75	Don Green, Kennecott Minerals Company
76	Herman J. Phaff, University of California at Davis
78	Erika A. Hartwieg, Massachusetts Institute of Technology
79	Martin W. Miller, University of California at Davis
80–81	Tom Prentiss
82–84	Albert E. Miller
86	Don Siegel, Harvard University, and Robert Fleischaker, Massachusetts Institute of Technology
87	Tom Prentiss
88	Albert E. Miller
90	David A. Hopwood, John Innes Institute
92–97	Bunji Tagawa
98	David A. Hopwood, John Innes Institute (*top*); Bunji Tagawa (*bottom*)
99–102	Bunji Tagawa
126	Jon Brenneis
128	Alastair T. Pringle, University of California at Los Angeles
129–134	Jerome Kuhl
136–138	Imperial Chemical Industries
140	Ralph Morse
142–152	Gabor Kiss
154	Kyowa Hakko Kogyo Co., Ltd.
156–174	Albert E. Miller
180	Carl E. Shively, Alfred University
182–196	Andrew Christie
198	B. Ben Bohlool, University of Hawaii at Manoa
200–206	Ilil Arbel
208	Donald H. Marx, Southeastern Forest Experimental Station
210–212	Ilil Arbel
215	Trevor V. Suslow and Douglas G. Garrott, University of California at Berkeley
217	Jearl Walker
219–224	Michael Goodman

Hood sails. Rolex watches. Ultimates each.

For over twenty years, Frederick E. "Ted" Hood has designed and manufactured the most desirable, durable and efficient sails ever to drive the competitive yachts of the oceans of the world.

He's raced and won with the best. His list of prestigious victories include the Mallory Trophy in '56, the Bermuda Race in '68, and the SORC and the America's Cup in '74.

He knows his sails and he knows his sailing. His philosophy contains no room for anything less than maximum application of ability.

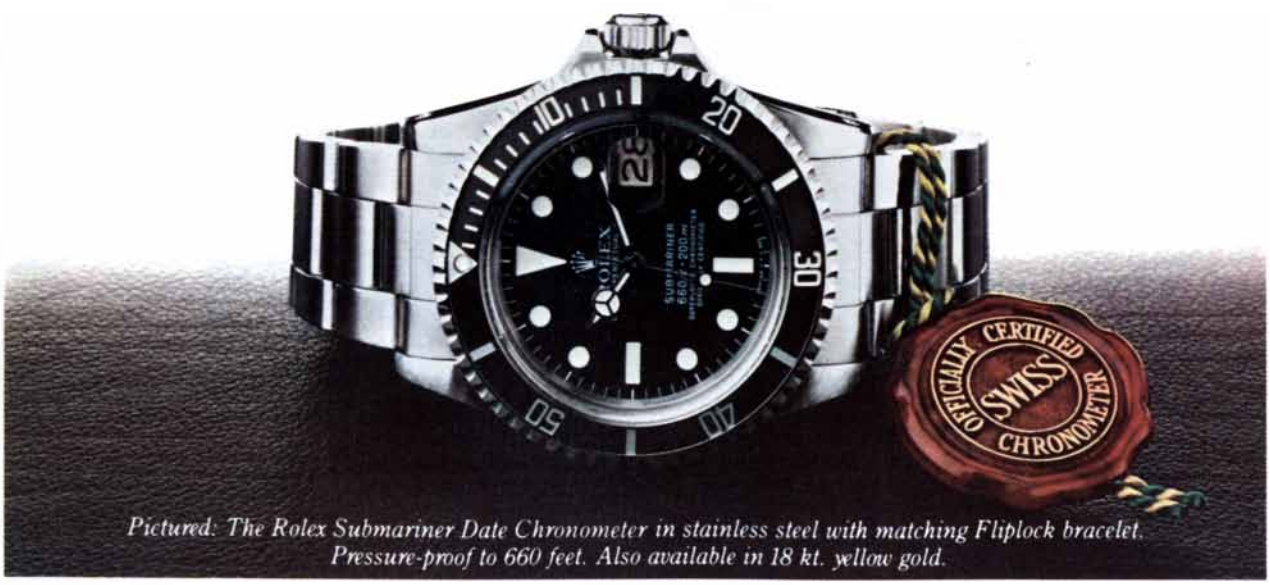
Durability. Excellence. Exactness. The words fit the man... the way he works. With ultimate care. With attention to detail. With the pride that comes from making the best that can be made.

The result is that every skipper worth his salt wants a suit of Hoods on his mast. And, chances are, he wants a Rolex on his wrist. Because uncompromising performance counts.

Rolex. The totally uncompromised machine. Handcrafted step by step from a solid block of gold or stainless steel. Mechanically unequaled. Esthetically unparalleled. The world's idea of what a watch should be.

Indeed, Mr. Hood and Rolex have precisely the same opinion toward accomplishment. The only true measure of achievement is result.

ROLEX



Pictured: The Rolex Submariner Date Chronometer in stainless steel with matching Fliplock bracelet. Pressure-proof to 660 feet. Also available in 18 kt. yellow gold.

Write for brochure. Rolex Watch, U.S.A., Inc., Dept.295, Rolex Building, 665 Fifth Avenue, New York, New York 10022. World headquarters in Geneva. Other offices in Canada and major countries around the world.

LETTERS

Sirs:

"Ancient Oared Warships," by Vernard Foley and Werner Soedel [SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, April], was fascinating but quite unconvincing in its lack of technical rigor.

For example, it is quite fanciful to suggest that a bireme or trireme (or any other craft under oar power, including a modern eight-oar racing shell) is capable of reaching planing attitude or partial planing attitude. This phenomenon is referred to in the hydrodynamic community as dynamic support, and it is simply the relation of adequate power in the craft to its weight. A human being, specifically a strong oarsman, is too heavy to develop enough power to dynamically support himself even on a weightless planing surface. The weight-to-power ratio for even partial dynamic support in pounds v. horsepower is between 50 and 60 to one. How many horsepower could those ancient oarsmen develop? It must be assumed that the galleys were not manned by the offspring of Hercules or Achilles....

THOMAS C. GILLMER

Professor of Naval Architecture
(Retired)
Former Director, Ship Hydrodynamics
Laboratory and Ship-Model
Towing Tank
U.S. Naval Academy
Annapolis, Md.

Sirs:

It is unnecessary to draw the catapult into an explanation of why the ram was succeeded by boarding as a fighting technique. Modern opinion is united in its condemnation of the ram as an efficient weapon. For example, "a [moving] ship... could avoid the ram by a turn of the helm, and results could only be expected when the enemy lay disabled and a sitting target" (Oscar Parkes, *British Battleships, 1860–1950: A History of Design, Construction and Armament,* 1957).

For two moving ships to collide requires the negligence or connivance of both commanders. A moving ship possesses such large "zones of immunity" against a ship of roughly equal performance (anything "abaft the beam" obviously cannot ram effectively, and this immunity zone can be shown to extend considerably forward on each side) that a satisfactory attack position is quite difficult to achieve. The defender can respond by turning toward the attacker, which will probably result in violent contact but will frustrate the purpose of the ram, or turning away, which will minimize impact damage. Given room to maneuver, a ramming approach can be declined so easily that only assaults with an element of surprise, or where both parties were hell-bent on contact, could possibly have succeeded.

A ramming attack converted into a glancing blow, however, remains an opportunity for boarding, and boarding attempts cannot be parried or declined easily. Successful attempts at boarding must therefore outnumber successful rammings, and thus would have been the dominant combat technique.

MICHAEL C. JONES

Harrow, Middlesex
England

Sirs:

Our comments on the possibility of dynamic support in the trireme were based on research that can be traced through the piece cited in our bibliography ["The High Speed Capabilities of Ancient Boats," by Sean McGrail and Ewan Corlett, in *International Journal of Nautical Archaeology and Undersea Exploration,* Vol. 6, No. 4, pages 352–353; November, 1977]. That research rests in turn largely on experiments with a replica of a medieval boat design called the Gokstad *faering,* one of a number of traditional boat designs that appear to achieve conditions of lessened resistance when rowed at maximum speed. Gillmer's weight-to-power ratio does not appear to take into consideration such factors as the wetted area of the hull or the size of the planing area, which as it increases does raise the skin friction but can diminish the power required to support a given weight. Corlett has incorporated this consideration in his volumetric coefficient, defined as the ratio of the displacement (given as a volume) to the cube of the waterline length. He proposes that if this is equal to or less than 2×10^{-3}, the boat can be driven at high speed without generating waves to the degree predicted by the Froude number alone, and hence without "squatting," or dropping at the stern. Corlett estimated the volumetric coefficient of the classic trireme at 1.2×10^{-3}. With our assumptions about the displacement of the vessel this figure is reduced by about 10 percent. In our text we reported these views, but we do not necessarily endorse them. Further investigation is clearly needed.

The comments about ramming by Jones and others appear to beg one important point. The ancient galleys were much more controllable than ships under sail, even ships with engines. Therefore they could, and did, approach battle in much tighter formations. Many ancient accounts mention that adjacent ships in a formation tangled oars. Such formations tended to protect the ships but could severely limit their ability to get out of the way of an attacker. In framing the conditions for ramming it is also necessary to consider the limited endurance of the oarsmen. The optimum battle mode is sitting dead in the water, waiting for a close-in target to present itself. A long-range chase is out of the question. Under these conditions catapult fire makes it possible to pursue the battle by other means.

As for hull penetration by catapult fire, Dr. Dietwulf Baatz of the Saalburg Kastell in Bad Homburg, West Germany, reports that he has succeeded in penetrating four-centimeter planks with bolts from a small arrow shooter whose projectiles were about a third the size of those tested by us. Baatz is probably the world's leading expert on the archaeological evidence for catapults and on the firsthand testing of full-size replicas.

Dr. P. DeFoort of the University of Ghent writes that the 40-banked galley would have been impractical for any battle service except perhaps amphibious river operations. The ancient descriptions support the impracticality of the vessel, but other sources certify that the Egyptians did practice such warfare. Perhaps the vessel was an abortive attempt to develop a rapidly deployable large-scale Middle Eastern strike force.

VERNARD FOLEY

WERNER SOEDEL

Purdue University
West Lafayette, Ind.

Editorial correspondence should be addressed to The Editors, SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, 415 Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017. Manuscripts are submitted at the author's risk and will not be returned unless accompanied by postage.

Advertising correspondence should be addressed to C. John Kirby, Advertising Director, SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, 415 Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017.

Offprint correspondence and orders should be addressed to W. H. Freeman and Company, 660 Market Street, San Francisco, Calif. 94104. For each offprint ordered please enclose 60 cents.

Subscription correspondence should be addressed to Subscription Manager, SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, 415 Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017. For change of address, notify us at least four weeks in advance. Send both old and new addresses and enclose an address imprint from a recent issue. (Date of last issue on your subscription is shown at upper right-hand corner of each month's mailing label.)

Name

New Address

Old Address

HOW THE NEW Cimarron BEATS THE IMPORTS AT THEIR OWN GAME.

	CIMARRON	AUDI 5000	BMW 320i	VOLVO GLE	SAAB 900S SEDAN
EPA MILEAGE RATINGS WITH STD. TRANS. HWY. EST./ EPA EST. MPG*	42/26	33/19	36/25	25/16	33/21
FRONT-WHEEL DRIVE	STANDARD	STANDARD	NOT AVAILABLE	NOT AVAILABLE	STANDARD
POWER-ASSISTED RACK AND PINION STEERING	STANDARD	STANDARD	RACK AND PINION ONLY	STANDARD	STANDARD
FOUR-SPEED MANUAL INCLUDING OVERDRIVE	STANDARD	STANDARD 5-SPEED	STANDARD 5-SPEED	STANDARD	STANDARD 5-SPEED
TACHOMETER	STANDARD	EXTRA COST	STANDARD	STANDARD	STANDARD
EPA PASSENGER COMPARTMENT VOLUME	89 CU. FT.	90 CU. FT.	82 CU. FT.	89 CU. FT.	89 CU. FT.
ALUMINUM ALLOY WHEELS	STANDARD	EXTRA COST	EXTRA COST	STANDARD	STANDARD
AIR CONDITIONING	STANDARD	EXTRA COST	EXTRA COST	STANDARD	DEALER INSTALLED OPTION
LEATHER-WRAPPED STEERING WHEEL	STANDARD	NOT AVAILABLE	EXTRA COST	DEALER INSTALLED OPTION	NOT AVAILABLE
LEATHER SEATING AREAS	STANDARD	EXTRA COST	NOT AVAILABLE	STANDARD	NOT AVAILABLE
MSRP**	$12,131 (F.O.B.)	$11,240 (P.O.E.)	$13,105 (P.O.E.)	$14,850 (P.O.E.)	$12,700 (P.O.E.)

*Use estimated mpg for comparison. Your mileage may differ depending on speed, distance, weather. Actual highway mileage lower. Cadillacs are equipped with GM-built engines produced by various divisions. See your Cadillac dealer for details.

**Manufacturer's Suggested Retail Price including dealer prep. as of 3/31/81. Tax, license, destination charges and optional equipment additional. Destination charges vary by location and may affect this comparison. *Level of standard equipment varies.*

For years foreign car manufacturers have boasted about their gas mileage, standard features and interiors. But now, there's a car that beats the imports at their own game. Cimarron by Cadillac.

As the chart shows, Cimarron has features the imports have, plus Cadillac comfort and convenience, with reclining body-contoured bucket seats and perforated leather seating areas. Cimarron has front-wheel drive, just as the Cadillac Eldorado and Seville do. It comes with Cadillac's exclusively tuned, road-hugging touring suspension and a four-speed manual transmission including overdrive. What's more, Cimarron behaves like a civilized car should. Nimble . . . easy to maneuver . . . with a smooth, refined ride.

If you've been thinking about buying an import, it's time to re-think your decision. It's time for Cimarron.

Due to limited initial production, Cimarron is not available at all Cadillac dealers at this time.

BY CADILLAC Cimarron

A NEW KIND OF CADILLAC FOR A NEW KIND OF CADILLAC OWNER.

GM

50 AND 100 YEARS AGO

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

SEPTEMBER, 1931: "Aviation history of the kind that takes into account pluck and physical endurance, skillful piloting, perfect navigation and a dependable plane was made when Wiley Post, pilot, and Harold Gatty, navigator, flew their *Winnie Mae* around the top of the world in eight days, 15 hours, 51 minutes, completing the trip at Roosevelt Field, New York. The record-breaking ship is a high-wing Lockheed monoplane. Under a special cowl in the nose is a supercharged Pratt and Whitney Wasp engine of 525 horsepower, a nine-cylinder, air-cooled radial model. The *Winnie Mae* is equipped with a large number of the most up-to-date instruments available today. Dials clutter up the dash board to the point where only a pilot such as Post could understand them all. An air-speed indicator, a rate-of-climb meter calibrated in feet per minute, a gyroscopic bank-and-turn indicator, a double set of compensated compasses and a Sperry 'artificial horizon' are some of the instruments used to ensure correct piloting and safety."

"An important series of papers by Otto Struve of the Yerkes Observatory has greatly extended our knowledge of the interstellar gas. Only rough estimates of the actual density of this gas can yet be made, but these are remarkable enough. The latest study by Albrecht Unsöld, Struve and C. T. Elvey indicates that within a few thousand light-years of the sun there is on the average one absorbing calcium atom in every two or three cubic meters. How many atoms of other kinds are present we can only guess: probably enough to make a total density 10 times as great. This estimate would make the total quantity of matter in interstellar space greater than that which is concentrated into the stars. In such a gas, according to A. S. Eddington, an atom would on the average move in a straight line for about seven years before being deflected by collision, and during this time it would travel farther than the distance from the sun to Jupiter. Strangely enough the gas, although it is in the depths of interstellar space, would be hot rather than cold. The temperature of the gas depends on the average velocity at which its molecules or atoms move. Calculation shows that the velocity will be high, and that when the impacts on other molecules or atoms have done their work, their average rate of motion will correspond to a temperature of about 10,000 degrees centigrade."

"How far back in geologic time can the modern type of man be traced? As is well known, toward the close of early Palaeolithic times large areas in western Europe and elsewhere were inhabited by a remarkable race of human beings possessing in their bodily form marked and fundamental differences from that of *Homo sapiens*. These primitive hunters, the Neanderthalers, with their large though simian-like skulls and strange limb bones, had a culture known as the Mousterian, and the deposits in which the remains of the epoch are found are in many places immediately succeeded by beds containing the relics of another and quite distinct culture—the Aurignacian. In the accumulations of this last-mentioned epoch a number of human skeletons have been discovered, and when these are compared with the bones of the Neanderthalers who immediately preceded the Aurignacians, it is obvious that the two races of men represented differed fundamentally in their physical characteristics. It is to be remarked that the lapse of time between the Mousterian and the Aurignacian cultures cannot have been, geologically speaking, very great. It does not seem credible that such a marked transformation could have taken place in the comparatively short period of time intervening between the Mousterian and the Aurignacian epochs. Taking these matters into consideration, it would appear probable that the genesis of modern man must be looked for in some period pre-dating that of the Mousterian."

SEPTEMBER, 1881: "The first instance on record of the application of electricity for the transmission of power to a distance is reported from France. M. Mathet has submitted the details to the Société de l'Industrie Minérale. The St. Claude shaft at Blanzy was sunk to the depth of 500 meters for the purpose of searching for a faulted portion of the coal seams, and a heading was run from it across the strata. When this heading had reached a length of 400 meters, the ventilation became so poor that the temperature at the face rose to 95° Fah., and the miners could work only for a few hours. After some ineffectual attempts to improve the ventilation by simple means, it was decided to put in a fan 2.63 feet in diameter and to run it by power transmitted by electricity. An eight-to-10-horse-power portable steam engine was put up above ground, and with it a Gramme dynamo-electric machine was run at a speed of 1,200 revolutions per minute. The electric current thus generated was conducted by a cable, consisting of 0.044-inch copper wires, to a second Gramme machine coupled directly to the fan."

"So long as smallpox vaccination stood alone, the alleged prevention of a malignant disease by the voluntary production of a mild disease of a similar type being a fact unique and unexplained, the anti-vaccinationists had a shadowy ground to stand on. How is it possible, they asked, to protect life and health by inviting disease? And when they boldly disputed statistics and pronounced the theory of vaccination a delusion, not a few intelligent people were confounded and prejudiced against a practice that has reduced to comparative feebleness one of the worst of the plagues of former days. The discoveries of the past year by Professor Pasteur in connection with chicken cholera made vaccination a fact no longer unique, and they gave a most promising clew to the rationale of its operation in making the system less vulnerable to smallpox. That distinguished investigator of microscopic life demonstrated the living virus of chicken cholera, and he proved that by suitable cultivation it could be so attenuated or shorn of its malignant quality that it would produce only a feeble disturbance of the animal organization, which yet sufficed to protect the animal as thoroughly from the more virulent disease as the latter could in case it was not fatal."

"The first practical work of any importance on the Panama Canal is the construction of a grand pathway from Colón to Panama, which has been cleared of trees and other obstructions to a width varying from 30 to 60 feet. The engineers and laborers on M. de Lesseps' great undertaking are said to be suffering severely from yellow fever and the malarial fevers peculiar to the Isthmus. Many deaths are reported."

"The second annual convention of the Photographic Association of America began in New York on August 15. Quite a remarkable exhibit of dry-plate photography was made by Cramer & Norden of St. Louis. Among their exhibits were a number of large negatives by the dry process, together with prints therefrom. One picture, 10×12, taken by an electric light in six seconds, represented a supper room, with the table all spread ready for the guests—a fine picture. During the exhibition several different improved photo processes were tested. The superior convenience and success of the new rapid gelatine and emulsion processes were fully demonstrated, many excellent pictures being produced. The wet process was also worked, but on the whole it was pretty conclusively shown that the dry process is the photographic art of the future."

Living well is the best revenge.

B and B. A blend of Benedictine and fine Cognac.

Julius WILE SONS & CO. NEW HYDE PARK, N.Y.

Our X-ray film treats this arm as if it were worth millions already.

To 3M, every arm is priceless. Whether it belongs to a potential big-leaguer, or the Cy Young winner himself. For this reason, we've developed an x-ray film that can reduce radiation by more than fifty percent. And 3M brand "Trimax" Medical X-ray Film also gives doctors a clearer, sharper image, for more accurate diagnosis.

You might not think of 3M as an x-ray company, but we've been hearing about the needs of radiologists for quite some time now. Because at 3M, we're in the business of hearing.

By listening to people's needs, we've been able to develop new ideas and breakthrough products like the "Trimax" system, so that less radiation may touch our lives.

In fact, 3M has developed over 700 products in the health-care field alone. If you think you might have an application for our technologies and products, write us today for a free 3M Health Care Brochure: **Department 010709/3M, P.O. Box 4039, St. Paul, MN 55104.**

Or better yet, let us hear from you right now. **Call toll-free: 1-800-323-1718,** Operator 361. (Illinois residents call 1-800-942-8881)

3M hears you...

3M

THE AUTHORS

ARNOLD L. DEMAIN and NADINE A. SOLOMON ("Industrial Microbiology") are microbiologists at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. Demain, who is professor of industrial microbiology in the department of nutrition and food science, majored in bacteriology as an undergraduate and graduate student at Michigan State College (now Michigan State University). He then went to the University of California, where he studied at both the Davis and the Berkeley campuses, obtaining his Ph.D. in microbiology in 1954. Before joining the M.I.T. faculty in 1969 he was head of the department of fermentation research at the Merck, Sharp & Dohme Research Laboratories. An active member of the American Society for Microbiology, Demain has served on numerous committees having to do with applied microbiology and fermentation technology. Solomon, who is a research associate in the department of nutrition and food science at M.I.T., is a graduate of the University of Massachusetts. She has worked with Demain since 1972 and in recent years has collaborated with him on a number of journal articles in their field.

HERMAN J. PHAFF ("Industrial Microorganisms") has a joint appointment as professor of food science and technology and professor of bacteriology at the University of California at Davis. A native of the Netherlands, he was trained as a chemical engineer at the Technical University of Delft. He came to the U.S. in 1939 to continue his studies, receiving a Ph.D. from the University of California at Berkeley in 1943. He taught at Berkeley until 1951, when he moved to the Davis campus. A specialist in the ecology and molecular taxonomy of yeasts, he is the coauthor (with Martin W. Miller and Emil M. Mrak) of *The Life of Yeasts.* In addition to Phaff's professional activities he is an accomplished cellist and participates in many musical events on the Davis campus.

DAVID A. HOPWOOD ("The Genetic Programming of Industrial Microorganisms") is John Innes Professor of Genetics at the University of East Anglia. He is also head of the genetics department at the nearby John Innes Institute, a research establishment supported by the British Agricultural Research Council. Hopwood studied natural sciences, specializing in botany, at the University of Cambridge. Soon after his graduation in 1954, he writes, "I began research for my doctorate at Cambridge, studying the genetics of *Streptomyces,* about which little was known at the time. I am still working on the same topic; it gets more fascinating all the time." He obtained a Ph.D. from Cambridge in 1958 and a D.Sc. from the University of Glasgow in 1974. He was a lecturer in genetics at Glasgow from 1961 to 1968, when he took up his present positions. In 1979 Hopwood was elected a Fellow of the Royal Society.

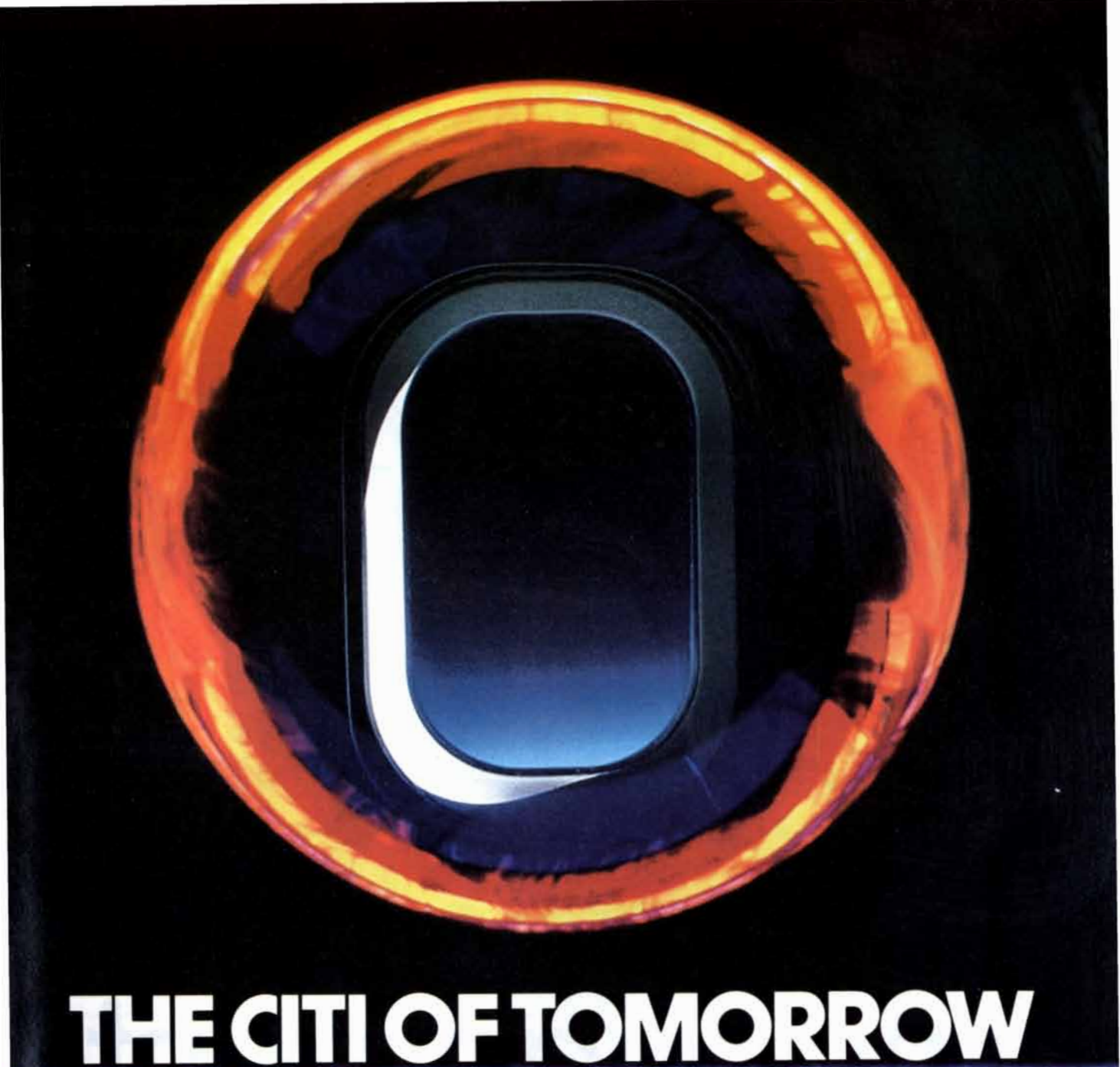
ANTHONY H. ROSE ("The Microbiological Production of Food and Drink") is professor of microbiology at the University of Bath. His degrees, in applied biochemistry, are from the University of Birmingham. After postdoctoral work at Rutgers University and the National Research Council of Canada in Ottawa he taught at Heriot-Watt University in Edinburgh and at the University of Newcastle upon Tyne. He joined the faculty at Bath in 1968. His main research interest for the past decade or so has been in the composition and function of the envelope of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (brewer's yeast). This is Rose's fourth article for SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN; the previous ones were "Beer" (June, 1959); "Yeasts" (February, 1960) and "New Penicillins" (March, 1961).

YAIR AHARONOWITZ and GERALD COHEN ("The Microbiological Production of Pharmaceuticals") are microbiologists on the faculty of Tel Aviv University. Aharonowitz got his Ph.D. from Tel Aviv in 1974. He then spent two years as a research associate at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, where, he writes, "I worked with Arnold L. Demain, who introduced me to the field of industrial microbiology. In Demain's laboratory I studied different aspects of the metabolic regulation of beta-lactam antibiotic production in streptomycetes." Aharonowitz joined the department of microbiology at Tel Aviv in 1976. In addition to his work on biochemical and genetic regulatory mechanisms, he reports, "I am involved in several aspects of the industrial application of biocatalysis." Cohen is a graduate of University College London; after obtaining his B.Sc. degree he took a year off to work on a kibbutz in Israel. He later joined the polymer department of the Weizmann Institute of Science in Rehovot, where he was awarded his doctorate in 1968. He spent the next three years in the U.S. working at the National Institutes of Health before he returned to Israel in 1971 to join the department of microbiology at Tel Aviv. In recent years, he writes, "I have become involved in the area of applied microbiology, and in particular in the ways microorganisms can be exploited to make useful amounts of vitamins, amino acids and antibiotics."

DOUGLAS E. EVELEIGH ("The Microbiological Production of Industrial Chemicals") is professor of microbiology at Cook College/New Jersey Agricultural Experiment Station, a division of Rutgers University. Born and educated in Britain, he received his Ph.D. from the University of Exeter in 1959. Before joining the Rutgers faculty in 1970 he worked for six years at the Canadian National Research Council's Prairie Regional Laboratory in Saskatoon. In his spare time, Eveleigh writes, he "rejuvenates on table tennis and legerdemain."

ELMER L. GADEN, JR. ("Production Methods in Industrial Microbiology"), is Wills Johnson Professor of Chemical Engineering at the University of Virginia. His degrees are from Columbia University: B.S., 1944; M.S., 1947; Ph.D., 1949. He joined the faculty at Columbia soon after obtaining his doctorate and taught there until 1974, when he left to become dean of the College of Engineering, Mathematics and Business Administration at the University of Vermont. He was appointed to his present position in 1979. Gaden's primary professional interest is in the development of biochemical processes for the production of food and chemicals and for the disposal of wastes. In 1970 he was the first recipient of the Food and Bioengineering Award of the American Institute of Chemical Engineers. In recent years, Gaden reports, he has been particularly active in the work of the Board of Science and Technology for International Development of the National Academy of Sciences/National Research Council.

WINSTON J. BRILL ("Agricultural Microbiology") is Vilas Research Professor of Bacteriology at the University of Wisconsin at Madison. A graduate of Rutgers University, he got his Ph.D. in microbiology from the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign in 1965. After two years of postdoctoral work on the genetics and regulation of amino acid metabolism at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology he moved to Wisconsin, where his research is devoted primarily to the study of the biochemistry, genetics and physiology of nitrogen fixation [see "Biological Nitrogen Fixation," by Winston J. Brill; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, March, 1977]. In addition to his academic work he has just been made director of research for the Cetus Madison Corporation, a newly formed subsidiary of the Cetus Corporation that will concentrate on the application of modern microbiological techniques to agriculture.



THE CITI OF TOMORROW

It's a hard look into your operations today for better productivity tomorrow.

The Citi of Tomorrow brings you the latest electronic banking. And the people who can tell you how to use it best: Citibankers.

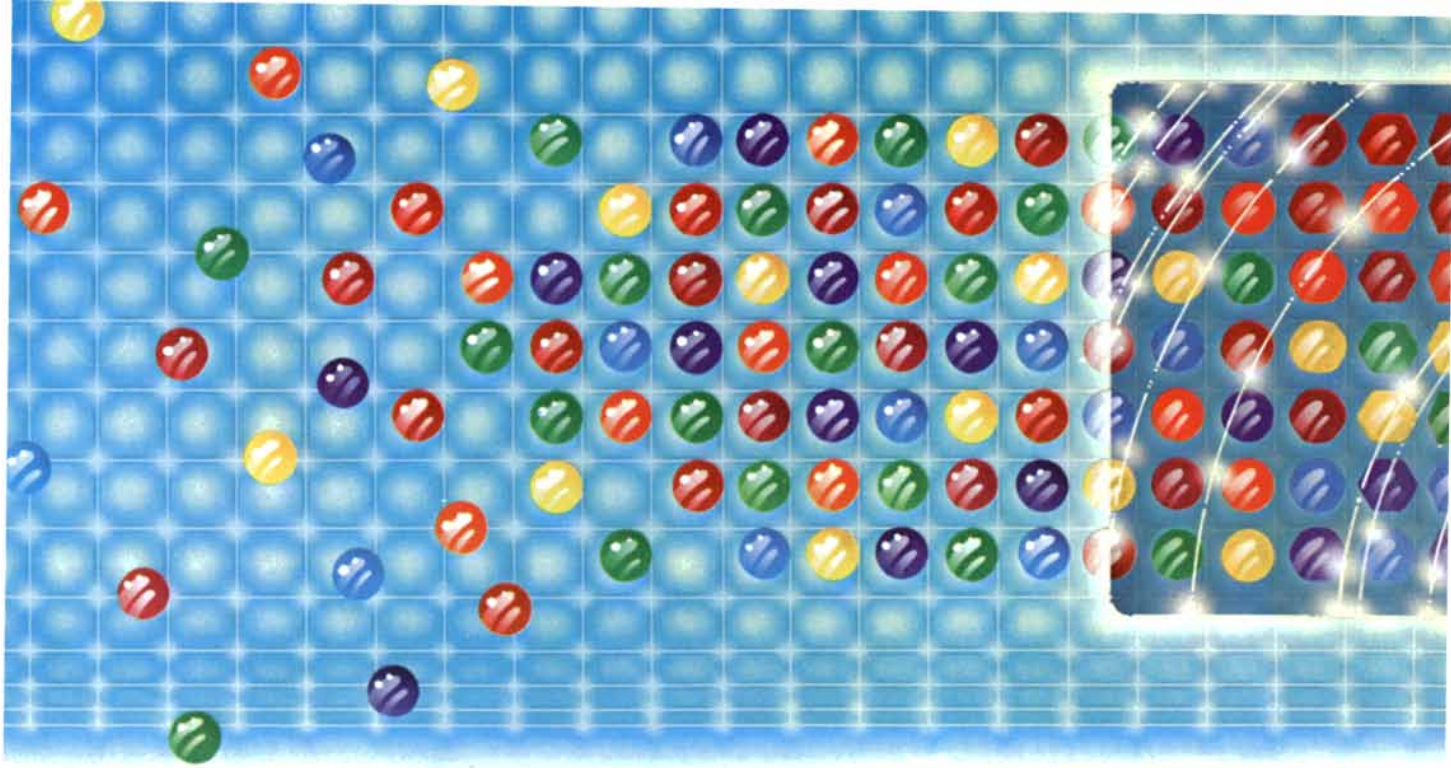
Citibank's financial experts can help you take full advantage of new technological advances to make your back office more productive.

They'll make sure your system is tailored to your specific business needs. And at the other end, there will always be a team of Citibankers who know your business and can track down any problem. These Citibankers can also show you how electronic banking can streamline your present back office operation. And they can advise you in other areas, including ways to utilize your banks more effectively.

The Citi of Tomorrow. Instead of just answers to problems, a strategy to avoid them.

Call Robert Mendes, V.P., at (212) 559-1980 for more details.

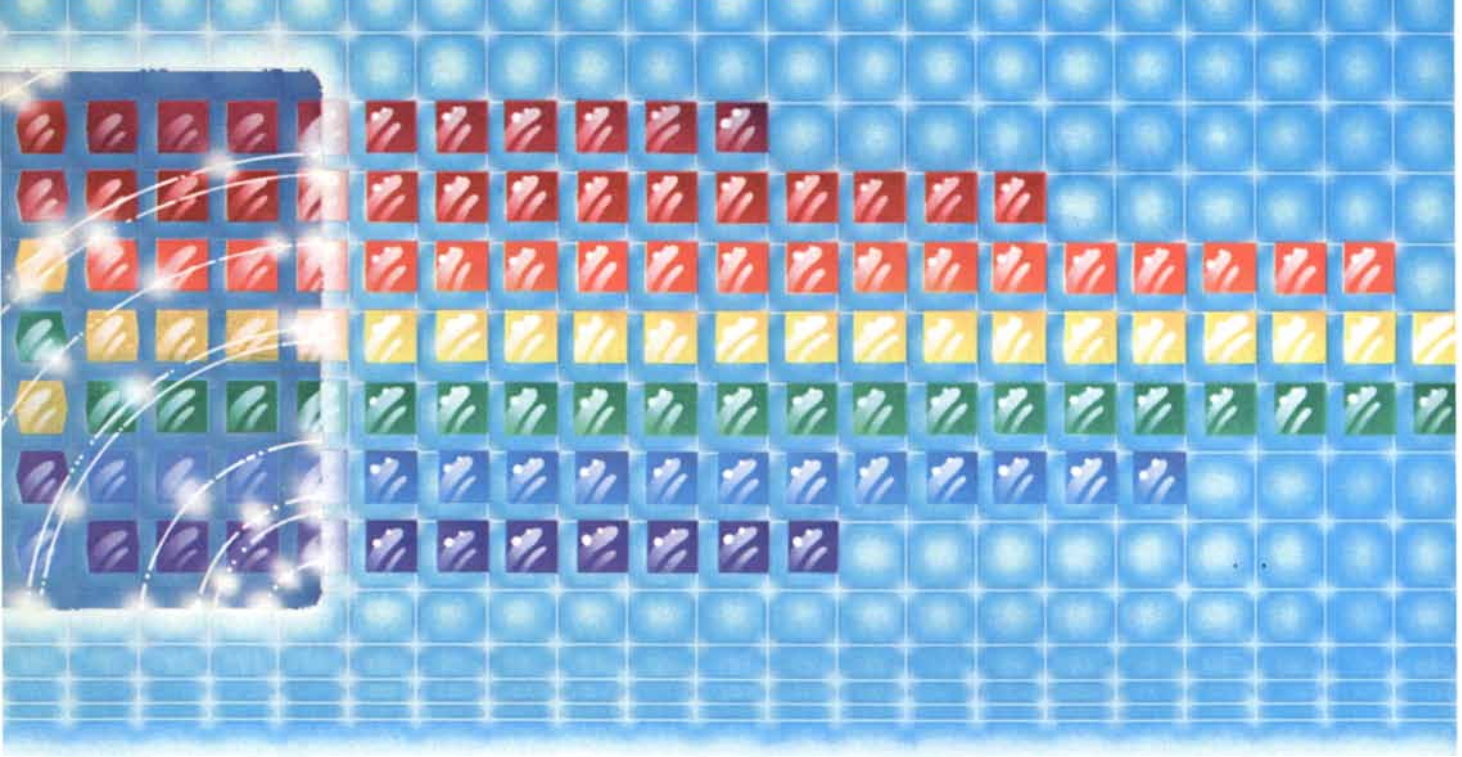
CITIBANK®
GLOBAL ELECTRONIC BANKING



Understanding information management.

We are no longer an industrial society.

More Americans are now in information jobs than in manufacturing and agriculture combined. Today's most pervasive technological trends have to do with information and its management. Yet to begin to understand the boundless promise of our new information society, we need to define its terms.



The management of information occurs in three distinct stages:

Organization

Information (words or data) is gathered and structured so that it can be put into a system. The business or institution is also organized to take advantage of the efficiencies of information management.

Processing

The information may then be stored, examined, organized, translated or directed by people or machines.

Transmission

Information is transported and made available to users as they select. Often information may be managed simply by organizing it and transmitting it to the proper user.

Present day systems to manage information are but one of the products of the knowledge business.

The Bell System constantly produces new knowledge, and turns this knowledge into practical advances. Electronic switching (organization, processing) and lightwave communications (transmission) were laboratory phenomena just yesterday. So were the integrated communications systems that ease the way for so many American businesses.

All are realities within the Bell network, which organizes, processes and transmits analog and digital information worldwide.

The ideas, applications and systems of the knowledge business are available to you now. The Bell System can help you use them now, to increase productivity and profits.

The knowledge business

METAMAGICAL THEMAS

How might analogy, the core of human thinking, be understood by computers?

by Douglas R. Hofstadter

In our research in artificial intelligence my graduate students Gray Clossman and Marsha Meredith and I have been looking at typical human thought processes in everyday life as well as in more limited domains, and everywhere we look we seem to find that within the internal representations of concepts there are substructures that have a kind of independence of the structures of which they are part. Such a substructure is modular, that is, it is exportable from its native context to alien contexts. It is an autonomous structure in its own right, and we call these modules roles. A role, then, is a natural "module of description" that seems to be comfortable moving out of its first home and finding homes in other places, some of them unlikely at first glance.

One example is the "First Lady" role. Most Americans use this term more flexibly than they realize. They would probably say, if asked, that the term means "the wife of the president," and not think any more about it. But if they were asked about the First Lady of Canada, what would almost surely pop into their mind is the name or image of Margaret Trudeau. They might reject the thought as soon as it occurred to them, but for us the important thing is that the thought of her would arise at all. First of all, people know her as the *former* wife of Pierre Elliott Trudeau. Second, Trudeau is not the president of Canada but its prime minister. How, then, is "the former wife of the prime minister" the same as "the wife of the president"?

Before you answer, "Well, 'wife' and 'former wife' are related concepts, as are 'prime minister' and 'president,'" consider who might be said to be the current First Lady of Britain. Whose name came to your mind? Margaret Thatcher? Queen Elizabeth? They are women, but do they really play the role of First Lady? Did it occur to you that it might be Denis Thatcher or Prince Philip? At first these suggestions seem silly, but at the same time they are compelling, particularly the thought of Denis Thatcher. In fact, I once clipped a newspaper article that portrayed Denis Thatcher as Britain's First Lady.

What kind of sense does this make? How can a man be a lady? Well, language is much slipperier than dictionary definitions would have you believe. Its slipperiness comes from the underlying slipperiness of concepts, in particular these elusive things we are calling roles.

Of course, you could argue that the First Lady role goes over naturally into "husband of the prime minister," simply because what First Lady really means is "spouse of the head of state." But this will not do either. In Haiti until recently the title of First Lady belonged to Simone Duvalier, the widow of the former president, François ("Papa Doc") Duvalier. She is also the mother of the current president, Jean-Claude ("Baby Doc") Duvalier. Not long ago there was a bitter power struggle between Simone Duvalier and her daughter-in-law Michelle Bennett Duvalier, the wife of "Baby Doc," for the title of First Lady. In the end the younger woman seems to have gained the upper hand, taking the title "First Lady of the Republic" away from her mother-in-law, who in compensation was given the lifetime title "First Lady of the Revolution." Do you want to amend your suggestion to say "the spouse (or former spouse) of the present (or former) head of state"? You know perfectly well we shall be able to bring up other exceptions. For example, one could imagine a meeting of the Pooh-Bah Club at which the Grand Pooh-Bah's wife was introduced as the First Lady of the club. Of course, the Grand Pooh-Bah is hardly a head of state, and so you amend your definition to say "the spouse (or the former spouse) of the head of any old organization." But suppose.... I think I shall let *you* go on inventing exceptional cases. For any rule you propose there is bound to be some conceivable way to get around it.

Worse yet, something terrible is happening to the concept as it gets more flexible. Something crucial is being lost, namely the notion that "the wife of the president" is the most *natural* meaning, at least for Americans. If one knew only the generalized definition, one would get the impression that Sam Pfeffenhauser, the former father-in-law of the corner drugstore's temporary boss, is just as good an example of the First Lady concept as Nancy Reagan. When this happens, something is wrong. The definition not only should be general but also should incorporate some indication of what the *spirit* of the idea is.

Computers have a hard time getting the spirit of things; they prefer to know things to the letter. And so people spend an enormous amount of time talking to computers, writing long and detailed descriptions of ideas they could get across in one good example to anyone with half a brain. Therefore the question is how to get a computer to understand what is meant by "First Lady." We want, then, to examine the idea of "roles" in some detail.

In order to illustrate how the notion of "role" can be modeled in domains more formal than the domain of political protocol I shall switch to one of my favorite domains: the natural numbers. I shall present some little puzzles that Gray, Marsha and I have been thinking about. Each of them has no single correct answer but rather a set of possible answers with varying degrees of plausibility or defensibility. What we are interested in is devising a computer program that is able to see the rationale behind each possible answer and thus able to come up with the same set of "feelings" a typical person would have about what is a good answer and what is a bad one.

The domain of natural numbers might sound at first like a rather hard-edged and precise little mathematical world, but actually it is a domain in which problems requiring extremely subtle subjective judgments can be formulated. Gray, Marsha and I intend to give our program very little detailed arithmetical knowledge about the integers. The program will not, for example, recognize 9 as a square; in fact, it will not even know about multiplication. It will not know that 6 is even and 7 odd. What, then, will it know? It should know how to count up or down, that is, it should have a knowledge of succession. Hence it should recognize that the sequence of numerals 12345 represents an upward counting process. It should also be able to apply the notion of counting to structures it is looking at, as in 44444, which it would recognize as a group of five copies of the numeral 4. It will know that 9 is bigger than 4, although it will have no idea how much bigger. You can think of this computer program as having the arithmetical sophistication of a five-year-old and an avid curiosity about number patterns. Here is the first

problem, invented, as are many of the others, by Gray.

Consider the structure we shall call *A:* 1234554321.

Now consider the structure called *B:* 12344321.

The question is: What is to *B* as 4 is to *A?* Or, to use the language of roles: What plays the role in *B* that 4 plays in *A?*

Note that by asking it this way we leave it to the puzzle solver to decide what role 4 actually does play in *A.* It would be analogous to asking, "Who is the Nancy Reagan of Britain?" leaving it to the listener to figure out what conceptual role Nancy Reagan fills and then to try to export that role to Britain. I have found that many people are quite content with Denis Thatcher as "the Nancy Reagan of Britain" but balk at calling him "the First Lady of Britain." A curious point, to which we shall return, is this: if the role is left implicit, nonverbalized, it has more fluidity in the way it transfers than it does if it is "frozen" in an English phrase.

Actually most analogies crop up in a nonverbal way. Seldom does someone say to you explicitly: "What is the counterpart of Central Park in San Francisco?" Usually it happens through a more implicit channel. When you are visiting San Francisco for the first time, you are driven through Golden Gate Park, and somehow it reminds you of Central Park. After the fact you can point out some shared features (both are long, thin rectangles, both contain lakes and curving roads, and so on). Most analogies arise similarly—as a result of unconscious filterings and arrangings of perceptions, not as consciously sought solutions to cooked-up puzzles. To put it another way, to be reminded of something is to have unconsciously formulated an analogy.

Incidentally, when I first thought of writing about roles and analogies, I had in mind both the First Lady example and the numerical examples. As my thoughts evolved I realized I was unconsciously developing a parallel in my mind between the First Lady example and the numerical examples. I call it a meta-analogy, since it is an analogy between analogies. In this meta-analogy I see structure *A* as corresponding to the U.S., structure *B* to Britain, 4 to Nancy Reagan and the unknown object to the unknown person.

Let us now look at some possible answers to the first "formal" problem. The most likely answer is 3. The justification seems to be that 4 precedes the central pair (55) in *A,* and the corresponding central pair in *B* is 44, which is preceded by 3. Then how about in *C?*

C: 12345666654321

The central pair in *C* is 66, which is flanked by 6's. Is 6, therefore, to *C* what 4 is to *A?* Probably most people would prefer 5, although it is perfectly *logical* to insist on 6. The preference for 5 comes, nonetheless, from a very sensible instinct to generalize the "central pair" notion (itself, to be sure, a role) to "central plateau" (or whatever you want to call it). There are competing urges: first to stay with the original concept and second to flex and bend when it "feels right," when it would seem rigid and stodgy to insist on established conventions over simple and "natural" extensions. But it is these terms—"flex," "bend," "feels right," "rigid," "natural" and so on—that are so extraordinarily hard to put into programs.

Now let us investigate some other ways to make the role of 4 slip. Consider this structure:

D: 11223344544332211

Here is a curious kind of reversal; now there is no central pair but everything else is in pairs. Some people might still pick 4, since it is next to the center. But what about 44, a pair rather than a single number? It seems that as long as "pair" and "singleton" are switching places we might as well go all the way and give an answer that reflects this perceptual turnabout. In fact, it would seem rigid and unimaginative to insist on sticking with single numbers when it is so obvious that the easiest way to perceive *D* is in terms of pairs:

D: (11)(22)(33)(44)5(44)(33)(22)(11)

Not just 4 but every part of *A* has a role, and there are corresponding roles in *D.* As you can see, within each role the concepts of pair and singleton have been switched.

Now is as good a time as any to point out some features of my meta-analogy between these problems and the First Lady problem. If you think of the president as "the highest, most central figure in the land" and his wife as "the one standing next to him," you will see that this characterization carries over almost literally to the numerical problems. In structure *A* the highest, most central figure—the "president"—is 5 (or possibly the pair of 5's) and his "wife," standing next to him, is 4. In *B* the president is 4 (or the pair of 4's) and his wife is 3. In *C* the president is 6 (or the group of 6's) and his wife is 5. In *D* the president is for once unambiguous (5), but to compensate there is a choice as to his wife. If you think of pairs as males and singletons as females, then *D* presents us with a case where the sexes are reversed, exactly as in the First Lady of Britain problem. The most reasonable answer seems to be the "spouse" (in this case the husband) of 5, namely the pair 44.

Consider now the following couple of curious cases:

E: 12345678

F: 87654321

What can we make of these? A very rigid person might cling to the idea captured in the phrase "number to the left of the central pair," in spite of the fact that nothing at all distinguishes the central pair in either of these examples. Such a person would give the inane answers 3 for *E* and 6 for *F.* Such a person would do better, as Lewis Carroll once said, to take up football instead of analogies. But what would be a wiser view of, say, *E?* How should one map *E* onto *A?* The mapping is doomed to be imperfect, so how can we do it best? We might think of *E* as mapping onto the left half of *A.* This would involve a tacit judgment that it is all right to abandon the attempt to map *E* onto *all* of *A* in return for the ease of mapping *E* onto a "natural" portion of *A.* That is a pretty subtle step to take, I would venture. It would suggest 7 as the answer. Then what about *F?* Do we prefer 2 or 7? It depends on whether we choose to map *F* onto the left half of *A* or the right half. Mapping *F* onto the left half involves mapping a descending sequence onto an ascending one. But either choice requires a willingness to let go qualities that had seemed important, a willingness to bend gracefully under pressure. Fluid analogies are not a game for rigid minds!

These kinds of situations are difficult because in essence they call for splitting the role of 4 in *A* into two rival facets. In the mapping of *A* onto *F* one of the rival facets sees 4's role in *A* as "one less than the president," whereas the other facet sees 4's role as "the next-to-rightmost numeral in a staircase." Thus one facet is primarily concerned with magnitude and the other primarily with position. The facet you find more convincing will determine your answer to *F.*

Pretty much this kind of split happened when you tried to decide whether the First Lady of Britain was Queen Elizabeth or Margaret Thatcher—or one of their husbands. Is being a figurehead or being a head of state more likely to make someone's spouse a First Lady? In the U.S. these features coincide in one person (the president), but in Britain they do not. Consider the following target structures:

G: 5432112345

H: 123465564321

In *G* what is most central is simultaneously lowest, and what is highest is simultaneously most peripheral! (*G* can be pictured as a valley and *A* as a moun-

The power to tune in the world is placed instantly at your fingertips with Sony's ICF-2001 Worldband Radio.

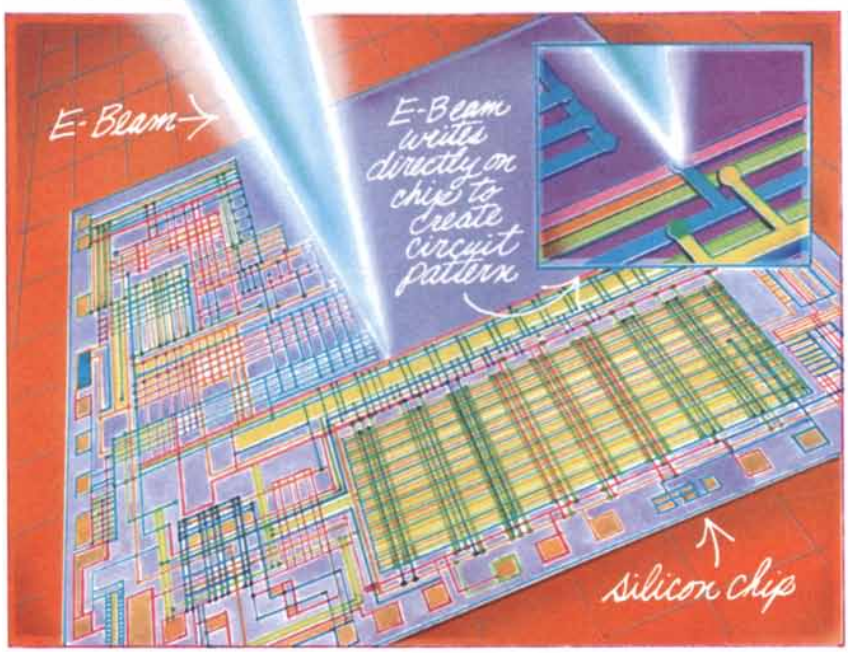
Push a button and listen to opera from Germany, the news from Russia, the weather in England, or your favorite station in your own hometown.

You can even pre-set the memory buttons for six different stations on FM, AM, SW, or SSB/CW (Morse Code) broadcasts. And you can do it all without the skills and training of an astronaut.

The 2001 operates on AC, DC or car-battery power. So you can take the whole world with you, no matter where on Earth you go. **THE WORLDBAND RADIO**

SONY®
THE ONE AND ONLY

OUR RESEARCH IN E-BEAM LITHOGRAPHY WILL MAKE OUR 1.25 MICRON VLSI CHIP LOOK LIKE HORSE AND BUGGY TECHNOLOGY.



WE'RE USING E-BEAMS TO DEVELOP VERY LARGE SCALE INTEGRATED CIRCUITS WITH SUB-MICRON FEATURE SIZE.

At Honeywell, solid state electronics is a key technology. We've already built one of the largest in-house semiconductor operations in the United States. But we're fast expanding our current capabilities to meet the growing demand for integrated circuits with extremely small feature size. Recently, our research in very large scale integrated circuits helped us win a contract for Phase 1 of the Department of Defense's VHSIC program.

In Phase O of VHSIC, we produced a bipolar microcircuit with 1.25 micron feature size and more than 7000 gates on a 200 X 250 mil chip. But that's only the first step. We're now pushing optical lithography to its limits, fabricating high-density, near-micron microcircuits. With the help of our advanced design automation system, we are developing a bipolar chip with 30,000 gates and a CMOS chip with 300,000 transistors.

At the same time, we're developing CMOS and bipolar micro-circuits with 0.5 micron feature size. But, the micron barrier will not be broken with conventional optical lithography. Sub-micron technology will require significant advances in four major fields: electron-beam lithography, dry etching, ion implantation and low temperature processing.

For the last six years, Honeywell has been conducting e-beam research. Currently, computer controlled e-beam equipment is used to print the masks that are used in near-micron circuit printing. In August, 1980, we began using an e-beam system for direct writing of very large scale integrated circuits in the development laboratory at our Solid State Electronics Division.

One of the problems in e-beam direct writing is the proximity effects from high-energy electrons colliding with the atoms of the resist. At our Corporate Technology Center, we're working on an improved polymer resist that will not degrade during direct write.

Dry etching techniques, like plasma etching and reactive ion milling, are another focus of Honeywell research. Because dry etching techniques work vertically, they are preferred to wet etching, which tends to undercut the layers of the resist. At Honeywell, we're now in the process of designing our own reactive ion milling equipment.

We've taken tremendous strides in our VLSI capabilities. But there are still many possibilities in sub-micron chip technology yet to be explored.

If you are interested in learning more about Honeywell's research and development of VLSI, you are invited to correspond with Dr. J. M. Daughton, Vice President, Solid State Development Center. If you have an advanced degree and are interested in a career in systems analysis, solid state electronics, sensors, design automation, or material sciences, please write to Dr. K. C. Nomura, Vice President and General Manager, Solid State Electronics Division. Both may be reached at this address: Honeywell, 12001 State Highway 55, Minneapolis, MN 55441.

Honeywell

Although Honeywell engineering is world-wide, the bulk of corporately-funded research and applied research is done in Minneapolis. The most recent Quality of Life Study conducted by Midwest Research Institute shows Minnesota to be one of the best places in the country to live and work considering cultural, social, economic, educational and political factors.

This ideal environment is further enhanced by Honeywell's affiliations with universities across the country. We have an ongoing program of seminars with Berkeley, MIT, Stanford, Carnegie Mellon, the University of Illinois, Cornell, Purdue, Oregon Graduate Center, and the University of Minnesota.

tain peak.) We have a "ceremonial figure" (the 5's flanking the structure) and we have a "head of state" (the two central 1's). Which one's spouse would better fill the role of First Lady? Or, to remind you of where this all came from, what in *G* plays the role of 4 in *A?* I personally would opt for 2 because it stands next to the central group. To me centrality seems more important here than magnitude, just as political power seems more substantive than ceremonial show. Correspondingly I would prefer that Britain's First Lady be Denis Thatcher rather than Prince Philip.

Now, what happens when we tackle *H?* There are three "reasonable" possibilities (in the sense of appealing to the proverbial "reasonable man"): 6 (flanking the central pair of 5's), 5 (being the next-to-largest number) and 4 (flanking the central "crater" 6556). Once again there is no gloriously right answer, but there are certainly reasons that seem good and reasons that seem shaky. For instance, if someone had the audacity to say, "The answer is 4, because 4 is the fourth term of *H,* just as it is the fourth term of *A,*" we would be flabbergasted. What possible fundamental significance could there be to such a mundane and arbitrary characterization as "the fourth term of"? It seems to cling to an extremely superficial view of *A,* the way a child might insist that a red Volkswagen bug and a red Cadillac are more similar than two Volkswagen bugs of different colors. To see 4 as no more than the fourth element of *A* is to miss all *A*'s interest. It is to see *A* as

4***

It seems that a good answer must take *A*'s structure into account in a full, rich and yet simple way.

The word "role" makes us think of the theater. In a play the various roles all mingle together in scenes, where several roles coexist and interact. In our analogy problems one might try to perceive the two structures involved as if they were two enactments of a single scene, portrayed by different directors working with different actors. Hence the core roles would exist and be filled in both presentations, but at the same time each presentation would have minor aspects, or roles, unique to it. The adaptation of the Greek legend of Orpheus and Eurydice into a contemporary context of carnival time in Rio de Janeiro is the basis for the movie *Black Orpheus.* Many original features cannot be directly exported, but with poetic modification they can be, and the director, Marcel Camus, met the challenge with great flair.

Now that you have seen some variations I should like to return to our first puzzle and point out some of its hidden subtlety. First of all, the "central pair" notion, which functions as the keystone of structure *A,* is actually just a kind of by-product, an accidental artifact of the structure of *A.* How would you describe the structure of *A* without quoting it digit by digit? You would probably say it rises from 1 to 5 and then falls from 5 to 1, making two halves that are mirror images. Such a description refers, however, only to the two halves, not to the fact that at their meeting point the halves form a pair of 5's. Yet perceptually there is a shift when you see *A.* To the mind's eye it appears something like this:

1234554321

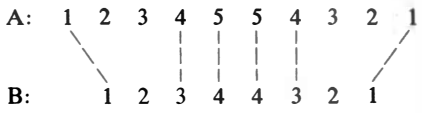
Somehow a new conceptual entity has been born in the center. It is, as I remarked above, the *keystone* of *A.* (Note that this visual image depends on, or implies, a mapping of *A* onto an arch.)

Why do we not perceive the pair of 3's, say, as a unit as well? Probably simply because they do not touch. And consider this structure:

1234512345

The central pair 51 does not pop out as being salient or important, does it? In *A,* though, the combination of adjacency and equality, particularly when it is supplemented by centrality, somehow makes the two central 5's merge into a unit in the perceiver's mind.

In the first puzzle both *A* and *B* had obvious central plateaus. This suggested a good starting point for an overall mapping of *A* onto *B:* central plateau onto central plateau, start onto start, finish onto finish and so on. If we tried to complete this mapping, however, we would obviously run into trouble.



We *must* have 1 in *A* mapping onto 1 in *B,* must we not? And the centers have to match up too, do they not? But where between 1 and 5 does the analogy break down? It seems that some kind of mapping of 4 onto 3, as is shown above, is satisfying to many people. Press them one step more, however, and they will shrug, grin and give up.

Similarly, although you can ask for "the Nancy Reagan of Britain," it makes less sense to ask, "Who is the Maureen Reagan of Britain?" (Remember that Maureen Reagan is Nancy Reagan's stepdaughter.) Suppose the Thatchers had a biological daughter. Could she be the counterpart to Maureen Reagan? Suppose Margaret Thatcher had a stepdaughter. Would she be the counter-

part? Or suppose that Margaret Thatcher had no daughter but Denis Thatcher had twin stepdaughters. Then would these twins taken together constitute the counterpart of Maureen Reagan? Think of example *D*, where the pair of 4's played the role of a single 4 in *A*.

One could go on and press for even more detailed correspondences between entities in Britain and in the U.S. What is the British counterpart of Watergate? Who plays the part of Richard Nixon? Of John Mitchell? Of Senator Sam Ervin? Of Senator Daniel Inouye? Of G. Gordon Liddy? Of Judge John Sirica? Of John Dean? Of Officer Ulasewicz? Of Alexander Butterfield? The less salient an object is inside a larger structure, the harder it is to characterize in an exportable way.

But what makes something salient? As a rule it is its proximity, in some sense, to a "distinguished" element of the larger structure. Consider the following structure:

1111111112222333433322221111111111

The central 4 is probably the most distinguished individual numeral. Then, depending on how you perceive the sequence, different features will leap out at you. For instance, do you see it as "letters" or as "words" (larger-scale chunks of the sequence)? When I see it at the "word" level, the central group 3334333 seems just a shade less salient than the 4, and after that, perhaps, the two flanking groups of 1's. The two groups of 3's by themselves come next. Only then do the groups of 2's get recognized. On the other hand, when I perceive the sequence at the "letter" level, what is salient is quite different. After the central 4, probably the next most salient numbers to me are the first and last 1's, since they are very easy to describe, then maybe the first and last 2's. After that the two 3's flanking the central 4—but at this point it starts to get a little harder to specify various items without resorting to such uninspired descriptions as "the fourth term."

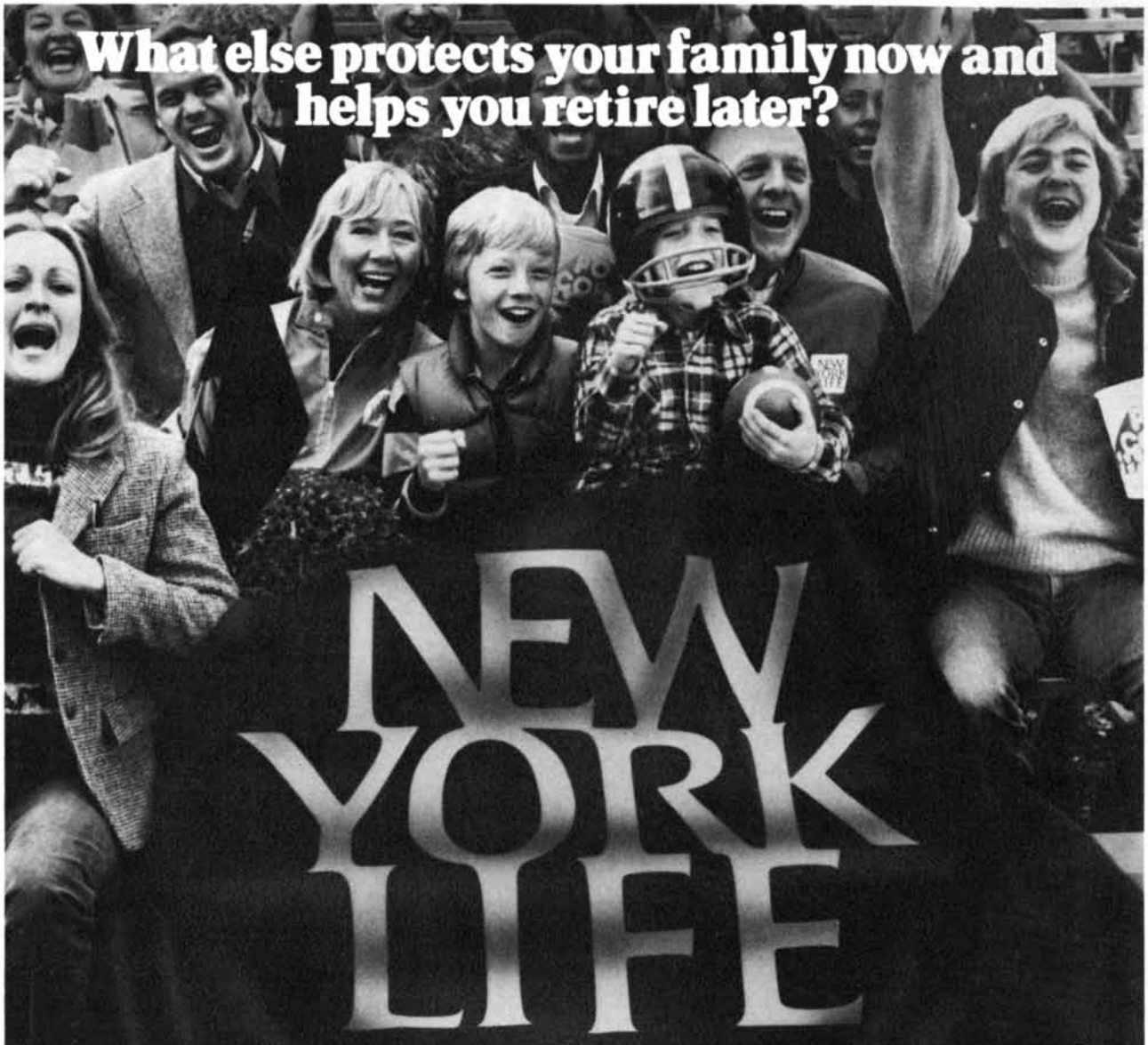
A distinguished term is something we can get at by an elegant, crisp, exportable-sounding description. A nearly distinguished term is something we can get at by first pointing to a distinguished term, then in an exportable way describing a short "jog" that leads to it. Just as in giving someone directions, some places are more salient, others are less so. Some buildings in New York City are inherently difficult to direct someone to, others are inherently easy. In the same way some roles in a complex conceptual structure are highly distinguished and easily exportable, others are very hard to describe.

As you move progressively farther away from its central roles any analogy becomes increasingly strained. "Who is the Jackie Washington of Britain?" Should we begin by getting out the London telephone book and looking under "Washington, J."? Or should we look under "London, J."? Or is it a meaningless question, meaningless even to Jackie's best friend? After all, Jackie's role is just too small and idiosyncratic within the structure of the U.S. It is not exportable. The fact that Jackie is the manager of Gearloose's hot-dog stand in Duckburg does not help much, because one then has to figure out the identities of the British Duckburg and the British Gearloose, not to mention the British equivalent of hot-dog stand.

The moral is a simple one: Do not press an analogy too far because it will always break down. Then what good are analogies? Why bother with them? What is the purpose of trying to establish a mapping between two things that *do not* map onto each other in reality? I do not know the answer, but it must be good for our survival (or our genes' survival), because we do it all the time. Analogy and reminding, whether they are accurate or not, guide all our thought patterns. Being attuned to vague resemblances is the hallmark of intelligence, for better or for worse.

The fact that we use words and ready-made phrases shows that we funnel the world down into a fairly constant set of categories. Often we end up with one word, such as "dog." No two dogs map onto each other exactly, but we still are satisfied with the abstraction "dog" that allows us to map any two dogs onto each other. Head to head, tail to tail, fur to fur, eyes to eyes and so on. Our language provides for mappings of many degrees of accuracy. Some people see no further than "dog" and accordingly use that word; others perceive the breed as easily as the "dogness" and talk about "that Airedale." No matter at what level of detail you cut off your scrutiny your perception amounts to filtering out some aspects and funneling the remainder into a single conceptual target, a mental symbol often labeled with just one word (such as "word") or stock phrase (such as "stock phrase"). Each such mental symbol implicitly stands for the elusive sameness shared by all the things it denotes.

Beyond the implicit analogies that are hidden in individual words or in stock phrases, explicit analogies occur all the time on a larger scale in our sentences. We see grids of all kinds as being similar to checkerboards. We see carefully charted actions in life as being similar to chess moves. We see the eye as a camera, the atom as a tiny solar system. Science is constantly being likened to a vast jigsaw puzzle (an analogy I have never cared for). In their eagerness to stretch and bend concepts people turn proper



Permanent whole life insurance. Did you ever wonder why so many people choose it to help plan their retirement?

As a New York Life Agent, I can give you the answer. Whole life insurance does things no investment, savings, or other insurance can do.

First, it protects your family right now. If you should die unexpectedly, it guarantees your family an income to continue to live comfortably. No savings or investment plan can do that in the early years.

Second, whole life insurance builds cash value. At retirement, you can use it to buy an annuity that will provide extra income to really enjoy life.

Now, I know some people say "buy term insurance and invest the difference." But whole life insurance is free from income taxes for your beneficiaries. And on an after-tax basis, the yield is very attractive. So if you want protection for your family now and extra retirement income later, there's only one thing to do.

Ask me. Your New York Life Agent. I'll fill you in on some other attractive plans, too—group life, health and pensions.

Ask me NEW YORK LIFE

New York Life Insurance Company, 51 Madison Ave., New York, N.Y. 10010. In Canada: 1240-444 St. Mary Avenue, Winnipeg, Manitoba R3C 3T1. Life, Group and Health Insurance, Annuities, Pension Plans.

nouns into common nouns, as in the statement "Brigitte Bardot is the French Marilyn Monroe." In such linguistic flexing both the Brigitte Bardot and the Marilyn Monroe roles suffer somewhat in the interests of vivid imagery.

Then, going one step beyond the explicit linguistic level, there are the analogies and mappings that we use constantly to guide our thoughts on a larger scale. When someone tells us of some romantic woe, we can usually map it immediately onto some experience of our own. Yet romances are incredibly detailed and idiosyncratic. The point is that we throw many details away; we skim off some abstractions and are careful not to try to carry the resemblance too far. And certainly we ignore the trivial aspects.

The reason, then, for worrying about human analogical thought is that it is there. To ignore it would be like ignoring Everest in trying to understand mountain climbing.

Let us get back to some concrete problems in our numerical domain. Here are four further examples:

I: 123345676543321

J: 177654321

K: 697394166

L: 123456789789654321

Example *I* involves what I enjoy referring to as a "governor," namely the pair 33. Here again one role in *A* has been split into two parts: 55 in *A* was not only the sole pair but also the peak, whereas in *I,* 33 is the sole pair and 7 plays the role of the peak. We are forced to choose between 2 (the wife of the governor) and 6 (the wife of the president). Actually the governor has two "wives," 2 and 4, and so we have to choose between them, unless we go with 6 as being the wife of president 7.

Example *J,* beginning as it does with 1776, is a patriotic puzzle. (What is its British counterpart?) Its interest is primarily in that it draws attention for the first time to the fact of *A*'s symmetry, which we had taken for granted. When we chose 4 as the president's wife, did we do so because it *preceded* the president or because it *followed* the president? The former would suggest 1 as the counterpart of 4, the latter would suggest 6. And the latter, although if all other things were equal, it would probably be weaker, is here strengthened by the regular descent from 7 to 1, which corresponds much better to the latter half of *A* than the abrupt upward jump in *J* (from 1 to 7 in one step!) corresponds to the former half of *A.*

Example *K* is rather obscure, but it has been led up to somewhat by exam-

ple *J*. In particular example *J* drew attention to the fact that in *A* there are two 4's, not just one. Example *K* plays on the relation of those two 4's to each other. In *A* there were two numbers between the two 4's. We can take that property as defining the role of 4 in *A*. To be sure, that is not the only relation between the two 4's, but it is perhaps the most obvious. (Think of *A* as ***4**4***.) Then what number in *K* occurs twice, with two intervening numbers? I guess we have to settle on 9.

Finally, consider example *L*. Here the central-pair notion gets extended one further degree of abstraction. We go up step by step until we hit the second 7. Jolt! It takes us a moment to get our bearings, and when we recover, we realize that the central pair consists not of single integers but of "clumps" or "chunks": it consists of two copies of the unit 789. We can restructure it for the eye this way:

L: 123456(789)(789)654321

Now the answer seems glaringly obvious: it is 6. On the other hand, maybe we were supposed to get the hint offered us generously by the central pair. And what was that hint? It is that we could perceive the *entire sequence* in triples, not just the center. In which case *L* reparses into

L: (123)(456)(789)(789)(654)(321)

Now the answer should be obvious—except that we are still left with a minor dilemma. Do we take the president's right-hand wife (654) or his left-hand wife (456)? I am biased by left-to-right chauvinism and would choose 456. Many people, however, refuse to see the sequence in triples and stick with 6.

Here is an innocent-seeming puzzle that points to still more complex issues:

M: 123457754321

The way I see it, a very defensible answer might be 6. Someone might object, "Six? It's not even there!" That is true, but the fact remains that 6 is conspicuous by its absence. The 4 in *A* precedes the 5 not only typographically but also in the abstract: 4 is the numerical predecessor of 5. And what is 5 in *A?* It could be seen either as the maximum in *A* or as the number forming the central pair of *A*. Both carry over to *M*, yielding 7. Now if you choose to see 4's role in *A* abstractly and arithmetically rather than concretely and typographically, you can carry your vision directly over to *M*. Then candidate 6 must be considered a strong competitor to 5.

This example opens up an entire world of levels of abstraction in the perception of structures. To illustrate

briefly, let me propose the following structures:

N: 123444567898765444432 1

O: 1112343211

Let me also propose an associated puzzle: What in *O* plays the role that 7 plays in *N?* Now 7 occurs twice in *N* but the problem is that it seems to play no salient role. As a numeral in *N,* 7 has no outstanding characteristic, and so at first its role seems hard to export. The numeral 7 enters into *N*'s structure in another way, however, and a salient one at that. One of *N*'s most salient features is its large number of 4's; it has seven of them. Thus 7, in its capacity as a counting number rather than as a numeral, plays a rather distinguished role in structure *N.* Is it possible to export this role to *O?*

We have to decide how to characterize (in an exportable way) what it is that 7 is counting. Specifying "the number of 4's" seems a little parochial, to say the least. Perhaps a better way to see it is as "the number of occurrences of the most frequent term." After all, 4 is salient in *N* mostly by being so common. This leads us to see 1 in *O* as playing the role of 4 in *N.* Therefore the counterpart of *N*'s 7 would be the number of 1's in *O,* namely 5—another "invisible" answer in that it does not appear as a visible numeral in *O.*

It is rather narrow-minded, however, to insist on a big distinction between being present as a visible numeral and being present in a more abstract sense, for example as a counting number. To put it another way, 5 is invisible in *O* only if you think of vision as having no cognitive component, as if all we can perceive is numerals. This would be very shortsighted. In fact, with our eyes we are constantly "seeing" abstract qualities. When we look at a television program, we see more than flickering dots: we see people. When you come down to it, we do not see the dots at all; we see only people. Of course, somewhere deep down in the processing there are components of our visual system where the dots themselves are "seen" as dots, but ironically we would hesitate to ascribe "vision" to what retinal and other cells do. Vision implies going *beyond the dots;* in other words, beyond the primitive visual level. We can "see" that a certain chess position is ominous, that a certain painting is by Picasso, that someone is in a bad mood and so on. If we accept this notion that vision is imbued with a cognitive component, then we can agree to "look beyond the numerals." We shall find that 5 is directly visible in *O!*

By the way, I carefully drew up *N* so that 7 would appear as a numeral in it (as well as counting the number of 4's).

Do you want to sell, license or fund your health-care invention?

We represent a group of European and U.S. companies who want to buy or license—and in some cases invest money in—new pharmaceuticals, diagnostics and devices. Also: OTC oral hygiene, skin care and hair care products and technologies. These companies are totally funding our search efforts. *There are no costs or fees charged to invention-owners.* For information, write to Eugene F. Whelan, Chairman or Alan R. Tripp, President, Product Resources International, Inc., 33rd Floor, 800 Third Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10022. Please send no disclosures with your initial letter, except of course for issued patents. We will also welcome an inquiry through your attorney.

This threw in a complicating factor, something one had to ignore. I could have had *N* have 12 4's, in which case 12 would have "appeared" in *N* only at the abstract level of a counting number and not as a numeral. Real life, however, is seldom so neat. For example, in thinking about the question "Who is the Nancy Reagan of Britain?" you might have felt that this was much harder than "Who is the First Lady of Britain?" because you may attach certain uniquely personal attributes to Nancy Reagan, over and above seeing her as the First Lady of the U.S. What if I had asked for "the Eleanor Roosevelt of Britain"? Or, turning the tables, "Who is the Moshe Dayan of the U.S.?" I am almost tempted to say "Douglas MacArthur," like Dayan a famous and successful general and a controversial political figure, but then MacArthur had two eyes! Dayan's eye patch is perhaps his most memorable feature.

It is interesting to go back to earlier examples, mapping them onto *N* and asking, "What here plays the role of 7?" You will perceive those old structures through new eyes (or glasses). I leave a few challenging examples for you to map onto *A* and *N:*

P: 5432154321

Q: 543211234554321

R: 12349876543

S: 1122334455667721765432 1

T: 1234123121213214321

U: 211221222291232

You might enjoy making up some examples of your own that lead a solver to further unexpected modifications of the perceived role of 4 in *A*. Can you, for instance, devise an example in which it becomes reasonable and not narrow-minded to perceive 4 as the fourth element of *A?*

One of the purposes of these puzzles has been to dispel the notion that the full, rich, intuitive sense of a role, such as that of 4 in *A* or that of First Lady, can be easily captured in words. In fact, it might be more accurate to assert the contrary: that precisely in its nonverbalizability lies its fluidity, its flexibility. This is an important idea. Consider how you would try to capture in some phrase the precise way you see what 4 is "doing" within *A*. No matter what phrase you give, someone will be able to concoct another example in which your phrase does not enable anyone to predict what you will perceive as being analogous to 4. An English phrase is like a snapshot that gives a perfect likeness at one moment but fails to show how things can slip and move. There is something much more fluid in the way a mind represents the role internally. Various features are potentially important in defining the role, but not until an example comes up and makes one feature explicit does that feature's relevance emerge.

We are making comparisons all the time. It does not seem particularly noteworthy when someone walks into your kitchen for the first time and says, "I like the way your kitchen is laid out better than the way mine is. My kitchen has windows over *there* and the stove is right *here,* so it is less convenient and the light isn't so good in the morning." Clearly the words "here" and "there" conceal implicit mappings of the two kitchens.

Right now it seems that what artificial intelligence needs is a way to go beyond "delta function" programs: programs that are virtuosos in a very narrow domain but that have no flexibility or adaptability or tolerance for errors. I call these programs AE programs: programs that have artificial expertise. They are, however, brittle. It seems that a careful study of judgmental processes even in such a simple domain as these curious number analogies would afford fascinating insights into how computer programs might be made to approach the flexibility and generality of our own minds.

To show what I mean I should like to end with an almost verbatim transcript of a conversation I had with a friend a while ago. It ran this way:

Friend: Last Friday afternoon I was over at the Pooh-Bah Club listening to a piece on the radio that I was just *sure* was Shostakovich. When it ended and they announced it, sure enough, it was! I was pleased, because that kind of thing has happened to me only a couple of times in my life!

Me: You mean, being at the Pooh-Bah Club and hearing a piece on the radio that you think is Shostakovich on a Friday afternoon?

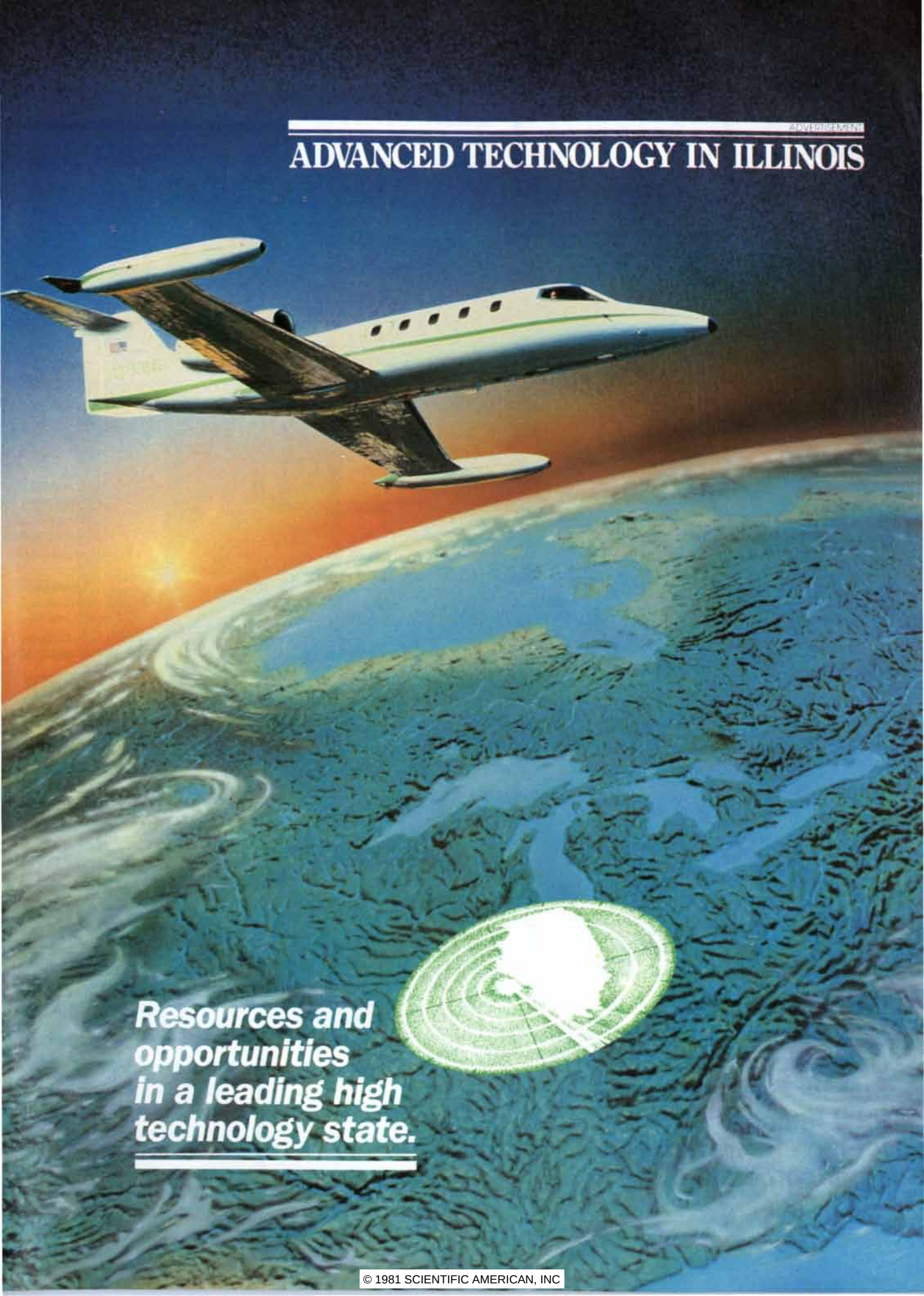
Friend: You're so *dense.* When those *Scientific American* people hear about that, they probably won't want you to write any more articles for them.

Me: Yeah, I should have known that it didn't have to be on a Friday afternoon.

Friend: You should have known that it didn't have to be Shostakovich!

Quite coincidentally a recently perfected natural-language computer program called CORTEX happened to be eavesdropping on us, and it just could not resist chiming in at this point, saying, "Oh, say, that reminds me. Something *really* similar happened to me the other day. I was at a club whose name begins with a *P,* and the water cooler broke. Ain't that something!" Now *that kind of thing* is what I personally should like to see artificial-intelligence programs doing more of.

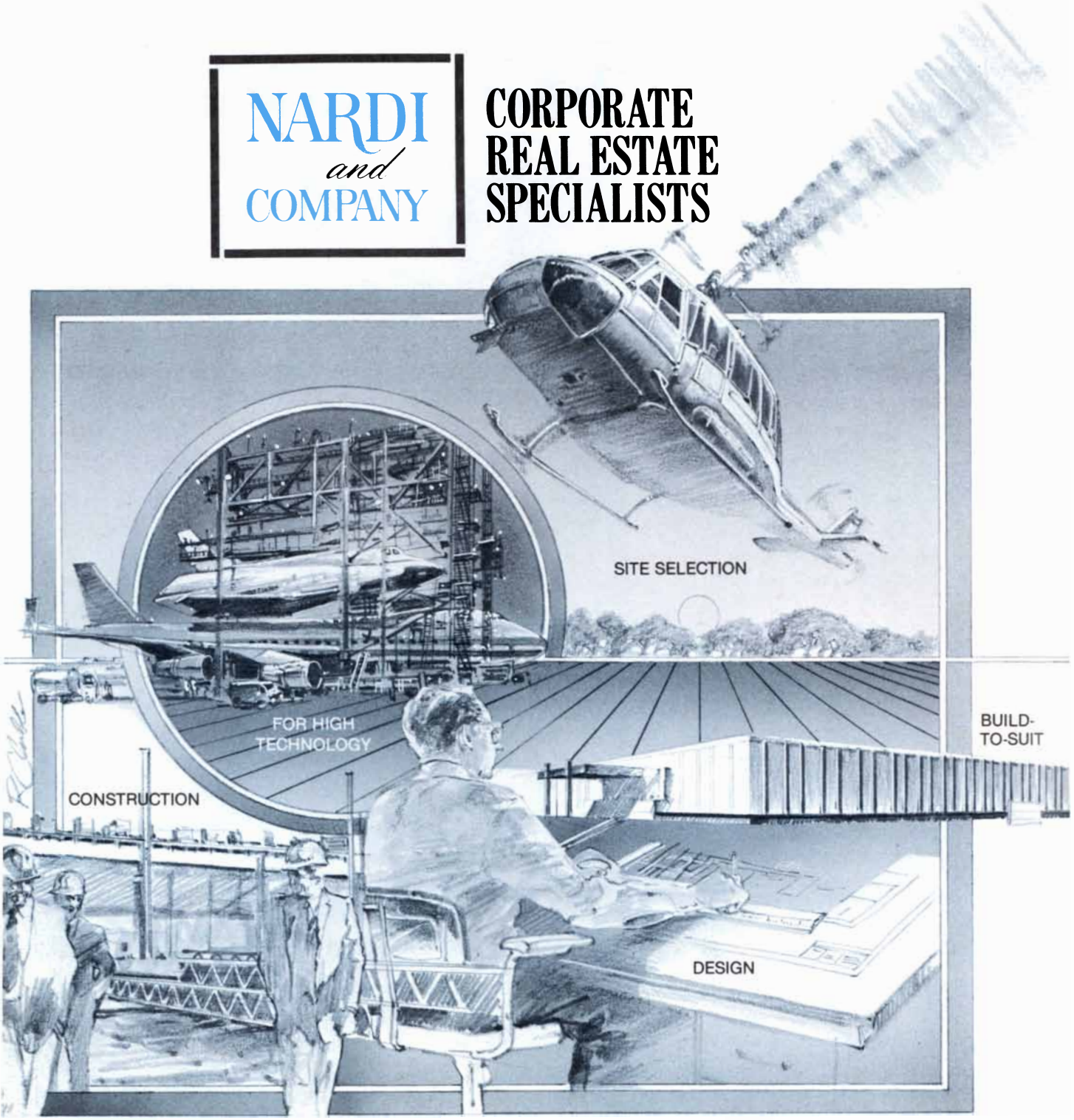
ADVANCED TECHNOLOGY IN ILLINOIS



Resources and opportunities in a leading high technology state.

NARDI *and* COMPANY

CORPORATE REAL ESTATE SPECIALISTS



We specialize in Site Selection, Design, Construction, and Build to Suit for Sale or Lease... total financial coordination, for high technology and other corporate clients.

For full information, please call
(312) 544-9010 "let's talk"

NARDI *and* COMPANY

4100 Madison Street,
Hillside (Chicago), Illinois 60162

This is one of a series of special reports on centers of high technology throughout the United States by Peter J. Brennan in association with Development Counsellors International, Ltd.

UNDER THE STADIUM of Stagg Field in the vast slate-walled cavern of the tennis court there, scientists affiliated with the world-renowned University of Chicago had set up a unit of the Metallurgical Laboratory. They were an international group with Enrico Fermi, Leo Szilard and Arthur Holley Compton among them.

Fermi and his colleagues had commandeered the tennis court because their experiment was too big to put anywhere else. They had assembled in an enormous pile a matrix of hundreds of tons of graphite, uranium and boron.

The pile was to generate a chain reaction in which fissioning uranium atoms would spew out neutrons that, slowed by the graphite to "thermal" velocities, would then split other uranium atoms. According to the theory, the energy-producing reaction would start when the neutron absorbing boron control rods were withdrawn from the pile and would stop when the rods were reinserted.

On Dec. 2, 1942, Geiger counters and other instruments confirmed that man for the first time had induced a controlled nuclear chain reaction. The nuclear age arrived, in Chicago, under a football stadium and under the auspices of one of the world's great universities.

If technology is the reduction of science to practice, then Illinois had spawned a new technology. Nuclear power, however, was only the latest of a long line of technologies that the region produced from its earliest days. Some were as seminal.

Illinois has been a center for advanced technology since manufacturing began there. International Harvester, which is building an $80-million technical center in DuPage County, traces its beginnings to the McCormick reaper of 1831. McCormick came from Virginia and first made his reaper there. But he moved the whole business to Chicago in 1847 to found what became one of America's great industrial enterprises.

Transportation and the communications needed to control it has formed most of the technology base, first the railroads, then motor vehicles and aircraft. Other technology, in the life sciences for example, has indirectly grown out of transportation, in that Chicago is a hub and center toward which both coasts continue to gravitate.

Borg-Warner, Teletype, Zenith, Motorola, Sundstrand — they all date from the early years of this Century when their founders rode the edge of communications and transportation technology to make Chicago the center. Yet while keeping their roots and markets solidly in the manufacturing industries, the Illinois firms have been quick to adapt new technologies. International Harvester, for example, bought Solar Aircraft Company, a maker of gas turbines, in 1960 and went with it into the space age.

CHICAGO HAS A REASON FOR BEING. Indians knew the site to be a natural crossroads. Europeans capitalized on that as early as 1673. Permanent settlement began with Ft. Dearborn in 1803, whose garrison the Indians wiped out in 1815. The settlement was incorporated in 1833 and officially became a city in 1837 when the population was about 4,000 and the business, then as now, was transportation and communication.

A canal linked the Great Lakes to the Mississippi in 1848. The first railroad came to town that same year. By mid-century, grain, meat and lumber from the hinterlands flowed through Chicago in prodigious quantities. Carl Sandburg's "City of the Big Shoulders" was hard at work, the epitome of America.

Chicago did not grow in a vacuum on an unpopulated plain. The city is, after all, but a part of the State of Illinois, once part of the Northwest Territory and 24th largest of the contiguous 48, admitted to the Union in 1818 as the 21st state. In the early years, people passed through where Chicago is to settle somewhere else. The earliest of those settlements was French, in 1680 near present-day Peoria.

After U.S. independence, settlers flocked to the southern part of the state from the American South, giving the region a distinctly Dixie flavor that stays. After 1825 and the completion of the Erie Canal, settlers came from the East to the North and Central part of Illinois, moving the population center and the state's outlook northward, where it has remained.

These original American settlers and the floods of immigrants that followed them developed the state's enormous agricultural potential. That served as the bedrock for Chicago's transportation complex. And that, in turn, became the rationale for the region's industrial development.

TRANSPORTATION GAVE THE REGION AN EARLY LEAD in technology. For a century, advanced technology meant transportation technology as railroads and highways linked the nation through Illinois. Many Illinois firms participated in and generated that development, which continues to support an enormous machine tool industry. One of many firms that grew out of transportation is Borg-Warner Corporation. Founded in Chicago in 1928 in a grouping of existing companies as a response to increasing concentration in the automobile industry, the company started as a diversified supplier to that sector. But as the company says of itself, it has "never had a label" and defies labelling now.

The company was industrial, supplying what the auto industry needed. Its research center in Des Plaines evolved out of an advanced project in the 1940s and 1950s that became an automatic transmission. The money that generated then funded additional advanced projects.

The company is still industrial and present in many markets — automobiles, energy, consumer products (it used to own Norge, a household

The Fermilab accelerator, a four-miles in circumference tunnel, dwarfs the Fermi National Accelerator Laboratory office and laboratory building (left) though the building towers far above the Illinois plain near Batavia. Protons accelerate in the ring to near relativistic velocities, then go to the experimental areas at the extreme left just above the office building. Facility gets $10 million worth of electric power each year over lines leading toward upper left.

appliance maker), construction, machinery and aerospace. Its 250-person research center fields every discipline.

Over the years, of course, the mix of technologies has changed. Emphasis on fluid mechanics and mechanical devices remains great, but there is today much more chemistry and chemical engineering (the company developed ABS plastics), digital technology, power electronics, applied mathematics and computer sciences. It is a place where engineers can see their ideas become hardware.

COMMUNICATIONS TECHNOLOGY BEGAN EARLY in Illinois. At the turn of the Century, several people were trying to devise a way to send printed messages to replace the dot-dash telegraph system. The Morkrum Company solved the problem and in 1907 become the first manufacturer of printed message terminals — Teletype machines. Today, Teletype Corporation is a wholly owned subsidiary of Western Electric.

The company has its main 500-person R&D facility and a major manufacturing plant at its Skokie headquarters. Teletype is unique for Illinois in having its own semiconductor integrated circuit designing and manufacturing plant, a full-scale MOS unit that would be a $35-million company on its own.

The MOS plant works under a different clean room philosophy than most. Where standard practice is to super-filter all air entering the room, Teletype worries about the work area only. Work benches have hoods similar to chemical exhaust hoods. Super-clean air enters through these hoods and constantly sweeps the work area, then exits the slightly pressurized rooms into lower pressure corridors.

The makeup of the professional staff reflects the company's continuum from past to future, the highly mechanical content of the Teletype machine and manufacturing processes linked through electronics and physics to computer sciences. The company has undertaken an innovative experiment in an attempt to develop more and better computer-oriented people. On the theory that liberal arts graduates think along different logic paths than do technical graduates, the company ran a special program at Northwestern University. Nine specially selected non-technical people attended an intensive software course to turn them into programmers.

Motorola, Inc., is an Illinois native. Its corporate headquarters, the Automotive and Industrial Electronics Group and the Communications Group—the industrial base and heart of the business—are headquartered on an enormous new and still expanding campus at Schaumburg.

The firm was born in 1928 on a $565 investment as the Galvin Manufacturing Corporation. Battery eliminators were the first product. But by 1930 the company had developed the first successful automobile radio, which became the basis of its growth and the rationale for its new name, Motorola. It was but a step from that to mobile communications of all kinds, including the first hand-held radio in 1941, thence into television and the equipment that allowed transmission of color photographs from Mars, Jupiter and Saturn.

The company was early to grasp the commercial significance of the semiconductor and set up its own solid state research laboratory in Phoenix. That prescience today makes the company one of the world's top two producers of semiconductor products.

Motorola has over 71,000 employees worldwide, some 11,000 of them in Illinois. Products include FM two-way radios and other electronic communications systems, semiconductors of all types, digital appliance controls, automobile and CB radios, data communication products and a wide range of automotive and industrial electronic equipment. All this takes a huge research and development establishment—over 3,800 professionals and $200 million in 1980.

Motorola's commitment to Illinois is total. Robert W. Galvin, son of Founder Paul Galvin, Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer, waxes eloquent. "The businesses we operate here do very well," he says, "and we are continuing to put money into Illinois. I think other companies are superficial for not looking closer at the region."

Mr. Galvin promotes both the business and personal aspects of the area. "It is a cosmopolitan, intellectually stimulating area with a tremendous host of interests," he says. "We have marvelous universities through which technologists can find a high level of intellectual stimulation. Almost any technologist can find a chance to practice here since there are multiple opportunities in any discipline," continues Mr. Galvin, who is also Chairman of the Board of the Illinois Institute of Technology.

Galvin believes that the range of career choice available in Illinois is important to people considering a move. And that pool of talent on which no one has a lock is also important to companies considering new sites.

CONSUMER ELECTRONICS IN CHICAGOLAND dates at least from the second decade of the 20th Century. As early as 1918, there was a company making radio sets for the general public. That firm is now Zenith Radio Corporation, pioneering Chicago electronics company with numerous manufacturing plants and 7,500 people in the area,

a thousand of them in the R&D and corporate administration center at Glenview. Zenith began in 1918 as a kitchen table radio factory where two young ham operators turned out instruments for the consumer market.

Zenith's emphasis has remained on consumer and is expanding into commercial electronics. It is the only remaining independent American television manufacturer. Though Zenith was responsible for many military communications developments, particularly during World War II, it today does no defense work.

The company has a long list of firsts: portable radio in 1924; AC home radios in 1926; pushbutton tuning in 1926; portable shortwave radio in 1939. It was the first to reduce semiconductors to commercial use, in hearing aids, followed by the shirtpocket portable radio in 1956 and the first transistorized AM-FM portable.

In 1979, the company acquired the Heath Company, maker of electronic kits and small computers. Heath is across the Lake in St. Joseph, Michigan.

Heath's computer business, however, has been consolidated into a new division through which Zenith expects to ride the personal, small business and home communications wave into the future. The company is also developing Teletext and View-

One of the earliest projection TV sets was made over 40 years ago. The experimental model (left) was produced in 1939. The picture tube was over 18 inches in depth, and was mounted vertically in the set. The TV picture was projected up to a mirror in the set's lid. It was then reflected to the viewer, who also saw the controls of the set and the brand name–backwards. Today's equivalent projection color TV set has a 45-inch diagonal screen size. The one-piece unit has the screen concealed inside the cabinet.

data systems for broadcast or cable distribution systems now being standardized in the United States.

A new Zenith development is a large screen TV set that overcomes the problems of earlier versions — lack of brightness, unwieldy bulk, critical adjustments and uneven picture quality. The new design has a 45-inch screen that rises out of a credenza.

The set uses a telescoping arrangement that allows all critical adjustments to be factory set, but for which Zenith engineers had to design an advanced optical system. "It was an interesting optical exercise," recalls one participant, that involved mechanical and electronic engineers, physicists and chemists. Among other things, the designers had to come up with a plastic f1 lens, new electronic guns and a new screen that is itself a matrix of microscopic lenses which eliminates the "hot spot." The company feels this system gives it an 18-month lead on the competition.

A COMPLEX OF RESEARCH CENTERS keeps Illinois in the forefront of technology. The many private, Government and not-for-profit centers have as much to do with the advanced technology that today underlies consumer market products as with high-tech Government and defense work.

The roll includes IIT Research Institute (IITRI), Argonne National Laboratory, the National Accelerator Laboratory or Fermilab, Underwriters Laboratories and a host of corporate research and technical centers.

Overwhelmed with requests from industry for help, several professors at Armour Institute of Technology founded IITRI in 1936. It was the first without an endowment. From the beginning, the Institute, then known as Armour Research Foundation, had only its earned income and the wits of its staff.

Today, the Institute books some $52 million in research contracts, handled by a staff of 1,500 people at three major locations.Half are at the main site on Chicago's South Side. Others are at the Electromagnetic Compatibility Analysis Center (ECAC), operated by IITRI for the Department of Defense at Annapolis, Md.; at the Reliability Analysis Center at Griffiss Air Force Base in Rome, N.Y.; and at an acoustics research facility in suburban Geneva and a fire research laboratory in Gary, Ind.

IITRI's spectrum of contracts closely reflects Chicago's industry: electronics, materials and manufacturing technology, chemistry and chemical engineering and transportation. The institute installed the first industrial research nuclear reactor. Specific developments include lightweight brick aggregate, flexible ceramic coatings, computer programmed tooling, automatic packaging and labelling machines, a fiber optic probe, microwave landing systems, international market assessments for solar and renewable energy sources, video disc technology and electronics in mass transit.

Argonne National Laboratory's 1.2 million electron volt electron microscope is one of the world's three largest. Equipped with a 300,000 volt ion accelerator and soon to have 2-million volts, the machine allows investigators to observe directly at high magnification energetic ions impinging on material specimens intended for fission, fusion and fossil energy systems.

THE NATIONAL LABORATORIES in Illinois continue the area's involvement with the atom. Termed GOCOs (Government Owned, Contractor Operated), the two are owned by the U.S. Department of Energy but operated by universities. One is Argonne National Laboratory and the other the Fermi National Accelerator Center, or Fermilab.

Argonne came out of the Manhattan Project. The original reactor could not stay under the football stadium and was moved to the Argonne Forest preserve south of the city. After the War, the Government established the Argonne National Laboratory nearby expressly to pursue peaceful uses of nuclear energy.

Argonne's manager is the Argonne Universities Association, a consortium of some thirty universities, most of the Midwest, but including the Universities of Texas, Arizona, Pennsylvania State and Carnegie Mellon in Pittsburgh, Pa. The operator is the University of Chicago.

Founded in nuclear energy, Argonne's reach has far exceeded that. Of its 5,000 employees, 1700 are scientists and engineers. All are employees of the University of Chicago. They delve into almost every form of energy and environmental technology.

Argonne built the Experimental Breeder Reactor (EBR-1), which was the first to yield electric power. It also developed the boiling water reactor (BWR). There are currently two reactors on site, but nuclear energy today accounts for only 40% of the work. There are large projects in fossil fuels, particularly advanced coal-fueled technology such as magnetohydrodynamics (MHD) and fluid-bed combustors. For the MHD project, in which coal in effect is converted directly to electricity, the lab has just completed the world's largest superconducting magnet for MHD.

An office of Energy and Environmental Assessment does detailed studies on present and future energy profiles for many nations as well as assessments of environmental effects of particular energy strategies. The Lab has the National Software Center for the DOE, basically the software for developing computer models of nuclear reactors. And it has the largest array of computational capacity in the Chicago area.

Some miles to the west in the much newer (1967) Fermilab, near Batavia, Ill. This $250-million GOCO occupies 6,800 acres of prairie land still dotted with the original farm buildings, cultivated land, fish-stocked ponds and even a herd of buffalo. Since most of the activity is underground or nearly so, the site's most striking feature is the ultra-modernistic laboratory and administration building soaring 16 stories above the prairie.

Heart of the Laborabory is the four-mile circumference proton synchrotron, the world's largest. Here 20 feet underground in a stainless steel vacuum tube a few inches across protons reach velocities near that of light at energies approaching

Amoco is using America's greatest resource to increase oil and natural gas production today.

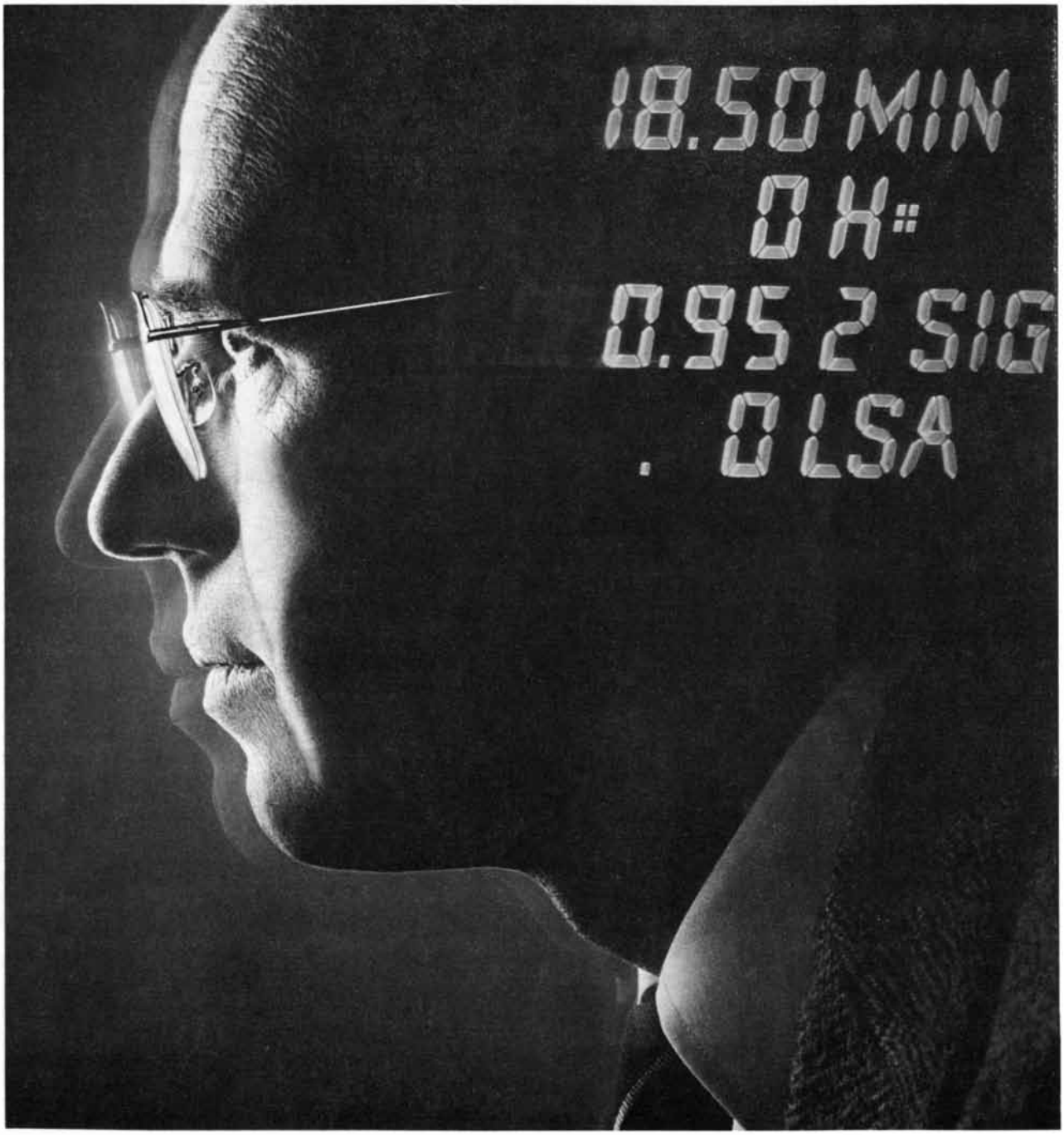
The creativity and ingenuity that made America the world's most productive innovator is at work at Amoco. Using the latest technology in almost every physical science, Amoco researchers are working on the energy America will need in the year 2000.

In our Naperville, Illinois laboratories, microbiologists are finding ways to use energy stored in simple plant life. Solid state physicists are investigating the photovoltaic effect. In Tulsa, Amoco scientists are exploring ways to extract oil from the most complex geological formations in the country. And in Colorado, engineers are investigating ways to recover the oil locked in shale.

Amoco scientists and technologists are dedicated to the search for the energy needed to keep America growing in the year 2000 and beyond.

AMOCO

You expect more from a leader.



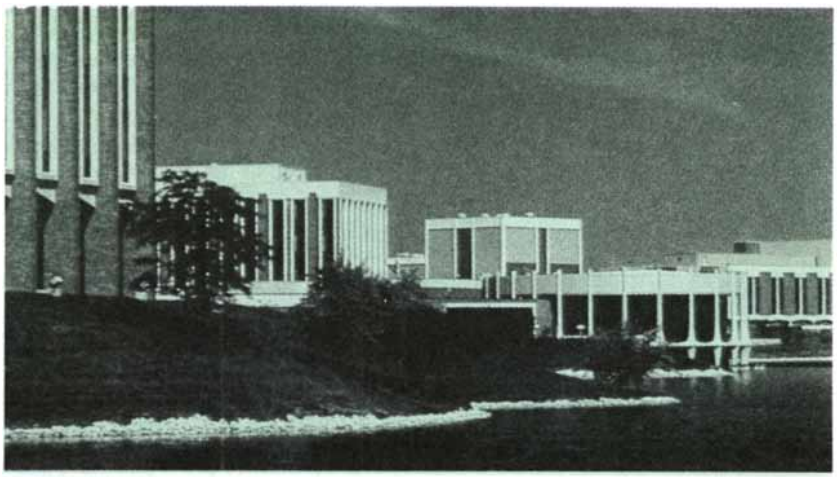
500-billion electron volts or Gigavolts (GeV). The speeding particles race out of the ring into three tangential tubes, each another mile or so long. These tubes lead to the experiments in the Meson, Proton and Neutrino areas where the particles smash into appropriate targets.

Here was discovered the upsilon particle, which raised the known number of quarks from four to five and added yet another particle to the hundred or so that seem to compose the indivisible atom.

Some 10% of the lab's annual operating cost goes to its $10-million electric bill from the region's utility, Commonwealth Edison. The power company comfortably handles from its heavily nuclear system Fermilab's enormous power demands. Indeed, though many factors, such as freedom from earthquakes, governed the location of the Lab at this site in 1965, abundant and reasonably priced power was a major one. Nonetheless, the Lab is as conscious as any householder on the need to economize.

The approach will be the new superconducting Energy Saver synchrotron, for which the site already has the world's largest helium liquefaction plant. The supercold magnets will enable the device to deliver particles of the same energy with half the power, or to accelerate particles to energies of a trillion electron volts, a terravolt (TeV).

Neither tranquil resort nor sleepy university by a blue lagoon, the Research Center of Standard Oil (Indiana) is an attractive and carefully planned campus whose esthetics foster hard thinking on a multitude of industrial problems and on the larger questions of basic science and technology. Engineers and scientists in six laboratories interact and find synergy here.



TECHNOLOGY TRANSFER FROM GOVERNMENT TO INDUSTRY is the aim of Fermilab's new Industrial Affiliates Program, of which the Center is particularly proud. The diverse group of affiliates includes Bell Laboratories, Caterpillar Tractor Co., Chicago Bridge and Iron, Deere & Co., Digital Pathways, International Harvester, Litton Industries, Westinghouse, Nalco Chemical Co. and the Standard Oil Co. (Indiana).

The object of the 1980 project is to transfer technology at its very frontier directly from the Fermi research programs to industry for the public benefit. While intellectual knowledge of the ultimate nature of neutrinos would seem to have little direct application to industry, the techniques and devices devised at considerable cost to gain that knowledge do. These include fast electronics (nuclear events happen and must be detected and recorded in quintillionths of a second, or faster), ultra high vacuum systems, data acquisition and processing, rf power, particle beam optics, control systems, particle detectors, ion beams, cancer therapy, superconductivity and cryogenic systems.

THE SAFETY OF TECHNOLOGY is the chief concern of Underwriters Laboratories, whose corporate motto might well be Murphy's Law. This Northbrook establishment was set up in 1894 as a not-for-profit organization to examine and test devices, systems and materials. Initially and for many years, UL's sponsors were the national insurance underwriters. The criteria were electrical safety. Over time, the criteria have expanded to cover almost every aspect of safety and almost every type of device while insurance company sponsorship was dropped in 1969. Manufacturers themselves want and municipalities demand the UL label.

The lab has a 148-acre site on the grounds of the factory that made the bricks to rebuild Chicago after The Fire of 1871. The old kilns remain as Fire Protection test units. There are other test sites in Florida, New York and California.

Where engineers elsewhere spend their careers designing ways to build things, UL's 425 engineers

THE MOST POWERFUL PLACE ON EARTH?

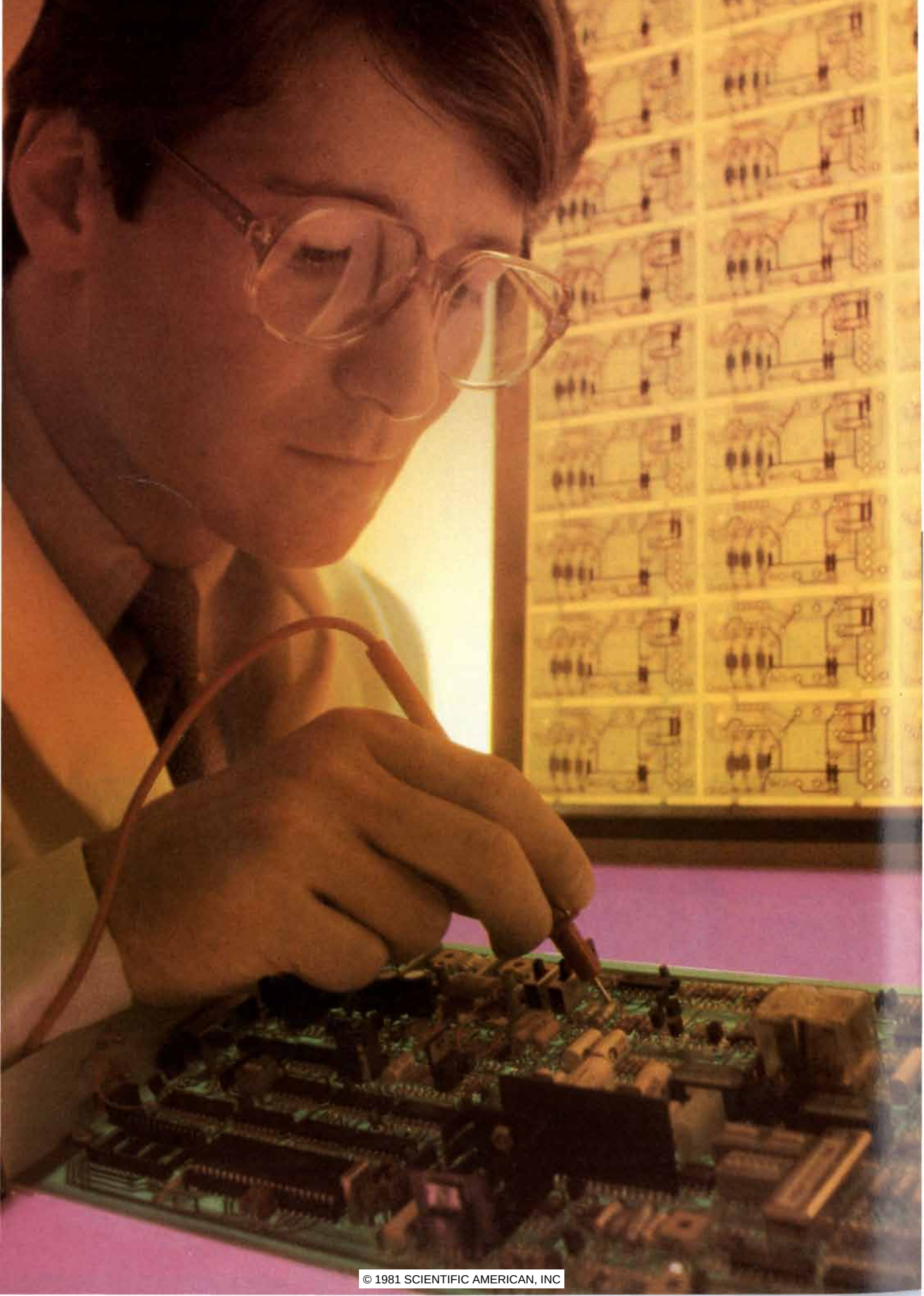
One reason why Chicago and northern Illinois attract companies from all over the world is that we have the power they need to grow: electricity. The 200-square-mile area southwest of Chicago very possibly produces more electric power than any other similarly sized area in the world.

Commonwealth Edison electricity is made from abundant fuels: coal and uranium. Fuels that let us offer electricity at a rate that allows growth. Fuels that assure a continuing supply of electricity so our customers can keep right on growing. Last year, our nuclear units provided over 40% of our power. By 1986, more than 60% of our generation is expected to be nuclear.

Electricity has helped northern Illinois become a leading export center, leading steel producer, leading transportation center, and leading producer of capital goods. All while working to protect high environmental standards.

To learn how your company can grow with us, write: J. J. Stephens, Coordinator, Economic Development, Commonwealth Edison Company, P.O. Box 767, Chicago, Illinois 60690, U.S.A.

Commonwealth Edison.



Where on earth should you look for the future?

Consider the state where Fermilab and the Argonne National Laboratory are exploring the use of neutron radiation as a weapon in the fight against cancer.

Where Gould, Inc. is manufacturing state-of-the-art factory automation systems.

Where Bell Laboratories is developing advanced structures in software for telecommunications.

Consider Illinois.

Once celebrated as "Hog Butcher and Tool Maker," Illinois has in the past two decades quietly become one of the nation's leading high technology states.

Today, we can offer high tech firms a combination of resources unsurpassed anywhere in the U.S., including:

Scientific, engineering and technical manpower: In addition to the thousands of experienced people already employed here, well-trained personnel at all levels graduate each year from the many universities in and around Illinois, and from the state's extensive junior college system.

Quality of life: With its excellent cultural and recreational resources, and housing that's affordable and readily available even for moderate income families, Illinois is an ideal place to live, for critical high tech manpower.

Energy: With extensive nuclear power development and abundant natural gas reserves, Illinois can assure you dependable, economical energy for as little as $.06/kwh.

Transportation: Located in the heart of the nation, Illinois has the most comprehensive air, rail, highway and inland waterway network in the U.S., offering superb transportation for people, raw materials and finished goods.

Access to suppliers and markets: Illinois is the center of a major manufacturing region, and one of the nation's largest consumer markets.

All the information you need. Including the inside story, from people in your business in Illinois.

We've got a wealth of further information we'd like to share with you, including our brochure on high technology in Illinois, and a questionnaire on your particular site requirements which you can use to obtain basic information on several possible sites computer-selected to meet your needs.

There's also invaluable information available to you, on a confidential one-to-one basis, from members of our High Technology Resource Group: senior executives from Illinois high tech firms and related fields such as finance, who have made themselves available on a volunteer basis to provide critical information to executives of companies considering locating in Illinois.

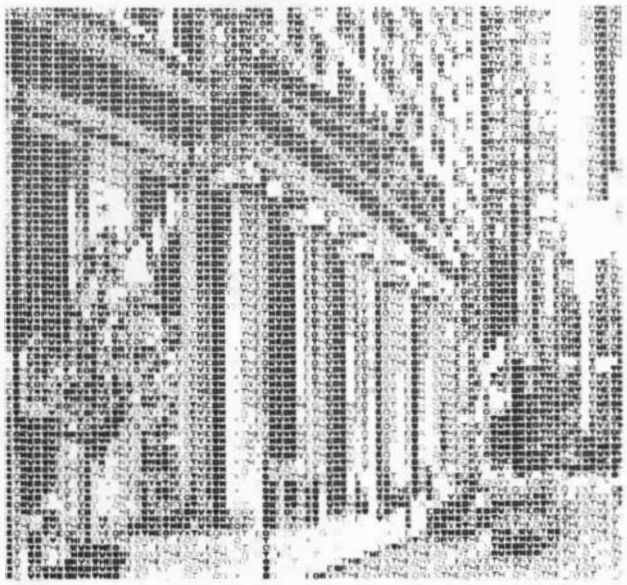
If you'd like to see our brochure and questionnaire, or if you'd like to be put in touch with the appropriate members of the High Technology Resource Group, please call Mr. Ed Marlin, collect, at (312) 793-7105. Or write him at the Illinois Department of Commerce and Community Affairs, 310 South Michigan Avenue, Suite 1000, Chicago, IL 60604.

He'll see that you get all the information you need, about one of the finest places on earth to look for the future.

The Magnificent Miles of Illinois

THEORY:

A top corporate bank must never settle for being second best.



REALITY:

In a recent survey of chief financial officers,* Continental Bank was named Chicago's best corporate bank.

Chief financial officers were asked which corporate bank had the most innovative approaches and ideas. Which was best managed. Which had programs that benefited companies of all sizes. Without hesitation, they ranked Continental the clear-cut leader. We're highly complimented. And highly motivated. Outstanding performance is what you expect from a top corporate bank.
At Continental Bank, it's reality.

**Crain's Chicago Business*, 9/10/79 Survey conducted by Leo J. Shapiro & Assoc.

CONTINENTAL BANK
Continental Illinois National Bank and
Trust Company of Chicago

Argentina · Australia · Austria · Bahamas · Bahrain · Belgium · Brazil · Canada · Chile · Colombia · France · Greece · Hong Kong · Indonesia · Italy · Japan · Kenya · Korea
Lebanon · Mexico · The Netherlands · Nigeria · The Philippines · Puerto Rico · Singapore · Spain · Switzerland · Taiwan · Thailand · United Kingdom · Venezuela · West Germany
United States · Chicago · Cleveland · Dallas · Denver · Detroit · Houston · Los Angeles · Miami · Minneapolis · New York · San Francisco · Seattle

try to take them apart. Their job is to find out what makes things tick and what can go wrong that might present a safety hazard. Since schools seldom teach that kind of engineering, UL likes to hire new graduates and train them to its way of doing things.

That way might be a microcomputer-controlled endurance test on a roomful of vacuum cleaners, not to see if or how well they clean but to determine if and when they develop unacceptable levels of leakage current. Or it could be instrumenting and then burning down a house. Or mixing up a bowl of sand with a kitchen appliance, dropping hair curlers and dryers into a bathroom sink, dissecting TV sets, checking the audibility of smoke alarms.

If there is a product, UL will test it. There are 8,800 generic types of products on which UL did 50,000 investigations last year and to which about two billion UL labels were affixed.

GOCO and NFP labs are a prominent feature of the Illinois technology landscape. Beyond their own missions, they are important scientific resources of the region in the type of people they attract and hold and in the creation of a comfortable environment for commercial scientific enterprises.

Fermilab, for example, is believed by many to have been the magnet that attracted others to Chicago's western suburbs. Nalco Chemical Company, whose headquarters are in Oakbrook, established its new Technical Center near Naperville across the highway from the head offices of Nicor, parent corporation of Northern Illinois Gas Corporation. A little east is the campus of the Amoco Research Center. Bell Labs Illinois facility and its extension and the new software development center for Western Electric are still further east.

In the communities of Rolling Meadows, Schaumburg, Northlake, Des Plaines, Northbrook, Glenview, Skokie and still further north along the lake are the headquarters, research facilities and, often, manufacturing plants of many well known and long established companies. Further afield, there is Sundstrand Corporation in Rockford.

Some firms are relative newcomers. As did McCormick a century before, Gould Inc. moved its headquarters to the region from Minnesota some ten years ago when the original battery company began the expansions that today make it a major $2-billion electronics and electrical manufacturing company. The company also established its corporate research center here, in Rolling Meadows. Tandem Computer, too, is accommodating its phenomenal growth by setting up a new plant in Illinois as well as one in Virginia, though home base remains Silicon Valley.

Argonne National Laboratory was founded on atomic energy and "hot" then generally meant radio-active. Today, the lab does much research on fossil fuels. This experimental fluid-bed combustor combines powdered coal and limestone to trap the sulfur present in many coals and yield a nearly sulfur-free flue gas thus reducing the pollution associated with coal. Here, hot is hot.

PETROLEUM TECHNOLOGY, however, is not new to the state. Wildcatters drilled some of the earliest oil and gas wells in Illinois. Much of the industry's process technology comes from a local company, UOP Inc. of Des Plaines. Not an oil company itself, UOP has been a cornucopia of petroleum technology for many years.

Standard Oil Company (Indiana) has been conducting research in the region since 1890 at its large refinery in nearby Whiting, Indiana. Headquartered in the world's fourth tallest building in Chicago (and better known as Amoco), Standard now has one of the region's largest and most diverse research and development centers in Naperville.

Nearly a university in itself and much resembling one on its landscaped 178 acres, the Research Center consists of six large laboratories. The Center further resembles a university in the number of scholarly papers its staff publishes. Projects cover energy upgrading, coal chemistry, low-energy separation, superactive carbon, materials research and even biology. Standard has an interest in a genetic engineering company, Cetus, and has a number of projects based on the emerging technology.

The complex now employs about 1,500 scientists, engineers and support people, many of them moved in from other locations and most of whom live nearby. Most of the laboratories were at Whiting in an industrial area. Space got tight. But as important, the company anticipated trouble hiring people who did not want to live and work in an industrial area. The academic setting at Naperville is more attractive to scientists and engineers.

THE PHARMACEUTICAL INDUSTRY has long had a large base in Illinois, which is headquarters for three of the world's largest drug companies. Abbott Laboratories is in North Chicago, Baxter Travenol Laboratories, Inc. in Deerfield and G.D. Searle & Co. in Skokie. These are all multinational, billion dollar companies that exist and grow on advanced research and development. As a group, the industry spends far more on R&D per employee and as a percent of sales than any other except information processing.

These companies are all long established, not only in Chicago but elsewhere. Baxter Travenol Laboratories, Inc., manufactures in 17 countries and distributes its products in more than 90. Products include innovative medical devices whose design and development require a spectrum of technical disciplines. Some are licensed from others, such as a wearable 24-hour infusor developed by Alza Corporation in Palo Alto.

G.D. Searle, which started in Omaha nearly a century ago and moved to Skokie in 1942, has the highest ratio of R&D to sales of the three and

continues to increase it. Its 1981 expenditures at $74.5 million will be 26% higher than 1980. Not all of that is in the U.S.; Searle has major R&D facilities in France and England.

Among the many technologies that Searle is now developing is recombinant DNA. A recent accomplishment was the determination of the nucleotide sequence for the gene that codes production of interferon in the human being. The finding opens the way to more effective production of interferon in amounts large enough to permit meaningful clinical testing. The problem with evaluating the true worth of this material, which may or may not be an anti-cancer, anti-viral agent, is its scarcity and cost.

It is important to these firms that such professional organizations as the American Medical Association, the American College of Surgeons and the American Dental Society and the American Hospital Society are here as is also a major distributor of health supplies and services, American Hospital Supply Corp. A large number of teaching hospitals and medical schools are also an asset for companies that must do extensive clinical testing before they may market their products.

GOVERNMENT-SPONSORED TECHNOLOGY forms part of the base for many Illinois firms as it does also for the universities and research organizations. The proportion is much lower than in other regions, however. Only one company of any size caters almost exclusively to Government contract work. That is the Defense Systems Division of Los Angeles-based Northrop Corp.

Now headquartered in Rolling Meadows, the Division began life as Hallicrafters Corporation, a maker of communications equipment founded in Chicago in 1934. World War II found the company deeply into military communications. It established a close technical association with the Air Force Systems Command at Wright Patterson Air Force Base in Dayton, Ohio. The Air Force is still the major customer. Over the years, the company built

KNOWLEDGE, THE BASE OF TECHNOLOGY...

The University of Illinois at Champaign-Urbana, a major technology resource for the state, ranks among the country's top insititutions.

Research expenditures

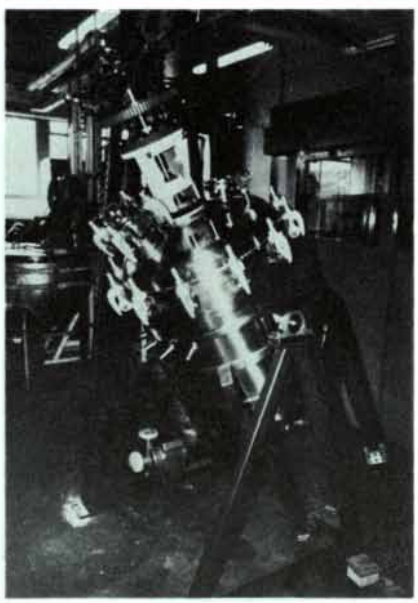
Institution	Separately budgeted	External to college
Massachusetts Inst. of Technology	$29,116,653	$56,146,117
University of Illinois at Champaign-Urbana	24,043,000	3,751,000
Stanford University	24,010,000	6,516,000
University of California at Berkeley	17,302,277	25,300,000
Purdue University	17,122,000	1,631,667
University of Michigan	16,885,000	2,411,000
Cornell University	14,819,696	—
University of Southern California	13,511,000	—
Colorado State University	13,227,555	58,000
Ohio State University	11,193,000	1,204,000

PEER RANKINGS...

A Columbia University survey asked engineering deans to name the top five engineering schools other than their own. One hundred and thirty-two deans responded.

Institution	Numbers of mentions
Massachusetts Institute of Technology	119
University of Illinois at Champaign-Urbana	84
Stanford University	84
University of California at Berkeley	67
California Institute of Technology	62
University of Michigan	58
Purdue University	42
Georgia Institute of Technology	14
University of Wisconsin	14

The University of Illinois at Champaign-Urbana is an acknowledged center for research and engineering at the forefront of technology. As the above tables indicate, the University consistently ranks among the foremost in the value of research and is also well regarded by its peers. Industry in Illinois considers Purdue in Indiana and the University of Wisconsin, both among the top ten, as part of the regional resource. Further, another study by the American Council on Education ranked five of the UI engineering departments among the top ten in the quality of their graduate faculty. The combined ranking placed the UI College of Engineering in the top four.



Interferon production has advanced from giass to metal much along the lines shown here: a. 20-liter bottles filled with culture medium grow human fibroblasts on their inside surfaces; b. stack plates in lab size offer larger surface area; c. 200-liter stainless steel scaleup of stack plate vessels produces 200 million units daily, still minute against the need.

a cadre of technical people based on the Chicago region. When Northrop acquired Hallicrafters in 1967, the question was whether to relocate the Division to where all the rest of the defense business was. Northrop concluded it could not move the company and keep the people who were and are the basis of its technology.

Today, the division has some 2,400 people working mostly on electronic countermeasures at the far edges of microwave, infrared and electromagnetic radiation technology. The company expects to add another 300 staff this year to help design and build state-of-the-art components in quantities of 500 to a thousand. It is a good place for engineers and scientists who like to work in the unknown and then see it through to quantities large enough to be interesting.

"Much of this advanced military technology is based on Massachusetts or California," says Wallace C. Solberg, Northrop Vice President and Division General Manager, "but it's easy to get to either place from here. From our perspective, your company can't be in any one locale," he comments, considering Chicago's central location with respect to its customers, its parent, its contractors and its technology sources. Most of the staff, however, is still from the Illinois area.

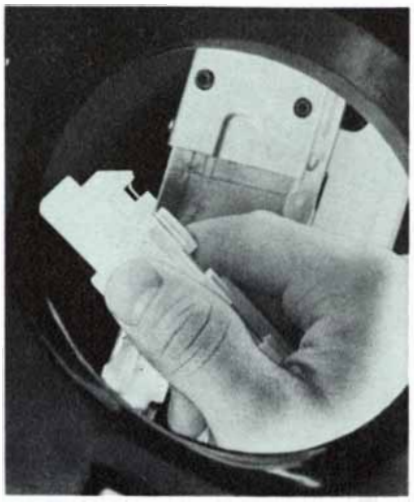
THE UNIVERSITIES OF ILLINOIS owe much to Abraham Lincoln, for whom the state was his political birthplace. Lincoln made law the Federal Land Grants Act of 1862, which established the land grant colleges, one of which became the University of Illinois.

UI built the first computer to use modern Von Neumann logic, ORDVAC, successor to the very first, ENIAC. ORDVAC became ILLIAC, and ILLIAC IV was the biggest and fastest computer in existence until the CRAY-1. UI also developed PLATO, a worldwide computer-based teaching facility. And UI is the long-time residence of two-time Nobel Prize laureate John Bardeen, co-inventor of the transistor.

The University is a most valuable technological resource for the state and its industries. It excels as a source of fundamental knowledge. A recent Summary of Engineering Research contains hundreds of abstracts on research in all the engineering faculties — aeronautical, agricultural, bioengineering, ceramic, chemical, civil, electrical, materials, mechanical, metallurgy and mining, and nuclear. The summary also covers work in computer sciences, coordinated sciences, materials research and physics.

The Electrical Engineering department is a leader in studies on antennas, radio wave propagation, ionospheric research, compound semiconductors and computer development. A current program concerns battery-powered solid-state lasers that produce extremely bright visible light from a source smaller than a pinhead.

Models graphically hint at the technical problems encountered in designing and then making components for video disc machines, whose users for the most part will be the general public. Zenith's stylus assembly (left) is of a different order from a phonograph stylus. Model at right is sector of disc and stylus magnified 10,000 times. To scale, the stylus would be 50-feet high.



In animal research and veterinary medicine, a major breakthrough in understanding how a certain type of cattle virus works has led to a vaccine for cattle disease that could in turn spin off one for malaria.

ACADEMIC INSTITUTIONS THRIVE elsewhere in the state. UI has several other campuses, including the medical college at Chicago as part of the medical center there and the Circle

Campus just outside downtown Chicago. Circle Campus (UICC) is a full university in its own right. Here too there is advanced research, including levels closer to the immediate or imminent needs of industry. Programs include robotics, bioengineering and materials design and engineering.

The Circle Campus has established an Industrial Advisory Board whose members are senior executives of local corporations and government laboratories. Among them are Amoco Research Center, Motorola, Inc., Gould, Borg-Warner and Argonne National Laboratory.

In south Chicago is the University of Chicago, a private institution. The school does not have an engineering faculty. But its medicine and science rank high and it has made its own unique mark in humanistics and economics as well as nuclear science. In the ninety years since its founding, some 23 nobel laureates have graced the University's rolls.

In lakefront suburban Evanston is private Northwestern University, chartered in 1851 and the area's oldest. Northwestern has a Technical Institute of high calibre, which incorporates the engineering departments. Among the University's contributions to modern technology is basic research into the nature of gases and plasmas in the Gas Dynamics Lab, of great significance to controlled hydrogen fusion.

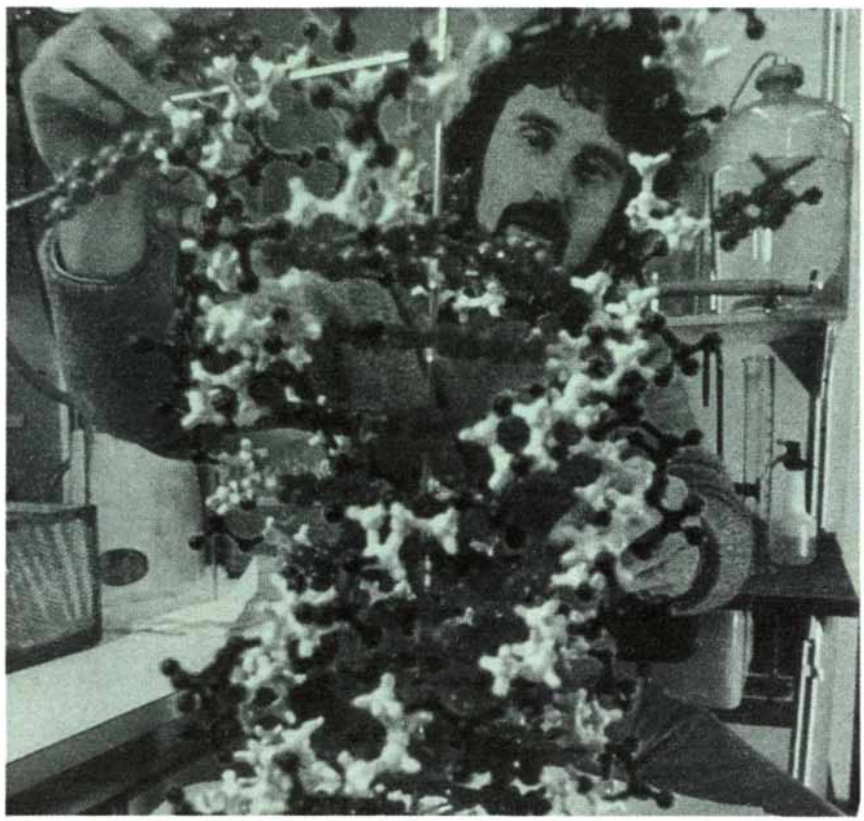
Between Northwestern and the University of Chicago sits the Illinois Institute of Technology. On the 115-acre campus is also IITRI, as well as the Institute for Gas Technology and the Technical Center for the Association of American Railroads.

These universities and institutes along with several other campuses of the state university, a large number of private four year colleges and sectarian universities, such as Loyola on the lakefront near Northwestern provide the state with a wide spectrum of educational opportunities and ample resources for industry.

A vigorous junior college program supplements the senior institutes.

At Champaign, for example, Parkland College, a public junior college in the architecturally striking style that is a Chicago trademark, offers a wide range of vocational and technical courses for the people who must turn the ideas of the thinkers into goods for the market. Opened in 1967, the school now has 8,000 students who use the latest in educational technology, such as UI's PLATO.

TECHNOLOGY IS STATEWIDE. The industrial and academic center may be Chicago and its environs, but that region has no monopoly on advanced technology. At Champaign-Urbana, for instance, some new companies have recently taken root because the University of Illinois is there. In communications, there is Compre Comm, Inc., a $3-million firm that designs and makes telephone



"It is a strange model and embodies several unusual features," said James Watson, codiscoverer of DNA, the code of life and the focus of genetic engineering in studies on recombinant DNA. Here a scientist at G.D. Searle examines a model of the "double helix" enlarged some 50,000 times. Similar models and attentive researchers are at research sites throughout Illinois.

A Message from the Governor

"Illinois, Inc.: A Growth Industry" expresses this State's climate of business/labor/government cooperation and its commitment to the future.

Illinois' future rests upon a balanced economy. With fifty of the Fortune "500" companies, making everything from telecommunications equipment to agricultural machinery. With the nation's most productive farms, which make Illinois the nation's leading agricultural exporter—the number two exporter overall.

Increasing numbers of high-technology companies are contributing to Illinois' economy. They find here

- *the hub of the nation's transportation and communications systems;*
- *abundant energy, from coal and nuclear power, and water resources;*
- *private and public universities that produce more electrical engineers and Nobel science laureates than any in the nation;*
- *a medical/health care complex of educational institutions, hospitals and manufacturers; and*
- *Route 5's "Golden Corridor" of research and development facilities, including the renowned Argonne and Fermi Laboratories and 10,000 scientific-technical-professional workers.*

In addition, high-technology companies find in Illinois a hospitable government environment which has

- *Added 200,000 new jobs in four years;*
- *Kept Illinois the only major industrial state with an AAA bond rating;*
- *Maintained a balanced budget for four consecutive years;*
- *Sponsored a historic business-labor agreement, just enacted into law, to reform unemployment insurance;*
- *Established business tax relief, on a flexible, phased-in basis;*
- *Instituted regulatory reform, consolidation and expedited environmental permitting;*
- *Provided ample financing for industrial expansion and job-training;*
- *Formed a Department of Commerce and Community Affairs which helps firms locate and expand, and provides financing and incentive packaging, job-training funds, export promotion, red-tape cutting and legislative advocacy.*

Executives and employees of high-technology firms in Illinois choose from a variety of lifestyles—urban, suburban, rural—with cultural, educational, entertainment, sports and sightseeing opportunities for every taste.

We welcome your interest in our state and look forward to serving you.

James R. Thompson
Governor, State of Illinois

communications systems. Now in a 19th Century building near the train station, most of the fast-growing company will soon move to new and larger quarters in Champaign's Industrial Research Park. There it will have as a neighbor the Army Corps of Engineers under whose Manhattan Engineering District Fermi et al built their pile.

Compre Comm was founded in 1977 to make telephone communications multiplexers. These devices sample the activity on a phone line and automatically switch multiple lines into a single carrier. Thus one outgoing or incoming phone line can simultaneously handle several different circuits at once.

Compre Comm is not a spinoff from the University, though its founder formerly taught there and finds the school an excellent source of talent and support. Another firm, SLM Instruments, Inc., is a spinoff. Its founders met at the University in the 1960s where all were students or faculty members. They built their first instruments—spectrofluorometers—themselves because they could not buy one.

Incorporated in 1973, the company has been growing at 50% to 60% a year since and has recently expanded into new buildings. Sales now exceed $2 million in instruments that contain many microcomputers, are so sensitive they can internally measure the speed of light and sell for upwards of $20,000 each. Proximity to the university is important. Applications are research oriented. New ideas can be tried. And the numerous scientific conferences provide the company with a constant stream of potential customers.

Many substantial cities are as far from Chicago as is Champaign-Urbana, each with its own educational and industrial base. Springfield is the capital and the major industry, government. Peoria, site of the oldest permanent settlement in the region, is headquarters for Caterpillar Tractor Company, makers of the mighty Bulldozers. The engineering and materials technology that goes into the design and manufacture of these behemoths is not trivial.

Almost literally plowing the same field is John Deere Inc., major manufacturer of agricultural equipment in Moline, some 130 miles southwest of Lake Michigan. In Decatur are two major technology firms based on agriculture, A. E. Staley and Archer Daniels Midland. To the Northwest, Rockford is headquarters for a substantial machine tool industry and for seventy-five year old Sundstrand Corporation.

Sundstrand is another of the Illinois firms that started in the technology of industry and continues to follow industry wherever it leads, even into space. It is an engineering company in the truest sense of the word which from its beginnings has designed and manufactured the components that keep other industries running. Today, systems and components for aerospace applications, commercial and military, are about half the company. The advanced products of one aerospace sector, Sundstrand Advanced Technology, trace an unbroken line to the company's base technology in hydraulics and power transmission. The division designs and markets electrical, mechanical and hydraulic systems and components. A second division, the acquired Sundstrand Data Control, is a logical addition with its instruments and avionic systems.

Meanwhile, back on earth, the company makes stationary and mobile power transmission equipment for basic industries and for marine propulsion. And it designs and builds pumps, compressors and heat transfer equipment for everything from paper mills to residences. Also on earth, Sundstrand designed and built sophisticated systems for the Space Shuttle.

A step or two up from standard aircraft systems, these hydraulic control devices included the actuators for the vehicle's speed brakes and body flaps. Even more sophisticated—and most critical—were the hydrazine operated auxiliary power units that enable the main booster engines to gimbal reliably and accurately.

Multinational Sundstrand, which has 24 manufacturing operations worldwide and sales or service in 88 countries, has a large technical staff to keep its venerable technologies constantly renewed. Some 940 graduate engineers conduct applied research as well as product design, development and application. Another 1,120 engineering and technical people develop the new manufacturing processes needed to produce the new products and upgrade the older ones.

AMONG FINANCIAL CENTERS in the United States, only New York ranks ahead of Chicago. Of the nation's top ten banks, six are in New York and two are in Chicago.

Such ranking would not be remarkable given the size of the Chicago metropolitan area and the volume of trade and commerce that flows through the city. Yet it is remarkable and a tribute to the vitality of the financial community because Illinois is a unit banking state. No bank, no matter how large, may have more than two branches in the same limited geographical area. Thus Continental Illinois Bank of Chicago, the nation's sixth largest, may have only two branches in the U.S., and those practically within shouting distance of the head office.

As a consequence, Illinois has 1,400 banks, ten per cent of all the banks in the country.

The many banks that are by law virtually confined to their own neighborhoods assures that each bank knows it service region and the needs of its customers. Reach, however, does not depend entirely on physical presence. Thus the large number of banks also assures a competitive climate that fosters aggressive and innovative banking as well as a wide choice.

Well-developed correspondent relationships assure customers of the complete range of banking services. But where in other states, a statewide holding company or a complex of branches might provide these services, in Illinois they are necessarily interbank relationships.

The state will soon allow banks to form multibank holding companies. The new rule would allow banks to combine resources and talents and make available from single sources in many parts of the state larger amounts of capital.

Chicago is also an important center for venture capital and investment banking firms. These often are the brood sows whence advanced technology enterprises obtain their sustenance in the early months and years.

One of the top 10 independent venture capital firms, Golder, Thoma & Co., is a Chicago firm. The company was formed by former employees of First National Bank of Chicago, the nation's tenth largest. A smaller firm, Seidman Jackson Fisher & Co., was founded by people who had headed the venture capital arm of Allstate Insurance Co., a subsidiary of Chicago-based Sears Roebuck & Co. One of the largest venture capital firms is Heizer Corp., now a publicly owned Small Business Investment Corporation (SBIC), which has long specialized in advanced technology enterprises. Heizer was a major backer of the embryonic Amdahl Corp.

Among investment banking houses are the Chicago Corporation, one of the larger, A. G. Becker, which has principal offices in New York as well as Chicago, Warburg Paribas Becker, Inc., and Bacon Whipple & Co. Most of these firms engage in the usual investment banking role of managing mergers and acquisitions and finding new capital through securities offerings for established companies. Becker was financial advisor to American Motors Corp. when the French motor firm Renault made a major investment in American. The firm was also involved in a $2 billion purchase by Sun Oil Co. of oil and gas interests from Seagram's, Inc. Bacon & Whipple managed a limited partnership for a medical research venture.

Financial institutions find Illinois a lively place to do business. As corporate headquarters for more than 40 of the nation's top 500 industrial corporations and over 20 of the top 250 non-industrials, the state is far ahead of whatever region is in third place in volume of financial activity.

CROSSROADS FOR INDIANS, EXPLORERS AND SETTLERS, little now but place names remain to mark their passing. Only a marker indicates where people think the original Ft. Dearborn may have been by the banks of the Chicago River. But crossroads the region still is, and evident to the young woman as she gazed upon the city from the observation deck of the John Hancock building a hundred stories above the street. To the east, Lake Michigan sparkled acquamarine in the summer sun, its far shore on the Michigan side as invisible as the eastern Atlantic.

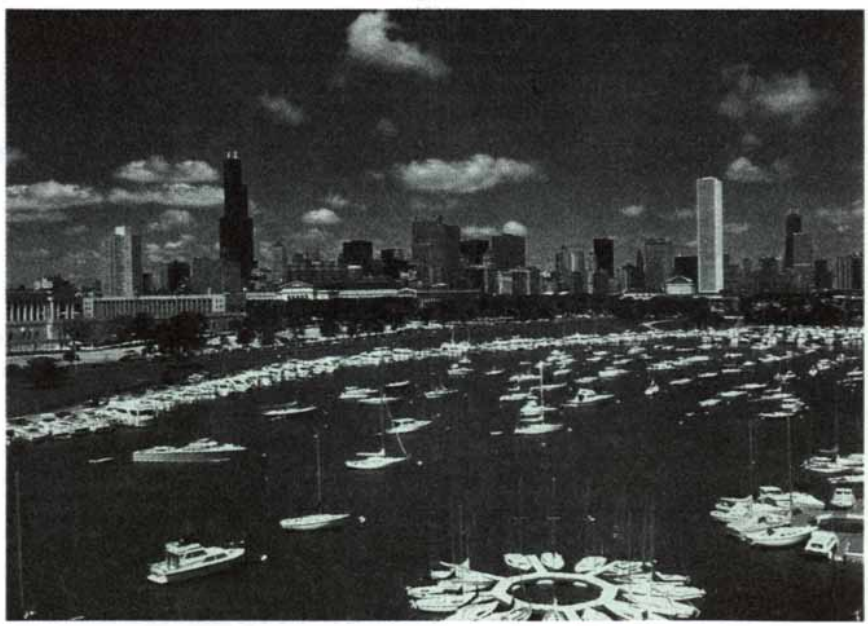
North and south along the beaches of the lakeshore park, Chicagoans basked in the sun and swam in the newly clean fresh waters of the inland sea. To the land horizons south, west and north, tall buildings gave way to smaller ones along broad streets and avenues. Countless swimming pools atop many apartment and office buildings glinted blue.

"I have found America." said the comely East Coast resident and recent arrival to North America.

Indeed she had. Illinois is the heartland and Chicago the heart of the heartland. It is a quintessential America of industry and innovation, of Carl Sandburg and Frank Lloyd Wright that embodies the stranger's idea of America as no other place does. It is a place people are rediscovering as it rediscovers itself.

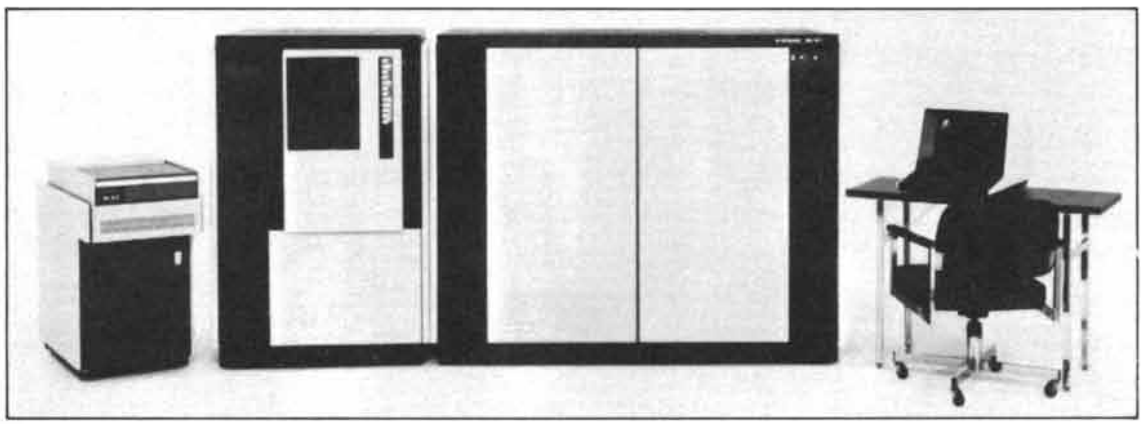
Tales are told of a Lake Michigan so much cleaner than it used to be that people catch salmon from their private jetties. That sort of thing, says one Zenith staffer, has all kinds of people trying to get back to the Midwest.

Remarking that he himself could live anywhere in the world, Motorola's Robert Galvin says: "It suits my taste to be delighted to live in Illinois."



Of the six buildings in the world that top 1,000 feet, three are in Chicago and visible here. The Sears Tower (left) is the world's tallest at 1,454 feet. The white Standard Oil (Indiana) building is 1,136 feet and the dark truncated pyramid of the John Hancock Building (right) is 1,127 feet. At their feet Chicago lolls along the lakefront its museums and institutes a backdrop to parks, yachts and workboats. Hidden by the superb architecture that is a long Chicago tradition are colossal works of Picasso and Miro that grace the city.

Gould introduces world's newest and most powerful 32-bit minicomputer.



With the new CONCEPT 32/87 from our Systems Engineering Laboratories subsidiary, Gould introduces the kind of truly awesome computer power that represents a quantum leap forward in computer technology. With its 3.6 MIPS, the CONCEPT 32/87 can provide up to three times the processing power of any 32-bit minicomputer that has been developed, and without a proportional increase in price.

In scientific, engineering and industrial applications, the CONCEPT 32/87 minicomputer can perform the work of a large, expensive mainframe at considerably lower cost.

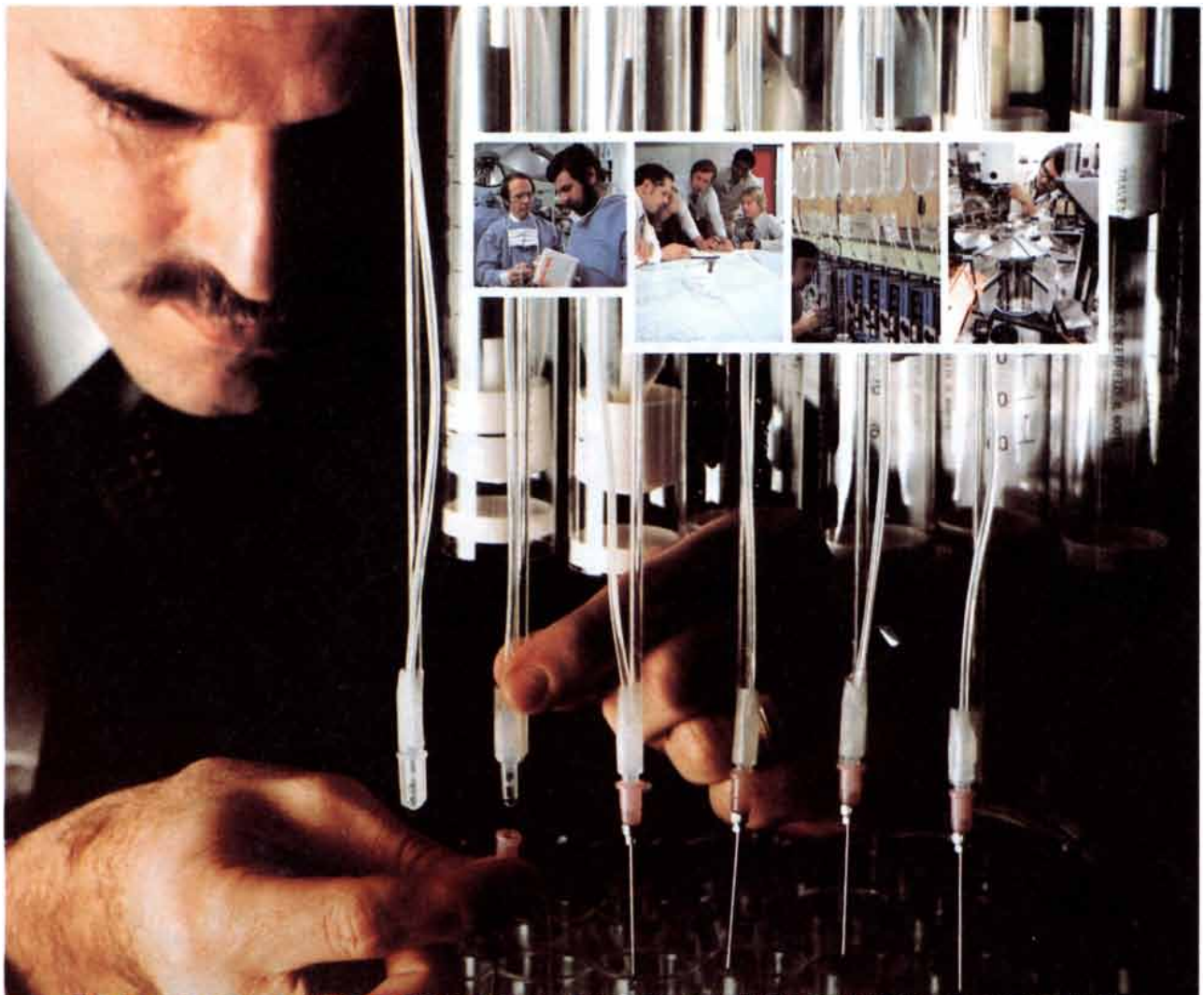
The Gould electronic "building block" strategy. At Gould, we make the electronic products needed to harness the power of technology. And we're focusing on five areas where this technology has great impact: factory automation, test and measurement equipment, medical instrumentation, undersea defense, and advanced materials and components.

Gould's 32-bit minicomputers fit directly into this strategy. They provide the "brains" for our factory automation capability by tying together our programmable controllers, servo drives, and transducers. It also adds the capability to interface with CAD/CAM, both inside Gould and for our customers.

If you'd like to know more about our building block strategy, please write Gould Inc., Investor Relations, Department D-13, 10 Gould Center, Rolling Meadows, Illinois 60008.

GOULD

An Electrical/Electronics Company



TRAVENOL LABORATORIES. PEOPLE...INNOVATING FOR LIFE.

All the products developed by Travenol Laboratories save life, prolong it, or improve its quality.

This helps explain our commitment to rigorous research, excellence in design, and the highest standards in production. Quality at every stage of product development is the objective at Travenol. Our people find it a challenging work environment, and an exciting and fulfilling one as well.

LEADERSHIP IN MEDICAL TECHNOLOGY

Our commitment has produced results. We look back at 50 years of leadership in bringing medical professionals the technologies that mean better patient care . . . pioneering products in parenteral therapy, blood therapy, renal and urological care, diagnostics, cardiopulmonary support, respiratory care, pharmaceuticals, and instrumentation.

- We brought the freedom of continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CAPD) to machine-bound victims of kidney failure.
- We created highly efficient, versatile equipment for plasmapheresis.
- Our expertise in nutritional support now allows a growing number of total parenteral nutrition patients to leave the hospital and continue their therapy at home.
- Applying radioimmunoassay (RIA) techniques to diagnostics, we now offer a wide variety of simple, accurate tests for endocrine disorders, infectious disease, drug monitoring and tumors.
- We have developed increasingly sophisticated drug delivery systems, permitting the precise, timely and controlled administration of a broad range of therapeutic agents.

THE TRAVENOL TEAM

We draw on a rich combination of talents to maintain our leadership position.

Chemists, microbiologists, pharmacologists, and physicians. Engineers in product/process design and development, plastics technology, reliability, industrial and biomedical engineering. Specialists in sterilization and quality assurance. Computer science and distribution professionals.

Travenol people are working right now on tomorrow's medical care needs...and you can be a part of that team. Write or call:

Travenol Laboratories, Inc.
One Baxter Parkway
Deerfield, IL 60015
Attention: Corporate Staffing
(312) 948-4243

TRAVENOL

Travenol Laboratories, Inc. is the principal operating subsidiary of Baxter Travenol Laboratories, Inc. • Equal Opportunity Employer.

BOOKS

Hurricanes, long bridges and the cultural interaction between knowing and making

by Philip Morrison

THE HURRICANE AND ITS IMPACT, by Robert H. Simpson and Herbert Riehl. Louisiana State University Press ($20). The trends are plain: more Americans now live near the coast and the beach, with more investment there and more property loss to hurricane damage. The loss of life has declined: the residents are now forewarned and mobile. They have also been lucky. Since 1945 there has been a steady decrease in the total number of hurricanes making landfall in the U.S.; since the 1950's the number of severe hurricanes has gone down too. If this unexplained decline were suddenly to reverse—as it may well do—a growing but inexperienced shore population would find itself at heavy risk. The risk is primarily from water, not wind; damage inland is real enough but is small by comparison.

What hurts most is the hurricane tide, the transient accumulation of water above the tidal extremes. That is seawater in motion, eroding, scouring and battering the structures of man and the beaches they rest on. It is one particular rotational flow response to the spinning winds that contributes most to the rising waters as a severe hurricane touches the shoreline, unless even worse fortune has brought the center of the storm near some resonant shoal basin or channel.

This readable and comprehensive book by two veteran hurricane experts is filled with such detail, analytic, anecdotal and practical. It includes the still uncertain physics of the hurricane from birth to death, sets the incidence and origins of hurricanes in a worldwide context and presents the impact by land and sea with engineering specificity. It faces up to the knotty problems of our coexistence with these vortexes, from land-use hints to prediction and warning, even to hurricane moderation by timely surface or airborne attack. Silver iodide smokes or perhaps carbon black, spread from the sturdy C-130 aircraft that now only monitor the storms, might soothe them.

The senior author was one person who proposed such intervention back in 1960, inspired by the observations his coauthor brought back from an intrepid flight into the eye of Donna. Some trials were made before 1969; new understanding has been gained since, and a fresh proposal is now before the government of the Philippines. Cooling the surface of the Gulf of Mexico over an area the size of a few counties is an even more heroic proposal for control: artificial upwelling and even imported icebergs have been studied for the purpose. What seems wise is a modest long-term investment in new sensing systems, for example Doppler radar and lidar, for the monitoring aircraft.

Nowadays watching satellites around the globe report every seedling hurricane. These drift westward in the prevailing tropical winds. A revolving storm needs earth spin; hurricanes are rare within five degrees either way from the Equator. Which way could they spin? The higher latitudes beyond the Tropics support many more large rotating storms than the tropical latitudes, but these do not develop into hurricanes, arbitrarily defined as maximum wind speeds exceeding 74 miles per hour. Big slow-spinning northern cyclones are exported from our continent to Europe about twice a week; we northerners all must brave those bad winter storms, but any tropical place can expect a visit from a hurricane only about once in a century. Hurricanes are much smaller, much more intense and much rarer. Less than one westward-drifting seedling tropical cyclone in 10 will ripen and contract into a hurricane.

This process is the main puzzle of hurricane physics. A great revolving low-pressure vortex, fed energy by the condensation of heavy rain as the central air rises and cools and spun by the rotating earth as the inflowing winds converge, is not yet a hurricane. A tornado is not a hurricane either. Indeed, many hurricanes spawn an entire family of tornadoes of their own, small-scale vortexes of brief lifetime. A severe hurricane is a whirl of substantial duration, days or weeks, with the pressure drop reaching 10 percent, and the core winds bordering the calm center rising to 120 miles per hour around a circuit 40 miles in diameter. A foot of rain may fall on a typical station "for a moderate hurricane making a direct hit." Tropical rainstorms of much less character often generate three times that much rain.

It appears that the hurricane is as

much a creature of the warm seas as any dolphin. The requisite heat energy is fed into the inflowing surface winds by the massive spray the winds gather from the sea surface. The calmer ocean air into which the surface winds blow has plenty of latent energy, but the higher tropical air layers into which it ascends are themselves warm and moist. The extra seawater caught up by the speeding surface winds makes a decisive difference; the increment releases energy by condensation much more efficiently.

The angular momentum whose conservation speeds up rotation as the winds flow inward is also under ocean control. If spin were conserved strictly within the air alone, the pressure differences would be quite insufficient to draw the spinning winds in close to the core. A balance would be found at greater distances and lower speeds; the hurricane would remain a wide, slow-spinning cyclone. It is sea friction that robs the winds of some of their rotational momentum; they can then draw in so close that they blow at hurricane speed. It is this central balance induced by friction with the storm-torn sea that maintains the structure of the vortex.

All of this is made clear in careful discussion, with a few equations and impressive documentation by real and model data. The basic account is extended toward reality to include storms in interacting pairs, oscillations, sudden changes in path and intensity and the complex outside influences of wind and weather far from the tropical core. Photographs from orbit, the most complete dynamical models updated by bulletins from the wind-tossed research airplanes, and strong statistical patterns do not yet guarantee any hurricane track. A map shows Belle in 1976, her landfall 200 miles west of all four of the wide-spaced tracks assigned a day earlier by four operational models.

The entire volume is an impressive account of how far we have come in understanding hurricanes. The goal, however, has not yet been reached. It is enough to say that hurricanes are found from African waters west to the Caribbean (many leap Central America to visit Pacific shores). They are plentiful in Japan and Indochina, and they do not neglect the Bay of Bengal. They are strong down under too, spinning over the lonely atolls to strike Australia and the shores of the Timor Sea, and they are spawned across the entire Indian Ocean to attack the Zanzibar coast. In fact, they are familiar on every leeward tropical shore, with one exception: no hurricane has ever been reported in the South Atlantic. The counterpart to the North Atlantic prototype, made known to Europeans first by Christopher Columbus himself, is missing. Why? The South Atlantic is too small, it is too cold, its winds are cool, the westerlies are too strong; "the reader is invited to believe in the hypothesis of his choice, but our most honest statement is that we just don't know."

LONG-SPAN BRIDGES: O. H. AMMANN CENTENNIAL CONFERENCE, edited by Edward Cohen and Blair Birdsall. (*Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences,* Volume 352). The New York Academy of Sciences ($54). THE DEVELOPMENT OF LONG-SPAN BRIDGE BUILDING, edited by Tom F. Peters. ETH Zürich, distributed in the U.S. by Interbook, Inc., Room 277, 611 Broadway, New York, N.Y. 10012 ($19.50). At any given time one expects that 250 vehicles are rolling high above the Hudson River on a roadway grandly borne by the steel catenaries of the George Washington Bridge. That splendid structure, as evocative of New York as the Golden Gate Bridge is of San Francisco, was opened just 50 years ago, in October, 1931. In that same season the Bayonne Bridge, linking Staten Island to the mainland across the Kill van Kull, also was opened to traffic; it was then the longest-span steel arch bridge in the world, a lead it held until 1976. The George Washington Bridge spanned about twice as far as its longest predecessor, a bold step outward; since 1931 a number of suspension spans have been built that are longer than the George Washington, but they grew by much

smaller increments. The new record holders, the English Humber Hull span and its twin across the Severn, are only a third longer than the Hudson crossing, even though they were built nearly 50 years later.

The chief designer of both of those great New York bridges of 1931, as of the Triborough and the Verrazano-Narrows, of the Throgs Neck and the Bronx-Whitestone, and a young design participant in the Hell Gate and the Queensboro, was Othmar H. Ammann. His hand is strong in the Golden Gate Bridge as well, and when the profession learned from the writhing collapse at Tacoma Narrows that aerodynamics was part of civil engineering, the man who led the investigation into the cause was Ammann. He had come to New York in 1904, his degree from the Swiss Federal Institute of Technology two years old, "with only an engineering diploma in my pocket and little practical experience. I came here eager to learn." Learn he did, working beside the most powerful engineers of the high railroad era until he became the first Chief Bridge Engineer of the new Port Authority of New York and New Jersey in 1924. His was the time of the more flexible and ambitious highway bridges that underlay the ascendancy in American life of suburb and city and their linking highways. Ammann entered private practice on his retirement just before World War II, and he lived to see the traffic flow across his Verrazano-Narrows Bridge, "six months ahead of schedule and 10 months before his death" in 1965.

These two books celebrate this engineer and his legacy of utility and beauty. Neither work is biographical. The New York book offers a set of papers organized by Ammann's colleagues and successors, the students and operators of his bridges and of the bridges that have grown since his day. The Swiss book, an exhibition catalogue of visual pleasure and intellectual distinction, is a tribute by the Swiss Federal Institute to a great alumnus. It takes the form of a sweeping but concise pictorial overview of the entire history of long-span bridges, from the days of the emperors of Rome, those rulers among whose titles was pontifex.

A few themes are strong in the report of the conference, which was held at the end of 1980. It was of course markedly international. No longer is the automobile the mass transport of America and only a sportsman's privilege in the Old World. The longest suspension bridges now cross British waters. Between 1982 and 1987 five new spans will open in Japan. The speedy products of Nagoya will cross the straits between Honshu and its neighboring islands, all five bridges of Hudson River proportions. (Two will carry the bullet trains.) There is a project for a three-kilometer bridge across the Strait of Messina between Sicily and the toe of the Italian boot, which would double the present longest span, just as Ammann did in 1931.

Steel wires, only five millimeters thick, are still aligned by the tens of thousands to share the record loads. The Brooklyn Bridge built by the Roeblings is New York's century-old exemplar of this marvelous technique. The cables of the Verrazano-Narrows, like those of the new British bridges, were spun by the same method as those of the Brooklyn Bridge; "I suppose because the suspension bridge is such a basic idea there has been little room for improvement." The work is faster now; four wheels shuttled swiftly to and fro across the Narrows carrying four wires each, where Roebling watched only one loop of two wires wheeling across the East River, paying out at a fourth of the modern speed. On the spans at Newport and in Wales and on the big Japanese spans, however, the small wires have been factory-laid in parallel strands of some 90 wires each, prefabricated to exact length and shipped on big reels. These 30-ton strands are then carefully set in parallel across the pier saddles and compacted into big cables of 100 or 150 such bundles—faster still.

The longest spans are still laid down one wire at a time: air-spinning, Professor Ichiro Konishi calls it in the Ammann centennial volume. The details of

Meeting Japan's Challenge

First in a Series

IS JAPAN'S CHALLENGE TO AMERICAN INDUSTRY GOING UNANSWERED?

"What are you doing about Japan?" It's a question we are asked almost daily.

It may be the single most important question American business faces. The challenge to the U.S. economic position that Japan poses is serious.

Starting now and for months to come, we're going to be answering that question—in public.

Obviously, this is a subject on which many companies can speak out, and should. We are doing so because we believe it will be good for our country, good for Japan, and good for Motorola.

It will be good for America to correct the impression many Americans have that Japanese businesses are in some way inherently superior. That impression is false.

It will be good for Japan because Japan relies on a strong confident America as a trading partner and ally.

It will be good for us because by learning how Motorola is meeting the challenge, you will have a more balanced, accurate view of our ability to serve our customers best anywhere in the world.

Now, don't get us wrong. We respect Japanese businesses. They are our customers and suppliers, as well as our competitors. And they are very good.

But we also know there are many things American companies like Motorola do extraordinarily well today. And we have an exciting commitment to do things even better in the weeks and months to come.

At Motorola, these things take the specific form of the development of new technology, employee participation in management, quality standards, accomplishments in productivity, effective cooperation with our government in foreign trade, and many other programs, products and plans of a company that is succeeding now and committed to perfection.

These will be the subjects of ads to come.

Motorola understands the challenge from Japan.

You can be sure we're not leaving it unanswered.

MOTOROLA *A World Leader In Electronics*

Quality and productivity through employee participation in management.

fastening, weatherproof wrapping and inspection are ingenious. Practical good sense still counts. Another contributor to the volume reminds his audience of how one torques bolts in order to verify bolt tension, a tedious job of loosening and resetting each of the big bolts that bind the cable. "We stenciled the unstressed length of the bolts directly on the bolt head"; tension could then be confirmed with a steel tape.

A quite new style of cable-supported bridge is growing in importance and promises to become the standard for all substantial spans but the very longest. The cable-stayed bridge relies on many thin cables, held taut by a post or a pier, instead of the few gently curving massive supports of the classical suspension bridge. With long decks of steel or reinforced concrete, these bridges resemble great harps, tents or looms. Among the best-known of this new class are the bridge at Cologne (its one off-center tower paying homage to the cathedral spire) and the Brotonne bridge in France (two symmetrical towers carrying in one plane many stays that fan out and down to their fastenings along the entire centerline of the highway).

A project for a wild California river, at Ruck-a-Chucky, shows a high, curving concrete roadway stayed by cables holding it to both sides of the tortuous canyon, a tour de force of design. The firm that designed it, headed by T. Y. Lin, projects another truly ambitious scheme. It proposes an Inter-Continental Peace Bridge, braving the inclement weather, both political and meteorological, of the Bering Strait. This sea bridge would consist of 220 double-cantilevered tubular concrete sections, each 1,200-foot section supported by a single central pier and its wide-fanned stays!

Error is not forgotten. Ammann's bridges never had much trouble with the wind-induced torsional flutter that wrecked Galloping Gertie of the Tacoma Narrows. The solution was (and is) twofold: a sufficiently stiff deck has natural oscillation frequencies so high that normal winds will not induce vortex formation rapid enough to resonate. Then a "porous" deck design, full of channels and openings, can break up the regular vortex patterns. A subtler approach, perhaps, is favored by the British designers, who streamline the deck cross section to make a "winged box."

Simpler rectangular deck sections allow a much cheaper second roadway, often a genuine advantage. Experience and Ammann's kind of devoted vigilance were in earlier times as effective as the careful wind-tunnel tests of our day.

The older history of daring bridge building is full of interest. The bulk of the Swiss exhibition catalogue is trilingual; only a few final essays are in English, French or German. It would be fruitless to summarize this richness. A few high points: The first wire-cable suspension bridge was built at Geneva in 1823 by General G. H. Dufour, a full 40 meters in span, all wires prestressed so that none hung slack. The first iron suspension bridges were built in Yunnan in about A.D. 65, if tradition is to be credited. The first-known builder of iron chain-link bridges, several of which still serve daily as scary but durable unstiffened pedestrian crossings in the Himalayas, was the monk Thang-Stong rGyal-Po, his time 1385–1464; his picture appears in the catalogue. The pages that describe the bridges of Robert Maillart are splendid. If by now one is familiar with the white bone of his Salginatobel bridge in the Alps, one is not prepared to meet the elderly builder Richard Coray, who specialized not in bridges but in their temporary centering, or wood scaffolding. His centering for Maillart's mountain masterpiece is a transient work of high art.

FROM ART TO SCIENCE: SEVENTY-TWO OBJECTS ILLUSTRATING THE NATURE OF DISCOVERY, by Cyril Stanley Smith. The MIT Press ($25). A SEARCH FOR STRUCTURE: SELECTED ESSAYS ON SCI-

ENCE, ART AND HISTORY, by Cyril Stanley Smith. The MIT Press ($30). The first of these two celebratory volumes brings the reader some ripened and colorful fruit out of a lifetime's insight and taste. In 1978 Cyril Stanley Smith and Jon Eklund chose 72 objects for exhibition both in Washington and in Cambridge, Mass. The objects range from a sample of ocher simulating an Upper Paleolithic pigment to masterpieces of the potter, the weaver, the armorer, the artist and the scientist. Most of them are strikingly presented in fine color plates, and the viewer is "expected first to become lost in simple enjoyment of their beauty." They also serve, however, to document a summary of the properties of materials as one after another new potential has engaged artists, artisans and at last analysts over the entire history of our species.

The evidence is presented in seven sections, each section with a brief evocation of what the mind can tell the eye about how those delights came to be. Each object is itself the topic of a specific paragraph; the exhibition (with one entire dimension, alas, lacking) is here on paper. A few of the displays may serve to encourage entry. An Attic vase, the famous red-and-black ware from Lekythos in about 500 B.C., stands gracefully before the viewer. The deeper story is plain. The red and the black alike are visual consequences of the iron present in the fine-grained potter's clay. That much is well known; it is the fact that both remained black during the main firing that is less familiar except to the experts. Then, toward the end of the firing, the atmosphere of the kiln became oxidizing. The painted pattern reddened, as oxygen diffused into the matrix to change the ferrous ions to ferric. The areas that remained black had a small addition of alkaline flux; their surface was slightly vitreous. There the oxidation was slowed; the adept kiln worker had to know just how long to fire. A check on this model is now opened to the observant viewer: at a sharp break along the profile of the vase, the glaze, "being very thin, is turning red."

A section on the discovery of acids brings together a carnelian bead from old Harappa on the Indus, an etched seashell from Snaketown Pueblo in Arizona, a copper-plate etching from the hand of Rembrandt van Rijn, and a marvel of a Damascus blade, its watery pattern visible only after etching. Here too is a pre-Columbian crocodile, figured in tumbaga, a gold-copper alloy carefully corroded by a preparation of weathered ferric sulfate hydrate (the mineral sample is also shown) to achieve "depletion gilding." The baser metal was removed from a thin layer to leave the outer surface pure gleaming gold.

A section on crystals shows a jade disk, a crust of decorative calcite crystals, the actual wood stacked-ball crystal models made by William Hyde Wollaston around 1820, a meteorite, a sword guard and the pattern formed by the dendritic crystals that grow as a small antimony ingot solidifies and shrinks, known to the alchemists and to Isaac Newton as the mystical Star of Antimony. Professor Smith remarks that the Linnaean classifications of the 18th century included the mineral kingdom, noting "that the variation between individuals was much greater than among animals. (How different from the modern view, which emphasizes the unalterable internal symmetry of the crystal lattice rather than the external accidents of growth!)"

For the second of these books Professor Smith selected 14 of his papers, some quite long, as being of interest to the general reader. Out of the nearly 200 papers he has published, starting with an undergraduate one on copper welding in 1926, "not one has survived from the period of professional work as an industrial metallurgist." There are, however, some four dozen of those in the complete bibliographic list. The bibliography also alone points to wartime experi-

ence, when Smith directed the brilliant group at Los Alamos that performed the plainly alchemical feat of mastering on demand the preparation and fabrication of a brand-new element, the metal plutonium.

Half a dozen book-long works are perforce omitted, a couple of them interesting monographs on the history and historiography of metallurgy, a few others admirable translations of classical texts on the history of materials. One misses the neat little study of the famous brass plate alleged to have been left north of San Francisco Bay by Francis Drake. The object yielded up to a few minutes of caliper work the damning information that everywhere its thickness held to within a few mils of standard modern specs, a performance quite impossible for brass founders in Queen Bess's day.

Three of the longer papers will suffice to test the lot. The first, from 1952, is the most original piece of scientific material in the corpus. An exercise in applied topology, its discussion of the shapes of metal grains in the context of Pablo Picasso, fat tissue, soap froth and glass is a deep pleasure and a piece of powerful mathematics. Its chief result is the demonstration that five-sided faces of contact are to be expected to dominate all cellular arrays governed by surface-tension forces. They do in the real world, the integers seeking in vain to manifest the optimal statistical rule: between 5.10 and 5.14 edges per face.

Here very probably lies the innermost rationale of the decimal system; our five fingers reflect some such pathway within an ancient cluster of embryonic cells. These relations exemplify what has become a chief theme for Smith: there is profound interaction among the several scales of any complex and growing structure. In the metal-grain example the rigorous but quite general rule of topology that binds all networks, regular or irregular, is in a kind of struggle with the boundary forces, which seek as best they can locally to reach energy minimums at every surface.

A long essay bears the modest title "Metallurgical Footnotes to the History of Art." It is a wonderful stroll led by a master through half a dozen traditions that have given rise to objects of the highest virtu, east and west. Beads, pots, bells, swords, cups, armor and jewelry are closely observed and knowingly perceived. One closing remark may open up the future to a view still deeper than the one we now have: the "balance between local and regional requirements," like the metal grains regarded in a topological mode, may please the eye because our perceptual mechanisms themselves have a similar hierarchy, either in space or in response times or in both.

This entire topic has been carried to the point of philosophical generality in Professor Smith's most recent papers in

Get The Most From Your Small Computer

Magazines

Creative Computing:
The magazine for everyone

Creative Computing has four things that set it apart from other magazines. (1) Hard-hitting, in-depth, honest evaluations of computers, peripherals and software. (2) An incredible diversity of applications and software that readers can run directly. (3) Award-winning articles by top thinkers and doers in the field. (4) A unique style combining clarity, integrity and flair.

As the premier magazine for beginners, it is our solemn responsibility to make computers comprehensible to the newcomer. However, beginners become experts remarkably quickly so we publish applications and programmming techniques for all levels of expertise. It is our goal to publish the new and important ideas of the field in such a way that a 14-year old student, a business manager or a relaxing professional can understand and use them.

Along with tutorial articles and new applications, we present the hardest-hitting evaluations in the field. New systems, peripherals and software are reviewed in depth and without bias. We feel that our first obligation is to our readers and that editorial excellence and integrity are our highest goals. $20 per year.

Small Business Computers:
The magazine for the businessperson

Small Business Compters provides timely product information, tutorials, reviews, and applications for mini, micro and pocket computers. Contributors are experts in their fields and adept at providing pragmatic information to businessmen who realize the benefit of making the mos efficient use of their computer systems. $12 per year.

Microsystems:
For the CP/M and S/100 user

Each bi-monthly issue of *Microsystems* has articles, applications with complete program listings, tutorials, and new product news especially for users of CP/M and S-100 systems. Emphasis is on Pascal, C, and other development languages. $10 per year.

Books

Basic Computer Games:
More Basic Computer Games

Why have half a million people purchased these books? Obviously, one reason is to play the great selection of 185 games and simulations, ranging from classics such as *Hurkle* and *Star Trek* to historically important programs such as *Eliza*, the therapist program. Another reason is to learn Basic. There is, perhaps, no better way to gain an understanding of the language than through program listings. You can learn while you evade a man-eating rabbit, crack a safe, tame a wild horse, become a millionaire, race your Ferrari, trek across the desert on your camel and much more. Both books are in standard Microsoft Basic. $7.95 each.

Computers for Kids:
Starting Out Early

This popular book provides children with a complete, easy-to-understand, step-by-step guide to programming in Basic. No need to know algebra; suitable for ages 8 and up. The book gets quickly into graphics for each computer, and includes many sample programs.

A section for parents and teachers offers teaching ideas for each chapter. *Computers for Kids* comes in three editions: TRS-80, Apple and Atari. $3.95 each.

Computers in Mathematics:
A Sourcebook of Ideas

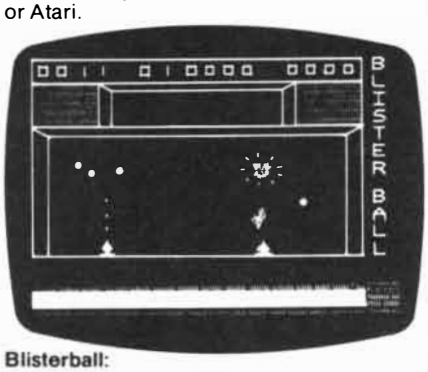
This huge 224-page sourcebook contains sections on computer literacy, problem solving techniques, art and graphics, simulations, computer assisted instruction, probability, functions, magic squares, and programming style. One section includes over 250 problems, puzzles, and programming ideas.

Pragmatic, ready-to-use classroom ideas are presented for everything from binary numbers to advanced techniques such as multiple regression analysis and differential equations. Includes program listings and sample runs. $15.95

Software

Air Traffic Controller:
You're in the hot seat

Try this game and you'll understand the recent threatened strike. This simulation gives the player real-time control over 27 craft that enter his air space. Give the right orders and there's no problem. But send two planes to the same runway and watch out! Written by an actual air traffic controller, it has variable skill levels and realistic detail that will keep you challenged for months. Land one of your own on the TRS-80, Apple or Atari.



Blisterball:
Fast-paced Apple Game

A frantic, fast-paced romp that can be played for hours, *Blisterball* is the first truly original arcade-type game for a home computer. As the bouncing balls drop from above, the player moves his laser base and tries to shoot them. It's easy at first—with just one ball. Then come two, then three. It's getting harder. Four balls come, and finally five. Surviving them, the player gets to shoot at inelastic bonus balls. If he makes it this far, the second round starts. The balls bounce lower, the walls close in. Shades of Poe and Newton! Making superb use of Apple graphics and sound, *Blisterball* can be played by one or two people. $29.95.

Computer Music Festival Record
Bach to Beatles in Binary

This 12" LP of the Philadelphia Computer Music Festival features 8 different computer music synthesizers programmed to play the music of J.S. Bach, J. Pachelbel, Rimsky Korsakov, Scott Joplin, Neil Diamond, Lennon and McCartney, and seven others. The music ranges from Baroque to Rock, Traditional to Rag, and even includes an historic 1963 computerized singing demonstration by Bell Labs. $6.00.

The Catalog
250 Other Great Products

Free 48-page catalog describes 20 books on programming, games, and educational applications; 160 software packages for six popular computers; five peripherals; and many other products for personal computer users.

creative computing

Morris Plains, NJ 07950

print. One briefer essay treats of art, invention and technology, all interwound. It argues strongly for study of the past, taking the testimony of things no less carefully than that of books. This tendency is now a winning one in the history of technology, in some part after Smith's example. Here is the wonderful insight (although it is found in many another form) that for any novelty not utterly simple (the bookish historian often lets mere names obscure this decisive detail) necessity cannot be the mother of invention but only of improvement. The first venture along an uncertain path to a new material, device or process is too halting to carry a useful burden. It is free curiosity and aesthetic enjoyment that can better afford the risk of innovation.

Any metallurgist named Smith has heard his fill of wordplay. Around Cyril Smith, however, the ambience of inquiry is so strong that it seemed a good idea to look up the old word. It proved to be worthwhile: the Middle English manuscripts called by the title of Smith that elderly man who once fled with a young wife and her babe into Egypt. Now, they did not think that Joseph of Nazareth was a forge worker; he was a good workman, handy with tools, *faber* in the Latin texts. The old meaning is apt for this Smith too, a man equally at home with his hand on the microscope or above the etching bath, pondering a subtle vellum manuscript or a complicated phase diagram, a scientist, a reflective craftsman, a scholar, a teacher and a connoisseur. "All my early interests were narrow, pretty much confined to experimental science. I had not a single University course that was not directly technical in content.... One can learn without being taught."

In 1931 the American Brass Company's young research leader on new copper alloys (with a staff of two) married a student of English social history. Alice Kimball Smith is now the perceptive historian of the scientists' movement in America around the control of nuclear energy. One can learn in many ways. "From beginning to end I have been a simple metallurgist," he wrote recently, "using metals and their structure as a kind of inverted touchstone to assay all things."

THE COMING OF THE AGE OF IRON, edited by Theodore A. Wertime and James D. Muhly. Yale University Press ($27.50). An explicit and "fitting tribute to a most uncommon man named [Cyril Stanley] Smith," this volume is itself a most uncommon book. Such sets of volunteered essays by the colleagues and friends of an influential scholar are frequent enough, but most of them remind the reader of a class of precocious youngsters seeking to earn their teacher's attention; the pitch is set by competition, not contribution. This book is exceptional, and therein lies its strength. Sixteen colleagues scattered from Salt Lake City and both Cambridges to Prague and Cape Town have created a coherent account "by each fashioning a branch of the common tree."

The branches are diverse. There are the key phase diagrams—iron-carbon and copper-tin—and the unity of the free-energy curves for oxide formation, which catch the inherent thermodynamics of raw materials and the relative ease of their refinement that underlie all early use of metals. There are detailed archaeological excavation reports, seeking to draw clear arguments from particular finds. There are analyses and micrographs, reconstructions of ancient furnaces and processes, and studies of ethnographic survivals of ancient skills. Best of all, there is a catholicity of site and evidence that suits the "mysteries and beauties of human artifice."

The pharaoh Tutankhamen was equipped for the afterworld with two ceremonial daggers. Each had a decorated hilt and a gold sheath. One had a blade of hardened gold, a wonder indeed. The other? Its blade was iron. So precious is that iron dagger held in Cairo, so rare today is such an old piece of worked iron, that it was not sent around the world with the other treasures of that tomb. We know just 14 objects of iron older than 3000 B.C. Most of them are meteoritic iron; a few are smelted from the ore. It was not the cheapness or usefulness of iron that first led the smith to it.

The metal is thus new to our species. The special nature of the abundant transition element iron was already admired by *Homo erectus,* however, before ever *Homo sapiens* came. The story of the pigments called ocher, the three chief ores of iron, begins about 300,000 years ago at a site near Nice. The pieces are worn with use; they were probably collected "along the daily hunting trails." Is the iron of our blood the crimson model for this ancient interest, as later burials seem to imply?

We cannot easily learn that, but we can begin to see how ironworking arose out of the earlier use of lead and copper. The silicate fluxes that aided the winning of these metals always held iron, abundant in the crust of the earth. In 1962 a visit to a modified traditional lead-smelting furnace in Iran disclosed a 3,000-pound "bear" of iron, a by-product of the long use of hematite as a flux with the lead ore. (Cyril Smith and Theodore A. Wertime were the visitors.) The result is now well founded archaeologically. No campfire or kiln led to iron; metal begat metal.

The thrust of this work, far too richly detailed to summarize in a review, is really the variety of paths men took to iron. In China and in Africa distinct furnace techniques led to quite distinct products. Useful iron, not iron as a wonder and a rarity, depends on the insensible alloying of iron with carbon. Charcoal, the invariable fuel of the ancient metallurgist, serves three roles. From it came heat; that was evident, deliberate. The chemical reduction needed to make iron also called for the presence of carbon, although since reduction can be mediated in the gas phase, through carbon monoxide, the process is far from obvious. Finally, the charcoal provides an essential hardening alloy for useful iron, iron hard enough to be competitive with the better bronzes of ancient times; that was not realized until acid analyses of iron samples were done by Torbern Bergman of Uppsala in the 1780's.

This complex story is best understood by the comparative method. The production of "working iron" for cutting and piercing tools seems to have begun in Anatolia around 1500 B.C. or even earlier; by 1200 B.C. or so the deliberate carburization and quenching of iron had begun the Iron Age in the lands bordering the Mediterranean Sea. For Homer the tempering of iron was a contemporaneous source of metaphor. In China and in Africa, to be sure rather later than the time discussed, the route is entirely distinct; in a related way, although not by simple transfer, both lands saw steel or cast iron, not the hammered product of the Mediterranean, come straight from the furnace. Chinese cast iron had too much carbon, African iron had a useful amount direct from the furnace. In neither place was the discovery of carburization the key to progress.

In America the Andean lands saw no ironworking at all. Even the use of tin bronze came just before the conquistadors. The expert evaluation suggests ideological reasons behind all of this. Was not gold the color of the zenithal sun? Here there is more to be said. At the heart of ironworking lie economic issues; iron was everywhere the local metal. The rise of iron among traditional bronze users in the Aegean may well have been a response to the disturbance of the trade in distantly mined tin. The Inca rule spread tin bronze as it spread Cyclopean masonry among its Andean subjects. Was that not, however, in part the need of the imperial tax collector for planned production? The sophisticated arsenical bronzes of the Andean metallurgists before the Incas depend on that volatile and irregular alloying agent. There is more to do, much more, before we can finally unravel all the ways to the age of iron, even the road not traveled.

It is ungrateful to enter any complaint against this important work, but one does miss a chapter on iron in India, the only important locus omitted. A page or so on the crucible steel of India and its spread to the west as the Damascus blade is not enough. It may be that the populous banks of the Ganges were first cleared and settled under the economic impetus of cheap and locally made tools of iron.

Introducing Gold Reserve. By Bacardi of course.

Now there's something special for rum drinkers who want something more, something luxurious.

That something is Bacardi Gold Reserve rum, the premium sipping rum from Bacardi. It's so smooth, mellow and rich, you'll only want to sip it neat or on the rocks.

After all, doesn't a rum drinker deserve a taste of luxury as much as a Scotch or Canadian drinker?

BACARDI® Gold Reserve rum. Our premier spirit.

NOW ALL THE BEST BOOKS ABOUT

Q: Is this the only universe?

A: Reasoning from quantum theory, some scientists now believe there may be other universes in addition to our own—perhaps an infinite number of them! All of the universes, including ours, would be embedded in a mind-boggling entity called "superspace."
(See *Other Worlds*)

Q: What common creature is a direct descendant of the dinosaurs?

A: There may be one perched on your windowsill right now—the *bird*. Not only are birds direct descendants of the dinosaurs, but some biologists think they're even eligible for the title "living dinosaurs." (See *Extinction*)

Q: What fish goes fishing complete with line and bait?

A: It's called an anglerfish. It looks like a rock, and thus camouflages itself on the ocean bottom. Coming out of its mouth is a thin, wiggly structure that resembles a piece of string. At the end of the "string" is another structure that looks exactly like a tiny fish—an exquisitely accurate fake complete with eye-like spots of pigment, fins and tail. When an unsuspecting fish tries to snare the decoy, the anglerfish makes a quick meal of the visitor.
(See *The Panda's Thumb*)

159 The Comet Is Coming! The Feverish Legacy of Mr. Halley. Nigel Calder
(Pub price $12.95)

119 Until the Sun Dies Robert Jastrow. A clear explanation of current scientific thought on the creation of the universe and the origins of life.
(Pub price $8.95)

171 The Tigris Expedition: In Search of Our Beginnings. Thor Heyerdahl. High adventure and danger in an archaeological search for our beginnings.
(Pub price $17.95)

190 Winning: The Psychology of Competition. Stuart H. Walker
(Pub price $11.95)

180 Genesis: The Origins of Man and the Universe. John Gribbin. A time trip from the universe's birth to its probable end, showing mankind's place within it.
(Pub price $13.95)

101 Mysteries of the Past Text by Lionel Casson, Robert Claiborne, Brian Fagan and Walter Karp. Editor: Joseph J. Thorndike, Jr.
(Pub price $34.95)

185 Green Wisdom Arthur W. Galston
(Pub price $12.95)

117 Prehistoric Avebury Aubrey Burl. Striking photographs and a fascinating text explore the mysteries and magic of "the most spectacular prehistoric monument in the British Isles."
(Pub price $19.95)

135 From Atoms to Quarks: An Introduction to the Strange World of Particle Physics. James S. Trefil
(Pub price $12.95)

106 Without Me You're Nothing: The Essential Guide to Home Computers. Frank Herbert with Max Barnard
(Pub price $14.95)

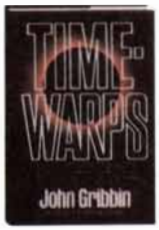
105 Gödel, Escher, Bach: An Eternal Golden Braid. Douglas R. Hofstadter. A metaphorical fugue on minds and machines in the spirit of Lewis Carroll. *(Softcover)*
(Pub price $9.95)

Photograph © 1978 Alfred Gescheidt, The Image Bank

120 The Dancing Wu Li Masters: An Overview of the New Physics. Gary Zukav. The new physics clearly explained, revealing its surprising relationship to Zen. (Pub price $12.95)

181 An Imagined World: A Story of Scientific Discovery. June Goodfield How the discoveries are really made. "The best book about science since Loren Eiseley's *The Immense Journey*"
—Freeman Dyson, author of *Disturbing the Universe*.
(Pub price $12.95)

172 Genetic Prophecy: Beyond the Double Helix. Dr. Zsolt Harsanyi and Richard Hutton
(Pub Price $13.95)



158 Timewarps. John Gribbin. A fascinating discussion of time—its history in human thought, current scientific knowledge and the possibilities of such things as time travel, parallel universes and reincarnation.
(Pub price $8.95)

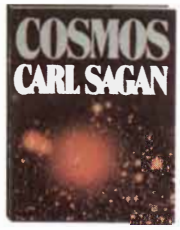
100 Einstein's Universe Nigel Calder. A fascinating and lucid explanation of the theories that changed man's understanding of time, space and motion.
(Pub price $10)

183 Basin and Range. John McPhee. (Pub price $10.95)

160 Jane Brody's Nutrition Book: A Lifetime Guide to Good Eating for Better Health and Weight Control. Jane E. Brody
(Pub price $17.95)

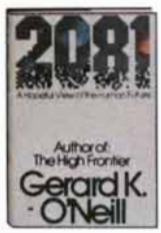
178 Dover Logic Books: *My Best Puzzles in Logic and Reasoning*, Hubert Phillips ("Caliban"); *Recreations in Logic*, D. G. Wells; *Test Your Logic: 50 Puzzles in Deductive Reasoning*, George J. Summers; *Puzzles in Math and Logic: 100 New Recreations*, Aaron J. Friedland.
(4 Vols.) *(Softcovers)*
(Pub prices total $7.50)

150 Sex in History Reay Tannahill
(Pub price $17.95)



103 Cosmos. Carl Sagan
(Pub price $19.95)

123 Lucy: The Beginnings of Humankind. Donald Johanson and Maitland Edey. (Pub price $16.95)

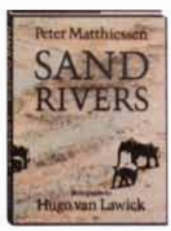


169 2081: A Hopeful View of the Human Future. Gerard K. O'Neill
(Pub price $13.95)

184 Cosmic Discovery: The Search, Scope, and Heritage of Astronomy. Martin Harwit. From black holes to infrared galaxies, the unfolding story of today's astronomy and the men who are making the discoveries.
(Pub price $25)

146 Fieldbook of Natural History (Second Edition) E. Laurence Palmer Revised by H. Seymour Fowler. (Pub price $23.50)

102 A Child Is Born (Revised Edition) Photographs by Lennart Nilsson. Text by Mirjam Furuhjelm, M.D., Axel Ingelman-Sundberg, M.D., and Claes Wirsén, M.D.
(Pub price $14.95)



130 Sand Rivers. Peter Matthiessen Photographs by Hugo van Lawick. A visit to Africa's largest and least accessible wildlife sanctuary with the author of *The Tree Where Man Was Born*.
(Pub price $19.95)

125 Maps of the Mind Charles Hampden-Turner A voyage through man's seat of consciousness, illustrated through a series of fascinating diagrams, or "maps." (Pub price $14.95)

170 The Mapmakers John Noble Wilford
(Pub price $20)

SCIENCE ARE IN ONE PLACE.

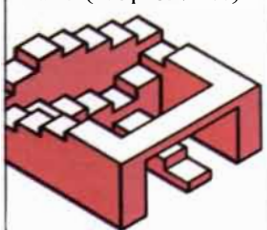
From: The Grand Tour © 1981 by Ron Miller and William K. Hartmann reprinted by arrangement with the Publisher

173 The Grand Tour: A Traveler's Guide to the Solar System. Ron Miller and William K. Hartmann (Pub price $19.95)

149 Science and the Supernatural. John Taylor A distinguished physicist investigates psychic healing, telepathy, psychokinesis and other paranormal phenomena. (Pub price $10.95)

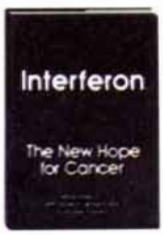
182 Are We Alone? The Possibility of Extraterrestrial Civilizations. Robert T. Rood and James S. Trefil (Pub price $14.95)

167 Other Worlds: A Portrait of Nature in Rebellion; Space, Superspace and the Quantum Universe. Paul Davies.(Pub price $11.95)



111 Mathematical Circus Martin Gardner (Pub price $9.95)

108 On Human Nature Edward O. Wilson. How human evolution is interwoven with human behavior. By the author of *Sociobiology*. (Pub price $12.50)



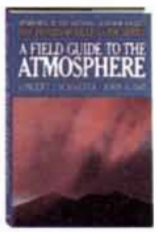
186 Interferon: The New Hope for Cancer. Michael Edelhart with Dr. Jean Lindenmann, Co-discoverer of Interferon. What it is, how it works, what it may do. (Pub price $11.95)

188 Celebrations of Life René Dubos. A Pulitzer Prize-winning biologist reflects on what makes us human, refuting the notion that we are genetically predetermined. (Pub price $12.95)

174 J. Robert Oppenheimer: Shatterer of Worlds. Peter Goodchild. (Pub price $15)

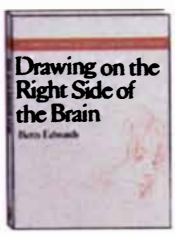
187 Extinction: The Causes and Consequences of the Disappearance of Species. Paul and Anne Ehrlich. (Pub price $14.95)

175 The Soul of a New Machine. Tracy Kidder (Pub price $12.95)



161 A Field Guide to the Atmosphere. Vincent J. Schaefer and John A. Day (Pub price $13.95)

176 The Hite Report on Male Sexuality. Shere Hite (Pub price $19.95)



179 Drawing on the Right Side of the Brain: A Course in Enhancing Creativity and Artistic Confidence. *(Softcover)*. Betty Edwards (Pub price $8.95)

107 The Panda's Thumb: More Reflections in Natural History. Stephen Jay Gould (Pub price $12.95)

CHOOSE ANY 3 BOOKS FOR $1 EACH.

You simply agree to buy 3 books within two years.

Black holes twisting space and time like a pretzel—and gobbling down whole planets.

Here on Earth, the stunning adaptability of life: a desert animal that swims through sand the way an eel swims through water. And the ingeniousness of man: a new concept that may generate limitless electricity by duplicating the power of the sun.

And, in each of your cells—a substance called DNA, compressing into an invisibly tiny volume all the information needed to create *you*.

As someone living in an age of unparalleled discovery, you've undoubtedly been curious about things like these.

And you've probably noticed the explosion lately in books about science for people who are not scientists.

But how do you know which are best?

Let a whole new kind of book club find them for you. Book-of-the-Month Club/SCIENCE.

If you've ever wanted the chance to really explore the wonders of modern science, this is the way. Because now you can be sure you're getting works that are understandable, lively and authoritative.

Book-of-the-Month Club/SCIENCE will lead you to books that indulge your sense of wonder to the fullest, sparkle with discovery, tantalize with new questions.

Books that can change your way of thinking. And the way you and your children live.

We invite you to start by taking any 3 for $1 each.

BOOK-OF-THE-MONTH CLUB

SCIENCE

WHERE THE WONDER IS

Belinda Wright

153 Wildlife of the Deserts. Frederic H. Wagner (Pub price $18.95)

168 The Self-Sufficient House Frank Coffee. *(Softcover)* (Pub price $9.95)

164 In the Light of the Sun From Sunspots to Solar Energy. Mark Washburn (Pub price $14.95)

Book-of-the-Month Club/SCIENCE, Camp Hill, PA 17012

SLIDE SHOW.

INTRODUCING THE NEW BREED OF

Welcome to an entirely new view in slide projection. Our exclusive Slide-Scan™ built-in screen puts viewing slides right at your fingertips. Just remove the standard lens, pull out the Slide-Scan screen and you're ready to preview, review, or just plain view your slides...anywhere...without a bulky screen.

But that's only the start of what's new and nifty. This Carousel projector has a conveniently located illuminated control panel, so there's no more searching for the right button in the dark. And, on the top-of-the-line models, we've added a variable-speed auto-timer that goes from 3 to

SIDE SHOW.

KODAK CAROUSEL SLIDE PROJECTORS THAT GIVES YOU BOTH.

22 seconds. So you can sit back and watch the show at your own speed. And, we've increased the reliability of the automatic focus. We've really gone all out to make showing slides easier and more enjoyable.

And, of course, better. These new Carousel projectors give you a more uniform corner-to-center illumination. An increased lamp life (from 35 to 70 hours). A manual select control, which lets you remove the tray when the power is off. And increased elevation from 6 to 16 degrees, so you don't have to use props. We've even added a reading light for more convenience.

Add all this to regular features like gentle gravity feed, an Ektanar C curved-field projection lens, a dark shutter latch that automatically keeps the screen dark when no slide is being shown, remote control, a choice of normal or zoom lens, and more. Plus accessories such as dissolve control and a sound slide synchronizer, all tell you why you'll choose a new Kodak Carousel projector. Besides being a better projector, this one's really something to look at.

Kodak

Kodak Carousel® projectors.

Established 1845 SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN September 1981 Volume 245 Number 3

Industrial Microbiology

Introducing an issue on the making of food, drink, pharmaceuticals and industrial chemicals by microorganisms, with special reference to newer methods of programming the microorganisms for their task

by Arnold L. Demain and Nadine A. Solomon

Industrial microbiology is in a ferment, a condition nontechnically defined as one of agitation, turbulence or general unrest. Recent advances in molecular biology have generated a wave of excitement about the prospective application of novel microbiological techniques in a wide range of industrial roles. What is often lacking in public discussions of recombinant DNA, genetic engineering and the like, however, is a sense of the context in which the new developments are to take place. Industrial microbiology is not just a new field of entrepreneurial activity; it is a well-established factor in the world economy, responsible for a current annual production valued at tens of billions of dollars in the U.S. alone. Moreover, it is the outgrowth of a pervasive human activity with a rich history that goes back thousands of years.

This issue of *Scientific American* is devoted to industrial microbiology, with special reference to the changes in it that are likely to result from the introduction of the new tools of genetic manipulation. The articles that follow will address major subdivisions of the topic, in each case placing the anticipated benefits of the emerging biotechnology in the appropriate historical, economic and social perspective. First, however, we shall present a brief overview of the entire field.

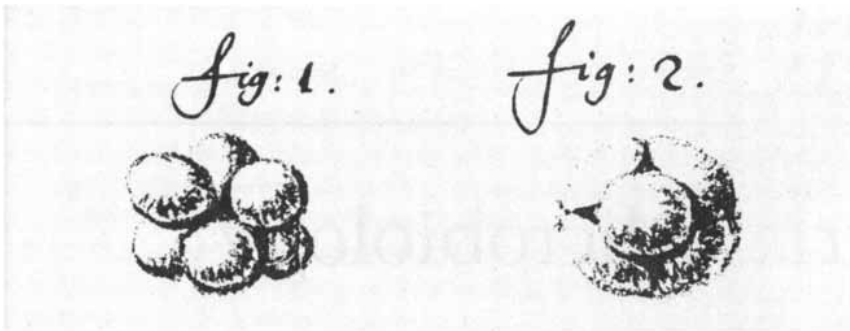
The art of fermentation, technically defined in its broadest sense as the chemical transformation of organic compounds with the aid of enzymes (particularly those made by microorganisms), is very old. The ability of yeast to make alcohol in the form of beer was known to the Sumerians and the Babylonians before 6000 B.C. Much later, by about 4000 B.C., the Egyptians discovered that the carbon dioxide generated by the action of brewer's yeast could leaven bread. Reference to wine, another ancient product of fermentation, can be found in the Book of Genesis, where it is noted that Noah consumed a bit too much of the beverage.

By the 14th century A.D. the distillation of alcoholic spirits from fermented grain, a practice thought to have originated in China or the Middle East, was common in many parts of the world. Other fermentation processes with their roots deep in antiquity include the cultivation of acetic acid bacteria to make vinegar, lactic acid bacteria to preserve milk (for example in the form of yogurt) and various bacteria and molds to produce cheese.

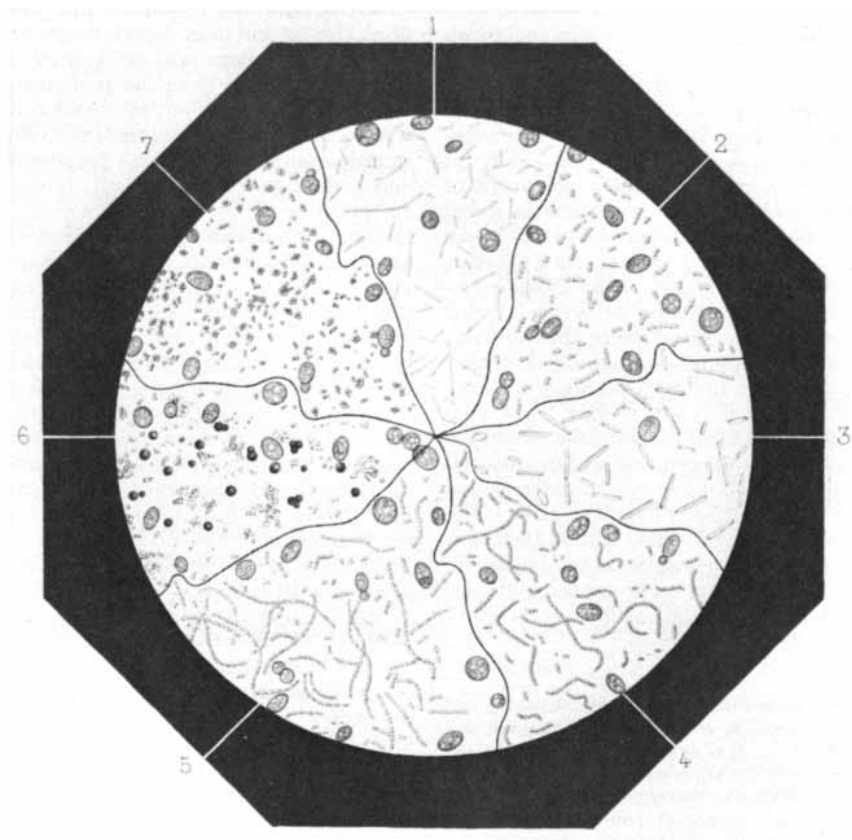
Microorganisms provided food and drink for more than 8,000 years before their existence was recognized in the 17th century. Then the pioneering Dutch microscopist Anton van Leeuwenhoek, turning his simple lens to the examination of water, decaying matter and scrapings from his teeth, reported the presence of tiny "animalcules," moving organisms less than a thousandth the size of a grain of sand. Many people thought such organisms arose spontaneously from nonliving matter. Although the theory of spontaneous generation, which had been postulated by Aristotle among others, was by then discredited in its application to higher forms of life, it did seem to explain how a clear broth became clouded by large numbers of such organisms as the broth aged. It was not until the second half of the 19th century that Louis Pasteur of France and John Tyndall of Britain demolished the concept of spontaneous generation and proved that existing microbial life comes from preexisting life.

Even before Pasteur began his work on the origin of microbial life three independent investigators, Charles Cagniard de la Tour of France and Theodor Schwann and Friedrich Traugott Kützing of Germany, had proposed that the products of fermentation, chiefly ethanol (ethyl alcohol) and carbon dioxide, were created by a microscopic form of life. This concept was bitterly opposed by the leading chemists of the period (men such as Jöns Jakob Berzelius, Justus von Liebig and Friedrich Wöhler), who believed fermentation was strictly a chemical reaction; they maintained that the yeast in the fermenta-

ANTIQUITY OF FERMENTATION is represented graphically by the scenes of baking and brewing depicted in the painted relief on the opposite page. The relief appears on the wall of a Fifth Dynasty Egyptian tomb dating from about 2400 B.C. It is now in the collection of the National Museum of Antiquities in Leiden. The figures in the top panel are engaged (*right to left*) in pounding, winnowing and grinding the grain (presumably barley or emmer, a primitive variety of wheat). Those in the middle panel are soaking the coarse-ground flour in water, allowing some of the whole grains to malt, or sprout (*left*), kneading the leavened dough and fashioning it into loaves of various shapes (*center*) and baking the "beer bread" in an oven (*right*). The baker is portrayed in a characteristic attitude, raking the fire with a long-handled implement held in one hand and shielding his eyes from the heat with the other. In the bottom panel the mash is shown being strained into a fermenting vat, which rests on a stand resembling a coiled rope. After fermenting for a few days the finished beer is poured from the vat into pottery jars, which are promptly capped, sealed with clay and placed in storage. The Egyptian brewers relied initially on yeasts in the air or on the skin or husk of fruits and cereals; later a pure or almost pure yeast became available. The ancient breweries produced several types of beer; some brands, said to be "strong," may have had an alcohol content as high as 12 percent.



EARLIEST-KNOWN DRAWING of the apparent structure of a clump of yeast cells was enclosed in a letter sent by Anton van Leeuwenhoek in 1680 to Thomas Gale, at that time secretary of the Royal Society of London. On examining a sample of cold beer through his primitive microscope, van Leeuwenhoek noted a great many small particles. "Some of these," he later wrote (in Latin), "seemed to me to be quite round, others were irregular, and some exceeded the others in size and seemed to consist of two, three or four of the aforesaid particles joined together. Others again consisted of six globules and these last formed a complete globule of yeast.... With a view to representing this combination to the eye I took six globules of wax and joined them together as in Figure 1, and arranged them and had them drawn in such a way that all six could be seen at once. I next squeezed these aggregated globules in my hands so that they assumed the form shown in Figure 2, for I imagine that the result which I effected by rolling the globules of wax between my hands to compress them was nearly the same as in the fermentation of beer." Although van Leeuwenhoek was never able to actually distinguish the six cells that made up the larger globule, he reported that his observations, interpreted in the light of his wax models, "were as clear to me as if I had before my naked eye a very small transparent bubble that was filled with six other smaller ones." What he saw (at a magnification estimated to be about 125 diameters) was probably an aggregate of yeast cells formed by rapid budding.



VARIOUS MICROORGANISMS responsible for the spoilage of beer were investigated by Louis Pasteur in his classic 19th-century study of brewing. This composite drawing, showing the principal microbial contaminants of beer and malt wort, is reproduced from the original 1876 French edition of his book *Études sur la bière, ses maladies, causes qui les provoquent. Procédés pour la rendre inaltérable, avec une théorie nouvelle de la fermentation* (*Studies of beer, its diseases and the causes that provoke them. Procedures for making it unalterable, with a new theory of fermentation*). It was in the course of this project that Pasteur demonstrated the existence of anaerobic, or airless, microbial life. Larger, more globular particles are yeasts.

tion broth was lifeless, decaying matter. Organic chemistry was flourishing at the time, and the opponents of the microbial hypothesis were initially quite successful in putting forth their views.

It took almost two decades—from 1857 to 1876—for Pasteur to disprove the chemical hypothesis. He had been called on by the distillers of Lille to find out why the contents of their fermentation vats were turning sour. He noted through his microscope that the fermentation broth contained not only yeast cells but also bacteria that could produce lactic acid. His greatest contribution during this 20-year period was to establish that each type of fermentation is mediated by a specific microorganism. Furthermore, in a study undertaken to determine why French beer was inferior to German beer, he demonstrated the existence of strictly anaerobic life: life in the absence of air.

One of Pasteur's central concepts, that each fermentation provides energy to the species conducting it, led to the accidental discovery of cell-free metabolism by Eduard Buchner of Germany in 1897. Buchner found that an extract of macerated yeast, freed of intact cells by filtration, retained the ability to convert sugar into alcohol. His discovery gave rise to the field of biochemistry. Later work showed that the biological conversion actually consisted of a series of simple chemical reactions, each catalyzed by a specific enzyme.

Considerable progress was made in basic biochemical research following Buchner's lead, but little of the new knowledge was applied to the practice of industrial fermentation until World War I. On the German side glycerol for the manufacture of explosives soon became an urgent need. The British naval blockade had interfered with the importation of vegetable oils, the usual raw material for the production of glycerol. Several years earlier Carl Neuberg, a German biochemist, had followed up on an observation of Pasteur's that small amounts of glycerol were usually produced in alcoholic fermentation. Neuberg discovered that the addition of sodium bisulfite to the fermentation vat favored the production of glycerol at the expense of ethanol. Although this prewar finding was thought to be of academic interest only, the Germans quickly developed it into an industrial fermentation yielding 1,000 tons of glycerol per month.

On the British side acetone was needed for the manufacture of munitions. In response to the shortage of the chemical Chaim Weizmann, a Russian-born chemist, developed the acetone-butanol fermentation, which depends on the anaerobic bacterium *Clostridium acetobutylicum*. (Weizmann was later the first president of Israel.) The German glycerol process passed out of the picture at

the end of World War I, but the acetone-butanol process remained an important source of acetone for many years, until it was displaced by processes based on petroleum. It was the first large-scale fermentation for which problems of contamination by other bacteria and by bacteriophages (viruses that infect bacteria) had to be solved. For the first time pure-culture methods had to be employed in industrial fermenters, an experience that proved to be invaluable when the antibiotic era arrived in the 1940's.

For thousands of years moldy cheese, meat and bread had been employed in folk medicine to heal wounds. It was not until the 1870's, however, that Tyndall, Pasteur and William Roberts, a British physician, directly observed the antagonistic effects of one microorganism on another. Pasteur, with his characteristic foresight, suggested that the phenomenon might have some therapeutic potential. For the next 50 years various microbial preparations were tried as medicines, but they were either too toxic or inactive in live animals. Finally in 1928 Alexander Fleming noted that the mold *Penicillium notatum* killed his cultures of the bacterium *Staphylococcus aureus* when the mold accidentally contaminated the culture dishes. After growing the mold in a liquid medium and separating the fluid from the cells he found that the cell-free liquid could inhibit many species of bacteria. He gave the active ingredient in the liquid the name penicillin but soon afterward discontinued his work on the substance.

Attempts to isolate penicillin were made in the 1930's by a number of British chemists, but the instability of the substance frustrated their efforts. Eventually a study begun in 1939 at the University of Oxford by Howard W. Florey, Ernst B. Chain and their colleagues led to the successful preparation of a stable form of penicillin and to the demonstration of its remarkable antibacterial activity, first in experimental animals and then in man. Florey and his colleague Norman Heatley realized that conditions in wartime Britain were not conducive to the development of an industrial process for producing the antibiotic. They therefore came to the U.S. in 1941 to seek assistance. With the help of the U.S. Department of Agriculture and several American pharmaceutical companies the production of penicillin by a related mold, *Penicillium chrysogenum,* soon became a reality.

The advent of penicillin, which signaled the beginning of the antibiotic era, was closely followed by the discoveries of Selman A. Waksman, a soil microbiologist at Rutgers University, who succeeded in obtaining a number of new antibiotics from the class of microorganisms called actinomycetes; the best-known of his new "wonder drugs" was streptomycin. From Waksman's time up to the present there has been a proliferation of economically viable fermentation processes and products.

PORTRAIT OF PASTEUR was made in 1884 on the occasion of a visit to Copenhagen. Pasteur was 61 at the time. He died in 1895. The photograph, which was made by J. Petersen & Son, is now in the archives of the Pasteur Museum, a part of the Pasteur Institute in Paris.

Underlying the diversity of microbial processes and products described in the following articles are certain characteristics shared by all microorganisms. The most fundamental is the small size of the microbial cell and its correspondingly high surface-to-volume ratio, which facilitates the rapid transport of nutrients into the cell and thereby supports its high metabolic rate. For example, the rate of production of protein in yeast is several orders of magnitude higher than it is in the soybean plant, which in turn is 10 times higher than it is in cattle. The extremely high rate of microbial biosynthesis enables some microorganisms to reproduce in only 15 minutes.

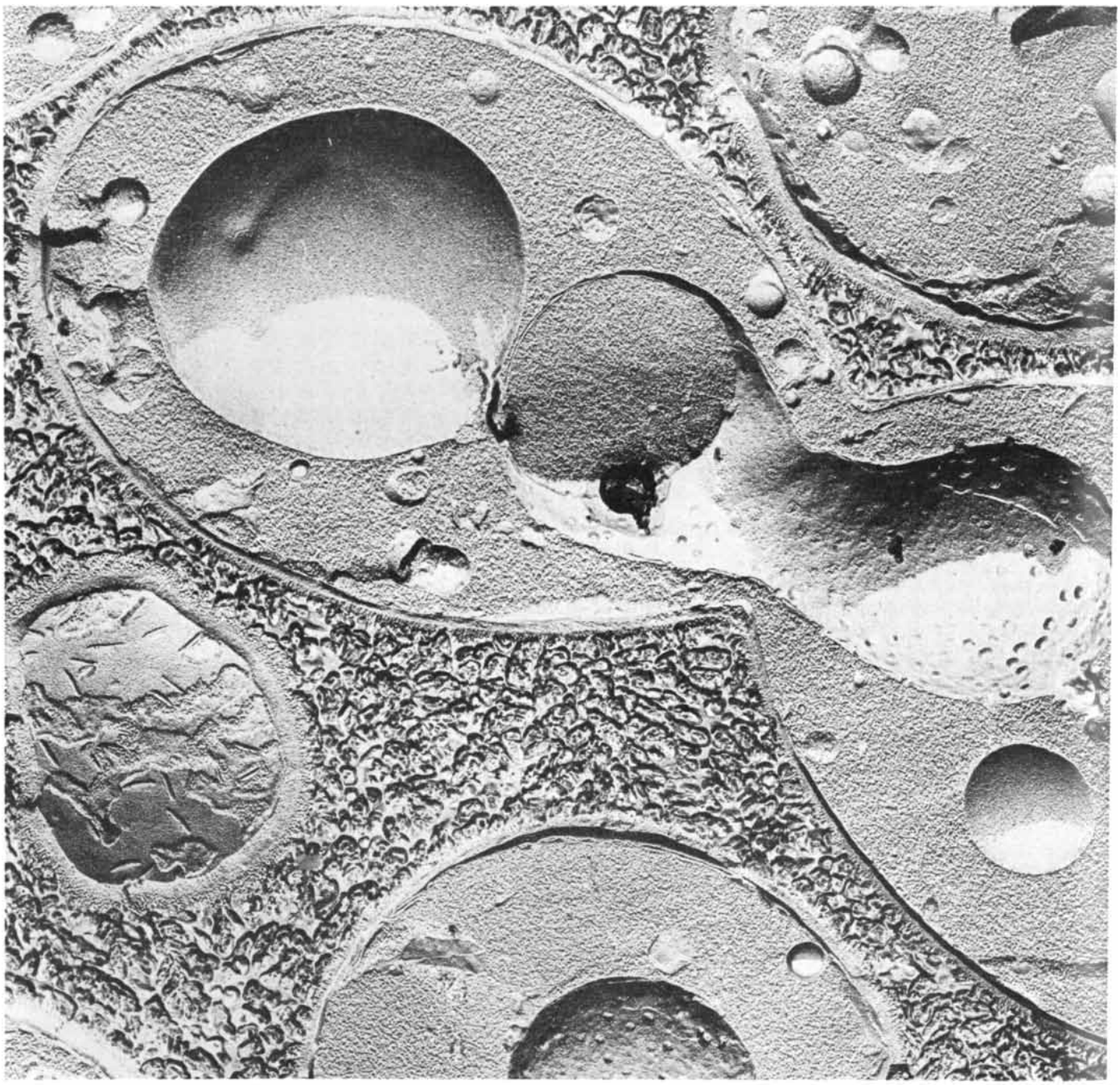
The environments that support microbial life reflect the broad spectrum of microbial evolution. Microorganisms have been found living at temperatures ranging from the freezing point of water to almost the boiling point, in salt water and fresh water, and in the presence of air and the absence of air. Some have evolved life cycles that include a stage of suspended animation in response to the depletion of nutrients: in the form of spores they may remain inactive for years until the environment becomes more favorable for growing cells.

Because microorganisms are capable of a wide variety of metabolic reactions they can adapt to many sources of nutrition. This adaptability makes it possible for industrial fermentations to rely on inexpensive nutrients. For example, molasses and cornsteep liquor, waste products respectively of the crystallization of sugar and the wet milling of corn, are both valuable for the production of penicillin.

There are four classes of industrially important microorganisms: yeasts, molds, single-cell bacteria and actino-

mycetes. The yeasts and the molds are more highly developed; together they constitute the fungi. Organisms of this type are eukaryotic, that is, their cells, like the cells of plants and animals, have a membrane-enclosed nucleus and more than one chromosome; they also contain organelles such as mitochondria (the tiny sausage-shaped bodies that are responsible for the cell's main energy supply). The single-cell bacteria and the actinomycetes, in contrast, are prokaryotic: they have no nuclear membrane or mitochondria, and they have only one chromosome. In addition the cells of prokaryotes are typically much smaller than those of eukaryotes. In spite of these basic biological differences there is a superficial resemblance between the molds and the actinomycetes in that both are filamentous: they grow as a branched system of threadlike hyphae rather than as single cells. The yeasts and the bacteria, on the other hand, are unicellular under normal conditions.

The commercially important products of these microorganisms fall into four major categories: (1) the microbial cells themselves; (2) the large molecules, such as enzymes, that they synthesize; (3) their primary metabolic products (compounds essential to their growth), and (4) their secondary metabolic products (compounds not required for their growth). In general both the primary and the secondary metabolites of commercial interest have a fairly low molecular weight: less than 1,500 daltons, compared with the molecular weight

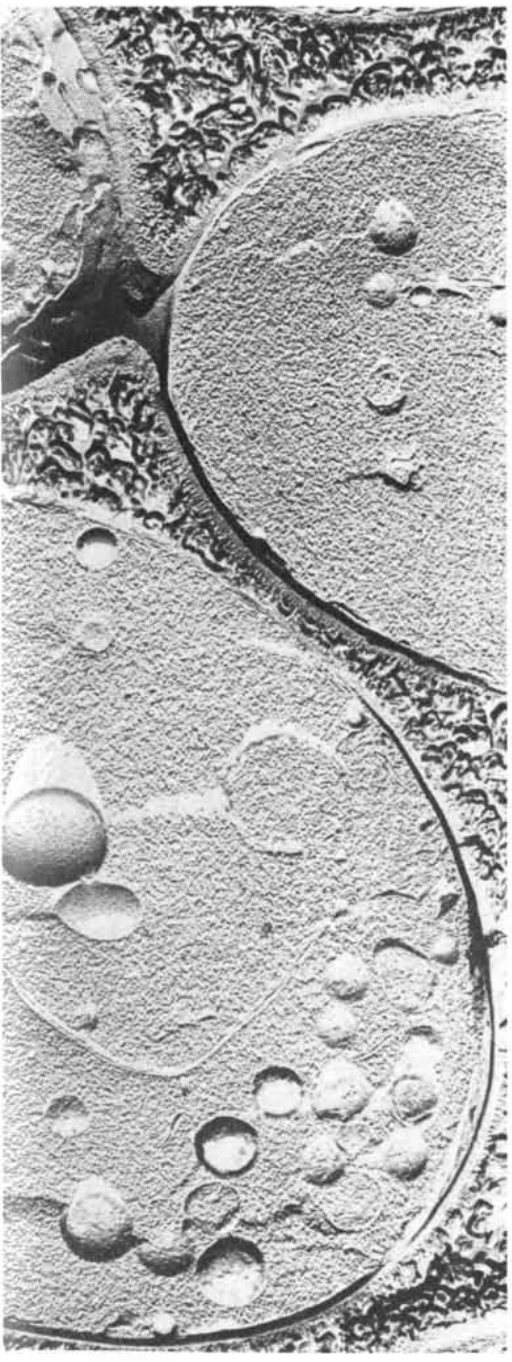


DIVIDING YEAST CELLS appear in an electron micrograph made by the freeze-fracture-etching technique. The cells belong to the species *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (brewer's yeast). The specimen was first frozen and then fractured; the ice matrix was next etched away slightly, leaving the material to be replicated in relief. (The electron micrograph is actually made from a thin-film replica of the surface.) The fracture split the cells open, revealing their interior structure. The smaller dumbbell-shaped area inside the larger dumbbell-shaped one is the dividing nucleus of one of the cells. Pores can be seen on the surface of the nuclear membrane. The other shapes visible

of an enzyme, which can range from 10,000 to several million daltons.

Microbial cells have two main commercial applications. The first is as a source of protein, primarily for animal feed. In its commonest form this product is referred to as single-cell protein, although in fact it usually includes the entire microbial cell, the major component of which is protein.

Microbial cells are also used to carry out biological conversions, processes in which a compound is changed into a structurally related compound by means of one or more enzymes supplied by the cells. Biological conversions, also known as microbial transformations, can be accomplished with growing cells, nongrowing cells, spores or even dried cells. Microorganisms, which can carry out almost every kind of chemical reaction, have many advantages over chemical reagents. For example, many nonbiological chemical reactions call for a considerable input of energy to heat or cool the reaction vessel; in addition they are generally conducted in solvents and require inorganic catalysts, both of which may be pollutants. Finally, many nonbiological chemical reactions yield unwanted by-products that must be removed in a separate purification step.



in the cells are either vacuoles (spherical cavities) or mitochondria (cellular organelles). The micrograph, which enlarges cells some 21,000 diameters, was made by H. Moor of the Swiss Federal Institute of Technology.

Unlike most nonbiological chemical reactions, biological conversions proceed at biological temperatures with water as the solvent. The cells can often be immobilized on a supporting structure for continuous processing. Another valuable asset of biological conversions is their specificity: one enzyme usually catalyzes only one kind of reaction at a specific site on the substrate molecule. The enzyme can also be made to select one isomer, or molecular form of a compound, in a mixture of forms to produce a single isomer of the product. These characteristics account for the high yields typical of biological conversions, which can reach 100 percent.

The biological conversion of ethanol into a dilute solution of acetic acid (vinegar) was done in Babylon by 5000 B.C. Other important biological conversions transform isopropanol into acetone, glucose into gluconic acid and sorbitol into sorbose. (The last reaction is the only biological step in the otherwise nonbiological manufacture of ascorbic acid, vitamin C.) Among the notable biological conversions in the pharmaceutical industry are those involved in the production of steroids. More recently, in the production of semisynthetic penicillins it became possible to replace a chemical reaction that creates pollutants with a nonpolluting biological conversion.

The most versatile large molecules manufactured by microorganisms are enzymes. These biological catalysts are important in the food and chemical industries because of their specificity, efficiency and potency under conditions of moderate temperature and acidity. Although enzymes have traditionally been extracted from plants and animals, their production by microorganisms is increasing rapidly owing to the increasing availability of such organisms and the ease with which the yield can be improved by manipulating either the genes or the environment of the organisms. Moreover, in the microbial production of enzymes the fermentation times are short, the growth mediums are inexpensive and the screening procedures are simple.

Recent applications of microbially produced enzymes include the use of amylases in brewing, baking and the manufacture of textiles; of proteases in brewing, meat tenderizing and the manufacture of detergents and leather, and of rennin in cheesemaking. A major recent development has been the combination of three microbially produced enzymes—alpha-amylase, glucamylase and glucose isomerase—to obtain a high-fructose sweetening agent from cornstarch. At present there is great interest in enzymes immobilized on a solid substrate, which offer many advantages over free enzymes.

In the biosynthesis of enzymes it is often necessary to exploit or bypass certain regulatory mechanisms that have evolved over millions of years to prevent the overproduction of enzymes and their products. For example, the production of an enzyme can be enhanced by a factor of 1,000 by adding a special inducer substance to the fermentation vat; the inducer may be either the substrate on which the enzyme acts or a compound structurally similar to the substrate. The manufacture of an enzyme is sometimes repressed by a natural feedback mechanism associated with the end product of the metabolic pathway in which the enzyme functions; the repression can be avoided by limiting the accumulation of that particular end product in the cell. Another important type of repression, called catabolite repression, is avoided by replacing rapidly utilized sources of carbon and nitrogen (such as glucose and ammonia) with nutrients such as starch or soybean meal, which are consumed more slowly.

Besides enzymes the class of commercially important large molecules that can be made by microorganisms includes polysaccharides (long-chain molecules consisting of repeating sugar units). For years the major source of polysaccharides for industry has been plants, particularly seaweeds. Recently, however, there has been renewed interest in polysaccharides manufactured by microorganisms. Of the thousands of different polysaccharides that can be microbially produced the best-known is xanthan, which is made by the bacterium *Xanthomonas campestris*. This colloidal substance is added to many foods as a stabilizer and thickener, and the petroleum industry is beginning to include it as an ingredient in drilling muds. Among the other important large molecules that can be obtained from microorganisms are the active ingredients of vaccines and insecticides.

In order to produce primary metabolites commercially by fermentation the regulatory mechanisms that govern the synthesis of enzymes and their activity in microorganisms must be bypassed.

These mechanisms evolved to regulate enzymatic reactions because it is usually detrimental for an organism in nature to overproduce its internal metabolites. If it does, it merely secretes them into the environment for other microorganisms to consume. All other things being equal, the overproducing microorganism is then at a competitive disadvantage, and usually it fails to survive. All other things are not always equal in nature, however, and therefore some microorganisms do manage to survive in their ecological niche even though their metabolism is somewhat less regulated than that of other microorganisms. The less regulated strains are much sought after by microbiologists in large-scale screening programs. Once a slightly deregulated microorganism is brought into the laboratory the microbiologist attempts to exploit or bypass the natural regulatory controls by manipulating either the nutrition or the genetics of the culture.

The most important primary metabolites in the fermentation industry are amino acids, purine nucleotides, vitamins and organic acids. Citric acid, for example, is made by molds under conditions where a nutrient imbalance is created by limiting the supply of certain minerals such as iron and manganese. In most industrial processes genetic and environmental manipulations are combined to achieve remarkable levels of metabolite formation. Notable examples are the 20,000-fold overproduction of riboflavin (vitamin B_2) by the mold *Ashbya gossypii* and the 50,000-fold overproduction of cobalamin (vitamin B_{12}) by the bacteria *Propionibacterium shermanii* and *Pseudomonas denitrificans.*

Of all the traditional products made by fermentation the most important to human health are the secondary metabolites. This group includes not only antibiotics but also toxins, alkaloids and plant growth factors. They vary widely in structure, are each manufactured by only one microbial species or a small number of species and are often formed as a mixture of closely related substances. In nature their functions serve the survival of the species, but when the microorganisms producing them are grown in pure culture, the secondary metabolites have no such role.

The best-known secondary metabolites are the antibiotics. More than 5,000 antibiotics have already been discovered, and new ones are still being found at a rate of about 300 per year. Most are useless: they are either toxic or inactive in living organisms. For some unknown reason the actinomycetes are amazingly prolific in the number of antibiotics they can secrete. Roughly 75 percent of all antibiotics are obtained from these filamentous prokaryotes, and 75 percent of those are in turn made by a single genus: *Streptomyces.*

In spite of the large number of known antibiotics, the search for new ones continues. New antibiotics are needed to combat both naturally resistant organisms and organisms that have acquired resistance through mutation; they are also needed to provide safer drugs. Chemists work steadily to modify the natural structures uncovered by microbiologists. Such semisynthetic antibiotics are already important in clinical practice. Antibiotics also serve purposes other than human and animal chemotherapy, such as the promotion of growth in farm animals and the protection of plants against inimical microorganisms.

The most important factor in keeping the industrial-fermentation industry productive and competitive with the nonbiological chemical industry is mutation. The industrial microbiologist can treat an organism with a mutagenic agent that increases the frequency of changes in the genes of the cells by several orders of magnitude. Although the genetic changes that take place are usually detrimental to the organism, they are sometimes beneficial to man. The microbiologist can often identify these changes (for example an increase in antibiotic production) by appropriate screening procedures and can preserve them indefinitely. As a result today's industrial strains of *Penicillium chrysogenum* can produce 10,000 times more penicillin per unit volume of broth than Fleming's original culture did.

In addition mutants occasionally manufacture a modified antibiotic with improved properties. Although this outcome is usually a matter of chance, microbiologists have recently developed a technique called mutational biosynthesis by which new antibiotics can be developed in a more rational way.

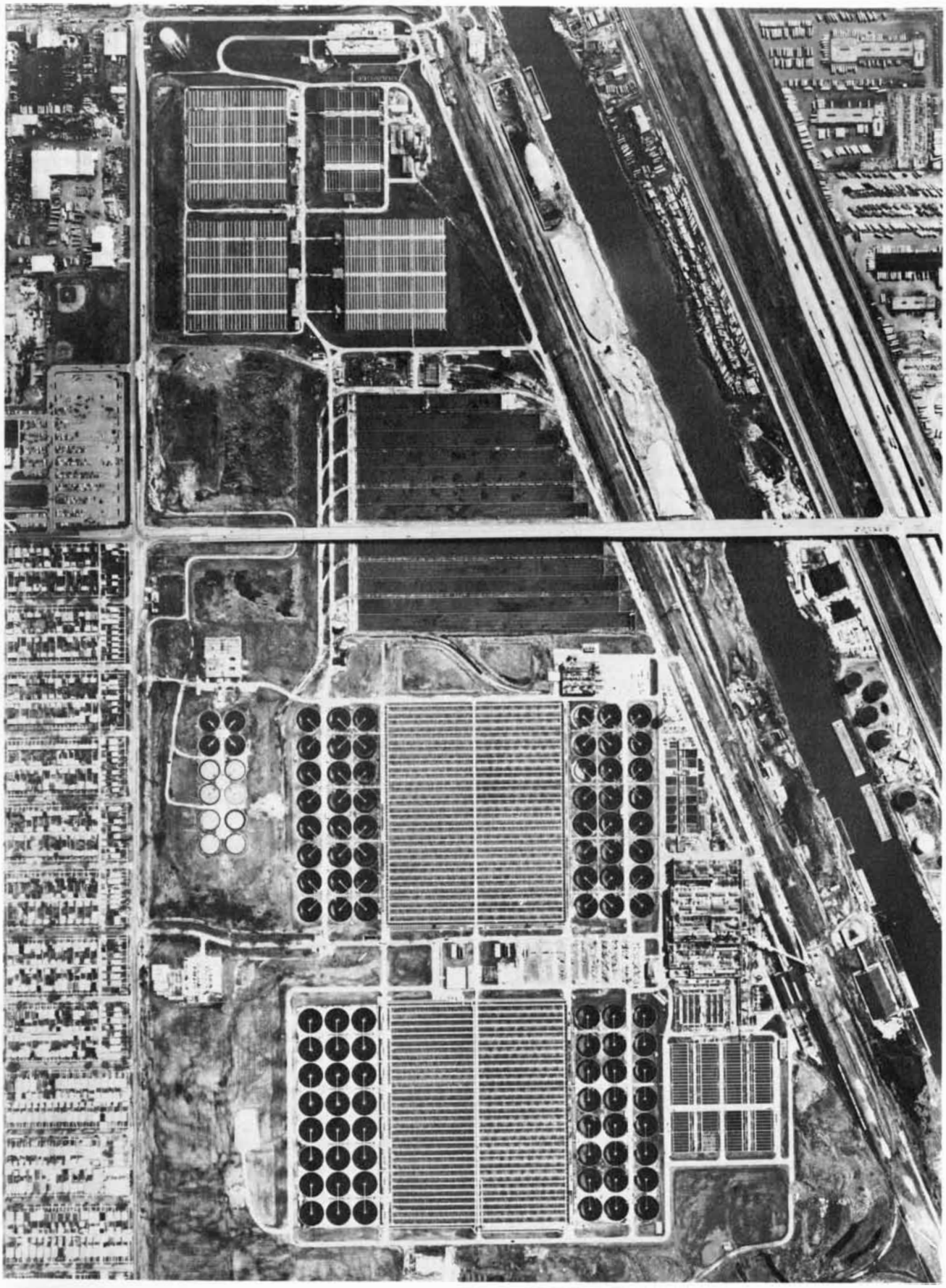
Although the record of the mutagenic approach in industry has been a good one, it is nonetheless a slow and painstaking procedure. In recent years developments in microbial genetics have been so rapid and dramatic that they have created an entirely new set of options for the fermentation industry. These options include protoplast fusion, gene amplification and recombinant-DNA technology. In nature genetic changes can arise not only through mutation but also through genetic recombination between two cells of different genetic types, yielding progeny with genes from both parents. Until recently this phenomenon had not been exploited much in industry because of the extremely low frequency of genetic recombination in industrial strains of microbial cells. For example, crossing two strains of the same species of *Streptomyces* leads to only one recombinant cell among a million nonrecombinant cells.

In the new technique of protoplast fusion, however, the cell walls of each type are removed, the resulting protoplasts are mixed and the fusion product is allowed to regenerate its cell wall. This procedure leads to a remarkable increase in the frequency of genetic recombination, with the result that many species of *Streptomyces,* after crossing, give rise to as many as one recombinant cell in every five cells. The increase in the frequency of recombination also makes it possible to detect genetic recombination between different species. Protoplast fusion is now being exploited to recombine slow-growing but high-producing mutants with their fast-growing ancestors to yield fast-growing and high-producing strains, to recombine several high-producing mutants from a single mutagenic treatment or separate treatments to yield an additive, or perhaps even a synergistic, combination of improved production mutations, and to produce new hybrid antibiotics by mating closely related strains that make different antibiotics.

Gene amplification is another approach to genetic manipulation with a great potential in industrial microbiology. In this technique genes are amplified, or duplicated, by forcing plasmids that carry them to reproduce rapidly. (Plasmids are small circular pieces of extrachromosomal DNA, carrying as few as two genes or as many as 250, that can exist autonomously in the cytoplasm of a cell or as an integral part of the chromosome.) When the plasmids are present in the autonomous state, they usually reproduce at the same rate as or at a somewhat higher rate than chromosomes. Although there are normally between two and 30 copies of a plasmid per cell, the plasmids can be forced into reproducing much faster than chromosomal DNA, yielding as many as 3,000 copies of a plasmid per cell.

The technique of gene amplification has been widely exploited in bacteria such as *Escherichia coli.* It is now possible in principle to transfer any chromosomal gene (or cluster of genes) to a plasmid and to amplify the gene, increasing the manufacture of the protein for which the gene codes to very high levels. Almost all bacterial species contain plasmids, as do eukaryotes such as yeasts. Of great importance to the fermentation industry is the fact that virtually all antibiotic-producing species contain plasmids that incorporate either structural genes for the manufacture of antibiotics or genes that regulate the expression of such structural genes.

Not only plasmids but also bacteriophages can serve for transferring and amplifying genes. New processes for the manufacture of enzymes and primary metabolites will probably result from the introduction of gene-amplification techniques, for the reason that many of the enzymes coding for the structural genes of primary-metabolite biosynthesis are clustered on the chromosomes of



ACTIVATED-SLUDGE PROCESS employs a complex population of microorganisms for the detoxification and degradation of sewage and industrial wastes. A large metropolitan sewage-treatment plant based on the process is seen in this vertical aerial photograph, made from an altitude of about a mile. The plant is southwest of Chicago, on the bank of the Chicago Sanitary and Ship Canal. North is to the left.

bacteria. The transfer of these "operons" to the DNA of plasmids or bacteriophages, followed by gene amplification, could yield effective new industrial microorganisms.

The highly publicized achievements of the artificial recombination of DNA will clearly have a great impact on industrial microbiology in the next decade. Genetic recombination is a means of increasing the diversity of microorganisms; it is the bringing together of genetic information to form new stable combinations and thus create new genotypes. In nature genetic recombination occurs between organisms of the same species or closely related species. All organisms have enzymes known as restriction endonucleases that recognize foreign DNA and destroy it so that "illegitimate" recombination does not occur. In 1973 it was discovered that it is possible to cut DNA molecules with restriction enzymes, to join pieces of DNA with another enzyme (DNA ligase) and to reintroduce the recombinant DNA into *E. coli* with the aid of a plasmid as a vector. Soon afterward plasmid genes from unrelated bacterial species were recombined in the test tube and expressed in *E. coli*. Later it was found that DNA from a eukaryote (a yeast) could express itself in a bacterium. Since then many mammalian genes, including human ones, have been cloned: copied in vast numbers by the multiplication of the bacterium into which they were introduced. Initial concerns about the safety of these procedures appear to be unwarranted in the light of additional evidence.

Today bacteria are making many proteins they never made in nature; the best-known are insulin and interferon. Insulin produced by bacteria has been shown to be active and safe in human beings, and interferon produced by recombinant-DNA technology is currently being tested in patients. From the example of interferon it is easy to appreciate the ability of recombinant-DNA technology to make protein molecules available at a reasonable cost: before interferon was made in bacteria 50 milligrams of very impure material cost some $2 million; at some point in the future bacterially produced interferon could cost as little as pennies per milligram of pure material. Recombinant DNA will be exploited to make hormones, analgesics and vaccines, and these products will be purer than those supplied by earlier technologies. Traditional fermentation processes, particularly those of the enzyme industry, will be markedly improved by the application of recombinant-DNA technology. Moreover, the new technology may well phase out many energy-intensive and highly polluting chemical-manufacturing processes. It is already being applied to the development of new bacterial strains that will convert agricultural and forest biomass into liquid fuel and chemicals.

The study of genetic recombination in higher organisms has also led to a major development in the field of immunology. In 1975 Georges Köhler and Cesar Milstein of the British Medical Research Council Laboratory of Molecular Biology in Cambridge fused a myeloma, or skin-cancer cell, of a mouse with an antibody-producing white cell to make a "hybridoma," or hybrid cell, that grew in the test tube and manufactured a pure specific antibody. Never before had such pure monoclonal antibodies been made; investigators and clinicians had to rely on impure mixtures of antibodies in animal serum to provide immunological protection against disease. Today monoclonal antibodies are commercially available for a variety of purposes.

Industrial microbiology is exciting in still other arenas. For example, the physiology of the cells of higher organisms is being intensively examined with a view toward exploiting such cells to manufacture plant and animal metabolites. Some secondary metabolites have been made with cultures of plant cells, but the technology is not yet commercially feasible. Human interferon and other mammalian proteins have been produced with cultures of animal cells growing on microscopic beads (called microcarriers). Such cultures make it possible to greatly increase the ratio of surface area to volume of fluid for cells that must be attached to a surface in order to grow. Attempts to commercialize microcarrier cultures are already under way.

Major agricultural advances, such as the replacement of synthetic nitrogen fertilizers by enhancing the efficacy of natural nitrogen-fixing microorganisms, should come from the new concepts of genetic engineering. One avenue where progress is being made is the establishment of a synergistic relation between free-living nitrogen-fixing bacteria and plants such as corn. In this approach ammonia-excreting strains of *Azotobacter vinelandii* provide fixed nitrogen to the plants, and the plants supply carbon to the bacteria.

A new pharmaceutical approach is the application of secondary metabolites to diseases that are not caused by bacteria or fungi. For years the major drugs available for the treatment of noninfectious diseases have been strictly synthetic products prepared by chemists. Similarly, major therapeutic agents for the treatment of parasitic diseases in animals have been obtained by the screening of chemically synthesized compounds and the modification of their molecular structure. Although thousands of compounds have been tested, only a few promising ones have been uncovered. As new compounds of this type become harder to find, microbially produced substitutes are filling the void.

Another application of microbial activity is the detoxification and degradation of sewage and industrial waste. The usefulness of microorganisms in waste treatment has been recognized since 1914, when the activated-sludge process was first developed. The sludge process depends on a complex population of microorganisms that form naturally because of each organism's ability to degrade a constituent of the waste material and to coexist with the others in a nutritionally complementary system. The next advance was to enrich the sludge by inoculating it with the desired mixture of microorganisms. Now pure cultures of a single microorganism are being made available to degrade specific compounds in industrial waste, such as polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB's).

Oil spills and the release of ballast and wash waters from oil tankers are other waste problems microbiology may be able to solve. Many microorganisms that can consume components of petroleum have been isolated. Strains of one such bacterial species, *Pseudomonas putida,* carry plasmid genes coding for enzymes that can degrade different components of oil. By genetic engineering the capacity to degrade the various components has been combined in one strain. Such a multiplasmid strain degrades petroleum faster than any of the original strains.

Certain microorganisms are the basis of a metallurgical process that is thought to go back to the Romans: the bacterial leaching of low-grade ores to extract metals from them. Today copper and uranium are commercially leached by bacteria, mainly members of the genus *Thiobacillus.* New approaches to such bacterial leaching are also being made. They include the examination of acid- and heat-resistant microorganisms (including fungi) for their extraction abilities, the investigation of the mechanisms underlying the affinity of bacteria for metals and the genetic manipulation of bacteria to increase their resistance to the toxicity of the metals.

In reviewing the history and current state of industrial microbiology we are struck by an abiding theme: mutually beneficial relations between what we have come to call basic research and applied research. A century ago the largely practical investigations of Pasteur led to the establishment of microbiology, immunology and biochemistry. Much later the discovery of antibiotics by applied microbiologists provided tools crucial to the development of molecular biology. And now basic research in microbial genetics has returned the favor by supplying an array of new techniques for industrial applications. This synergy between science and technology, we believe, is the key to further progress in industrial microbiology.

BACTERIA ARE EXPLOITED on a vast scale in extracting certain metals from low-grade ores. These two photographs, for example, show bacterial-leaching operations at two large open-pit copper mines in the southwestern U.S. The aerial photograph at the top gives an overview of an entire mining site at Santa Rita, N.M.; the mine itself is in the background, and the associated leaching dumps are in the right foreground. The photograph at bottom is a closeup view of a leaching dump at a similar mining site at Bingham Canyon, Utah; the leaching solution can be seen being recycled by an array of rotating sprinklers. The bacteria, mainly members of the genus *Thiobacillus,* assist in the leaching operation by converting iron in various compounds from the ferrous form into the ferric. The ferric iron, an effective oxidizing agent, then performs two useful functions: it oxidizes pyrite to form sulfuric acid, thereby maintaining the high acidity of the leaching solution, and it oxidizes insoluble copper-containing sulfide minerals to produce soluble copper sulfate, which migrates in solution to the bottom of the dump, where it collects in catch basins. The solution is periodically pumped out to facilities where the copper is recovered. Huge numbers of bacteria are involved in the leaching operation: in places more than a million per gram of ore.

Industrial Microorganisms

They are yeasts, molds, bacteria and actinomycetes (filamentous bacteria). They now include, however, cultured mammalian cells and "hybridomas": cells created by the fusion of two cell lines

by Herman J. Phaff

The microorganisms that make products useful to man represent at most a few hundred species out of more than 100,000 that exist in nature. Their utility in brewing, wine making and leavening bread was discovered quite by accident. The yeasts that transform grain mash, grape juice and bread dough are ubiquitous organisms, as are the bacteria that sour milk and the molds that impart the distinctive character of diverse kinds of cheese. To these three groups of microorganisms with industrial applications—yeasts, molds and bacteria—must be added a fourth group, the soil-inhabiting actinomycetes, filamentous bacteria whose value as a source of antibiotics has been recognized only since the 1940's. And to all of these must now be added cells that do not live free in nature but that too can manufacture substances useful in the diagnosis and treatment of disease: mammalian cells grown in culture.

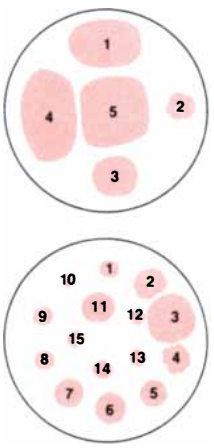
There is no ready way to classify microorganisms into the useful and the nonuseful. All are useful in the sense that they help to recycle the molecules of the organic world. In this role they are not merely useful but indispensable. A considerable number of microorganisms can of course be harmful to animals and plants. The large majority, however, are normally innocuous. The few that have been found to be industrially useful are prized simply because they happen to elaborate a substance that is recognized to have value and that is not as readily or as cheaply obtainable in any other way. In a few instances microbial cells are cultivated for their own sake, for example in the production of baker's yeast. More often the desired substance is a metabolic product, such as ethanol.

Most bacteria are small unicellular organisms, measuring only one micrometer (a millionth of a meter) or a few micrometers. Most yeasts are also unicellular, but they are larger, usually from six to 12 micrometers. Molds, on the other hand, are multicellular, and whereas their individual cells are small (rarely more than 25 micrometers in their longest dimension) the overall fungal body is readily visible to the unaided eye. The sexually reproducing fungi can have fruiting bodies (such as mushrooms and truffles) that are quite sizable, consisting of billions of cells.

Microorganisms are normally divided into two large groups: prokaryotes and eukaryotes. The prokaryotic microorganisms, regarded as the more primitive of the two, have a single circular chromosome of double-strand DNA that is unconfined within the cell's cytoplasm. The eukaryotic microorganisms, which are much larger than the prokaryotes, have at least two chromosomes (and in some species more than 20) enclosed in a nuclear envelope with a porous double membrane. The chromosomes of eukaryotes are linear and are intimately associated with the class of proteins named histones. Bacteria are prokaryotes; yeasts and fungi are eukaryotes.

For their growth and multiplication microorganisms conduct a wide variety of metabolic processes to obtain energy and new cell material. A few microorganisms that are photosynthetic are able to use the energy of light to convert carbon dioxide from the air, along with hydrogen from water, into cellular organic material, as is done by the higher plants. None of the common industrial microorganisms, however, is photosynthetic. One exception, in which interest has largely lapsed, is certain species of algae that a few years ago were considered promising as a source of food protein. The common industrial microorganisms require organic substrates for growth.

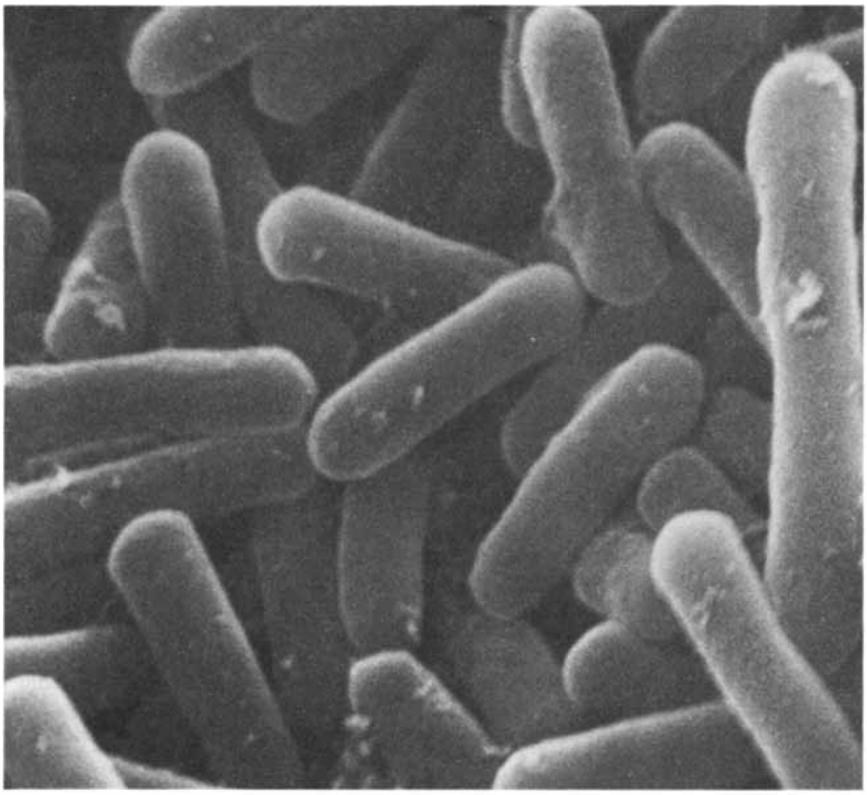
Microorganisms can be divided by their environmental requirements into



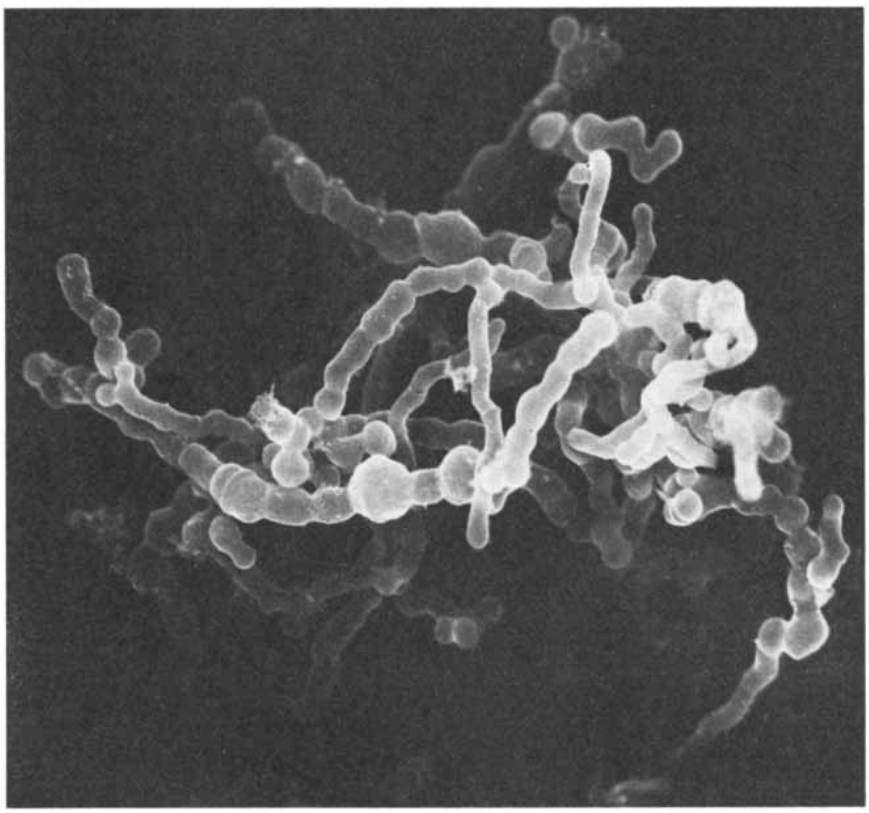
MOLDS
1 *Penicillium chrysogenum*
2 *Monascus purpurea*
3 *Penicillium notatum*
4 *Aspergillus niger*
5 *Aspergillus oryzae*

YEASTS
1 *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*
2 *Candida utilis*
3 *Aureobasidium pullulans*
4 *Trichosporon cutaneum*
5 *Saccharomycopsis capsularis*
6 *Saccharomycopsis lipolytica*
7 *Hanseniaspora guilliermondii*
8 *Hansenula capsulata*
9 *Saccharomyces carlsbergensis*
10 *Saccharomyces rouxii*
11 *Rhodotorula rubra*
12 *Phaffia rhodozyma*
13 *Cryptococcus laurentii*
14 *Metschnikowia pulcherrima*
15 *Rhodotorula pallida*

MOLDS AND YEASTS are microorganisms that form visible and often colorful structures when they alight or are deposited on a suitable medium. In the photograph on the opposite page pure cultures of several molds (*top*) and yeasts (*bottom*) are shown eight to 10 days after they were seeded on a nutrient agar in glass dishes. The maps at the left identify the five molds and the 15 yeasts. Four of the molds (*1, 3, 4, 5*) and five of the yeasts (*1, 2, 6, 9, 10*) yield commercially useful products, including beer, citric acid, enzymes, antibiotics, sake, soy sauce and microbial protein (*see illustration on page 88*). One of the yeasts, *Phaffia rhodozyma* (*12*), is being tested as a food supplement for hatchery-raised fish, the flesh of which tends to be white. The yeast synthesizes a carotenoid, astaxanthin, which turns the flesh to the normal orange pink.



PROKARYOTIC INDUSTRIAL MICROORGANISMS are here represented by numerous bacteria of the species *Bacillus brevis,* which manufactures the antibiotic gramicidin *S.* This scanning electron micrograph, which enlarges bacteria 9,500 diameters, was made by Erika A. Hartwieg of the Electron Microscopy Facility at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology.



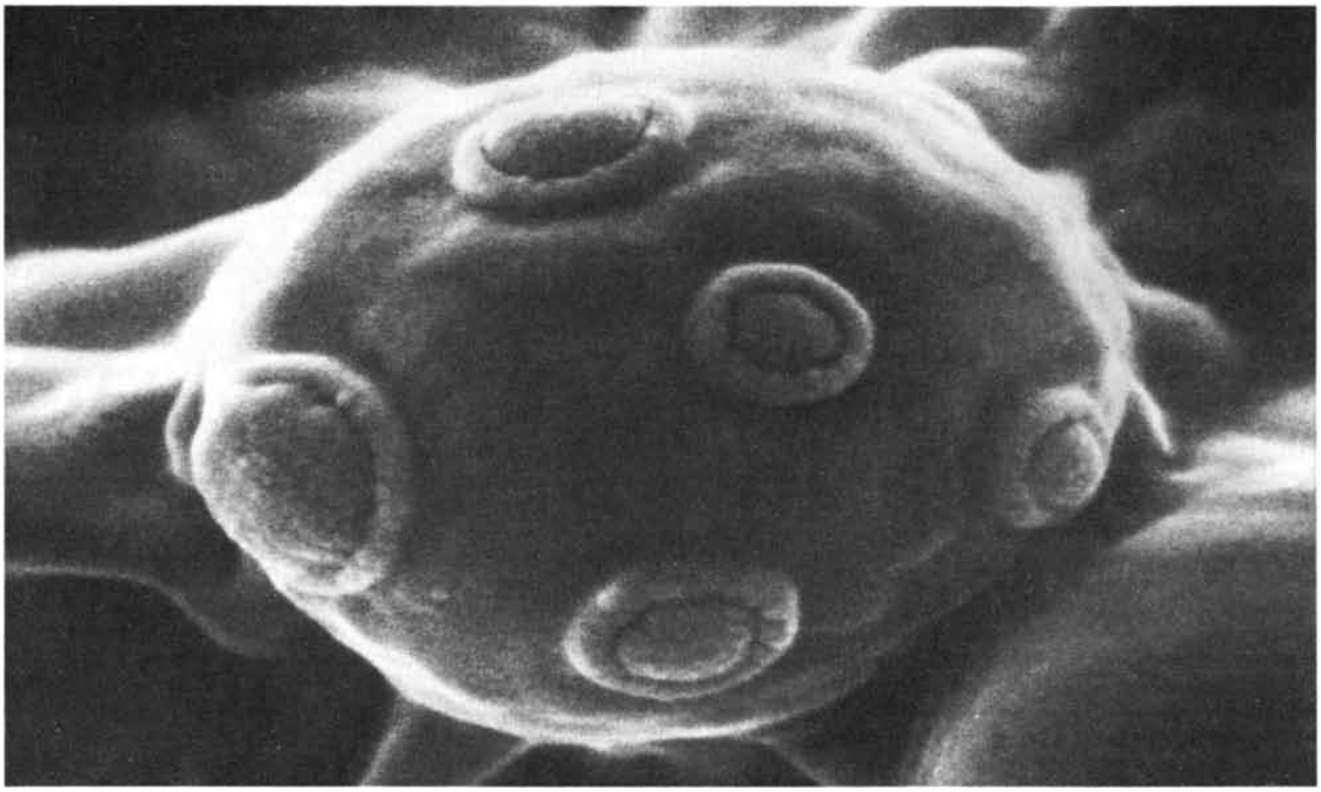
EUKARYOTIC INDUSTRIAL MICROORGANISMS are here represented by the hyphae, or filaments, of the mold *Cephalosporium acremonium,* which manufactures the antibiotic cephalosporin. These swollen filaments coincide with the high-production phase of the organism. The micrograph, which enlarges the hyphae 700 diameters, was also made by Hartwieg.

three groups. In one group are the strict aerobes, which can metabolize and grow only in the presence of atmospheric oxygen. In the second group are the strict anaerobes, which not only metabolize and grow in the absence of free oxygen but also require its exclusion lest they be harmed by it. In the third group are the facultative organisms, which are able to switch their metabolic machinery from an aerobic (respiratory) mode to an anaerobic (fermentative) one, depending on the environment in which they find themselves. Among the strict aerobes are the prokaryotic streptomycetes (a source of antibiotics) and most filamentous eukaryotic fungi (associated with cheeses and fermented foods). Strict anaerobes are represented by members of the bacterial genus *Clostridium,* of which *C. botulinum,* the source of the toxin of botulism, is a notorious example. Industrial yeasts, which can either respire or ferment certain substrates, are facultative organisms.

Anaerobic metabolism is always less efficient than respiration because fermentation does not exploit all the energy in the organic substrate (for example sugar) for making the universal fuel of the cell (the compound adenosine triphosphate, or ATP) and ultimately for making the substance of the cell. Some potential substrate is excreted from the cells in the form of degradation products that could be further oxidized into carbon dioxide and water. The products of fermentation, such as the ethanol released by yeast fermentation, cannot be metabolized further under anaerobic conditions by the organism that manufactures them.

The types of fermentative biochemical pathways leading to useful (hence incompletely metabolized) products are quite variable. For example, yeasts can ferment one molecule of a six-carbon monosaccharide sugar such as glucose or fructose into two molecules of ethanol and two molecules of carbon dioxide. Pathways can also be of two general types: homofermentative (signifying one principal product) or heterofermentative (two or more products). One group of lactic acid bacteria are homofermentative: they convert glucose into lactic acid. Another group of the same bacteria are heterofermentative: they convert glucose by a different biochemical pathway into lactic acid, ethanol and carbon dioxide. *Clostridium acetobutylicum* is another heterofermentative organism. It converts glucose into a mixture of acetone, ethanol, isopropanol and butanol.

Aerobic growth, on the other hand, enables some organisms to completely oxidize a certain fraction of the substrate and thereby extract a maximum amount of energy for converting the remaining substrate into cell mass. If the purpose of the industrial fermentation is to maximize cell mass, as in the produc-



YEAST CELL, which is also a eukaryote, appears in this scanning electron micrograph of the species *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Yeasts can reproduce asexually by budding or sexually (*see top illustration on page 81*). The protuberances on this cell are scars where cells budded off. The micrograph, which enlarges the cell 12,500 diameters, was made by Martin W. Miller of University of California at Davis.

tion of baker's yeast or of microbial protein as a food source, it is clearly advantageous to have aerobic growth with complete utilization of the substrate by respiration. It may be asked, however, how aerobic growth can lead to the manufacture of useful microbial products if all the substrate not converted into cell mass is oxidized into carbon dioxide and water.

One answer is that not all oxidative reactions catalyzed by strictly aerobic microorganisms go to completion. An example is the conversion of ethanol into acetic acid (vinegar) by acetic acid bacteria: CH_3CH_2OH (ethanol) + O_2 $\rightarrow CH_3COOH$ (acetic acid) + H_2O. The acetic acid bacteria are also capable of incomplete oxidations on other substrates, such as the conversion of glucose into gluconic acid. Although such "underoxidizers" can derive energy in the form of ATP from limited oxidations, they generally cannot derive carbon "skeletons" for growth from incompletely oxidized substrates and therefore are dependent for growth on other nutrients supplied in the medium.

In other instances useful organic compounds can be elicited from aerobic organisms by deliberately manipulating the biosynthetic pathways by which the organism converts the substrate into the thousands of different molecules that constitute a living cell. In normal metabolism each compound the cell needs is usually made in just the right amount. This is accomplished by a series of strict regulatory reactions that halt the manufacture of the intermediates and the end products of a metabolic pathway when a particular compound reaches a certain concentration. The industrial microbiologist has learned to select mutant strains in which this exquisite regulatory process is crippled in a desirable way. For example, in normal cells the synthesis of lysine, one of the 20 amino acids from which all cellular proteins are made, is regulated so that only the amount needed for the cell's thousands of different proteins is made. Certain mutants of *Corynebacterium glutamicum* have been found, however, in which the lysine regulatory mechanism is so defective that lysine is overproduced to the extent of more than 50 grams per liter of nutrient medium. Lysine and similar products of low molecular weight that are essential components in cell growth are called primary metabolites.

Another group of industrially important microbial products, called secondary metabolites, are compounds not required for cellular biosynthesis. Such products are synthesized by certain microorganisms, usually late in the growth cycle, for reasons that are often obscure. The best-known examples are antibiotics. Since secondary metabolites play no direct role in the energy metabolism and growth of the organism, they presumably contribute to the organism's survival by inhibiting competitors that could otherwise occupy the same ecological niche.

Organisms that secrete secondary metabolites initially go through a period of rapid growth, the trophophase, in which the synthesis of the secondary substance is negligible. When further growth is halted by the depletion of one or more essential nutrients in the medium, the organism enters the idiophase: the phase peculiar to that organism. The trigger for the synthesis of secondary metabolites in the idiophase is not known. Most organisms are sensitive to their own antibiotics during the trophophase but become physiologically resistant during the idiophase, so that the delay in the secretion of secondary metabolites is obviously crucial to keeping antibiotic-producing organisms from destroying themselves.

Still a third class of industrially important substances synthesized by microorganisms are the proteins that act as enzymes. Since typical proteins consist of several hundred amino acid units, few have ever been synthesized in the laboratory and no natural enzyme has ever been synthesized industrially. Microorganisms rely on catabolic enzymes to degrade complex substrates into simpler molecules that can then be assimilated. Anabolic, or biosynthetic, enzymes carry out the step-by-step reactions that rebuild the simple molecules

into the substances (including enzymes of both types) needed for cell metabolism and growth. As with amino acids, the cell normally synthesizes only as much of each enzyme as it needs. As with amino acid regulation, however, organisms can be selected that overproduce particular enzymes when they have the right environment and the appropriate nutrients.

One method of increasing enzyme synthesis is induction. The genetic blueprint for each enzyme is the sequence of DNA nucleotides termed a structural gene, residing either in the single chromosome of a prokaryote or in one of the several chromosomes of a eukaryote. The structural genes that code for the synthesis of many enzymes are normally inactive in the absence of the enzyme substrate or a molecule structurally analogous to it. Enzyme production is then said to be repressed. When the required substrate or analogue is added to the medium, the structural gene is activated and the enzyme is synthesized. Such an event is called derepression, or induction, and the enzymes that respond are called inducible enzymes (to distinguish them from constitutive enzymes, which are not affected in this way).

In some instances the inducer is the product of an enzymatic reaction. For example, the sugar maltose (actually an intermediate in the metabolism of the sugar) can induce the fungus *Aspergillus niger* to begin synthesizing glucamylase, an enzyme that breaks down the chain of sugars in starch into glucose. Although the substrate on which glucamylase acts is starch, starch does not have to be present in the medium in order to induce the synthesis of the enzyme. It turns out that some analogues that are poor or inactive substrates can be extremely potent inducers.

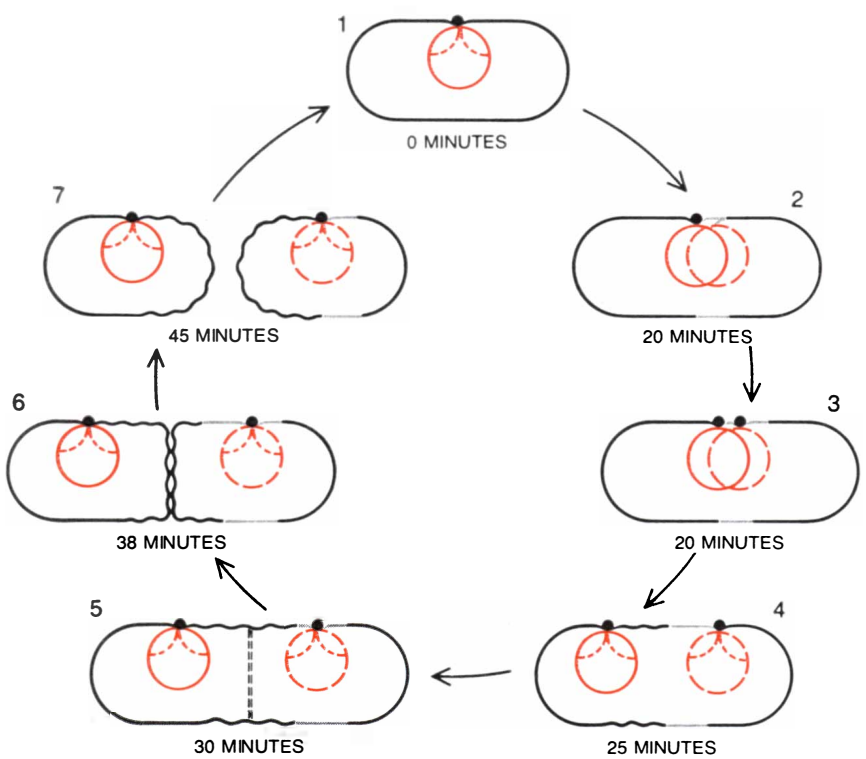
The most widely held model of induction is the one devised some 20 years ago by François Jacob and Jacques Monod of the Pasteur Institute. Briefly, in cells not exposed to an inducer the structural gene for the enzyme cannot be transcribed into messenger RNA (the first step in translating a gene into an enzyme) because RNA polymerase, the enzyme needed to carry out the synthesis of messenger RNA, is kept from acting by virtue of the fact that an operator gene adjacent to the structural gene on the DNA is blocked by a "repressor" protein. The repressor protein in turn is coded for by a nearby repressor gene. When inducer molecules are present, they combine with repressor molecules and so can no longer combine with the operator gene. With the operator gene free to function the RNA polymerase can transcribe the structural gene into messenger RNA, which then directs the assembly of the enzyme from the appropriate amino acids.

Certain catabolic enzymes of industrial importance, such as the amylases (starch digesters) and the proteases (protein digesters), can be obtained from microorganisms in supernormal amounts by circumventing the phenomenon known as catabolite repression. The term describes the decrease in the rate of synthesis of a catabolic enzyme when the microbial cells are exposed to a source of carbon that is rapidly assimilated. Because such a carbon source is often glucose the phenomenon is sometimes known as the glucose effect. In a few instances even the rapid catabolism of the inducer itself has been observed to give rise to catabolite repression. In such instances a slow feeding of the actual inducer (or the substitution of a slowly metabolized analogue inducer) can stimulate large increases in the synthesis of the desired enzyme.

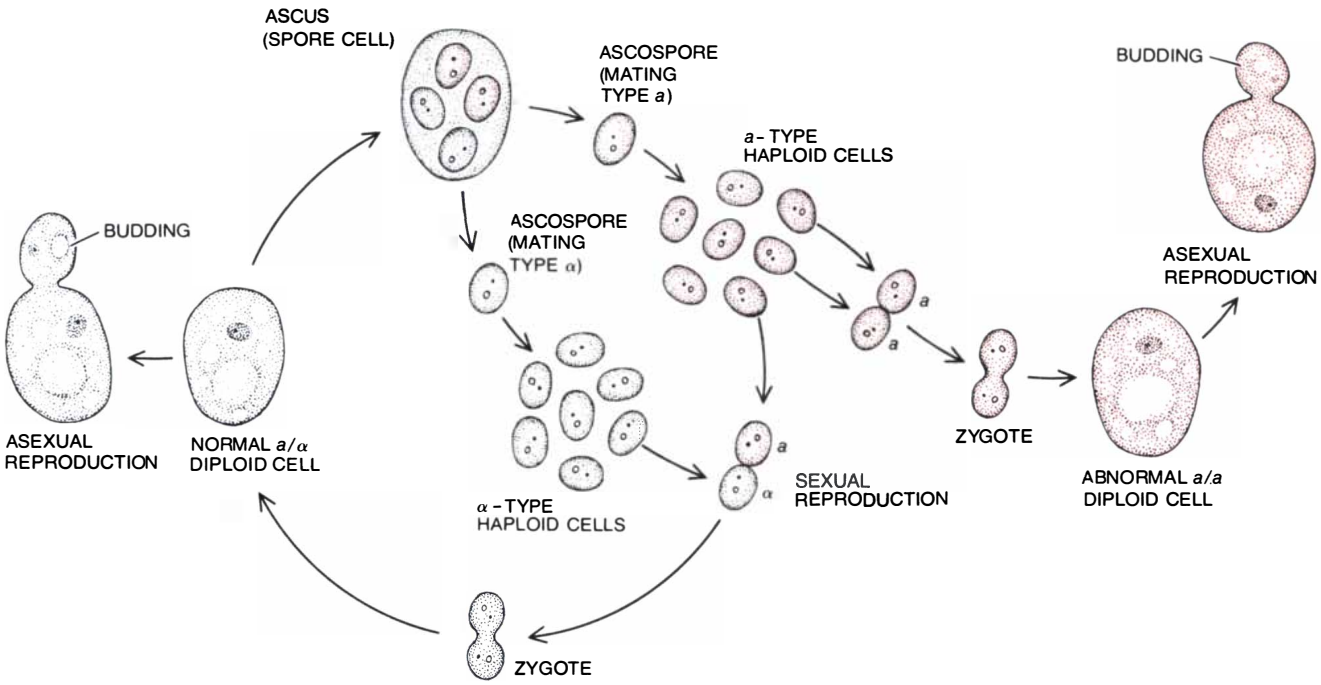
The underlying cause of catabolite repression is that in cells that are provided with a rapidly utilizable carbon source there is a sharp decrease in the intracellular concentration of cyclic 3′,5′-adenosine monophosphate (cAMP). In the absence of sufficient cAMP the structural genes coding for the particular enzymes are not transcribed effectively, and little or no enzyme is synthesized. An understanding of catabolite repression is of great importance in industrial microbiology because many commercially valuable enzymes are obtained from microorganisms subject to this phenomenon.

An altogether different type of metabolic product harvested in large volume from microorganisms is capsular polysaccharides, notably dextran and xanthan gum. Dextran, a large glucose polymer with a molecular weight of between 50,000 and 100,000 daltons, can serve as an extender for blood plasma. When its chains are cross-linked, it yields beads that are effective as molecular sieves. Xanthan gum, which has been found safe for human consumption, is added to many food products as a thickening agent and stabilizer. It also finds use in such diverse fields as textile printing and dyeing, oil-well drilling (as an additive to drilling mud) and the formulation of cosmetics and pharmaceuticals.

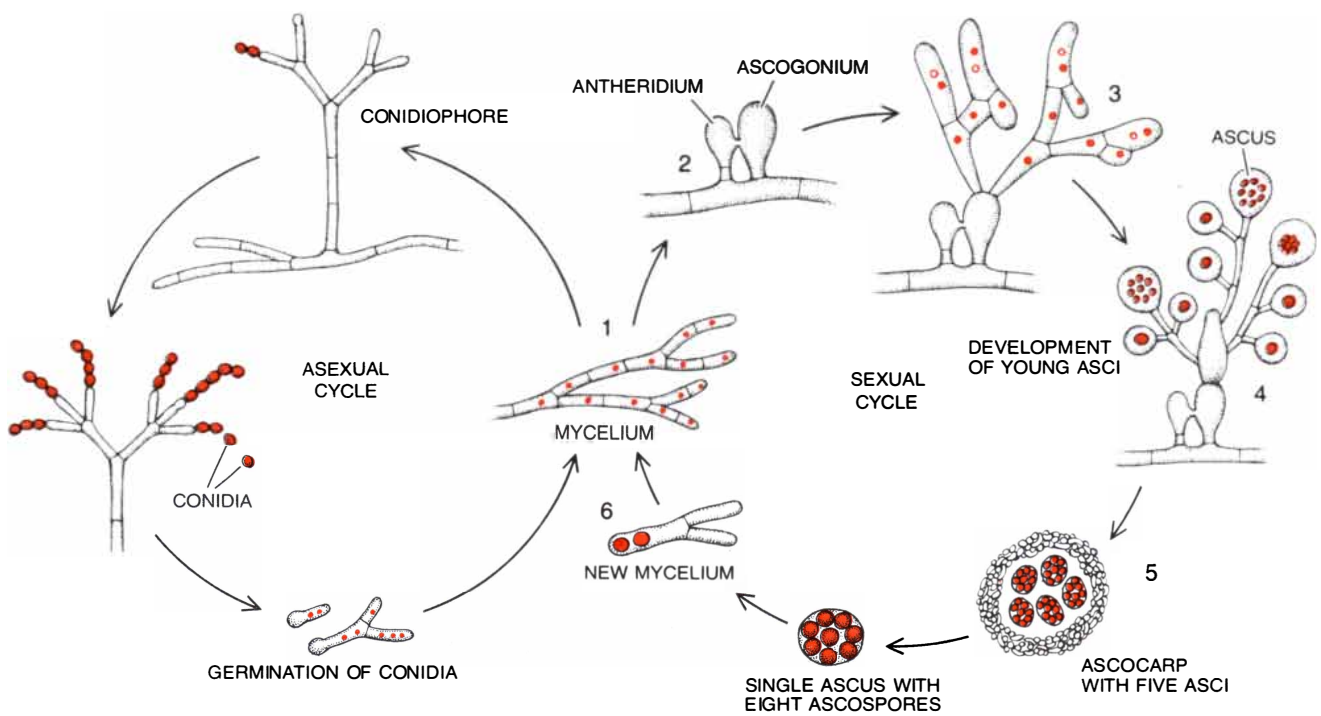
Capsular polysaccharides are substances of high molecular weight that form a thick capsule around the cells of certain microorganisms. Dextran is made in large amounts by *Leuconostoc mesenteroides* and related lactic acid bacteria, but only when they are grown on sucrose as the substrate. In the bacterial capsule dextran is a glucose polymer with a molecular weight varying from 15,000 daltons to 20 million, depending on the strain of bacterium. The bacteria harbor an enzyme called either transglu-



REPRODUCTION OF BACTERIA is accomplished asexually by cell division. The diagram shows seven stages in the life cycle of the colon bacterium *Escherichia coli*, which has a doubling time of 45 minutes. In the newborn cell (*1*) the single circular chromosome of DNA (*color*) is already being replicated (*broken lines*). After 20 minutes the new chromosome is complete and is affixed to an attachment site within the cell (*2, 3*). By 25 minutes the two chromosomes have begun to replicate (*4*) and a septum, or dividing membrane, appears in the middle of the cell (*5*). By 38 minutes the septum is a wall (*6*). Seven minutes later division is complete (*7*).



REPRODUCTION OF YEAST is normally asexual, proceeding by the formation of buds on the cell surface, but sexual reproduction can be induced under special conditions. In the sexual cycle a normal diploid cell (a cell with two sets of chromosomes and therefore two sets of genes) gives rise to asci, or spore cells, that contain four haploid ascospores (cells with one set of chromosomes and one set of genes). The ascospores are of two mating types: *a* and α. Each type can develop by budding into other haploid cells. The mating of an *a* haploid cell and an α haploid cell yields a normal *a*/α diploid cell. Haploid cells of the same sex can also unite occasionally to form abnormal diploid cells (*a*/*a* or α/α) that can reproduce only asexually, by budding in the usual way. Industrial yeasts reproduce mainly by budding.

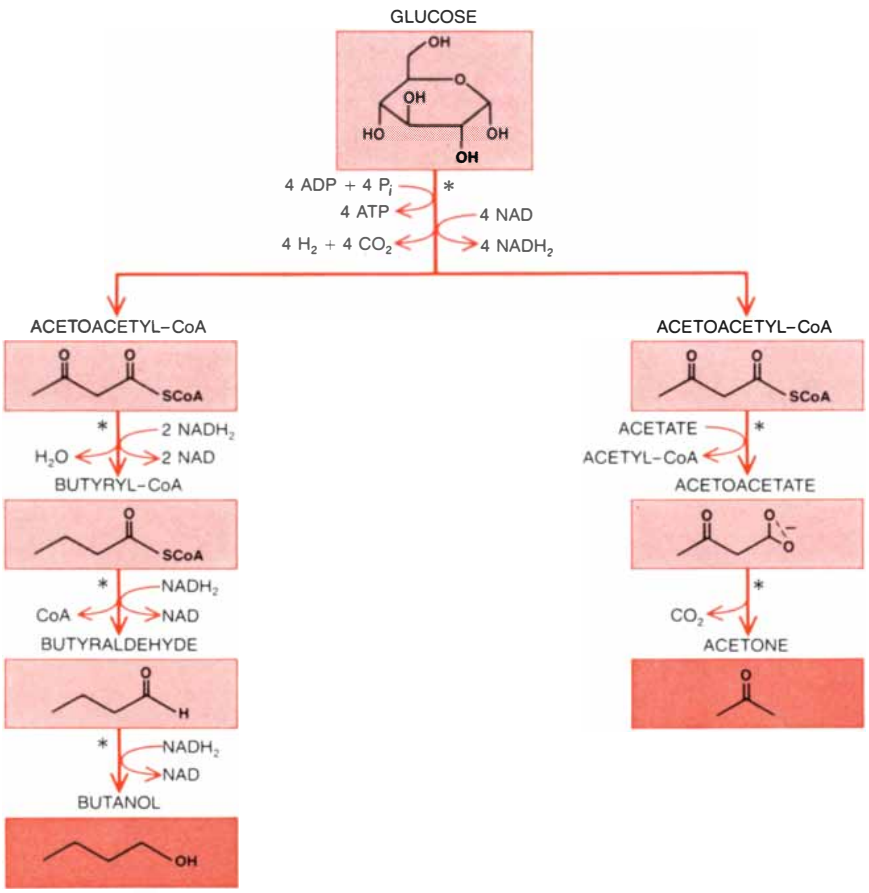


REPRODUCTION OF A MULTICELLULAR FUNGUS, such as one of the higher Ascomycetes, can be asexual or sexual. The details vary with genus and species. The branched vegetative structure common to both reproductive cycles is the mycelium, composed of hyphae (*1*). In the asexual cycle the mycelium gives rise to conidiophores that bear the spores called conidia, which are dispersed by the wind. In the sexual cycle the mycelium develops gametangial structures (*2*), each consisting of an antheridium (containing "+" nuclei) and an ascogonium (containing "−" nuclei). The nuclei pair in the ascogonium but do not fuse. Ascogenous, binucleate hyphae develop from the fertilized ascogonium (*3*), and the pairs of nuclei undergo mitosis, which replicates the newly paired chromosomes. Finally nuclei fuse in the process called karyogamy (*4*) at the tips of ascogenous hyphae. That is the only diploid stage in the life cycle. Soon afterward the diploid nuclei (*large colored dots*) undergo meiosis, or reduction division. The result is eight haploid nuclei (*small colored dots*), each of which develops into an ascospore. At the same time the developing asci are enclosed by mycelial hyphae in an ascocarp (*5*). In the example shown here the ascocarp is a cleistothecium, a closed structure. Ascospores germinate to yield binucleate or multinucleate mycelium (*6*).

cosidase or dextransucrase that splits the disaccharide sucrose into fructose and glucose. Fructose provides for the bacteria's growth; glucose is transferred molecule by molecule to a growing strand of dextran. The enzymatic synthesis of dextran proceeds either with whole cells or with a cell-free extract. Xanthan gum is synthesized by the bacterium *Xanthomonas campestris* when it is grown aerobically on glucose media. The polysaccharide made by this organism is branched and more complex than dextran. It is assembled from glucose, mannose (also a six-carbon monosaccharide) and glucuronic acid, some of which have acetyl (CH_3CO) and pyruvate (CH_3COCO) groups attached to their molecule.

Yeasts were exploited for thousands of years in the making of alcoholic beverages and for leavening bread before yeast cells were recognized as microorganisms and the true nature of fermentation was discovered. The presence of yeast cells in fermenting beer was first recorded in 1680 by Anton van Leeuwenhoek, who is credited with inventing the forerunner of the modern microscope. Nearly 200 years later, in 1876, Louis Pasteur presented his views on fermentation in the classic work *Études sur la bière,* in which he postulated that microorganisms living under anaerobic conditions are able to live and to grow by substituting the process of fermentation for the better-understood respiratory process of many organisms. He recognized that the fermentation process that converts sugars into alcohol and carbon dioxide supplies the energy necessary for yeast cells to live in the absence of oxygen. Pasteur further recognized that when oxygen is available to yeast cells, fermentation is repressed and is supplanted in varying degrees by respiration. In the latter process the sugar is fully oxidized to carbon dioxide and water.

Whereas the enzymes of fermentation are constitutive the enzymes of respiration are inducible. Fermentation enzymes reside in the cytoplasm of the cell; the respiratory enzymes are in the organelles called mitochondria. The respiratory enzymes are subject to catabolite repression by glucose. For that reason when yeast is grown with a plentiful supply of air in order to maximize the cell mass, as in the production of baker's yeast, it is essential that the cell's nutrient sugar solution be fed at a rate such that it never exceeds a few tenths of 1 percent. In this way the catabolite repression of the respiratory enzymes is prevented and practically all the added sugar is respired rather than converted into alcohol by fermentation.



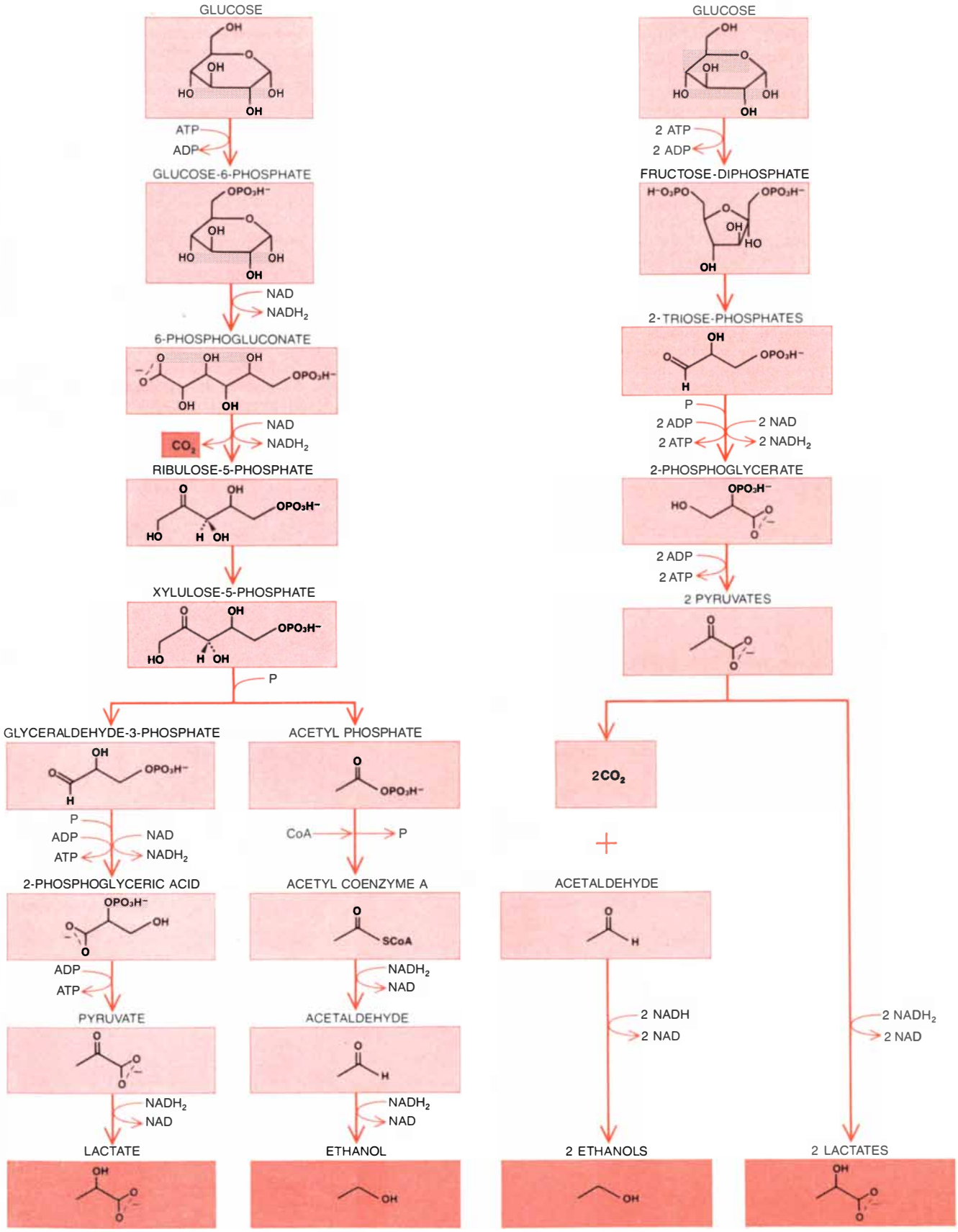
ACETONE-BUTANOL FERMENTATION is carried out anaerobically by the bacterium *Clostridium acetobutylicum*. The diagram shows the series of intracellular reactions that convert two molecules of glucose into one molecule of butanol, one molecule of acetone, four molecules of hydrogen and five of carbon dioxide. Small amounts of ethanol are formed as a minor product. In the process four molecules of adenosine diphosphate (ADP) and four units of inorganic phosphate (P_i) are converted into four molecules of adenosine triphosphate (ATP), the universal fuel of intracellular processes. Acetyl-CoA (acetyl-coenzyme A) is a coenzyme that plays a key role in the metabolism of all cells. The molecule nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD) is an acceptor of hydrogen atoms; the reduced form of the molecule, $NADH_2$, is a donor of hydrogen atoms. Specific enzymes carry out the reactions indicated by asterisks.

The only sugars that can be fermented by yeasts are the six-carbon monosaccharides (or polymers of such sugars). Disaccharides such as sucrose and maltose are first broken down by the cell's hydrolytic enzymes to monosaccharides. In industrial processes such as brewing and whiskey making, where starches serve as the main substrate for fermentation, the starches are usually broken down to monosaccharides by the addition of amylase enzymes from barley malt or from certain species of molds. Although there are yeast species that can grow on starch by virtue of making their own amylases, such species are not efficient enough for industrial alcohol production.

When yeasts are grown in the respiratory mode, a much broader range of compounds can be exploited as substrates, depending on the yeast species selected. Some yeasts metabolize few compounds, others can handle many. For example, the ability of *Candida utilis* (a species employed for food yeast) to metabolize the pentose (five-carbon) monosaccharides xylose and arabinose makes this species suitable for growing on sulfite waste liquor, a by-product of the paper industry.

Other yeasts, such as *Saccharomycopsis lipolytica,* are able to metabolize straight-chain hydrocarbons that range from 10 to 16 carbon atoms in length. In pilot installations yeasts have been grown on purified fractions of petroleum. The yeast cells first oxidize the hydrocarbons to long-chain fatty acids by means of hydroxylation enzymes as an intermediate step. The fatty acids are broken down by a special oxidation process that yields acetyl-coenzyme A, which is ultimately transformed into cell material. Another substrate of industrial interest is methanol (CH_3OH), a simple alcohol that can be made by the oxidation of the gas methane or derived from coal. Methanol can be assimilated by a limited number of yeast species by virtue of a novel metabolic process involving specialized cell organelles called microbodies. Yeast grown in this way can serve as a protein supplement in animal feeds.

Nearly all yeasts are capable of converting inorganic nitrogen into proteins and nucleic acids. The nitrogen can be



HETEROFERMENTATIVE AND HOMOFERMENTATIVE pathways are compared in two reaction sequences. The diagram at the left shows the scheme by which the heterofermentative lactic acid bacterium *Leuconostoc* transforms one molecule of glucose into one molecule each of carbon dioxide, lactic acid and ethanol. The diagram at the right shows how two homofermentative organisms, a yeast and a bacterium, ferment glucose with the same sequence of reactions up to the point where two molecules of pyruvic acid have been formed. The pathways thereafter diverge. The yeast, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae,* converts the two pyruvic acid molecules into two molecules each of carbon dioxide and ethanol. The bacterium, a streptococcus, converts the pyruvic acid molecules into two molecules of lactic acid.

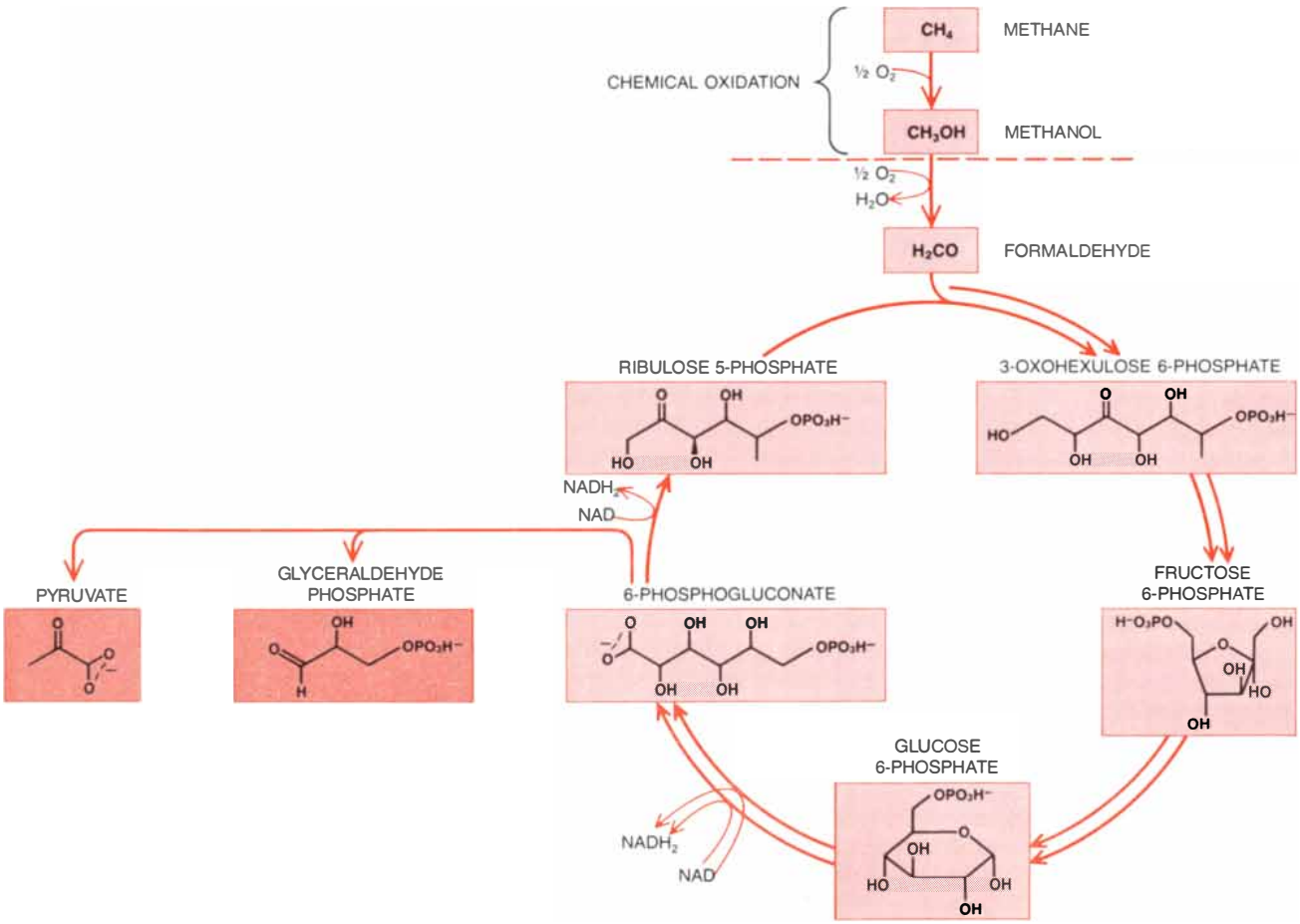
assimilated in the form of ammonium ions (NH_4^+) and by some species in the form of nitrate ions (NO_3^-). The ability of yeast to convert inorganic nitrogen into cellular proteins is being exploited to make microbial protein, sometimes referred to as single-cell protein, which can serve as a supplement in both human food and animal feed.

Let me briefly describe what yeasts are, how they reproduce and what their place is in the kingdom of the Mycota, or fungi. Because of yeasts' predominantly unicellular form of growth they are often described as microfungi. The more than 500 known species of yeasts are classified taxonomically according to their mode of reproduction, which can be sexual or asexual. Three classes of fungi accommodate the yeasts: the Ascomycetes, the Basidiomycetes and the Deuteromycetes.

The first class includes the yeast whose sexual reproductive structures take the form of simple asci and ascospores. A diploid yeast cell (a cell with two sets of paired chromosomes) undergoes meiosis (reduction division) and forms four to eight ascospores, enclosed in an ascus, or sac. The ascospores are haploid cells (which have only one set of chromosomes); haploid cells of different sexes combine to form a new diploid organism. This mode of sexual reproduction can be manipulated by investigators to carry out genetic hybridizations for the improvement of strains. Numerous yeast species belong to the class Ascomycetes, but only a few are of industrial importance. By far the earliest yeast to serve man and the most intensively cultivated is *Saccharomyces cerevisiae,* specific strains of which are used for brewing, wine making, sake making, baking and the production of industrial alcohols. *Kluyveromyces fragilis* is a lactose-fermenting species exploited on a small scale for producing alcohol from whey. *Saccharomycopsis lipolytica,* the species capable of metabolizing hydrocarbons, is an industrial source of citric acid.

The class Basidiomycetes has supplied no yeasts of industrial importance. It includes certain mushrooms, toadstools, smuts and rusts. These organisms reproduce by forming external sexual spores on a structure termed a basidium or on a promycelium arising from a teliospore.

The class Deuteromycetes includes yeasts that have no known sexual mode of reproduction; they reproduce only vegetatively, which usually means by budding. The class has a few species of industrial significance. *Candida utilis,* the yeast that can grow on sulfite waste liquor, is one. Another, *Trichosporon cutaneum,* plays an important role in aerobic sewage-digestion systems because of its enormous capacity for oxidizing organic compounds, including some that are toxic to other fungi, such as phenolic compounds. A recently recognized species, *Phaffia rhodozyma,* has the ability to make an unusual carotenoid. Carotenoids are among the pigments found in plants. The carotenoid astaxanthin made by this yeast is being tested as a source of pigment for salmon and trout reared in pens. Astaxanthin gives the flesh of trout and salmon their normal orange pink color. The flesh of fish



CONVERSION OF METHANE INTO PROTEIN is carried out by the bacterium *Methylophilus methylotrophus*. Usually the methane (CH_4) is first oxidized with the aid of a catalyst to methanol (CH_3OH), which then serves as the substrate for bacterial growth. Enzymes oxidize the methanol to formaldehyde (H_2CO), which condenses with ribulose 5-phosphate to form 3-oxohexulose 6-phosphate. After a sequence of reactions the carbon and oxygen atoms in three molecules of methanol are transformed into one molecule of pyruvate (CH_3COCOO^-); ribulose 5-phosphate is released to renew cycle. Pyruvate is starting point for compounds needed for growth.

raised in captivity is white but will acquire a normal color if the fish are fed a source of the pigment.

Vegetative reproduction in the industrial species of yeast is mainly by the repeated formation of buds on the cell surface. A mother cell is said to give rise to a number of daughter cells, which bud in their turn. The shape of the vegetative cells varies from stubby oval to elongate. Most yeasts under industrial growing conditions propagate only vegetatively. The sexual cycle, if it exists at all, is induced only by special culture conditions.

Molds are filamentous fungi that form a large group of eukaryotic organisms lacking chlorophyll that together with the unicellular yeasts constitute the Mycota. Molds were recognized long before the yeasts because of their tendency to form a matlike somatic tissue, visible as spoilage organisms on many types of food. Everyone has seen moldy oranges and other fruits, moldy cereal and blue mold on cheese.

Sometimes the somatic tissue is not conspicuous but the sexual fruiting bodies are. For example, the vegetative growth of mushrooms is hidden in the soil and only the mushrooms or puffballs are visible aboveground. The case of bracket fungi on dying trees is similar. The vegetative growth of such fungi is gathering nutrients in the trunk of the tree from the cellulose or lignin components of the rotting wood and is therefore not visible. The spore-generating reproductive structures appear on the trunk and can weigh several pounds. Many diseases of both plants and animals are caused by fungi. Some fungi are obligate parasites, which means they depend on a living host to complete their life cycle, whereas others are opportunists. The latter normally live on dead organic matter but occasionally attack a living host, particularly one whose natural defenses are weakened for one reason or another.

In addition to having true nuclei and lacking the ability to conduct photosynthesis, the fungi (excluding the unicellular yeasts) are usually characterized as structures whose vegetative body or somatic tissue is filamentous and branched and typically has tough cell walls made up of variously linked polymers of glucose (known as glucans), of glucosamine (chitosan) and *N*-acetylglucosamine (chitin). In a few instances the cell wall consists entirely of chitin. Such a vegetative structure is known as a mycelium; the tubelike structures constituting the mycelium are called hyphae. The hyphae either can be separated into individual cells by septa or can be essentially free of septa, in which case the mycelium is termed coenocytic. Most fungal cells have many nuclei even when the hyphae consist of rows of individual cells divided by septa. Although some fungi fall outside the above definition, it covers the fungi of industrial interest.

Fungi can reproduce both sexually and asexually. The asexual fungi generate various kinds of unicellular asexual spores by division of the cell nucleus. The spores develop on sporophores, specialized structures that extend into the air from the vegetative mycelium. At the tips of the structures the spores themselves are borne. If they are enclosed in a sporangium, or saclike device, the spores are referred to as sporangiospores. Spores not enclosed in a sac are conidia. At maturity both sporangiospores and conidia are readily distributed by the wind. If they fall on a suitable substrate, they germinate and form new mycelia that can in turn generate new reproductive structures.

The morphology of the spore-bearing structures is highly variable and constitutes one of the bases on which fungi are classified. The somatic mycelium is usually not sufficiently distinctive to be of much help in classification. The color of most molds that live on decaying organic matter is due to the color of their asexual spores. They exhibit various shades of white, blue, green, red, brown or black.

Many fungi can also reproduce by forming sexual spores, generated by the meiosis, or reduction division, of a diploid nucleus. In meiosis the number of chromosomes is halved by the unpairing of homologous chromosomes. The sexual spores contain only one each of the pairs of homologous chromosomes. The diploid condition is reestablished when two haploid spores come together and fuse, thereby completing the life cycle. The fungi with no known sexual cycle are placed, like the yeasts, in the class Deuteromycetes; they are also known as fungi imperfecti.

Fungi of importance in industrial microbiology that are endowed with sexual reproductive structures fall into three classes: the Ascomycetes, the Basidiomycetes and the Zygomycetes. As with the yeasts, the ascomycetous fungi produce their spores in asci. In the filamentous true fungi, however, the asci are formed inside a complex fruiting body, the ascocarp. Similarly, the basidiomycetous fungi develop their sexual spores externally on basidia, which are enclosed in a complex fruiting body, the basidiocarp. Fungi belonging to the class Zygomycetes form sexual zygospores that are almost microscopic in size. Under natural conditions fungi reproduce for the most part asexually; sexual reproductive structures appear only occasionally under favorable circumstances. Fungi of industrial significance are grown mainly in tanks as submerged clumps of mycelium. Under such artificial conditions neither sexual nor asexual spores are generated.

The nutritional requirements of fungi closely follow those I have described for the yeasts except that the fungi (whose species outnumber those of the yeasts more than a hundredfold) are more diversified in the variety of organic substrates they can assimilate. For example, there are no yeasts that can grow on cellulose or lignin, whereas certain fungi can. On the other hand, many yeasts can conduct an active anaerobic fermentation of sugar into ethanol, whereas with few exceptions fungi are strict aerobes. The fungi will accept either organic or inorganic nitrogen, but neither fungi nor yeasts can assimilate nitrogen gas from the atmosphere, as some bacteria can. Fungi require a source of various minerals, particularly phosphate, sulfate and salts of potassium and magnesium. They also need a number of trace elements in salt form: boron, manganese, copper, molybdenum, iron and zinc. These elements are required for the proper functioning of various metabolic enzymes. Yeasts have similar requirements.

Fungi have great economic importance not only for their usefulness but also for the harm they do. Fungi are responsible for the destruction of much of the organic matter on the earth, a largely beneficial activity since it is integral to the recycling of living matter. On the other hand, fungi cause manifold diseases of plants and animals and can destroy foods and materials on which man depends. A small sampling will suggest the range of these effects. The Dutch elm disease is caused by an ascomycete, *Ceratocystis ulmi*. A water mold attacks fishes and fish eggs in hatcheries. *Coccidioides immites*, a deuteromycete, is responsible for coccidioidomycosis, or San Joaquin fever, in man and some animals. Cotton fabrics are destroyed by the cellulose-digesting ascomycete *Chaetomium*.

Fungi can also poison human food and animal feed. *Claviceps purpurea*, an ascomycete, elaborates a number of poisonous alkaloids when it parasitizes the rye plant, causing the disease known as ergotism. Consuming ergot-contaminated grain causes cattle to abort. In human beings ergotism can lead to hallucinations and death. Another form of poisoning is caused by fungi that secrete aflatoxins in improperly stored animal feed, such as peanut meal and hay; an example is the ascomycetous fungus *Aspergillus flavus*. Its toxins, which are secondary metabolites, are highly carcinogenic. The effects of poisonous mushrooms are well known.

The harmful effects of fungi are counterbalanced by their industrial uses. Fungi are the basis of many fermentations, such as the hydrolysis of rice starch that yields sake and the fermentations of various combinations of soy-

beans, rice and malt that yield the Oriental foods miso, shoyu and tempeh. The fungi are the source of many commercial enzymes (amylases, proteases, pectinases), organic acids (citric, lactic), antibiotics (notably penicillin), special cheeses (Camembert, Roquefort) and of course commercial mushrooms.

Let us return now to the simplest of all organisms, the prokaryotic ones, and consider their structure in somewhat more detail. The prokaryotes lack the organized nucleus, vacuoles, mitochondria and membrane systems present in yeasts, molds and other eukaryotes. The prokaryote cell has only two major internal features: a single closed loop of DNA and the nondifferentiated cytoplasm in which the DNA floats. The length of the DNA loop that encodes the cell's entire genetic blueprint is remarkable: it is more than a millimeter, or several hundred times the maximum dimension of most bacteria. The cytoplasm holds large numbers of ribosomes: granules made up of RNA and proteins that serve as the machines for assembling amino acids into proteins. The ribosomes of prokaryotes are smaller than those of eukaryotes.

Prokaryotic microorganisms have cell envelopes very different from the envelopes of eukaryotic cells. All prokaryotic cell walls incorporate one common chemical component, peptidoglycan, which is responsible for most of the wall's shape and strength. Peptidoglycan is a large polymer built around alternating subunits of *N*-acetylglucosamine (which is also the building block of chitin in eukaryotes) and *N*-acetylmuramic acid. The latter molecule is similar to *N*-acetylglucosamine but has a unit of pyruvic acid attached to its third carbon atom. The pyruvic acid serves as an attachment point for a linear side chain consisting of the amino acids L-alanine, D-glutamic acid, diaminopimelic acid (an amino-acid-like compound) and D-alanine. These four-unit side chains serve to cross-link peptidoglycan molecules into a giant saclike molecule that surrounds the entire cell.

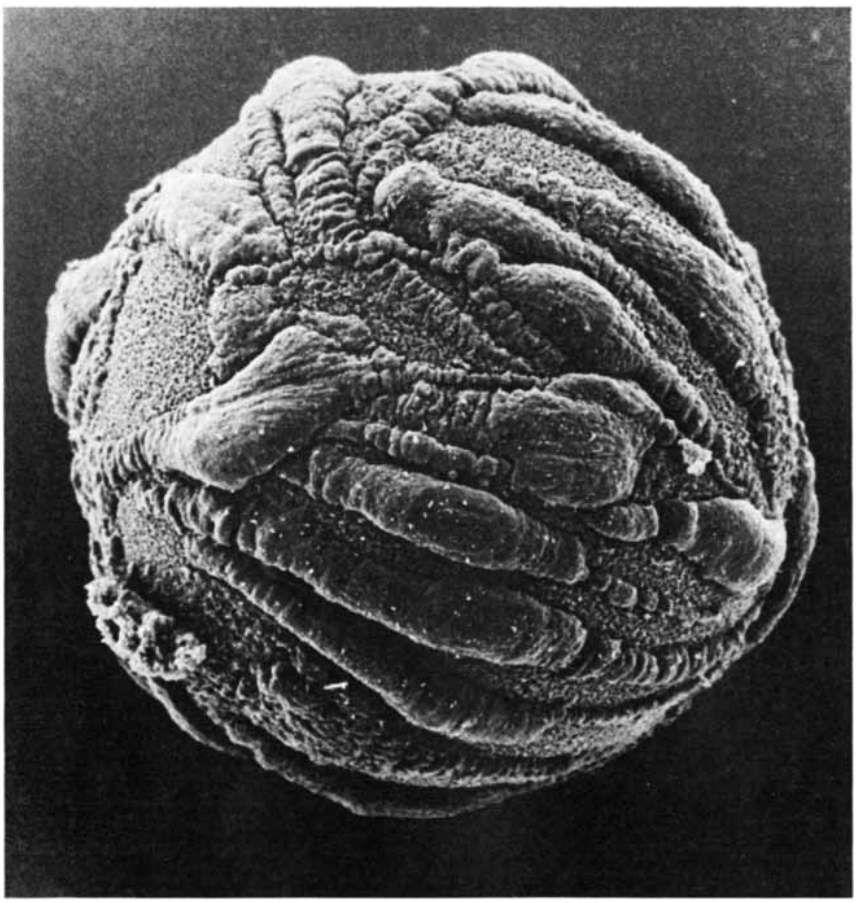
The peptidoglycan content of bacterial cell walls varies greatly from more than 50 percent in the wall of Gram-positive bacteria to less than 10 percent in Gram-negative bacteria. (The term Gram-positive refers to the ability of certain bacteria to hold the stain crystal violet, which Gram-negative bacteria do not retain.) The peptidoglycan content of cells is correlated with their sensitivity to penicillin because the antibiotic interferes with the biosynthesis of peptidoglycan. This explains why Gram-positive bacteria (which have a high peptidoglycan content) are much more sensitive to penicillin than Gram-negative bacteria. It also explains why only growing cells are killed by penicillin: in the presence of the antibiotic the cell wall under construction cannot be finished and the cell dies. Certain other antibiotics interfere with peptidoglycan biosynthesis in other ways.

In Gram-negative bacteria the inner layer of the cell wall is poor in peptidoglycan and the outer layer is rich in lipoproteins and lipopolysaccharides, which supply up to 80 percent of the wall's dry weight. The lipopolysaccharide component is mainly responsible for what is known as the O-antigenic specificity exhibited by Gram-negative bacteria. Each strain has a somewhat different lipopolysaccharide on its surface, depending on the particular sugars incorporated in the wall polymers. When human beings or other animals are infected or inoculated with such bacteria, the lipopolysaccharide elicits the formation of specific antibodies. With the aid of specific antiserums it is possible to identify the strain of bacteria that was responsible for a particular infection.

Many prokaryotic microorganisms are endowed with organelles that enable them to move about. The commonest structures are whiplike flagella that project from the cell surface. If the flagella are concentrated at one end of the cell, they are called polar; if they are distributed evenly over the cell surface, they are called peritrichous.

Prokaryotic cells have many shapes: spherical, rodlike and even (in the case of the actinomycetes) branched. Although some prokaryotic cells may equal or exceed the length of some eukaryotic microorganisms, the cellular volume of prokaryotes is always much less. Prokaryotic cells multiply asexually, almost always by the formation of a septum, or cross wall, after the chromosome has been replicated. The two ends of the cell, each with a chromosome, thereupon fission into two new cells. Some of the true bacteria (Eubacteria) contain endospores: packages of DNA that can remain dormant for many years and are highly resistant to heat (even boiling water), toxic chemicals and other insults that kill the vegetative cell. Then, under the appropriate conditions, the endospore can give rise to a new bacterium.

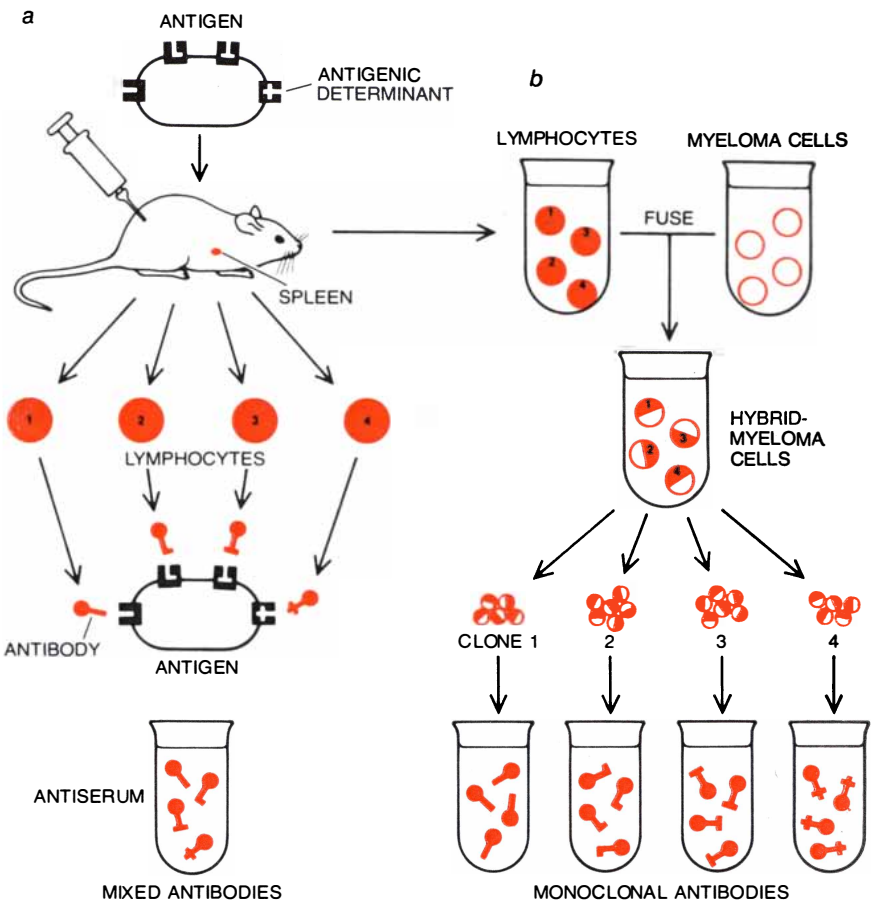
Although a small number of pro-



HUMAN FORESKIN CELLS used to produce interferons in tissue culture are the elongated protuberances on the spherical surface in this scanning electron micrograph. The sphere is a tiny bead of the synthetic polymer dextran; such beads are introduced into the culture to provide a surface on which the cells can grow. The micrograph, which enlarges the sphere 1,100 diameters, was made by Don Siegel of Harvard University and Robert Fleischaker of M.I.T.

karyotic microorganisms can conduct photosynthesis with the aid of a special kind of bacterial chlorophyll, most prokaryotes, including those of industrial importance, are heterotrophic: they require a source of assimilable carbon and nitrogen, together with various mineral salts and in some instances organic growth factors, for example vitamins. The prokaryotes of industrial utility grow on an organic substrate that serves as a source of both carbon and energy. They can usually synthesize all their cell constituents from a single organic compound and a source of nitrogen. Some bacteria can "fix" the gaseous nitrogen of the atmosphere, that is, convert it into organic nitrogen. Examples are species of *Azotobacter,* which are free-living in the soil, and *Rhizobium,* which grow symbiotically in the root nodules of leguminous plants. A major goal of agricultural technologists is to find a way to incorporate the nitrogen-fixing genes of such bacteria into the cells of corn and other plants whose nitrogen needs must now be met with fertilizers.

In general the metabolism of prokaryotic microorganisms is strongly influenced by molecular oxygen. Organisms that depend on aerobic respiration and for which oxygen functions as the terminal oxidizing agent are classed as obligate aerobes. The antibiotic-secreting *Streptomyces* are an example. In contrast, for organisms that are obligate anaerobes oxygen is usually toxic. The intermediate group of organisms, the facultative anaerobes, can grow in either the presence or the absence of molecular oxygen. Such organisms can be subdivided into two groups, depending on whether oxygen is actively metabolized or is merely tolerated. The lactic acid bacteria belong to the group that get their energy entirely from fermentation, yet these bacteria are not harmed by oxygen. On the other hand, the coliform bacteria, such as the bacterium *Escherichia coli,* can obtain their energy either from fermentation or respiration.



MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES are ultrapure antibodies manufactured by hybridoma cells: fused lymphocytes (white blood cells) and malignant myeloma cells. At the top left is a schematic representation of an antigen with four antigenic determinants on its surface. When the antigen is injected into a mouse, lymphocytes of the mouse separately manufacture antibodies specific for the antigenic determinants. Therefore an antiserum prepared from the blood of the mouse contains a mixture of antibodies against the antigen. In the preparation of monoclonal antibodies, shown at the right, lymphocytes are removed from the spleen of the mouse and allowed to fuse with myeloma cells. Hybrid cells can be cloned to produce pure antibodies.

Among the bacteria only one subgroup, the Eubacteria, provides species of industrial usefulness. These true bacteria constitute such a large and diversified group of organisms that a complete taxonomic treatment would be out of place here. I shall therefore give only a few examples of the Eubacteria exploited by industry. The acetic acid bacteria, represented by the genera *Gluconobacter* and *Acetobacter,* are Gram-negative, rod-shaped organisms that can convert ethanol into acetic acid. *Gluconobacter* has polar flagella and oxidizes ethanol only as far as acetic acid. *Acetobacter* has peritrichous flagella and is capable of oxidizing the acetic acid it forms into carbon dioxide and water.

Aerobic spore-forming bacteria are represented by the genus *Bacillus,* which has found significant use in industrial fermentations. All species of bacilli are able to form endospores and are Gram-positive when the cells are young. Nearly all the species have peritrichous flagella. Some species, such as *Bacillus subtilis,* are strict aerobes; others, such as *B. thuringiensis,* can also conduct anaerobic fermentation. *B. subtilis* has certain attributes that make it attractive as a replacement organism for *E. coli,* which is now almost the universal organism of recombinant-DNA fermentations. It appears that secondary metabolites elaborated by *B. subtilis* are secreted by the cell and therefore readily collected whereas those formed by *E. coli* remain inside the cell and can be obtained only by breaking down the cell and isolating the desired product from the debris. *E. coli* also has the disadvantage of containing highly toxic substances (endotoxins) that must be carefully removed from the product of the fermentation. *B. subtilis* does not manufacture such endotoxins.

Anaerobic spore-forming bacteria are represented by species of the genus *Clostridium.* Whereas vegetative cells of the species are highly sensitive to oxygen, the endospores are protected from this lethal effect. The cells, common in soil, are Gram-positive rods with peritrichous flagella. They obtain their metabolic energy from various types of fermentation. I have mentioned that *C. acetobutylicum* can ferment sugars into acetone, ethanol, isopropanol and butanol; other fermentable substrates for this group include starch, pectin and various nitrogenous compounds.

The lactic acid bacteria include, among others, species of the genera *Streptococcus, Leuconostoc* and *Lactobacillus.* These organisms, which do not form endospores, are Gram-positive, nonmotile rods or spheres that get their energy from fermentation but are not sensitive to oxygen. The heterofermentative lactic acid bacteria of the genus *Leuconostoc* convert carbohydrates into lactic acid, ethanol and carbon dioxide. The homofermentative lactic acid bacteria of the genus *Streptococcus* yield only lactic acid. Species of *Lactobacillus*

ORGANISM	TYPE	PRODUCT
FOODS AND BEVERAGES		
Saccharomyces cerevisiae	YEAST	BAKER'S YEAST, WINE, ALE, SAKE
Saccharomyces carlsbergensis	YEAST	LAGER BEER
Saccharomyces rouxii	YEAST	SOY SAUCE
Candida milleri	YEAST	SOUR FRENCH BREAD
Lactobacillus sanfrancisco	BACTERIUM	SOUR FRENCH BREAD
Streptococcus thermophilus	BACTERIUM	YOGURT
Lactobacillus bulgaricus	BACTERIUM	YOGURT
Propionibacterium shermanii	BACTERIUM	SWISS CHEESE
Gluconobacter suboxidans	BACTERIUM	VINEGAR
Penicillium roquefortii	MOLD	BLUE-VEINED CHEESES
Penicillium camembertii	MOLD	CAMEMBERT AND BRIE CHEESES
Aspergillus oryzae	MOLD	SAKE (RICE-STARCH HYDROLYSIS)
Rhizopus	MOLD	TEMPEH
Mucor	MOLD	*SUFU* (SOYBEAN CURD)
Monascus purpurea	MOLD	ANG-KAK (RED RICE)
INDUSTRIAL CHEMICALS		
Saccharomyces cerevisiae	YEAST	ETHANOL (FROM GLUCOSE)
Kluyveromyces fragilis	YEAST	ETHANOL (FROM LACTOSE)
Clostridium acetobutylicum	BACTERIUM	ACETONE AND BUTANOL
Aspergillus niger	MOLD	CITRIC ACID
Xanthomonas campestris	BACTERIUM	POLYSACCHARIDES
AMINO ACIDS AND FLAVOR-ENHANCING NUCLEOTIDES		
Corynebacterium glutamicum	BACTERIUM	L-LYSINE
Corynebacterium glutamicum	BACTERIUM	5′-INOSINIC ACID AND 5′-GUANYLIC ACID
SINGLE-CELL PROTEINS		
Candida utilis	YEAST	MICROBIAL PROTEIN FROM PAPER-PULP WASTE
Saccharomycopsis lipolytica	YEAST	MICROBIAL PROTEIN FROM PETROLEUM ALKANES
Methylophilus methylotrophus	BACTERIUM	MICROBIAL PROTEIN FROM GROWTH ON METHANE OR METHANOL
VITAMINS		
Eremothecium ashbyi	YEAST	RIBOFLAVIN
Pseudomonas denitrificans	BACTERIUM	VITAMIN B_{12}
Propionibacterium	BACTERIUM	VITAMIN B_{12}
ENZYMES		
Aspergillus oryzae	MOLD	AMYLASES
Aspergillus niger	MOLD	GLUCAMYLASE
Trichoderma reesii	MOLD	CELLULASE
Saccharomyces cerevisiae	YEAST	INVERTASE
Kluyveromyces fragilis	YEAST	LACTASE
Saccharomycopsis lipolytica	YEAST	LIPASE
Aspergillus	MOLD	PECTINASES AND PROTEASES
Bacillus	BACTERIUM	PROTEASES
Endothia parasitica	MOLD	MICROBIAL RENNET
POLYSACCHARIDES		
Leuconostoc mesenteroides	BACTERIUM	DEXTRAN
Xanthomonas campestris	BACTERIUM	XANTHAN GUM
PHARMACEUTICALS		
Penicillum chrysogenum	MOLD	PENICILLINS
Cephalosporium acremonium	MOLD	CEPHALOSPORINS
Streptomyces	BACTERIUM	AMPHOTERICIN *B*, KANAMYCINS, NEOMYCINS, STREPTOMYCIN, TETRACYCLINES AND OTHERS
Bacillus brevis	BACTERIUM	GRAMICIDIN *S*
Bacillus subtilis	BACTERIUM	BACITRACIN
Bacillus polymyxa	BACTERIUM	POLYMYXIN *B*
Rhizopus nigricans	MOLD	STEROID TRANSFORMATION
Arthrobacter simplex	BACTERIUM	STEROID TRANSFORMATION
Mycobacterium	BACTERIUM	STEROID TRANSFORMATION
HYBRIDOMAS	——	IMMUNOGLOBULINS AND MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES
MAMMALIAN CELL LINES	——	INTERFERON
Escherichia coli (via recombinant-DNA technology)	BACTERIUM	INSULIN, HUMAN GROWTH HORMONE, SOMATOSTATIN, INTERFERON
CAROTENOIDS		
Blakeslea trispora	MOLD	BETA-CAROTENE
Phaffia rhodozyma	YEAST	ASTAXANTHIN
ENTOMOPATHOGENIC BACTERIA		
Bacillus thuringiensis	BACTERIUM	BIOINSECTICIDES
Bacillus popilliae	BACTERIUM	BIOINSECTICIDES

ferment sugars into various products along with lactic acid.

Another prokaryote, *Corynebacterium glutamicum,* as I have noted, is a major industrial source of lysine and of flavor-enhancing 5′-nucleotides. The coryneform bacteria tend to be irregular in shape; they are sometimes branched rather than simply club-shaped (as the Greek *coryne,* club, suggests). The cells are generally nonmotile, Gram-positive and lack the ability to form endospores. The genus contains species that are pathogenic to animals and plants, but there are also soil-inhabiting species that are nonpathogenic and of industrial interest. Although the cells are facultative anaerobes, they grow best aerobically. Corynebacteria make a catalase enzyme that decomposes hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) into water and oxygen.

Another large group of prokaryotic soil organisms, the true actinomycetes, are strict aerobes with simple nutritional requirements. They include many genera whose vegetative development is exclusively mycelium. They are Gram-positive and do not form endospores. By far the largest genus in the group is *Streptomyces,* whose species assumed major importance when it was discovered that they secrete useful antibiotics. The characteristic smell of damp forest soil is caused by volatile compounds elaborated by *Streptomyces.* When actinomycetes are grown on a solid medium, they not only form a finely branched mycelium but also give rise to aerial hyphae that differentiate into chains of conidiospores. Each conidiospore in turn can generate a mycelial microcolony. Another genus of the true actinomycetes is *Micromonospora,* some of whose species also secrete antibiotics. Their colonies are devoid of aerial mycelia. Instead conidiospores are formed singly at the tips of short hyphal branches throughout the colony.

Human cells were first cultured in laboratory glassware early in this century. No significant industrial use was found for mammalian tissue cultures, however, until the early 1950's; then it was found that the virus of poliomyelitis could be grown in cultures of monkey and human tissue for the manufacture of vaccines. Interest in human cell lines has greatly increased since then with the application of cell cultures in the isolation and growth of other viruses, in the production of highly specif-

MAIN INDUSTRIAL PRODUCTS obtained with the help of microorganisms range from some of the oldest (beer, cheese and leavened bread) to the newest creations of recombinant-DNA technology (insulin, human growth hormone). Cell technology has recently been broadened to include the culture of mammalian cells as sources of new products.

ic proteins (such as interferon and antibodies), in cancer research and in antiviral chemotherapy.

Mammalian cells are of course eukaryotic and are generally more complex in their internal organization than fungal or yeast cells. One fundamental difference between mammalian cells and the cells of microorganisms is that mammalian cells have no tough outer wall; their cytoplasm is enclosed only by a thin membrane. This plasma membrane regulates the uptake of nutrients needed for cell maintenance and division and the release of cellular metabolic products. In somatic tissues (tissues other than reproductive ones) the cells are diploid and divide by mitosis. Constriction of the membranes serves to divide the cell in two. Cellular division takes on the order of 24 hours compared with one and a half to two and a half hours for yeasts and 20 to 60 minutes for bacteria. Normally mammalian cells are arranged in three-dimensional structures such as organs and muscles, but when they are grown in tissue culture, they can float free or form a layer one cell thick on a surface.

The nutritional requirements of mammalian cells are a good deal more complex than those of eukaryotic microorganisms. Mammalian cells must be supplied with a mixture of amino acids for the synthesis of proteins and with purines and pyrimidines for the synthesis of nucleic acids. The growth medium, which must be made up with very pure deionized water, must contain glucose as a source of carbon and energy, a mixture of vitamins and a balanced mixture of minerals to maintain the cells at the appropriate osmotic pressure and to buffer the medium at the optimum *p*H (about 7.2). The medium must also be supplied with small amounts of antibiotics to control bacterial infection and must consist of 5 to 20 percent blood serum (either human or fetal bovine). In some cases specific serum proteins can serve as a satisfactory replacement for whole serum when it is necessary to have a culture free of serum. For optimum growth the culture must be held close to 37 degrees Celsius. Below 36 degrees C. the cells divide very slowly or not at all; above 38 degrees they die. Most mammalian cell lines, including human ones, can be stored indefinitely if they are cooled slowly to −180 degrees. Special media are needed for frozen storage.

Mammalian cell lines are commonly started from embryonic tissue. The usual procedure is to obtain a suspension of single cells by treating the dispersed tissue with the digestive enzyme trypsin. If a suspension of tissue cells in a nutrient medium is allowed to settle onto the flat surface of a culture vessel, the cells flatten out and divide to form a layer one cell thick. When growth is well established, subcultures can be started by carefully breaking up clumps or sheets of cells. Some types of cells can also be grown in suspension. The usual technique employs cylindrical roller bottles that are rotated slowly about their long axis. Cell yields can be enhanced by adding to the suspension small microcarrier beads made from inert synthetic polymers. Submerged cultures have also been achieved in agitated vessels with a capacity of more than 1,000 liters.

A small number of therapeutically useful proteins and polypeptides, such as human insulin and somatostatin (a peptide chain consisting of only 14 amino acid units), are being obtained from bacterial cells, notably *E. coli,* into which the gene for making the desired product has been introduced by recombinant-DNA techniques. The separation of such proteins from microbial proteins and other cell constituents, many of them highly toxic, presents major difficulties. The removal of foreign proteins can be avoided or simplified by the use of mammalian (including human) cell lines that have been modified to increase their productivity.

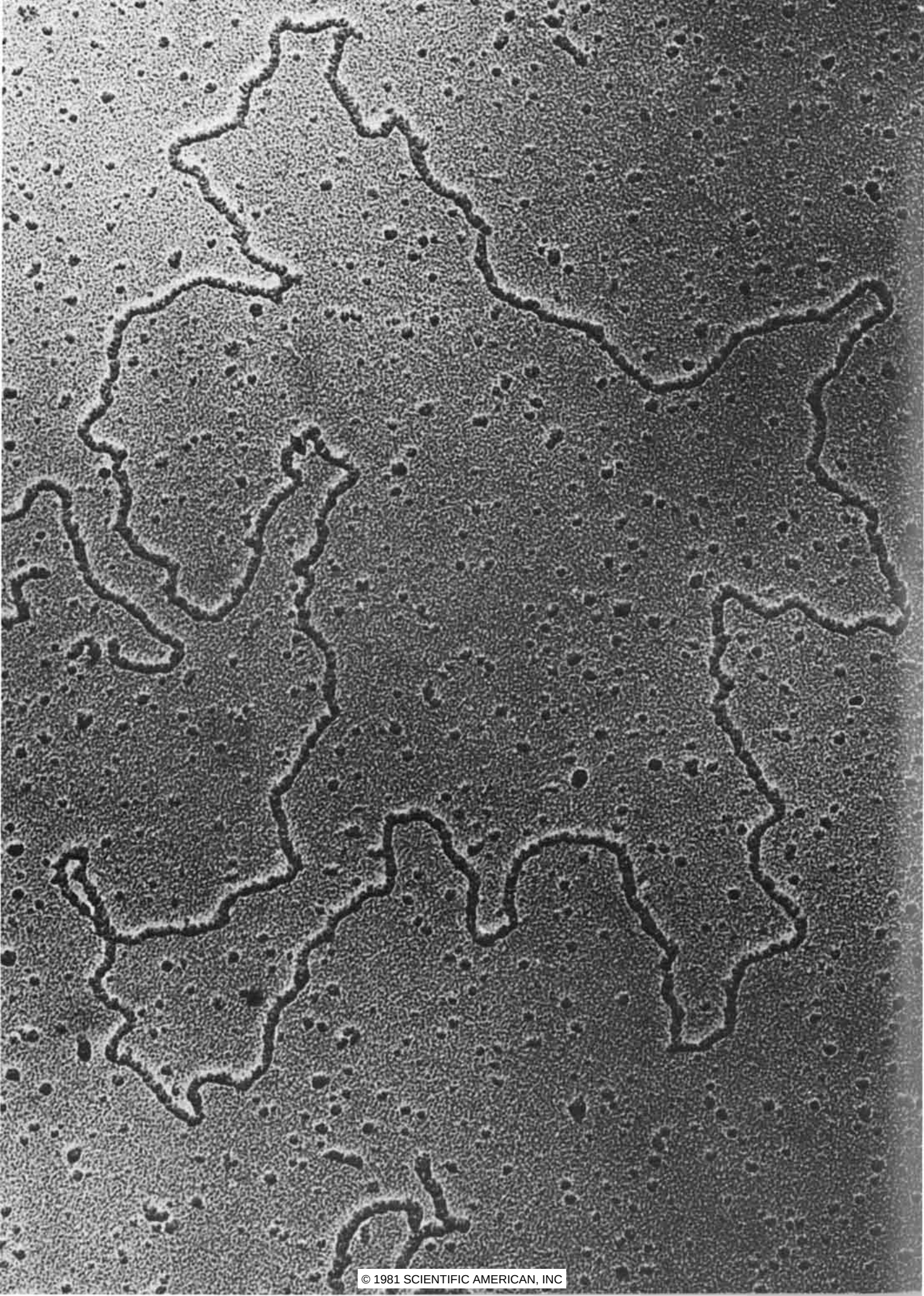
One protein that is currently being made on a substantial scale (although it is still a laboratory one) from mammalian cell lines is the antiviral agent interferon. There are many kinds of interferon, not only interferons from different mammalian species but also different interferons from the same species. One of the chief problems that had to be overcome in obtaining interferon from cultured cells is the extremely low concentration of interferon made by cells. The production process starts with the growing of a particular cell line for about a week in a nutrient medium. At that stage little or no interferon is being synthesized. The nutrient is then replaced with an inducer medium that typically contains a mixture of polyinosine-cytosine RNA (a synthetic double-strand RNA) and diethylaminoethyl dextran. The two compounds induce the cells to start manufacturing interferon. Before the cells begin to excrete interferon the medium is replaced once more with a medium containing additional substances (such as insulin and guanosine phosphate or low concentrations of serum albumin) that have been found to increase the yield of interferon or to increase its stability. Finally the medium is collected, concentrated, dialyzed and freeze-dried.

The resulting material contains only about .1 percent of pure interferon, so that other purification methods must come into play. One of the most effective and specific is immunoaffinity chromatography. Monoclonal antibodies with an affinity for a particular type of interferon can be attached to polysaccharide beads, which are placed in a glass column. When the crude interferon solution is passed through the column, the interferon molecules are adsorbed on the beads while the impurities pass through the column. The interferon is released from the beads and eluted from the column by altering the *p*H of the column with a suitable washing solution. In a single passage through the column the interferon activity can be raised some 5,000-fold.

Monoclonal antibodies have themselves only recently become available in industrial quantities through techniques in which normal mammalian cells are hybridized with myeloma cells of malignant tumors of the immune system. The normal immune system is capable of manufacturing at least a million different kinds of antibodies to combat and inactivate foreign proteins or other antigens that may invade the body. A malignant myeloma cell, however, synthesizes only a single type of antibody, an immunoglobulin protein that may be any one of the almost innumerable proteins possible. Myeloma cells proliferate rapidly and can be cultured indefinitely from a single cell. They cannot, however, be induced to yield antibodies to a specific antigen.

That difficulty was overcome in 1975 when Cesar Milstein and his colleagues at the Medical Research Council Laboratory of Molecular Biology in Cambridge, England, conceived the idea of fusing mouse myeloma cells with *B* lymphocytes from the spleen of a mouse immunized with a specific antigen. The resulting "hybridoma," or hybrid myeloma, cells had the properties of both parent cells: immortality and the ability to secrete large amounts of a single, specific type of antibody. Many details in the selection of hybrid cells had to be worked out, including the genetic properties of the hybrid animal cells.

Milstein's work has opened a new era of experimental immunology. The problems previously associated with heteroantiserums, that is, serums containing mixtures of antibodies, could in principle now be circumvented. In 1980 Carlo M. Croce and his co-workers at the Wistar Institute of Anatomy and Biology in Philadelphia succeeded in generating a stable, antigen-producing intraspecific human hybridoma by fusing *B* lymphocytes from a patient suffering from multiple myeloma with peripheral lymphocytes from a patient with subacute panencephalitis. The hybridoma cells of this fusion were found to secrete molecules of human immunoglobulin *M* specific for components of the measles virus. Although only a limited number of human cell lines lead to hybridomas that actively secrete specific antibodies, Croce's work indicates the possibility of obtaining human *B*-cell hybrids that continuously secrete human antibodies against a variety of pathogenic viruses. The potential for improving human immunotherapy is therefore great.



The Genetic Programming of Industrial Microorganisms

The useful products made by microorganisms are specified by genes. The genes in turn are specified by intensive selection, and now by direct intervention such as introducing genes from other organisms

by David A. Hopwood

A microorganism is a finely integrated machine that has evolved to serve its own purposes: survival and reproduction. A "wild type" bacterium or yeast cell has become closely adapted through natural selection to its environment and to competition with other species; it is not adapted to the manufacture of some substance that happens to be sought after by man. Modern industrial microbiology calls for the selection or construction of freak organisms, genetically programmed to make a normal metabolic product in amounts that would be a disastrous drain on a wild organism's resources of energy and nutrients or even to make a product that is not part of its normal repertory.

The first steps toward controlling and improving microbiological processes were taken only a little more than 100 years ago, when bacteria and fungi that made desired commodities were isolated and grown in pure cultures and it became possible to select strains particularly suited to a given task.

The purposeful breeding of special industrial strains became possible only later, as something was learned about microbial genetics. First came the discovery of some of the mechanisms of mutation: the sudden change of a gene, the unit of hereditary information, into a new form. Mutations were induced in the laboratory by means of X rays as early as 1927, and the discovery after 1945 of a wide range of other potent mutagenic radiations and chemical mutagens gave microbiologists a powerful set of tools for changing the genetic composition of their cultures. The mid-1940's also saw advances in genetics that made it possible to reshuffle genetic information by recombining genes from two or more organisms: bacteria were found to reproduce sexually by a bizarre form of mating and even by the exchange of naked DNA, and novel genetic systems were discovered in fungi. Improved understanding of these processes initiated the explosive advance in microbial genetics and molecular biology that is still under way today.

In the years after World War II the fermentation industry underwent important changes, both in its capabilities and in the volume of its output, with the industrial production of antibiotics. Penicillin had been manufactured during the war, and it was followed by a growing list of new antibiotics effective against a broad range of bacterial and fungal diseases. Then new fermentations were developed in which microorganisms yielded other pure chemicals such as amino acids (the components of proteins) and nucleotides (the components of DNA). Such chemicals could not be manufactured economically by wild-type organisms. Their industrial production depended on genetic manipulation, and so the new fermentation industry and a new science of microbial genetics developed in parallel. For a long time, however (and to the frustration of some academic geneticists), it was the exception rather than the rule for the science of genetics to make an appreciable contribution to the genetic programming of industrial microorganisms.

That situation changed dramatically after the announcement in 1973 of experiments involving recombinant DNA and molecular cloning. New techniques were developed that make it possible (in principle) to transfer genes from any source into any microorganism. These techniques of genetic engineering are powerful laboratory tools for revealing the structure and function of genes. And they have immense potential for the breeding of industrial strains of microorganisms that can make such completely new fermentation products as human insulin or growth hormone and also for the rational development of new strains better suited to making traditional fermentation products. Genetic engineering has caught the imagination of industrial managers and entrepreneurs, but it is only the capstone of an edifice of microbial genetics built over the past 35 years; it is only one (albeit the most exciting) of the many facets of the genetic programming of industrial microorganisms.

Genetic information is stored in living cells in the threadlike molecule of DNA. In a typical bacterium the basic set of information is encoded in a single long, tangled molecule of DNA: the bacterial chromosome. It is a double helix each strand of which is a chain of nucleotides. Each nucleotide is characterized by one of four bases: adenine (*A*), guanine (*G*), thymine (*T*) and cytosine (*C*). The bases are complementary: an adenine in one strand pairs with a thymine in the other strand, and guanine pairs with cytosine. The molecule is a closed loop at least a millimeter in circumference (tightly folded to fit inside a bacterial cell perhaps a thousandth of a millimeter in diameter) consisting of several billion base pairs. The total information content of the bacterium is

PLASMID isolated from a bacterium is enlarged 115,000 diameters in the electron micrograph on the opposite page. Plasmids are small circular (closed loop) molecules of the genetic material DNA that exist outside the bacterial chromosome. They play a major role in the genetic programming of microorganisms because they can be transferred from one strain to another (even of a different species) and can serve as vectors for introducing completely new genetic information, by means of recombinant-DNA techniques, into bacteria. This plasmid was isolated from *Streptomyces coelicolor* by Mervyn Bibb in the author's laboratory and was shadowed with platinum, exaggerating its thickness; the double helix of DNA is about 10 micrometers in circumference, comprising about 30,000 base pairs of DNA, enough for some 30 genes.

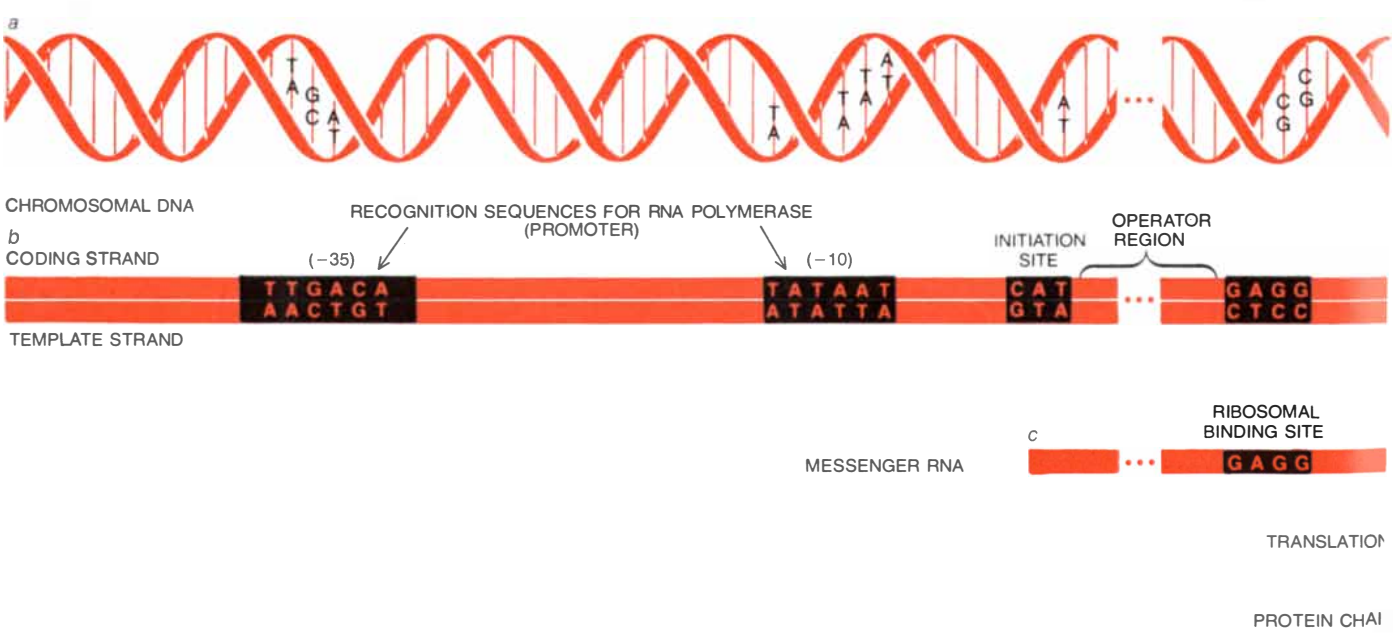
in a set of several thousand "structural genes" (each one perhaps 1,000 base pairs long) that specify the same number of proteins, mostly enzymes. The information is encoded in the sequence of the bases on one strand of DNA, each three-base "codon" specifying one of the 20 amino acids; a structural gene directs the cell's machinery to assemble some hundreds of amino acid units into a particular linear sequence to form a particular protein.

Not all of the DNA has this coding function. Base sequences adjacent to the structural genes control their expression: their transcription into a messenger RNA complementary to the DNA template and the translation of the messenger RNA into protein on the cellular organelles called ribosomes. Two control regions regulate transcription. One is the promoter, a short sequence that enables the enzyme RNA polymerase to bind to the DNA and move along it, initiating transcription of the coding strand into RNA at a point before the beginning of the structural gene; the other control region is a signal to terminate transcription at the end of the structural gene. In genes that respond to the current concentration of particular metabolites in the cell (or in a culture medium) additional sites in the promoter and terminator regions interact with DNA-binding regulatory proteins. For example, an "operator" sequence between the promoter and the structural gene may bind a "repressor" protein, itself the product of a specific regulator gene; the binding of a repressor, perhaps only in the presence of a particular metabolite, prevents the transcription of the structural gene. Other sequences, having been transcribed into messenger RNA, control translation. A "ribosomal binding site" fixes the RNA to the ribosome, allowing translation to begin at a "start" signal, the first codon of the structural gene; a "stop" signal at the end of the gene triggers the release of the completed protein chain.

Rational genetic programming depends on a clear understanding of these characteristics of DNA and of their differences in various organisms. Changes within a coding region, for example, can alter the amino acid sequence of an enzyme and thereby affect its activity. The slight alteration of a promoter sequence can increase the probability that RNA polymerase will bind to the promoter, and so enhance the rate of transcription. Mutations in operator regions or in a regulator gene can prevent the binding of a repressor and thereby greatly increase (derepress) transcription. Moreover, genes transplanted from one organism to an unrelated organism will be expressed only if the promoters and ribosomal-binding sites of the two organisms are similar enough.

The genetic code and the essential biochemistry of transcription and translation are the same in prokaryotes (bacteria) and eukaryotes (all higher organisms, from algae to man), but the control signals are different. So is the organization and expression of the DNA. In eukaryotes the DNA is complexed with protein and divided among a number of discrete chromosomes grouped within a membrane-bounded nucleus. Such eukaryotic organisms as fungi have perhaps 10 times as much DNA as bacteria; the higher plants and animals have thousands of times as much. The increase in DNA content is far in excess of the increase in the number of genes, in part because many genes in eukaryotes are split: noncoding intervening sequences ("introns") lie within the structural genes. Introns are transcribed along with the coding sequences ("exons") but are not expressed; they are removed in a splicing process that brings a gene's exons together to form the mature messenger RNA that is translated into protein. Introns are rare in the genes of fungi, but they are present in most genes of the higher eukaryotes. Their presence complicates recombinant-DNA manipulations because a bacterium lacks the enzymes for splicing them out of the primary RNA transcript, so that a natural eukaryotic gene containing introns cannot be expressed in bacteria.

The development of a tailor-made industrial microorganism from a wild bacterium or fungus calls for changing its genetic information in a way that eliminates undesirable properties, accentuates desirable properties or introduces entirely new ones. There are several ways to bring such changes about. One way is to take advantage of mutations or to induce them. The simplest



GENETIC INFORMATION is stored in the double helix of DNA (*a*). Each strand of the helix is a chain of nucleotides, each comprising a deoxyribose sugar and a phosphate group, which form the strand's backbone, as well as one of four bases: adenine (*A*), guanine (*G*), thymine (*T*) and cytosine (*C*). The information is encoded in the sequence of the bases along a strand. The complementarity of the bases (*A* always pairs with *T*, and *G* with *C*) is the basis of the replication of DNA from generation to generation and of its expression (shown here for bacterial DNA) as protein. Expression begins with the transcription of the DNA base sequence (*b*) into a strand of messenger RNA (*c*), which corresponds to the coding strand of the DNA except for the fact that uracil (*U*) replaces thymine. Transcription into RNA and translation into protein are regulated by special sequences (*black*) in the DNA and RNA respectively. The transcribing enzyme, RNA

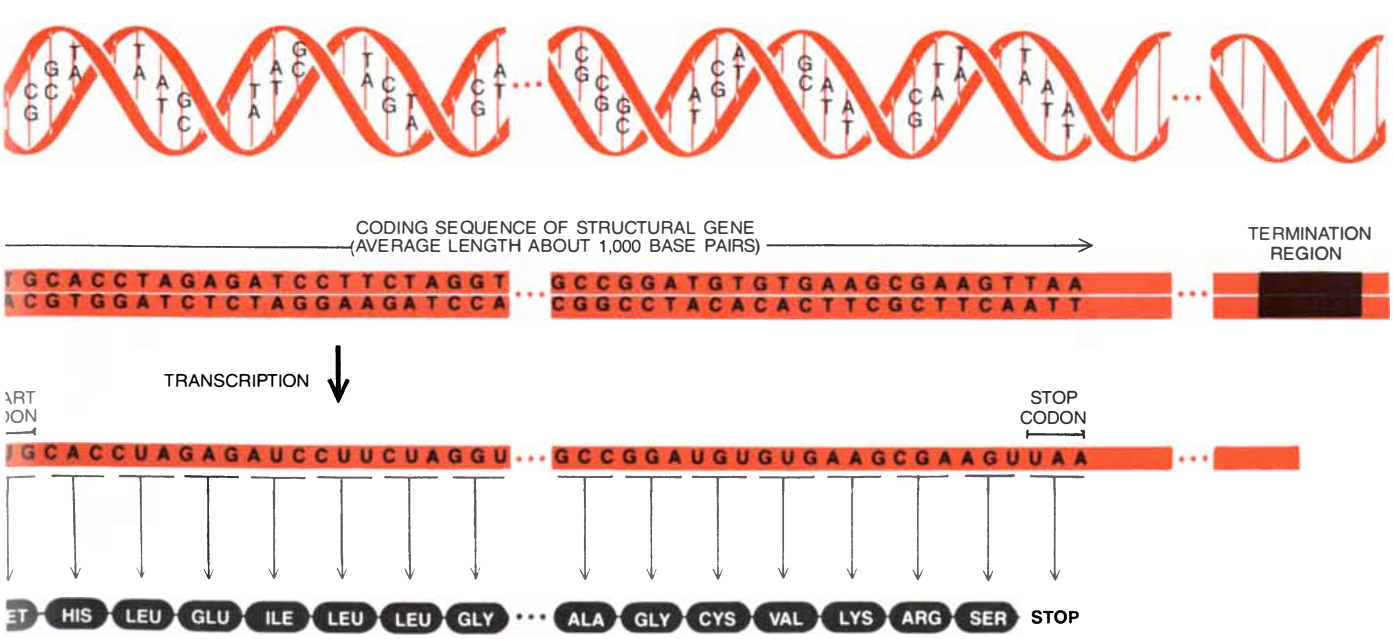
kind of mutation is a point mutation: the change of one base pair (say adenine-thymine) to another (guanine-cytosine). In other instances a base pair or a short stretch of DNA may be deleted from a sequence, or a new base pair may be inserted. These changes are natural occurrences in any DNA, probably as the result of errors in its replication from generation to generation, but spontaneous mutations are rare, affecting a given base pair only about once in 100 million replications. The frequency of mutation can be increased at least a thousandfold by exposing microorganisms to such mutagens as ultraviolet radiation, ionizing radiation (X rays, gamma rays or neutrons) and a host of apparently unrelated chemical compounds that can react with DNA bases or interfere with DNA replication.

Mutagens hit genes at random. Each agent may act specifically on particular bases or groups of bases (for example, ultraviolet radiation tends to link two adjacent thymines on the same strand of DNA), but all genes are chains of the same bases. It is therefore usually impossible to cause a particular gene to mutate preferentially (even though in any gene particular treatments tend to cause mutations primarily at certain positions). To improve a strain by mutation one must rely on sensitive tests that make it possible to recognize the rare mutants that happen to have a desired characteristic.

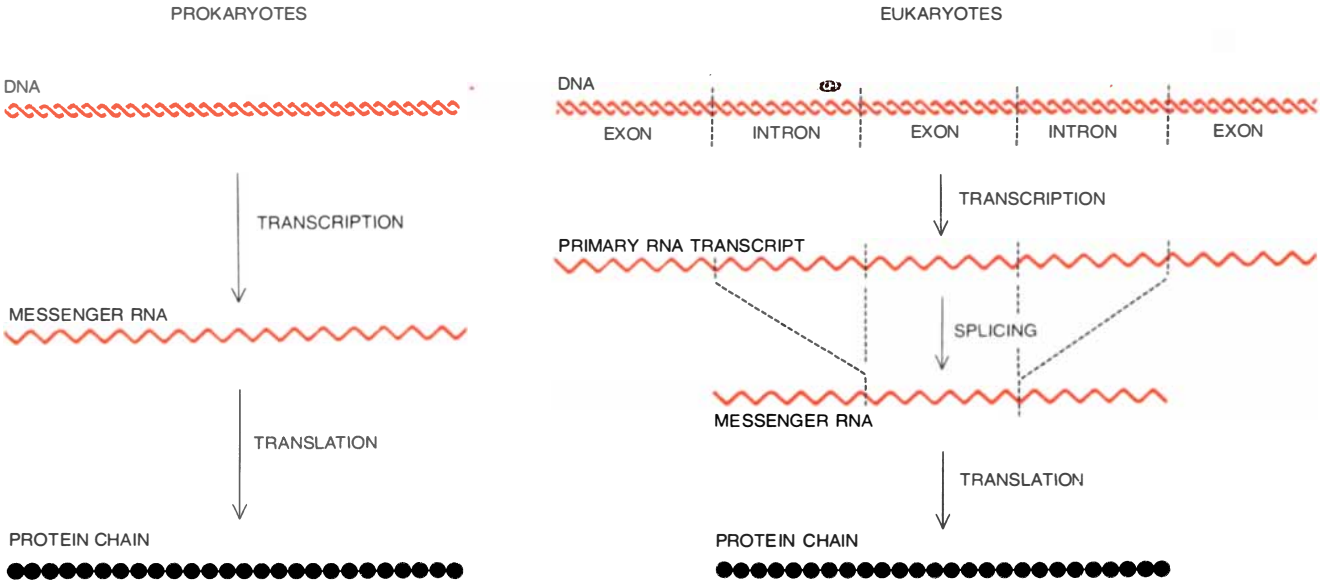
Some procedures are straightforward. To select mutants resistant to a chemical that inhibits the growth of unmutated strains, for example, one can spread many millions of cells of the starting strain on a culture plate containing the inhibitor; only the resistant mutants proliferate and form colonies. Other kinds of mutants can be found only by testing the properties of random colonies in individual culture vessels or even in small versions of industrial fermenters; in such instances potent mutagens are required so that one can hope to find the desired mutant by examining thousands, rather than millions, of individuals. Two very different strategies for improving industrial microorganisms through mutational reprogramming are illustrated by examples involving the production of amino acids and antibiotics.

Lysine is an essential amino acid in animal nutrition (one that the animal cannot synthesize itself), but many plant proteins are deficient in it. Lysine is therefore produced by fermentation to serve as a supplement to animal feeds. The fermentation is based on an understanding in detail of both the pathway leading to bacterial biosynthesis of the amino acid and the pathway's genetic regulation. Skillful exploitation of that knowledge has made it possible to select mutant strains of *Brevibacterium flavum* and *Corynebacterium glutamicum* that convert more than a third of the sugar in a fermentation medium into lysine, yielding concentrations of as much as 75 grams of lysine per liter of medium. In these bacteria lysine is one end product of a branched pathway that also leads to the synthesis of the amino acids methionine and threonine. The main control ensuring the synthesis of enough of these amino acids to meet the needs of the bacterium, but not too much, is a feedback inhibition of the first enzyme of the pathway, aspartate kinase, by threonine and lysine acting together. That is, the accumulation of these two amino acids in excess of the organism's requirements tends to shut down their synthesis by inhibiting the enzyme's activity; conversely, a shortage of threonine or lysine increases their rate of synthesis.

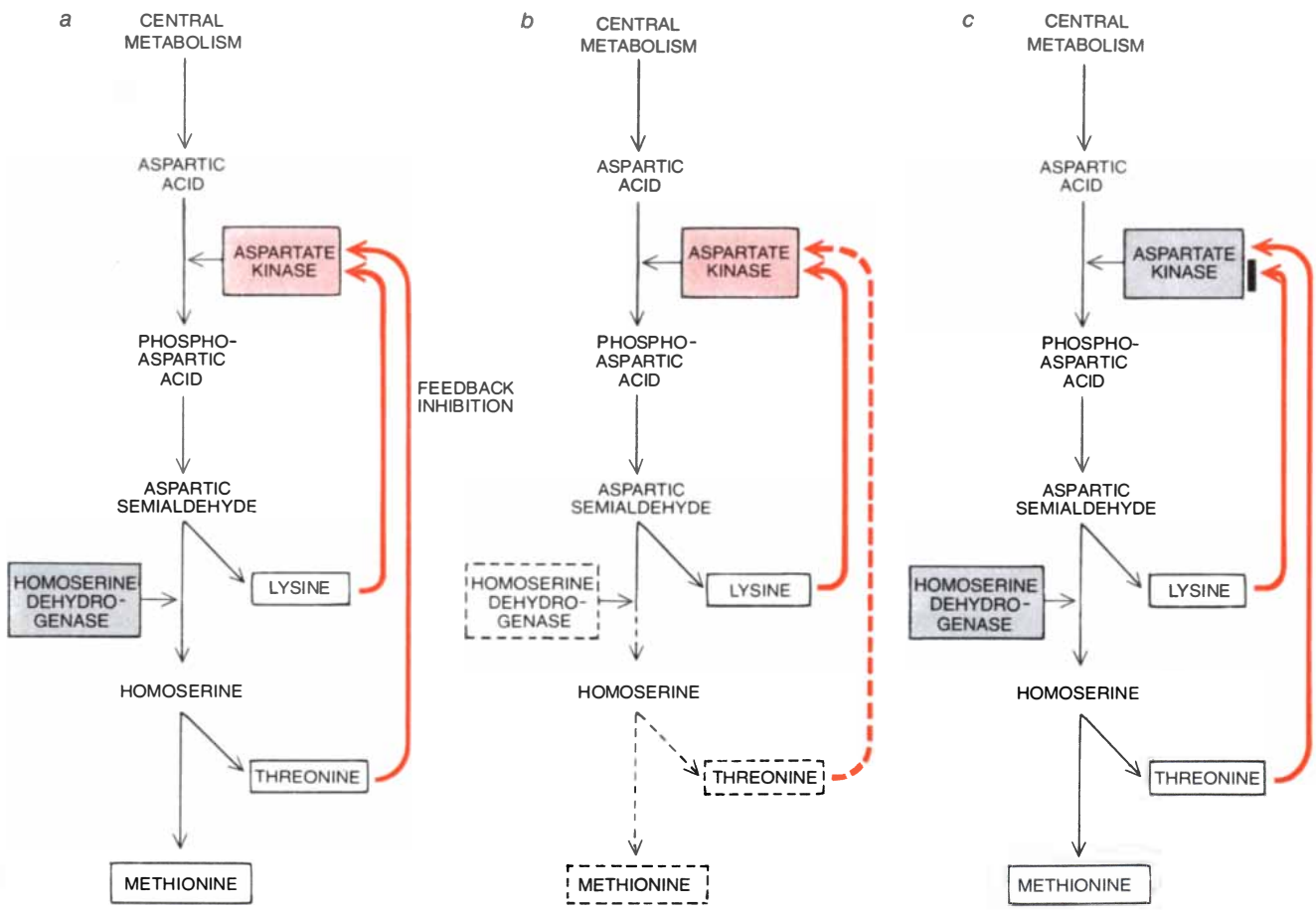
Overproduction of lysine, far beyond the bacterium's own needs, has been achieved by isolating two kinds of mutant. In one kind a mutation in the gene coding for the enzyme homoserine dehydrogenase abolishes the enzyme's activity and thereby prevents the bacterium from making threonine (one of the inhibitory products) and methionine. When this auxotroph, or nutritionally deficient mutant, is cultured in a medium with just enough threonine and methionine to support growth but not enough threonine to cooperate with lysine in shutting off aspartate kinase's activity, the pathway to lysine continues to operate at full speed. Auxotrophic mutants are selected by testing thousands of colonies that have been treated with a mutagen; auxotrophs grow only if particular growth factors (in this case methionine and threonine) are supplied in the medium. Auxotrophs can be iso-



polymerase, binds to a promoter region that (in the bacterium *Escherichia coli*) has the specific sequences shown (or minor variations of them) about 10 base pairs and 35 base pairs before a transcription-initiation site; beyond the end of the structural gene a termination region causes the polymerase to cease transcription. In some genes an operator sequence, which can bind a repressor molecule, provides an extra control. Messenger RNA is translated on the cellular organelles called ribosomes; each triplet of bases (codon) encodes a particular amino acid and specifies its incorporation into the growing protein chain. A ribosomal binding site on the RNA allows translation to begin at a "start" codon, which is always *AUG* for the amino acid methionine (*Met*). Translation proceeds until a "stop" codon is reached (*UAA* is one of three possibilities) that signals the end of translation and detachment of completed protein chain from ribosome.



EXPRESSION OF DNA is different in prokaryotes (bacteria) and eukaryotes (higher organisms). In prokaryotes the genetic information, encoded in a continuous stretch of the DNA double helix that constitutes a structural gene, is transcribed directly into messenger RNA, which is translated to make a protein. In eukaryotes, on the other hand, some structural genes (most of them, in the higher eukaryotes) are split: coding sequences ("exons") are separated by noncoding intervening sequences ("introns"). Entire gene is transcribed to make primary RNA transcript. Then intron transcripts are excised and exon transcripts are spliced together to make messenger RNA.



MUTATIONAL REPROGRAMMING yields bacterial strains that produce large amounts of the essential amino acid lysine. In wild-type strains (*a*) lysine is one product, along with the amino acids threonine and methionine, of a branched pathway controlled primarily by feedback inhibition: the activity of the enzyme aspartate kinase is inhibited by excess quantities of lysine and threonine acting together. The control is circumvented in two kinds of mutant strains. In one kind (*b*) a mutation inactivates the enzyme homoserine dehydrogenase, thereby preventing threonine from accumulating and inhibiting aspartate kinase. In the other kind (*c*) the gene coding for aspartate kinase itself is mutated; the altered enzyme functions, but it is not inhibited by lysine even when lysine is present in excess.

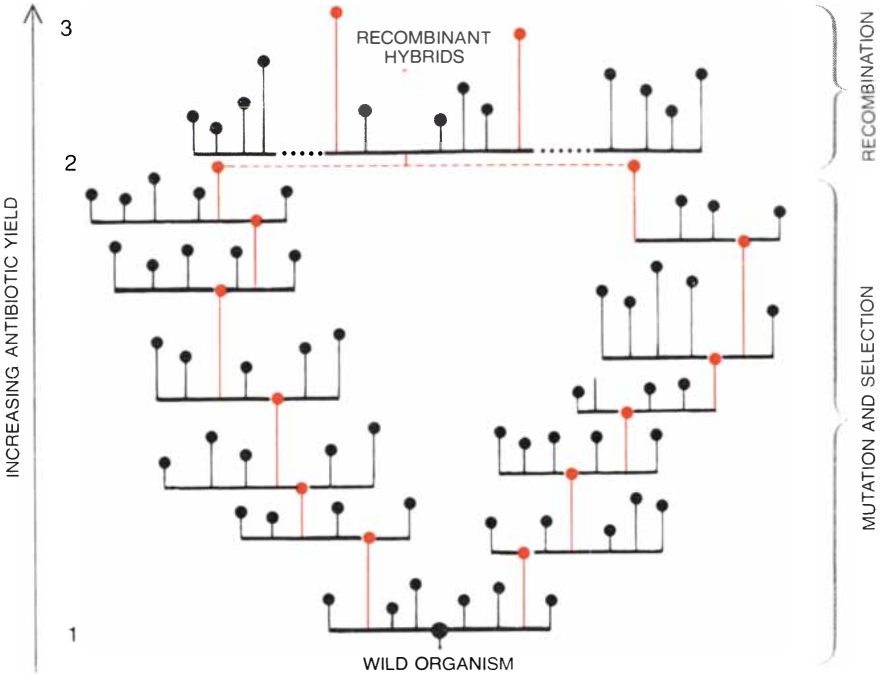
lated more efficiently by inoculating a mutagenized culture into a medium that lacks the appropriate growth factors and contains penicillin, which kills only proliferating bacteria; the auxotrophs cannot grow and so they survive, whereas the unmutated bacteria are killed.

A different kind of mutant has an altered form of aspartate kinase itself, which performs well enough as an enzyme but does not react with lysine and has therefore lost its sensitivity to feedback inhibition; again, high levels of lysine accumulate in the fermenter. These mutants could be selected because they are resistant to a compound called AEC, which resembles lysine so closely that it mimics its regulatory effect, inhibiting aspartate kinase even if no lysine is being synthesized. In the presence of AEC, wild strains die as a result of lysine starvation, whereas the mutants proliferate and form colonies. Lysine production is just one example of an industrial process that depends on the rational selection of mutants in which the precise controls regulating amino acid production are disconnected.

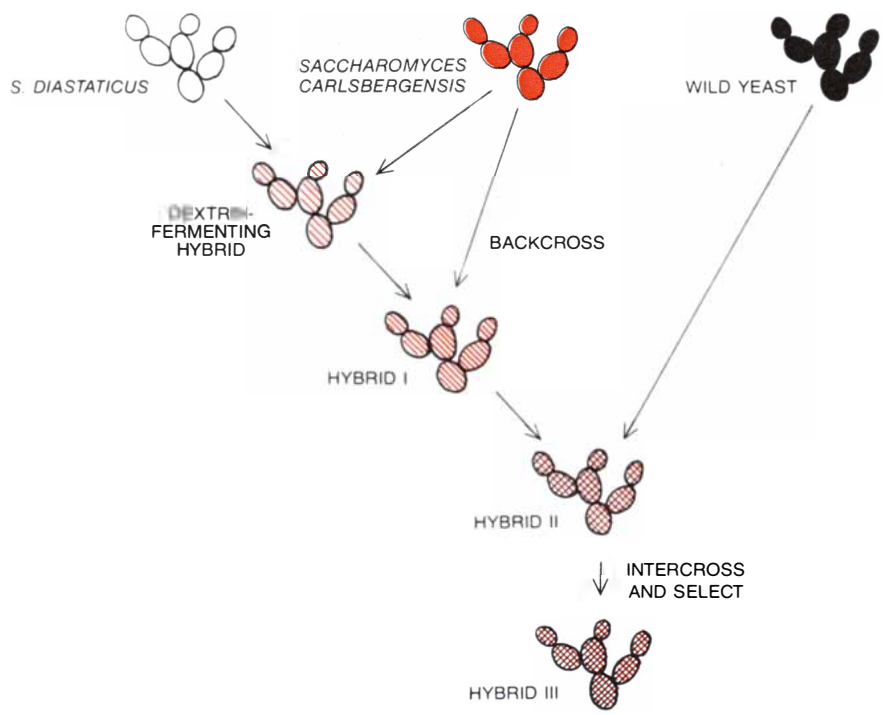
Antibiotics are very different. They are synthesized only at particular stages in the life cycle of certain molds, actinomycetes (filamentous bacteria) and spore-forming bacteria. Their genetic regulation is as yet poorly understood, but the amount of antibiotic produced certainly depends on many factors. Control systems respond to various aspects of the cell's metabolism (the availability of carbon, nitrogen and free phosphate, for example), to the synthesis of chemical building blocks needed to make the antibiotic and to the organism's resistance to its own potentially toxic antibiotic. Because the yield of an antibiotic depends on hundreds of genes, it is impossible to find individual mutations that can raise the yield from a wild strain's few milligrams per liter to an economic level, such as the 20 grams or more per liter of penicillin or tetracycline now being recovered from highly developed industrial strains respectively of *Penicillium chrysogenum* or *Streptomyces aureofaciens*.

These truly weird strains have been developed through many successive rounds of mutation and selection. In each round a culture is treated with a mutagen and thousands of the resulting colonies are examined; when a mutant displaying significantly increased productivity is found, it serves as the starting point for a new round of mutagenesis and screening. In this way the organism's evolution is channeled in an unnatural direction until a strain is developed that produces an economic yield of the antibiotic.

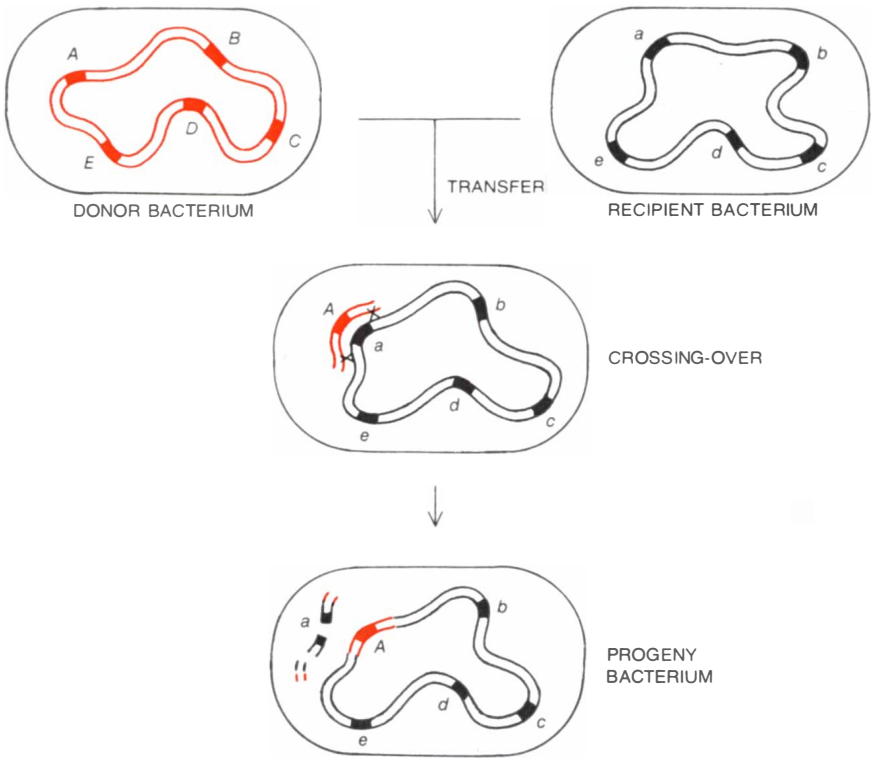
Such work is slow and labor-intensive and its results are unpredictable, because antibiotic levels are strongly influenced not only by the genes of the pro-



ANTIBIOTIC YIELD of a microorganism, which depends on a large number of genes, can be improved by mutation and selection followed by crossing, which recombines genes from two organisms. A wild strain is treated with a mutagen (*1*) and daughter colonies are screened; some of them will be better producers. The best strains (*color*) are selected and are again mutagenized. The process is repeated. The two best mutants (*2*), which in this case probably have six different mutations each and therefore differ from each other with respect to 12 genes or parts of genes, are crossed. Recombination can give rise to 2^{12} (almost 5,000) new genotypes, or sets of genetic information, many of which will lead to significantly higher antibiotic yields. Best producers (*3*) can again be subjected to recombination or to another round of mutation.



BEER YEAST *Saccharomyces carlsbergensis* converts sugars into alcohol and carbon dioxide, but it ferments only 81 percent of the sugars in the wort, or fermentation liquor. A yeast strain capable of fermenting all the sugar and thus making a very "light" beer suitable for diabetics is developed by crossing several yeast species to recombine genes encoding enzymes that convert different sugars. *S. diastaticus* ferments dextrins. Crossing it with *S. carlsbergensis* yields a dextrin-fermenting hybrid that makes unpalatable beer. Backcrossing hybrid several times with *S. carlsbergensis* yields hybrid I, which converts 90 percent of sugar and makes palatable beer. Crossing hybrid with wild yeast that ferments isomaltoses yields hybrid II, which converts 100 percent of sugar. Intercrossing strains of hybrid II yields improved strain (hybrid III).



HOMOLOGOUS RECOMBINATION takes place in bacteria when a piece of the chromosome of a donor cell enters a recipient cell by one of several natural or artificially induced processes. The donor DNA can pair with a homologous, or corresponding, region of the recipient chromosome, break and exchange segments in the process called crossing-over (× *symbol*), yielding a new combination of the donor's and the recipient's genes. In the case of the five-gene chromosome diagrammed here, one of 2^5, or 32, possible combinations of genes results: donor gene *A* replaces gene *a* in chromosome; gene *a*, excluded from chromosome, breaks down.

ducing organism but also by culture conditions. In the early stages of a yield-improving program one can find advantageous mutants simply by testing the yield of colonies growing on culture plates, but eventually the improved strains must be evaluated under conditions mimicking (as closely as possible) those that will be encountered in commercial production in giant fermenters containing 20,000 gallons (or more) of a culture medium. In spite of these difficulties several antibiotic fermentations now run at high productivity with cultures that have been developed through 20 or 30 selections spanning two decades or more.

Mutation alters a microorganism's genes. Recombination, the other basic approach to genetic programming, rearranges genes or parts of genes and brings together in an individual organism genetic information from two or more organisms. Recombination results from any of a wide variety of natural processes and laboratory techniques. Homologous recombination takes place when bacterial or eukaryotic chromosomes that have similar DNA base sequences, brought together by some mating process, exchange corresponding parts through the breaking and rejoining of DNA. In the case of eukaryotes sexual reproduction provides another shuffling process, reassortment, in which the sets of chromosomes derived from two individuals are scrambled.

Homologous recombination is amazingly effective in producing new genotypes, or sets of genetic information. If two individuals differ in n genes or parts of genes, recombination between their sets of genes will generate 2^n genotypes. Matings between microorganisms of two strains whose DNA differs in only a dozen base pairs scattered among billions of base pairs can generate 2^{12}, or almost 5,000, new genotypes. In most cases the parent cells differ more than that, and so astronomical numbers of new combinations arise when they are crossed. Although nearly all microorganisms are probably capable of exchanging genes with related strains, there are rather few instances in which the potential power of natural genetic recombination has been exploited to develop industrial cultures with desirable features derived from more than one strain. Industrial yeasts provide some examples.

The simplest life cycle in yeasts is one in which an individual strain is haploid rather than diploid. That is, it has only one set of chromosomes carrying among them a single complete set of genes, rather than (as in the case of most animals and plants) two sets of chromosomes carrying two copies of each gene. A typical yeast cell can undergo sexual reproduction, and thus genetic recombination, only when it encounters a related strain of the opposite mating type, or "sex." The two cells fuse to give rise to a temporarily diploid cell, within which haploid sexual spores are thereupon formed containing different combinations of the genes of the parent cells. Industrial yeasts may depart from this simple pattern by having several sets of chromosomes or by mating only intermittently. The hybridization of different strains—often strains of different species—has nonetheless played an important part in the development of industrial yeasts particularly well adapted to the rapid production of bread by modern factory methods, to increasing the alcohol content of liquors for distillation and to brewing special beers from which nearly all the soluble carbohydrates have been removed.

Ordinarily only members of closely related species mate successfully. The natural barriers to recombination between dissimilar organisms can often be broken down, however, by the preparation of protoplasts: bacterial or fungal cells whose tough outer walls have been removed to expose the thin cell membrane. Because cell membranes have about the same composition in most species, protoplasts of different species can be induced to fuse and form a hybrid cell, exposing their genes to recombination.

Protoplast fusion may also prove to be an effective technique for increasing the frequency of intraspecies recombination in organisms in which natural mating is a rare occurrence, as it is in many species of the actinomycete *Streptomyces*. The protoplasts are prepared by digesting the bacterial cell wall with the enzyme lysozyme; the operation is carried out in a sugar solution whose osmotic pressure balances the pressure inside the cells, which would otherwise burst the delicate cell membrane. The fusion of protoplasts of two strains is promoted by treatment with an agent such as polyethylene glycol, and in the resulting hybrid cell the DNA of the parents may be recombined. The hybrid protoplasts can then be induced to regenerate their cell wall to yield a normal culture. Fusion is so efficient that cells of two *Streptomyces* strains can be hybridized to give rise to a population in which at least one cell in five has a new combination of genes. It should be possible in this way to combine, in one step, groups of mutated genes enhancing antibiotic yield that have been accumulated laboriously in separate lines by successive rounds of mutation and selection.

Whereas homologous recombination brings about an exchange of corresponding stretches of DNA, other forms of recombination add new DNA

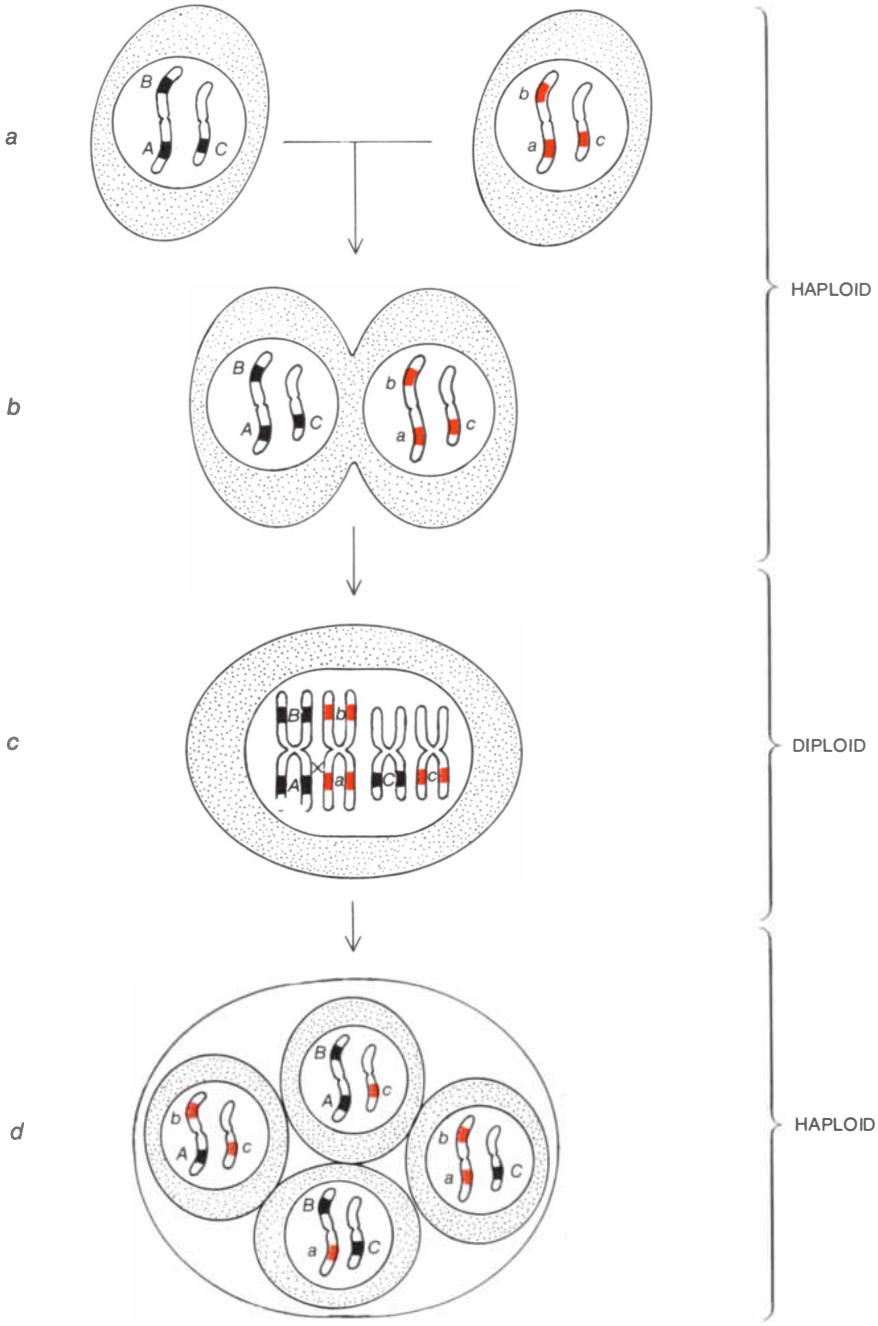
to what is already possessed by a microorganism. One such process is the transfer of plasmids. These are small circular molecules of extrachromosomal DNA, found in bacteria and in some yeasts, that are capable of autonomous replication within a cell and are inherited by daughter cells. Plasmids often carry genes that give particular bacteria specialized properties. They can be transferred from one bacterial strain to an unrelated strain, and sometimes to a different species, to introduce totally new genetic properties. Some plasmids code for structures that cause bacteria to mate, and thereby promote their own transfer from cell to cell. Plasmids can also be carried from one bacterium to another by a bacteriophage, or bacterial virus. And naked plasmid DNA, having been liberated by the bursting (either natural or induced) of its host cell, can enter a new cell in the process called transformation, which can be greatly facilitated by various laboratory techniques.

An example of microbial breeding through the transfer of naturally occurring plasmids is the construction of a bacterium that is able to metabolize, and so to degrade, most of the major hydrocarbon components of petroleum. Many strains of *Pseudomonas putida* harbor a plasmid coding for enzymes that digest a single class of hydrocarbons. Four such plasmids are *OCT*, which digests octane, hexane and decane; *XYL* (digests both xylene and toluene); *CAM* (camphor), and *NAH* (naphthalene).

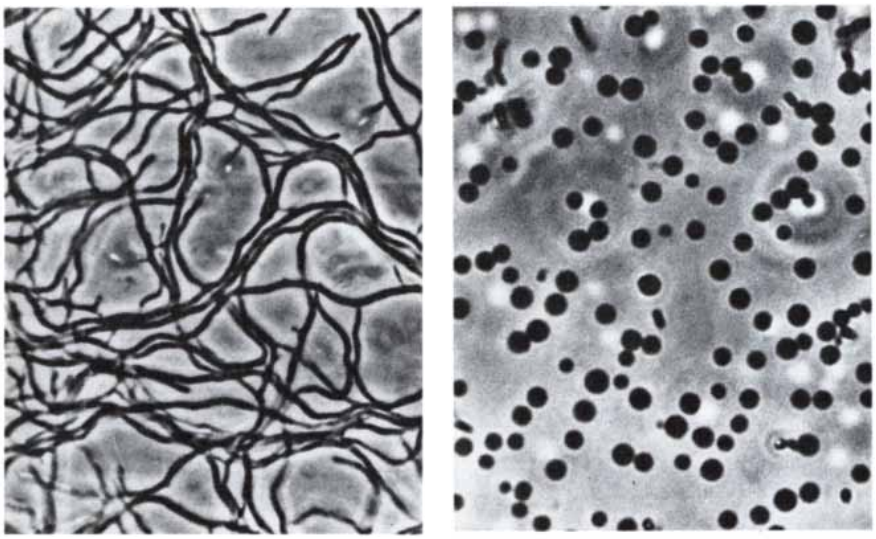
Two of the plasmids (*CAM* and *NAH*) bring about their own transfer by promoting mating between bacteria; the others do not, but they can be transferred if other plasmids that promote mating are supplied. By means of successive crosses a "superbug" has been created that carries the *XYL* and *NAH* plasmids as well as a hybrid plasmid derived by recombining parts of *CAM* and *OCT* (which are "incompatible" and cannot coexist as separate plasmids in the same bacterium). The multiplasmid bacterium grows rapidly on a diet of crude oil because it metabolizes much more of the hydrocarbon components than any one of the single-plasmid strains. Whether the superbug will be effective in cleaning up oil spills or scouring the holds of tankers remains to be seen, but it has already made legal history: its patent, the first ever granted a genetically manipulated microorganism, has been upheld by the U.S. Supreme Court.

There are other natural plasmids that carry genes coding for properties with industrial potential. In my laboratory at the John Innes Institute in Britain we have found that the synthesis of some of the antibiotics made by various *Streptomyces* species is controlled not by chromosomal DNA but by a plasmid; the diversity of these antibiotics makes different ones effective for a broad range of applications, not only in human and veterinary medicine but also as animal-feed supplements and to control some plant diseases. The transfer into a single *Streptomyces* host of various plasmids that encode different antibiotics might make it possible for their enzymes to cooperate in the synthesis of new antibiotics with new properties.

The ability to isolate plasmid DNA from a culture and induce another culture to take it up is the basis of most recombinant-DNA manipulations. A gene or genes taken from an unrelated organism, or an artificially synthesized

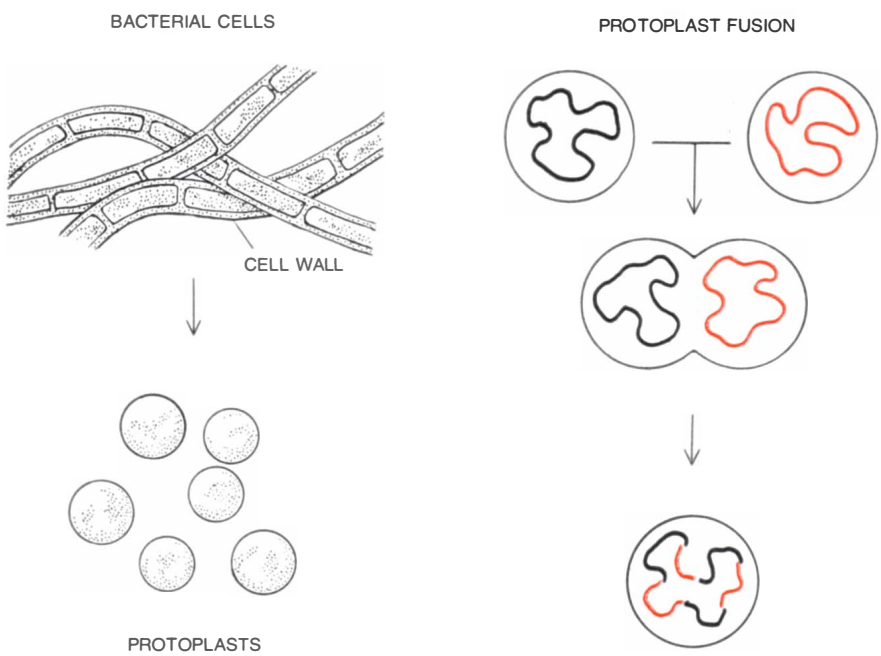


RECOMBINATION IN EUKARYOTES involves crossing-over between parts of chromosomes and the reassortment of chromosomes. A typical yeast is haploid during most of its life cycle, with a single set of 15 or more chromosomes; only two are shown here. Two cells of opposite mating types (*a*) can fuse (*b*); then the nuclei fuse to form a diploid nucleus with two complete sets of chromosomes. During meiosis (a phase of sexual reproduction) the chromosomes become double structures consisting of two chromatids (*c*). Homologous chromosomes pair and exchange parts of their chromatids by crossing-over. Then four haploid sexual spores are formed (*d*). Each spore can have a new combination of genes that were different (*black and color*) in parent cells: genes on the same chromosome (*A, a; B, b*) recombine by crossing-over and genes on different chromosomes are shuffled as members of chromosome pairs reassort.



SPHERICAL PROTOPLASTS and the bacterial cells from which they were released are enlarged about 1,500 diameters in a micrograph made by Keith Chater and the author. A tough cell wall bounds the filamentous cells of the actinomycete *Streptomyces coelicolor* (*left*). The wall is digested with the enzyme lysozyme, leaving each cell enclosed only in its thin cell membrane; the protoplasts (*right*) are spherical because they are in a concentrated sugar solution whose osmotic pressure balances the pressure inside cells. Protoplasts can be induced to fuse.

gene, can be spliced into a plasmid; the plasmid is thereupon introduced into a new microbial host. The plasmid thus serves as a vector for genes that have no counterpart in the recipient organism and therefore could not be stably inherited in it through homologous recombination; such genes can now be passed on indefinitely through successive generations as the plasmid replicates. The DNA of certain viruses can also serve as a vector, provided they can infect a microorganism and be inherited without killing the host. Many bacterial viruses (the "temperate" bacteriophages) can do this. So can some viruses that infect plants and animals, opening the way to the genetic engineering of plant and animal cells as well as microorganisms for industrial purposes.



PROTOPLAST FUSION makes it possible to recombine the genes of two species that do not mate or to enhance recombination between strains of an organism such as *Streptomyces*, which mate infrequently. Protoplasts are formed from *Streptomyces* cells (*left*). Protoplasts of two strains are treated with polyethylene glycol (*right*). The protoplasts fuse, forming a new hybrid cell containing two chromosomes, segments of which recombine to yield new genotype.

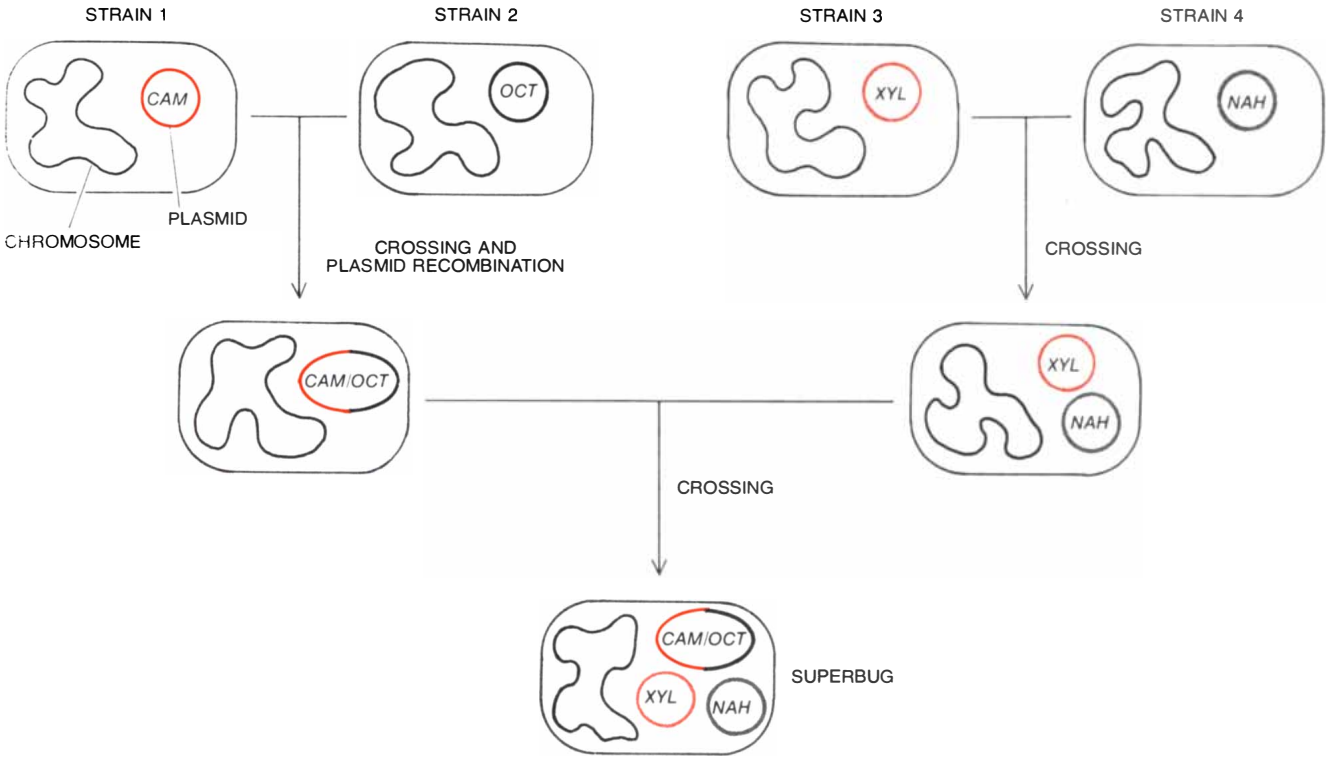
Recombinant-DNA techniques can be applied in various ways for a number of different industrial purposes. The most widely known objective is the production by a microorganism of a protein it does not normally synthesize, such as an enzyme or a hormone. Here the idea is to transfer an individual gene coding for the desired product into a host microorganism and grow the organism in volume to yield the product. (So far the bacterium *Escherichia coli* has served almost exclusively as the host because effective vector plasmids, whose DNA has been mapped in fine detail, are available for this workhorse of molecular biology; eventually it may be preferable to choose other hosts better adapted to growth in large industrial fermenters.) A rather different objective of plasmid engineering is the genetic improvement of an existing industrial strain. Instead of introducing a brand-new genetic capability one can improve the efficiency of an existing strain by modifying its genetic information. Finally, recombinant-DNA techniques should make it possible to improve the precision of a traditional approach by bringing about the mutation of specific sites in particular genes, thereby overcoming the random nature of normal mutagenesis.

The basic methods of recombinant-DNA technology can be described in terms of their application to the production of a desired protein. Work over the past few years in laboratories around the world has made it relatively easy to cut giant DNA molecules, such as those in chromosomes, into a number of short fragments with the help of special enzymes, known as restriction endonucleases, that cleave DNA at specific base-pair sites. Some of these enzymes generate fragments with "sticky ends." Fragments carrying the gene to be transferred are inserted into plasmid (or bacteriophage) vectors cut open with the same enzyme and therefore having matching ends. The resulting recombinant plasmids are introduced into *E. coli* by transformation. Clones of bacteria (colonies of cells descended from a single parent cell) that harbor the plasmid can be selected because they can grow in the presence of an antibiotic, resistance to which is imparted by a gene on the plasmid. The presence of the desired foreign fragment on the recombinant plasmid can be recognized by means of sensitive tests for the desired protein product. Bacteria harboring the plasmid can then be grown into clones of billions of cells, each cell carrying a copy of the foreign gene.

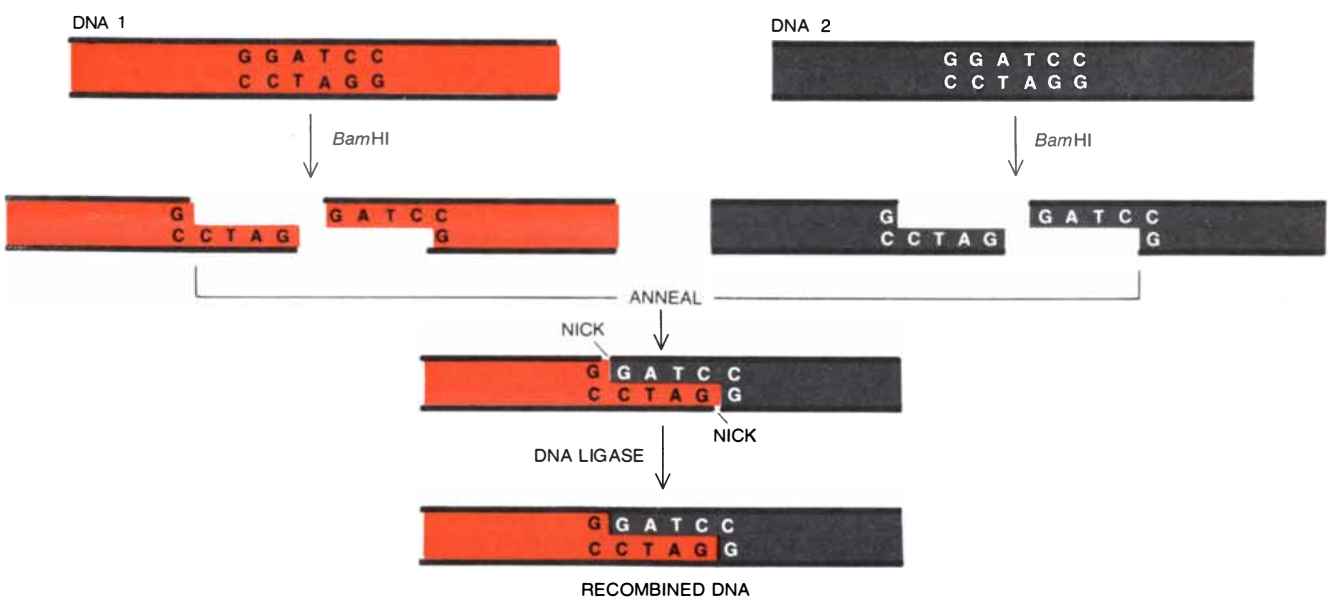
It is possible in principle, although laborious in practice, to clone just about any desired gene, say the natural human gene coding for insulin. This can be done by "shotgun" cloning of human DNA: inserting into plasmids and then into *E. coli* a random mixture of gene-

size fragments of the total human DNA complement and then searching for the right transformed bacteria among a million or so clones. Such cells will not serve as a bacterial insulin factory, however, because bacteria cannot express eukaryotic genes incorporating introns. An artificial, unsplit gene must be constructed.

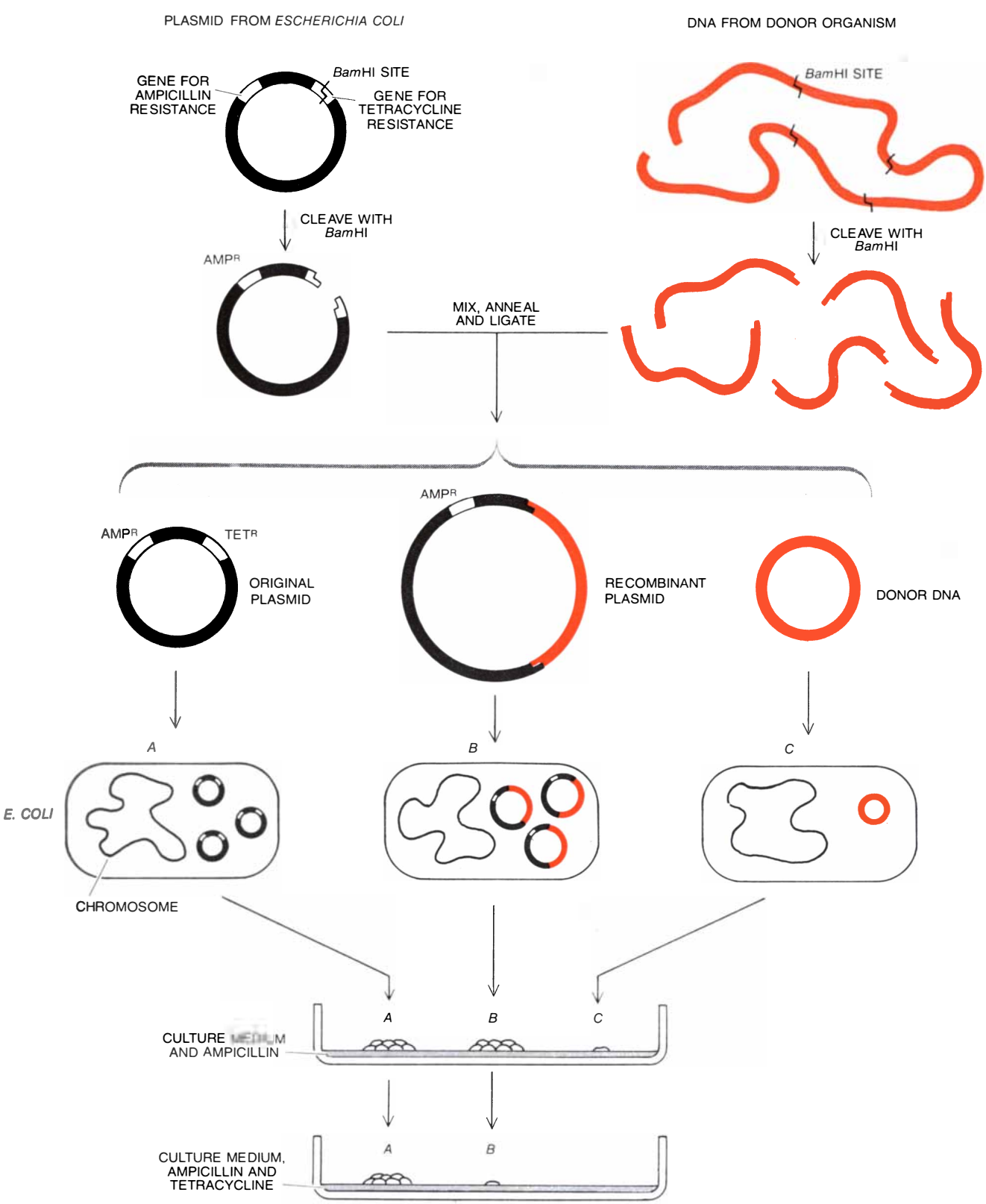
One approach is to isolate messenger RNA extracted from the human pancreas cells that make insulin. These cells are rich in insulin messenger RNA, from which the introns have already been spliced out. With the enzyme called reverse transcriptase one can make an artificial "copy DNA" carrying the uninterrupted genetic information for insulin, and the copy DNA can be cloned. Another approach (if the amino



"SUPERBUG" that can metabolize the major hydrocarbons of petroleum is constructed by the manipulation of plasmids. The ability of four different strains of *Pseudomonas putida* to metabolize either the camphor (*CAM*), octane (*OCT*), xylene (*XYL*) or naphthalene (*NAH*) family of hydrocarbons depends on enzymes whose genes are not on the chromosome but on individual plasmids. A strain that can degrade all four families is constructed by successive crosses. Because *CAM* and *OCT* plasmids cannot coexist in one cell an extra step is required: hybrid plasmid is formed in which parts of the plasmids, carrying genes encoding necessary enzymes, are recombined.



RESTRICTION ENDONUCLEASES, basic tools in recombinant-DNA technology, are bacterial enzymes that recognize particular short palindromic (rotationally symmetrical) sequences in a DNA strand and cut the strand at specific sites in those sequences. The enzyme *Bam*HI (named for its source, *Bacillus amylolyticus*) and many other endonucleases cleave DNA in a way that leaves single-strand protrusions, called "sticky ends" because their bases are complementary. Two DNA's from different sources (*color and gray*), both cleaved by *Bam*HI, can be "annealed" by base pairing. The "nicks" in backbones of annealed DNA are sealed by enzyme DNA ligase.



FOREIGN GENE is introduced into the bacterium *Escherichia coli* on a plasmid vector to yield a clone of bacteria carrying the gene. Here the plasmid carries genes for resistance to the antibiotics ampicillin and tetracycline. A plasmid treated with *Bam*HI is cleaved at one site, within the tetracycline-resistance gene; sticky ends are generated. DNA from a donor organism is cleaved by *Bam*HI into a number of fragments that have the same sticky ends. The cleaved vector and the donor DNA are mixed, annealed and ligated. A mixture of molecules is formed: recircularized plasmids (*left*), recombinant plasmids incorporating a segment of donor DNA (*center*) and circularized donor DNA (*right*). *E. coli* bacteria are transformed with the mixture: they take up various molecules. If the transforming molecule is a plasmid, it replicates and is inherited by daughter bacteria, rendering them resistant to ampicillin. Such cells (*A*, *B*) are recognized because a sample of them will grow on a medium containing ampicillin, whereas untransformed cells, or cells transformed only by donor DNA (*C*), are killed. A "replica" of the ampicillin-resistant colonies is picked up on a disk of velvet and is transferred to a medium containing tetracycline as well as ampicillin; now any cells harboring recombinant plasmids (*B*) are killed because the tetracycline-resistance gene on the plasmids has been disrupted. Culture that gave rise to colony *B* is tested to identify clones carrying particular donor genes.

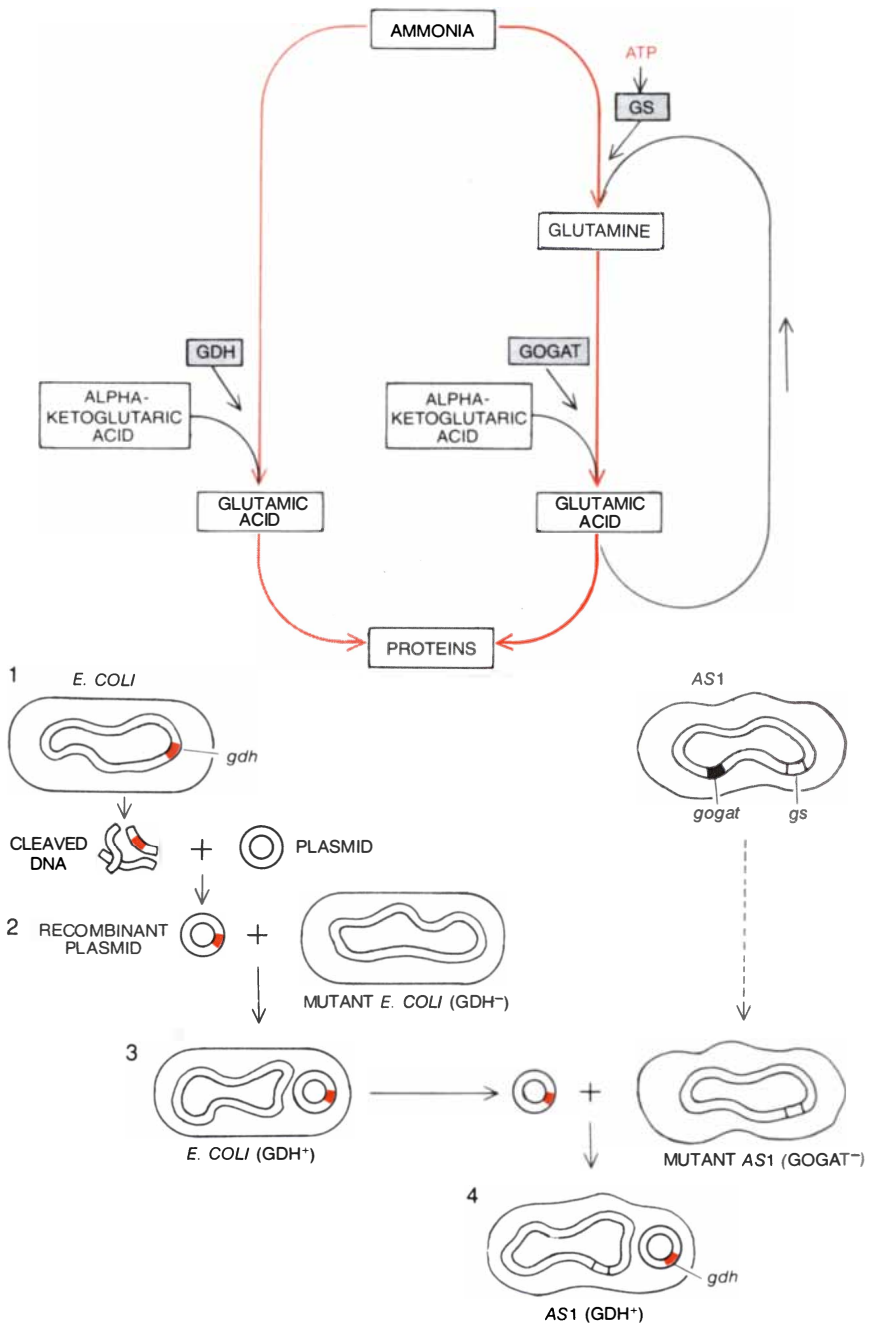
acid sequence of a protein is known, as it is in the case of human insulin) is to synthesize an artificial gene by assembling the appropriate DNA nucleotides according to the genetic code. This has been done for some short proteins; the advent of "gene machines" that can synthesize specified stretches of DNA automatically may make the method more generally feasible.

Neither a copy-DNA gene nor an artificially synthesized gene carries the appropriate promoter and other control signals needed for expression in bacteria. It is necessary, therefore, to splice the artificial gene into the vector DNA at a point where the bacterial control signals on the vector will lead to expression of the artificial gene. That is not the end of the task. Bacteria often digest foreign proteins, so that the host cell may have to be modified to keep it from destroying its own novel product; a mutant host may have to be selected that has lost the enzymes for protein digestion. The host must also be selected or modified to grow well in spite of having to accumulate or secrete large quantities of a protein for which it has no use. The commercial stimulus for developing successful fermentations producing such therapeutic proteins as human insulin, growth hormone or the antiviral agent interferon is so great that these various obstacles to volume production are likely to be overcome very soon.

It should even be possible to program microorganisms to make proteins that do not occur naturally in any organism. The recent successful cloning of copy-DNA genes for human interferon has revealed that there is a surprisingly large number of interferons, which differ not only in their amino acid sequence but also in their properties. One might make brand-new members of the interferon family by an artificial equivalent of homologous recombination: by splicing together parts of two genes, isolated from two *E. coli* clones, coding for different natural interferons. The hybrid gene would then be reintroduced into the bacterial host. This approach could provide a wealth of new molecules to be tested for their therapeutic value. Later, when more is known about the relations between the architecture of proteins and their biological properties, it should even be possible to design entirely new proteins and manufacture them by synthesizing and cloning artificial genes.

The genetic improvement of an existing strain is appropriate in the case of substances, such as antibiotics and alkaloids, that are not directly encoded by genes but instead are synthesized by pathways controlled by a number of gene products. Rather than attempting the daunting task of transplanting the entire set of genes for such products into a wholly foreign host unaccustomed to expressing them, one can modify the genetic information of an existing industrial strain. One might, for example, increase the flow through a metabolic bottleneck by adding duplicate copies of a gene, or provide a microorganism with a new enzyme that can modify a natural metabolite to make a wanted product. Cloning systems are being developed for such purposes.

An example of the reprogramming by genetic engineering of a good industrial microorganism to make it even better is that of a strain of the bacterium *Meth-*



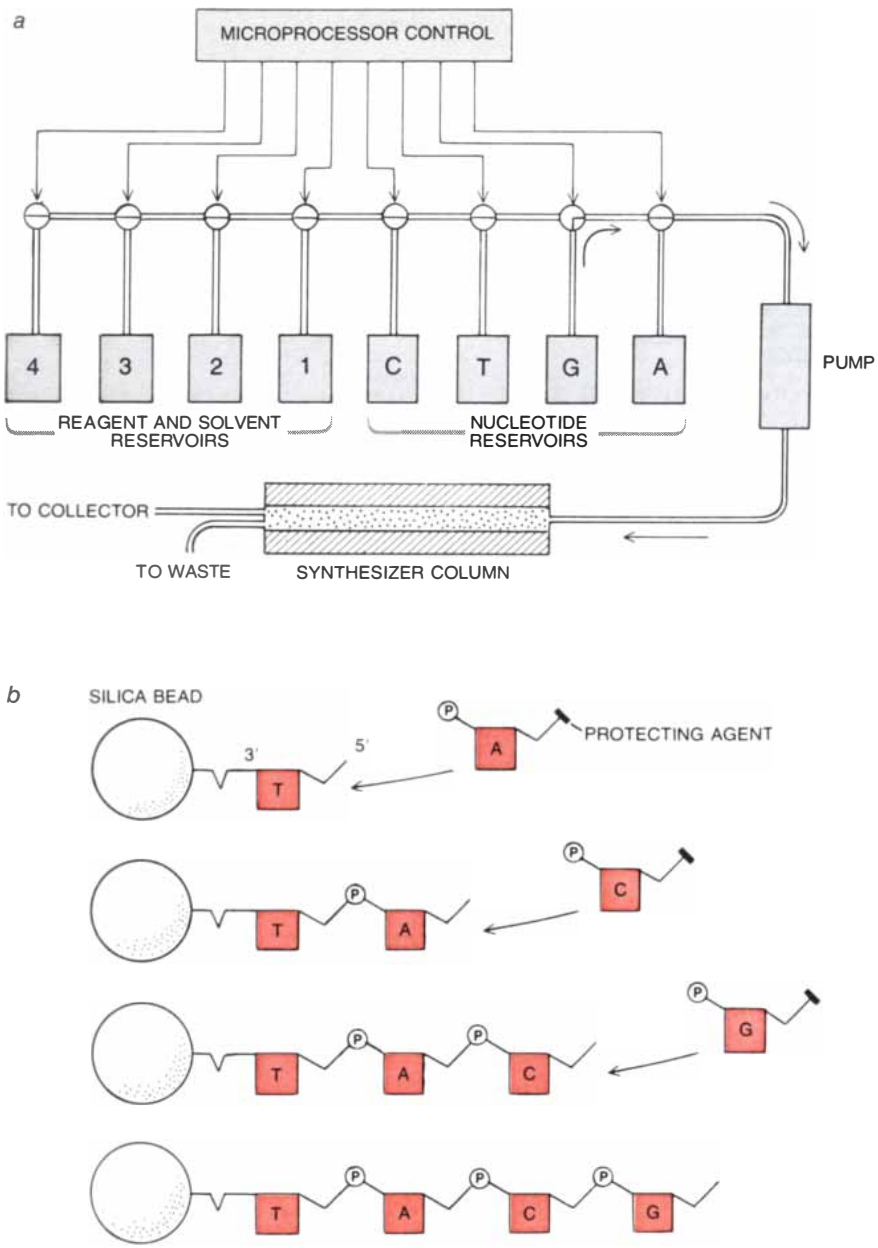
GENETIC ENGINEERING substitutes an energy-conserving nitrogen pathway (*light color*) for the similar but energy-consuming pathway (*dark color*) in an industrial microorganism, a strain of *Methylophilus methylotrophus* called *AS*1. Both pathways take nitrogen from ammonia and pass it on to amino acids to form proteins, but the step to glutamic acid catalyzed by the enzyme GDH (in *E. coli* and some other species) does not require energy delivered by ATP, whereas one of the two steps catalyzed by the enzymes GS and GOGAT (in *AS*1) does. By means of recombinant-DNA techniques the gene encoding GDH is isolated from *E. coli* and spliced into a plasmid (*1*). Mutant *E. coli* lacking GDH are transformed with the recombinant plasmid (*2*); transformed cells are recognized by their ability to obtain nitrogen from ammonia. Recombinant plasmids are reisolated and introduced into mutant *AS*1 cells lacking gene for GOGAT (*3*). Transformed *AS*1 cells (*4*) synthesize GDH and therefore grow more efficiently.

ylophilus methylotrophus designated *AS*1. The cells are grown in giant fermenters and then are harvested and dried to yield a protein-rich animal-feed supplement. *AS*1 depends on methanol as a source of carbon and on ammonia as a source of nitrogen. The pathway by which it builds ammonia into proteins by way of glutamic acid starts with two reactions catalyzed by the enzymes glutamine synthetase (GS) and glutamate synthase (GOGAT). The pathway is wasteful of energy because the step catalyzed by GS is driven by the cellular energy transducer adenosine triphosphate (ATP). In some other bacteria, including *E. coli,* there is a pathway that depends on a different enzyme, glutamate dehydrogenase (GDH), to make glutamic acid, and it requires less energy.

An energy-conserving strain of *AS*1 has been developed. First an auxotrophic mutant of *AS*1 was isolated that lacked GOGAT; it could not convert ammonia into proteins. Then the *E. coli* gene for GDH was cloned by introducing fragments of normal *E. coli* chromosomal DNA, spliced into a plasmid vector, into an *E. coli* mutant strain that lacked GDH; the desired clone could be recognized because, unlike the mutant *E. coli,* it was able to utilize ammonia. The plasmid vector had been chosen for its ability to be transferred (by mating or by transformation) into bacteria of many different species, including *AS*1. And so, in the final step, it was possible to transfer the cloned GDH gene into the *AS*1 auxotroph that lacked GOGAT. The resulting strain, equipped with GDH instead of GOGAT, does indeed grow with somewhat less expenditure of energy. Even a modest increase in energy efficiency is valuable when thousands of tons of a commodity are being produced.

A particularly exciting application of recombinant-DNA technology is site-directed mutation. The randomness of spontaneous or even induced mutagenesis has made it hard to find mutant organisms with alterations at specific sites in their DNA. That is not critical when one wants to develop an auxotrophic mutant lacking a particular enzyme, because the target for mutagenesis is rather large: a change of any one of hundreds of base pairs in a gene can inactivate the gene. It is much harder, however, to alter a specific part of a gene in a way calculated to improve its performance, say to change a particular base pair in a promoter region to increase the rate of transcription. Now that a gene can be isolated from a clone its DNA sequence can be altered by specific chemical treatment outside the cell. Then the gene can be reintroduced into the host and homologous recombination can be relied on to exchange the new gene for the normal one.

Industrial microbial genetics has now come of age. A range of techniques for genetic programming is available that could not have been envisioned only a few years ago. They include site-directed mutagenesis to help overcome the intrinsic randomness of procedures based on the isolation of mutants, protoplast fusion to increase the power of natural recombination, and an entire battery of recombinant-DNA manipulations for transplanting natural genes and even making new ones. The judicious application of these techniques, alone and in combination, should enormously expand man's ability to understand the amazing biochemical versatility of microorganisms, to enhance it and to channel it wisely.



"GENE MACHINES," several versions of which are now available, synthesize specified short sequences of single-strand DNA automatically and very quickly under the control of a microprocessor. A version made by Bio Logicals, a Canadian company, is diagrammed (*a*). The desired sequence of bases is entered on a keyboard. The microprocessor opens valves that allow successive nucleotides and the reagents and solvents needed at each step to be pumped through the synthesizer column. The column is packed with tiny silica beads (about the consistency of fine sand); each bead serves as a solid support on which the DNA molecules are assembled. To make a given sequence (*b*) a column is used in which many thousands of copies of the nucleoside (base plus sugar) that is to be at the so-called 3′ end of the sequence (a *T* in this case) have already been fixed to each bead, leaving the nucleoside's 5′ side free. The microprocessor pumps millions of copies of the next nucleotide (*A*), with its 5′ side protected against unwanted reactions, into the column, and the *A*'s bind to the *T*'s. The protecting agent is removed, leaving the 5′ side free to accept the next nucleotide (*C*). In this way chains of about 40 nucleotides have been synthesized at the rate of about one nucleotide every 30 minutes. The completed chains are cleaved from the beads and are eluted into the collector.

Some chemical engineers rarely get to wear hard hats.

Film differs from Rembrandt's medium. Most who express themselves with it do not know or care how it is made. Before 1880, no one knew how to make it. Today, no one is remotely interested in using the kind of film made in the 1880s. For today's film is so incomparably more responsive. It contains minute quantities of various molecules we weren't putting in as recently as 1975. And by 1985, we'll probably be putting in other molecules that work even better.

Beauty resides in these molecules themselves. Beautiful also are the methods by which chemical engineers quickly cut the cost of a "new composition of matter" (as patent lawyers put it) so that better film can be widely afforded.

There is practiced here at Kodak a kind of chemical engineering that does not think tonnage. It operates equipment located in small, quiet rooms. It observes biological processes which use membranes for separation in either aqueous or non-aqueous solutions. It often prefers continuous processes to batch processes, as in copolymerizations where the end properties result not from just the ratio of the reactants but from the precision with which they are brought together.

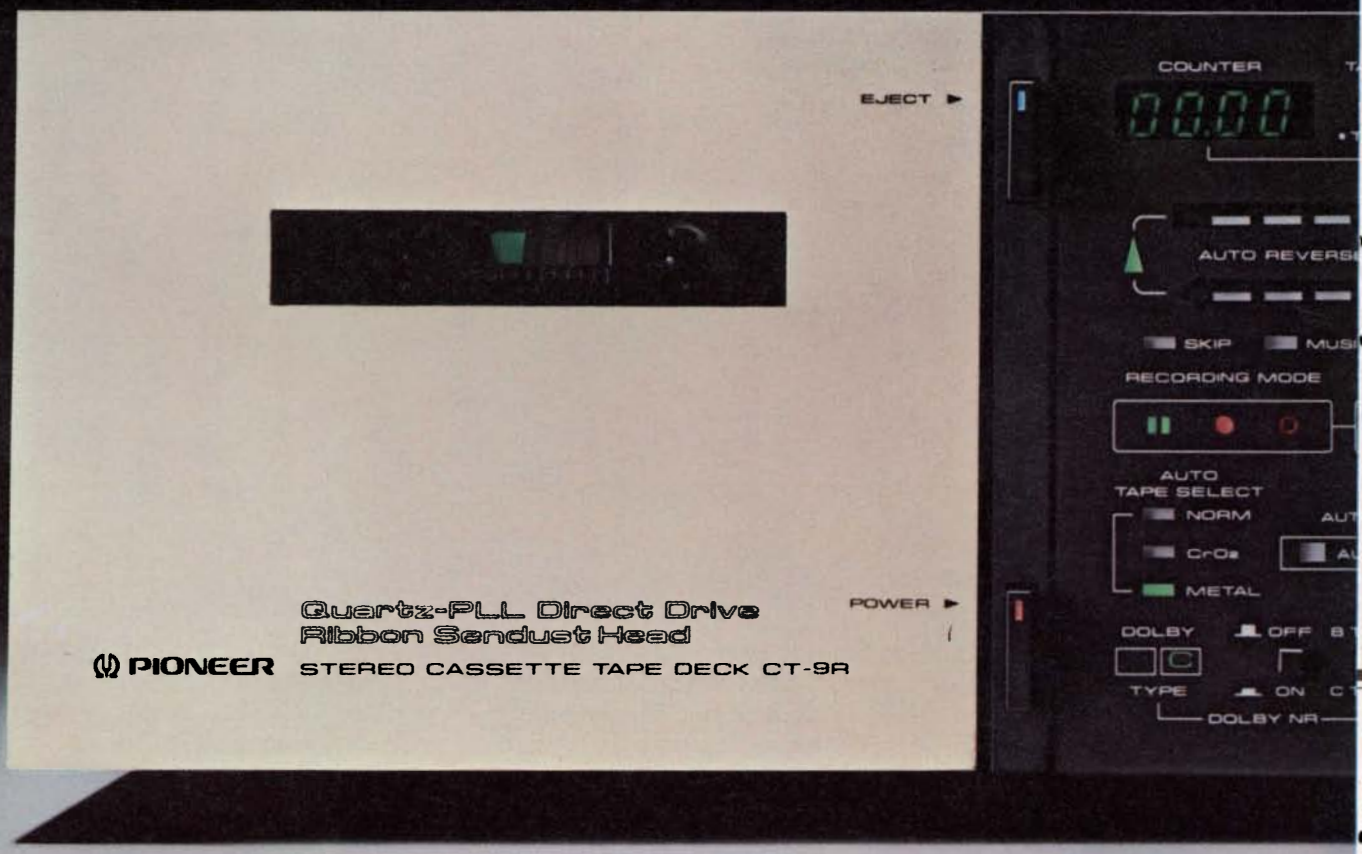
That's why we believe that hardheaded (but not necessarily hard-hatted) chemical engineering is needed in a temple of science like the Kodak Research Laboratories. A fractional-crystallization process like this one needs no scaling up to meet the needs of the factory. But chemical engineering on such a scale is scarcely as common as the analogous fractional distillation that takes place in plumed towers against the sky, a sight which captivated countless photographic artists seeking to depict the essence of industry.

Of course, this isn't the only kind of chemical engineering we practice, but isn't all engineering a bridge between science and art?

Kodak

High Fidelity for Humans:

NOW WHEN
IT DOESN'T HAV



Anyone who records on tape knows what a pain it is to run out of tape before running out of music.

Pioneer has relieved this pain. Along with quite a few others inherent in the designs of practically all components being built today.

We've done it through a concept we call *High Fidelity for Humans.* A design and engineering idea so far reaching, that for the first time components are as pleasant to live with as they are to listen to.

For example, our new CT-9R cassette deck shows you a digital readout of the precise amount of recording time left on a tape.

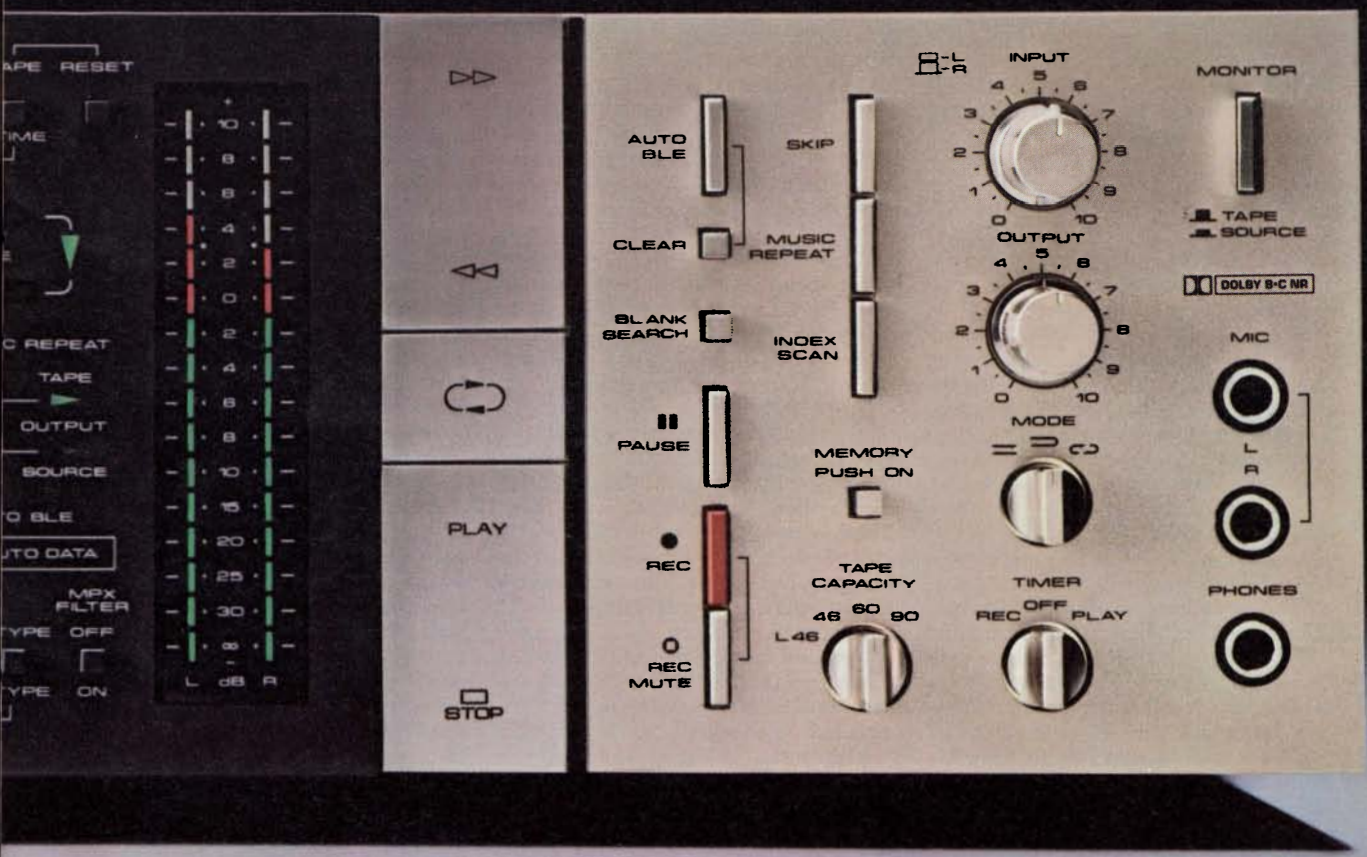
Touch a button and find your favorite song. Because the CT-9R Index Scan breezes through your tape, automatically stopping to play the first five seconds of each piece of music.

If you want to hear a song over, you don't press REVERSE. STOP. PLAY. REVERSE. STOP. PLAY, until you find the beginning. Instead, you simply press the Music Repeat button. The deck does the rest.

The CT-9R even plays both sides of a cassette, automatically.

But don't get the idea that we've produced a cassette deck that is just a lot of fun to play with. It's also a lot of

YOU RECORD,
E TO END LIKE THIS



fun to listen to.

Our signal-to-noise ratio and high frequency response set a standard in state of the art electronics due to the creation of totally unique record and play heads. They're called RIBBON SENDUST heads and they're only on Pioneer cassette decks.

We've also attained extraordinary record and playback accuracy. Because we've seen to it that the drive capstan and both the take up and supply spindles are driven directly by their own motors. We call it our 3 Direct Drive motor transport and it, too, is exclusively Pioneer's.

Plus, we have Dolby C. The latest in Dolby engineering, designed to once and for all rid you and your tape of hiss.

If you're the least bit skeptical that a cassette deck could do so much so well, we suggest you visit your nearest Pioneer dealer.

You can see the CT-9R for yourself, as well as an entire line of new Pioneer cassette decks.

But be forewarned. After seeing these, you'll begin to see cassette decks that just play music for exactly what they are.

Somewhat less than adequate.

PIONEER®

We bring it back alive.

Lesser Immediate Priority

The emphasis of the Reagan Administration on reducing governmental expenditures has led to concern that Federal support for the sciences will be drastically curtailed. Actually the proposed budget for fiscal year 1982 (which begins on October 1, 1981) increases the funding of research and development by 8.7 percent over fiscal year 1980, even after the amount is adjusted to compensate for inflation. In order to evaluate the effects of the budget, however, it is necessary to consider how the money will be allocated. If the proposed budget is approved by Congress, spending on research and development for national defense will increase by 32.9 percent, whereas nondefense programs will be reduced by 16.5 percent. Furthermore, among the nondefense programs some disciplines will fare worse than others, suggesting that economic policy was not the only criterion applied in formulating the new budget. Some of the most severe cutbacks will be made in disciplines that can be classified broadly as the social sciences, including sociology, demography, economics and political science.

In the National Science Foundation (NSF) the budget of the social and economic science division has been cut by almost 70 percent and that of the cognitive and behavioral science section has been reduced by 60 percent. In the Alcohol, Drug Abuse, and Mental Health Administration (ADAMHA) programs classified as social research are being discontinued, according to a report prepared by the American Association for the Advancement of Science. In one agency of ADAMHA, the National Institute of Mental Health, "guidelines have been prepared to indicate those areas of research which are considered 'social' and which will *not* be funded." In the Work and Mental Health Division of the institute, where much of the research is of a social nature, funding is down by 75 percent.

Support for the social and behavioral sciences represents only a small fraction of the total science budget; in the NSF, for example, the social and behavioral sciences receive only about 3 percent of all research funds. Hence even if all social-science programs were to be eliminated, the savings would be minimal. Philip Handler, the former president of the National Academy of Sciences, has noted: "The programs selected [for substantial reductions] seem dictated not so much by financial constraints as by social philosophy."

Ironically, the Reagan Administration makes greater use of the results of social-science research than any previous administration did. The president, the vice-president and members of the White House staff receive regular reports based on the newly developed National Indicators System. The system, as described by the White House Office of Planning and Evaluation, is intended to help the Administration observe "social, demographic and economic trends in America." At the same time many projects that would furnish both the Administration and social scientists with data on social, demographic and economic trends are being eliminated or reduced in scope. Such programs, in the language of the NSF budget statement, are of "lesser immediate priority."

In ADAMHA the cutbacks seem to form part of a permanent policy, but in the NSF it is assumed that the drastically reduced budgets are temporary. Large programs that have been gathering social, demographic and economic data for a period of years are being continued, although the funds available are only from 5 to 15 percent of earlier levels. According to Murray Aborn, section head of social measurement and analysis in the NSF, if the "deemphasis" of the social sciences were permanent, the large data-base projects would be shut down. They are being maintained in the hope that the 1983 and 1984 budgets will restore adequate funding.

The social and economic science division of the NSF has prepared reports on how the budget cuts will affect the division's programs. One such report, compiled by Otto N. Larsen, director of the division, states: "More than two decades of effort toward monitoring social change ... and generally maintaining the infrastructure of contemporary social and economic science will be greatly slowed and otherwise impaired." The report goes on to cite examples of long-term data-base operations that will be curtailed. The General Social Survey, a "social census" of the attitudes and values of a national sample of Americans, will "have to be cut back drastically, and may have to be ended." Another project whose continuity is threatened by the budget cuts is the National Time Allocation Data Series. The series employs diaries and telephone verification to observe long-term changes in the behavior of a single group of subjects. If the series is interrupted, information on changes caused by the new Administration's policies will be irretrievably lost, even if funds are eventually restored.

One application of the information gained through such studies is in guiding the social and economic policy of governmental agencies. For example, one aim of the Reagan Administration is to reduce the regulation of business and industry, but "assessments of combined effects of regulation on industry (such as an integrated assessment of safety, enforcement, energy considerations and foreign competition on the auto industry) may be funded in an abbreviated conceptual form only." Thus part of what will be lost will be information that would have been useful to the Administration itself.

Climate and Crops

In recent years predictions of changes in the global climate and of the effects such changes might have on agricultural production have run from one extreme to the other. Some "futurists" have foreseen a continuation of a recent cooling trend, leading eventually to catastrophic crop failures in the higher temperate latitudes. Others have argued that a projected warming trend, driven by a buildup of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere, will cause equally devastating droughts in the lower latitudes.

In response to such concerns the National Defense University five years ago organized a major interdisciplinary study to investigate possible global climatic changes to the year 2000 and to estimate the likely response of crop yields to these climatic changes. The program was sponsored by the Advanced Research Projects Agency of the Department of Defense and staffed by scientists from several agencies of the Government. In the first phase of the study, which was completed in 1978, a questionnaire was submitted to a panel of climatologists. Their "probabilistic answers" established five scenarios describing "plausible" climatic changes to the end of the century; the scenarios were characterized as large cooling, moderate cooling, slight warming, moderate warming and large warming. The majority of the experts appeared to favor the slight-warming scenario as the most likely one.

The results of the second phase of the study, compiled with the aid of a similar questionnaire sent to a panel of agricultural experts, have now been released. According to the report on the second phase, the most likely climatic change (the slight global warming) was found to have "negligible" effects on 15 key crops. Other climatic changes had "more appreciable" effects that "differed from crop to crop in direction and magnitude.... In order of sensitivity, Canadian wheat, Soviet spring wheat and Soviet winter wheat were the key crops most affected, partly because global temperature changes are amplified at higher latitudes. Average yields were depressed 4.3 percent to 3.4 percent by moderate cooling and 8.5 percent to 6.2 percent by large cooling. The

THE TASTE BEYOND 12-YEAR-OLD SCOTCH

Discover more.

Let your mature taste lead you from the finest premium Scotch on up to the most expensive 12-year-old Scotch in the world. The Glenlivet. The ultimate in Scotch.

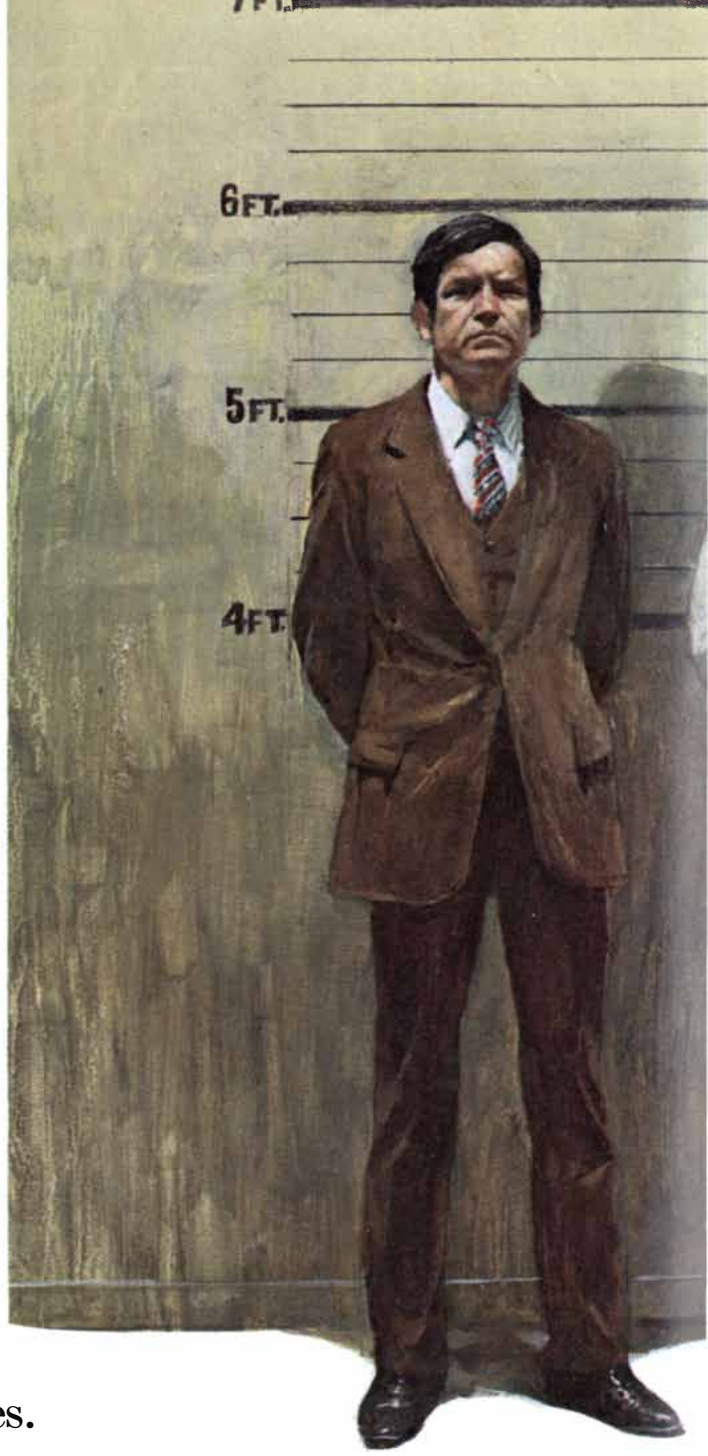
Most premium Scotch is blended and depends on several whiskies for taste and smoothness.

Yet the unblended character of The Glenlivet is noble enough to stand alone. In this distinctive Scotch whisky you'll experience an exceptional smoothness and full-bodied richness, unmatched in all other premium Scotch.

Try the taste beyond premium Scotch.

The Glenlivet
Unchanged since 1824.

The computer didn't do it.

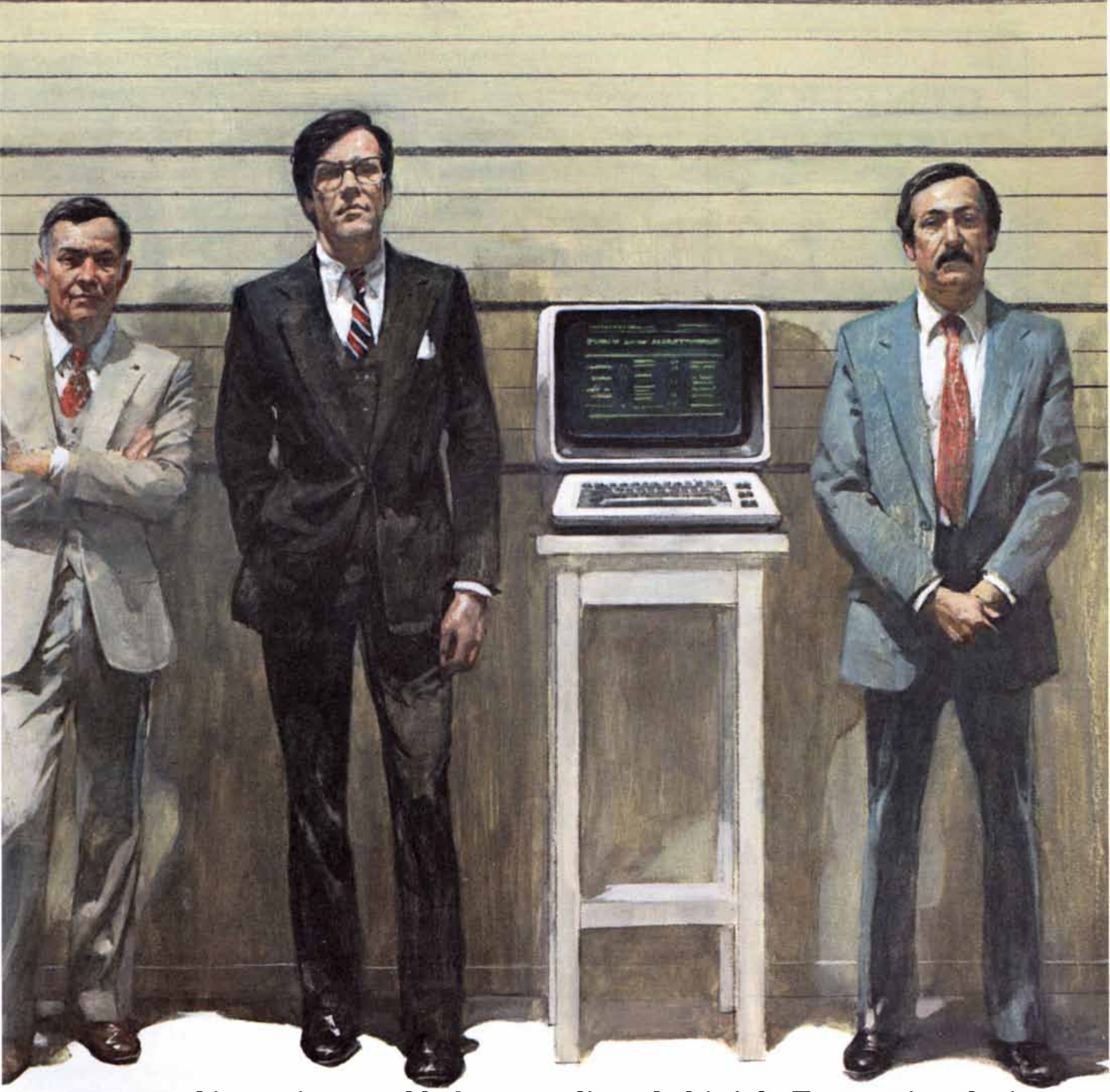


Computers can't commit crimes.
But they can be misused.

That concerns us at IBM, and it should concern anyone involved with computers today. Because keeping computers secure is the responsibility of everyone who uses and manages them.

At IBM, we continue to develop security measures that can help keep information safe.

For instance, IBM computers can demand identification in any number of ways, including passwords, keys and magnetic ID cards. They can flag errors. Catch omissions. They're able to inform you of



attempted intrusions and help an auditor do his job. Encryption devices can turn information into secret codes that are virtually impossible to crack.

We're also researching new safeguards, such as electronic signature verification.

True, there's probably no such thing as total security. But with proper precautions, computers can be more than just safe places to keep information.

They may well be the safest.

IBM®

For a free copy of Staying in Charge: An executive briefing for improving control of your information system, *write:*
Mr. Harry DeMaio,
Director of Data Security Programs
IBM, Dept. 462, 1 Culver Road
Dayton, N.J. 08810
Or call toll-free: 800-631-5582, Ext. 462.
In New Jersey 800-352-4960, Ext. 462.

moderate and large warmings enhanced yields by somewhat smaller percentages; the slight warming enhanced them by fractions of a percent.... Next most sensitive were Australian wheat, Argentine wheat, Argentine corn and Indian wheat, all of whose yields were stimulated in the two cooling scenarios and inhibited in the three warming scenarios.... Less sensitive still were U.S. corn, soybeans and winter wheat, which had positive responses to cooling, as well as U.S. spring wheat and Chinese winter wheat, which had negative responses."

The authors of the report caution that their conclusions are "subject to considerable uncertainty regarding the expected zonal changes in precipitation." Moreover, they add, for most crops "climate-induced yield trends would be masked by both the year-to-year fluctuation of yields and the enhancement of yields due to technological factors." The potential effects of technological change on crop yields, they estimate, will be several times larger than the effects of climatic change.

Gravitational Mirage

Like a pane of handmade glass, the universe is a warped and rippled medium for the passage of electromagnetic radiation. According to Einstein's general theory of relativity, the presence of mass induces curvature in the four-dimensional manifold of space-time, with the result that a ray of light or other electromagnetic radiation follows a curved path in the vicinity of a massive object. As early as 1937 Fritz Zwicky of the California Institute of Technology pointed out that such local curvature in space-time could magnify, diminish or even split the image of a distant luminous object. Now a physicist at Bell Laboratories has suggested that gravitational-lens effects may account for the luminosity of quasars, or quasi-stellar objects, which appear to be among the brightest objects in the universe.

J. Anthony Tyson, writing in *Astrophysical Journal Letters,* proposes that quasars may actually be Seyfert galaxies that are too distant for them to be resolved by the current generation of telescopes. Seyfert galaxies, which were first described in 1943 by Carl K. Seyfert of the Mount Wilson Observatory, have a dense nucleus (so that they sometimes appear starlike at a great distance) and a distinctive spectrum. The spectra of quasars are similar to the spectra of Seyfert galaxies, but quasars appear to be much brighter than Seyfert galaxies would if they were as far away as quasars are thought to be. Tyson suggests that a quasar appears to be bright because its light has been magnified by an intervening object almost directly in the line of sight to the solar system.

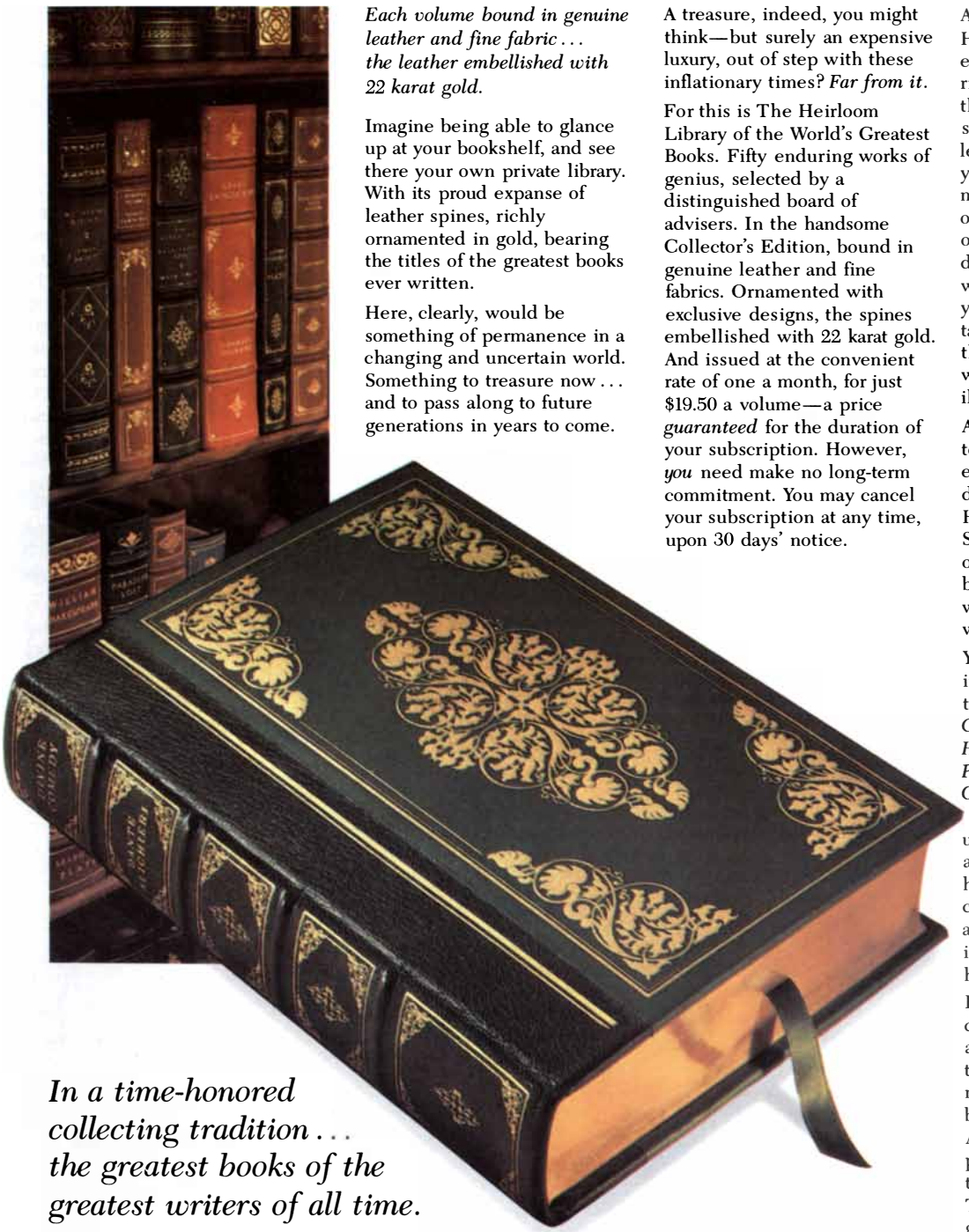
The luminosity of quasars has been a puzzle to astronomers ever since it was recognized in 1963 that their spectral lines are significantly red-shifted, or moved to longer wavelengths. The red shift is interpreted as a Doppler effect, indicating that the quasars are receding from our galaxy at a high velocity. According to the empirical law first stated by Edwin P. Hubble, the red shift of an object far outside our galaxy is correlated with its distance: the greater the red shift, the more distant the object. The red shifts measured for quasars are remarkably large. They suggest that the quasars are from five to 10 billion light-years away, which means their light has taken a significant fraction of the age of the universe to reach the solar system.

If quasars are indeed as distant as their red shifts indicate, it would seem they are emitting radiation at a rate more prodigious than that of any other object in the universe. Explaining the source of energy that might power such radiation has presented a continuing challenge to the ingenuity of astrophysicists. The gravitational-lens mechanism offers an alternative: a quasar is bright for its distance not because it has an extraordinarily high intrinsic luminosity but because its image is magnified by the intervening lens. Nevertheless, the lens mechanism has not generally been well received, in part because the coincidence of a distant Seyfert galaxy and a nearer galaxy lying along the same line of sight seemed too unlikely. For instance, when Jeno M. and Madeleine F. Barnothy suggested 13 years ago that quasars may owe their apparent brightness to the influence of gravitational lenses, the idea seemed ad hoc and there was little evidence in its favor.

In 1979 interest in the gravitational-lens hypothesis was revived by the unambiguous discovery of a quasar whose image is split by the mass of an intervening galaxy (see "The Discovery of a Gravitational Lens," by Frederic H. Chaffee, Jr.; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, November, 1980). In 1980 a second lensed quasar was discovered whose multiple images are separated by less than 2.5 seconds of arc.

Tyson's mathematical investigations rely on new counts of stars and galaxies that include objects with a wide range of apparent optical magnitudes. For the purpose of testing the gravitational-lens hypothesis Tyson assumes that galaxies are uniformly distributed in all directions and that the number of galaxies increases exponentially with an increase in apparent magnitude. (An increase in apparent magnitude corresponds to a decrease in the apparent brightness of the object as seen from the earth.) He also assumes that every quasar is a Seyfert galaxy whose image has been magnified by an intervening galaxy that is at least three magnitudes dimmer than the quasar. The last assumption is necessary because a brighter intervening galaxy would cause a distant object

Build your own private library for less than $20 a month!



In a time-honored collecting tradition . . . the greatest books of the greatest writers of all time.

Each volume bound in genuine leather and fine fabric . . . the leather embellished with 22 karat gold.

Imagine being able to glance up at your bookshelf, and see there your own private library. With its proud expanse of leather spines, richly ornamented in gold, bearing the titles of the greatest books ever written.

Here, clearly, would be something of permanence in a changing and uncertain world. Something to treasure now . . . and to pass along to future generations in years to come.

A treasure, indeed, you might think—but surely an expensive luxury, out of step with these inflationary times? *Far from it.*

For this is The Heirloom Library of the World's Greatest Books. Fifty enduring works of genius, selected by a distinguished board of advisers. In the handsome Collector's Edition, bound in genuine leather and fine fabrics. Ornamented with exclusive designs, the spines embellished with 22 karat gold. And issued at the convenient rate of one a month, for just $19.50 a volume—a price *guaranteed* for the duration of your subscription. However, *you* need make no long-term commitment. You may cancel your subscription at any time, upon 30 days' notice.

As a subscriber to the Heirloom Library, you would enjoy, whenever you wish, the rich pleasure of taking one of these books from your shelf—with its fragrance of leather, its satisfying weight in your hands. You would savor a moment of anticipation as you open the volume, to see your own inscribed bookplate on the decorated endpapers. You would leaf through the pages at your leisure, admiring the tarnish-free gilded edges . . . the crisp, legible type . . . the wonderfully evocative illustrations.

Above all, you would be able to enter at will . . . as one embarking on a voyage of discovery . . . the world of Hemingway or Melville, Shakespeare or Dante, Dickens or Mark Twain. The greatest books ever written, in bindings worthy of the incomparable works they contain.

Your private library will include the most perfect, most timeless classics of all . . . *Great Expectations. Moby Dick. Huckleberry Finn. The Odyssey. Paradise Lost. The Divine Comedy. A Farewell To Arms. The Arabian Nights.* Towering, unforgettable works of romance and adventure . . . wit and humor . . . power and compassion. Books that are, and always will be, indispensable to any fine home library.

By the time your library is complete, even ordinary books are likely to be selling for more than $19.50. For the costs of materials, and of printing and binding, are rising almost daily. And thus it may never again be possible to offer subscriptions to the Collector's Edition of The Heirloom Library at this guaranteed low price.

To be sure of acquiring this remarkable private library for no more than $19.50 a volume, please mail the attached form by September 30, 1981.

THE HEIRLOOM LIBRARY OF THE WORLD'S GREATEST BOOKS · Collector's Edition

The Franklin Library, Franklin Center, Pennsylvania 19091

to appear nebulous. The distant object would be classified from the first as a Seyfert galaxy rather than as a quasar.

Under these assumptions Tyson has calculated the probability that an unresolved Seyfert galaxy would be close enough to the line of sight to an intervening galaxy for gravitational-lens magnification to take place. The calculations show that the estimated distribution of lens-magnified but unresolved Seyfert galaxies, classified by apparent magnitude, is in good agreement with the observed distribution of quasars.

Tyson lists six possible observational consequences of his assumptions, but he stresses that his conclusions are preliminary and do not imply that all quasars are Seyfert galaxies magnified by gravitational lenses. The calculations have another cosmological consequence: the density of the intervening galactic masses required to support the gravitational-lens hypothesis is large enough to eventually halt the present expansion of the universe and bring about a gravitational collapse. Thus astronomers may have to choose between invoking a special class of objects to explain the quasars or accepting the notion that the universe is closed.

In the Groove

Genes are turned on or off in accordance with the changing needs of an individual cell or of a multicelled organism of which the cell is a part. In bacteria and bacterial viruses the expression of genes is controlled largely by regulatory proteins that prevent or promote the transcription of DNA into messenger RNA, which in turn is translated to make a protein. A repressor protein binds to an "operator" site on the DNA and thereby prevents the transcribing enzyme, RNA polymerase, from binding to an adjacent site to initiate transcription. An activator protein binds to still another site on the DNA and somehow promotes transcription.

In the past 15 years experiments in genetics have revealed a great deal about the nature of regulatory proteins and about the location and nature of the sites to which they bind. It is clear that each regulator recognizes and binds to a specific sequence of bases (the chemical groups that characterize the component nucleotides of a strand of DNA and that pair with complementary bases on a second strand to form the double helix of DNA). The salient property of the base sequences recognized by regulators is a high degree of twofold symmetry: the sequence of bases along one strand is similar to the sequence, read in the opposite direction, along the complementary strand. The actual mode of interaction of the regulator and the DNA has remained unclear, however, because no one knew the shape of a regulator protein. Now the three-dimensional structure of two DNA-binding regulator proteins has been determined by two groups of investigators, who report their findings in *Nature*. One of the proteins is a repressor and the other is an activator. The investigators have also shown just how each knobby protein may form a complex with the bumpy linear molecule of DNA.

Brian W. Matthews of the University of Oregon and his colleagues W. F. Anderson, D. H. Ohlendorf and Y. Takeda studied a small repressor designated cro. The protein is found in the bacterial virus called bacteriophage lambda, where it takes part in a complex switching system that determines whether the virus will multiply and burst the cell it infects or will remain dormant, integrated into the bacterial chromosome. In effect cro acts by repressing the gene for another repressor called cI (or lambda repressor) that ordinarily maintains the dormant pathway by preventing the transcription of all the viral genes except the one that specifies the synthesis of cI itself. The cell-bursting pathway is activated when under certain circumstances the gene specifying cro escapes from repression and is transcribed. Cro blocks the transcription of the gene for cI, and in the absence of cI the other viral genes are transcribed; as a result the viral DNA replicates, many copies of the virus are formed and the cell is destroyed.

Matthews' group crystallized cro and analyzed it by X-ray diffraction, which yields a map of the density of electrons

in each region of the molecule; the map can be interpreted to reveal the three-dimensional structure of the protein. Crystalline cro is a tetramer (a molecule composed of four monomers, or subunits). Under physiological conditions it may exist as a dimer (made up of two monomers); in any case its functional unit appears to be a dimer in which the monomers are assembled so that the molecule has a twofold symmetry.

Matthews and his colleagues looked for features of the cro dimer that would fit the conformation of the cro operator on the DNA double helix. They knew that the operator is 17 base pairs long and that its sequence has an approximate twofold symmetry. Moreover, they knew that when cro is bound to the operator, it protects particular atoms in the DNA against modification by various chemical agents; the protected atoms are in the "major groove" of the helix. (The two strands of a DNA double helix are related to each other in such a way that the helix has two grooves, analogous to the single groove between successive turns of a screw thread. The major groove is the larger one.) In view of these facts Matthews' group looked for structures on the cro molecule that would fit into successive major grooves of the DNA and whose twofold symmetry would match that of the operator's base sequence.

The obvious candidates are helical regions that protrude from each subunit of the cro dimer. The centers of the two helical regions are 34 angstrom units apart, which is also the distance between successive major grooves of the DNA when the DNA is in its usual form, designated *B*. The helixes on the cro molecule protrude from the body of the protein at an angle of 32 degrees, which is also the angle between the major groove and the axis of the DNA double helix. When a model of the cro dimer is fitted to a model of DNA with the two cro helixes nestled in the major groove, the two shapes conform over an extended region equivalent to 17 base pairs of DNA, which is precisely the length of the operator.

The story is much the same for the catabolite-gene activator protein (CAP) of the bacterium *Escherichia coli,* whose structure was determined by Thomas A. Steitz of Yale University, working with David B. McKay. *E. coli* ordinarily grows on the sugar glucose. In the absence of glucose the concentration in the cell of the regulatory molecule cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) rises. The cAMP binds to CAP and apparently changes the conformation of the activator protein. The CAP-cAMP complex binds to sites on the bacterial DNA near genes specifying enzymes that catabolize (break down) other sugars to yield glucose; the transcription of those genes is thereby stimulated.

Steitz and McKay purified CAP, crystallized it with cAMP and determined the structure of the complex by X-ray diffraction. They found a dimer, each monomer of which has two domains: a large domain that apparently incorporates the cAMP molecule, and a small domain, which they assumed interacts with DNA. A prominent feature of the small domain is a projecting helical region they call the *F* helix. The two *F* helixes of the dimer are roughly parallel to each other and their axes are about 34 angstroms apart. Their tilt, however, is such that they do not fit into the right-handed helix of normal *B*-DNA. What if the helix to which CAP binds were left-handed? Steitz and McKay tested the fit of the CAP dimer against a model of a left-handed DNA helix that had been developed by other workers. The protruding *F* helixes of the protein fitted snugly into successive major grooves; other parts of the small domains coincided with other parts of the DNA helix.

Left-handed *B*-DNA has not been observed in nature, but it has been shown to be a chemically feasible conformation. Steitz and McKay propose that CAP "traps specific regions of DNA in a left-handed helical conformation," thereby unwinding an adjacent region of the double helix and making it more susceptible to transcription by RNA polymerase. Noting the results reported by Matthews' group for the cro repressor, they suggest a general model for proteins that regulate transcription. With both repressors and activators, they be-

Producing a precise, instant color print from your color display, in the size you need, needn't be a big production.

The reason being, Polaroid combines quality and immediacy with the flexibility of three different formats for hard copy records.

Consider our 8x10 print. It's a clear, convenient management tool for summarizing reams of otherwise overwhelming data. The graphic presentation helps you digest information quickly. So you spend less time deciphering words and numbers in meetings, presentations and reports.

Our 4x5 and 3⅛ x 3⅛-inch formats are similarly advantageous for keeping records and supplementing correspondence and proposals.

The fact that our hard copy is instant lets you acquire and disseminate data immediately. Giving you the benefit of making decisions based on the latest information.

All in all, it helps you spot trends and problems, track performance and focus special marketing, promotional, technical and scientific efforts.

Our hard copy is the highest-quality instant record obtainable. Faithfully reproducing all the detail, shading and color of the images generated by your computer.

The cameras that produce our hard copy are compatible with color display systems and terminals.

So, whether your application is CAD/CAM, business graphics, cartography, demographics, or animation, the next time you need color hard copy in small, medium or large, call us toll-free from anywhere in the continental U.S.: 800-225-1618. (In Massachusetts call collect: 617-547-5177.) And try us on for size. Polaroid

Polaroid hard copy gives you the Great Lakes in small, medium or large.

Computer graphics courtesy of Abt Computer Graphics Corp., Cambridge, Mass

lieve, two domains of the protein that have twofold symmetry bind to a symmetrical site on the DNA, with helixes on the protein recognizing specific bases in the major groove of the DNA. Repressors, they suggest, bind to right-handed DNA and stabilize it, preventing the separation of the two DNA strands; activators such as CAP, on the other hand, may destabilize the DNA helix by binding to a left-handed form and so facilitate transcription.

Feigenbaum's Number

Certain irrational numbers arise in such a diversity of contexts they have been called universal constants. At least two such numbers were known in antiquity: π and ϕ (the golden ratio). A third universal constant was discovered in the 18th century: *e*, or Euler's number. Another number, although it may never rival these three in distinction, can now be added to the list of universal constants: it is δ, or Feigenbaum's number. Its value is approximately 4.669201609103. Mitchell J. Feigenbaum of the Los Alamos National Laboratory discovered the number in 1975. He had been exploring the successive reevaluations of a function of one variable, that is, a mathematical expression whose value is determined unambiguously by the value assigned to a single quantity. Given such a function, which is denoted $f(x)$, Feigenbaum chose x_0, a "seed value" for the variable. Then $f(x_0)$—the evaluation of $f(x)$ when x is assigned the value of x_0—yields x_1. This quantity in turn is inserted into the function, so that $f(x_1)$ yields x_2, $f(x_2)$ yields x_3 and so on. The procedure is called functional iteration.

The first function to which Feigenbaum applied the procedure was the expression $f(x) = \lambda x(1 - x)$. He employed a programmable calculator. When the constant λ was assigned a value in a certain numerical range, the successive reevaluations of $f(x)$ converged on a single value: a value called an attractor. If λ was set equal to 2, for example, and the seed value x_0 was chosen to lie between 0 and 1, the succession $x_1, x_2, x_3 \ldots$ converged on 1/2. Above a critical value of λ, however, the succession $x_1, x_2, x_3 \ldots$ shuttled between two attracting points. Above a second critical value it shuttled among four attracting points. The period required for the sequence to return to a particular attracting point doubled each time λ exceeded a critical value.

Feigenbaum denoted by Λ_n the value of λ at which the number of points in the attractor doubled for the nth time. As n approached infinity the number of points became infinite. Thus the sequence $x_1, x_2, x_3 \ldots$ became random: it no longer showed periodicity. Meanwhile, however, the sequence of Λ's turned out to be convergent. Specifically, the difference between successive values of Λ diminished geometrically, so that the ratio between consecutive differences (that is, $\Lambda_{n+1} - \Lambda_n$ divided by $\Lambda_{n+2} - \Lambda_{n+1}$) approached a constant: Feigenbaum's number.

Feigenbaum came to suspect that his constant is universal a month after his first calculation, when he applied the iterative procedure to the expression $f(x) = \lambda \sin \pi x$ and found that δ is again equal to 4.6692016.... The universality had not been noted earlier, he thinks, because no one had made such calculations with a small calculator. When a functional iteration is carried out with the aid of a computer, the geometric convergence of the Λ's remains invisible to the programmer.

Ultimately it emerged that δ is identical for almost every functional iteration in which the increase in λ causes a succession of period-doublings. Indeed, Pierre Collet of the École Polytechnique in Paris, Jean-Pierre Eckmann of the University of Geneva and H. Koch of Harvard University have shown that δ is often a constant even when the iteration procedure is applied to a function of several variables. Such a function can be interpreted geometrically as pertaining to a space of several dimensions. Hence Feigenbaum's number retains its value in certain cases when each successive iteration requires that the n quantities specifying a point in n-dimensional space be entered in n equations. In each such case the functional iteration that transforms a volume of n-space turns out to shrink it. The shrinkage is slowest in one of the dimensions, and so in the limit of infinite iterations only the one dimension remains. In effect the n-dimensional space is reduced to the one-dimensional space in which the value of δ was established.

A number of quite different physical systems become aperiodic by means of period-doubling. For instance, period-doubling has been noted in the onset of turbulence in a convecting fluid, in the noise in an electrical circuit and in models of the size of a population of whales from one generation to another. The convecting fluid serves as an example of how the theory applies to each system. First one describes by a mathematical function how a quantity such as the velocity of the fluid varies from place to place. Then one varies the temperature gradient across the fluid, which drives the convective flow. At any one gradient the velocity of the fluid at a given point changes cyclically, but as the gradient is increased the period needed for the velocity to return to its original value doubles repeatedly. The first few values of the gradient at which doubling is observed must be determined by experiment. After that the entire time-dependent course of the fluid toward turbulence can be predicted from Feigenbaum's work.

The onset of turbulence in the fluid

We believe that when you travel on business, there are certain things you deserve.

You deserve service that's not only fast, but friendly. From people who understand that warm attitudes are just as helpful to travelers as cool efficiencies.

You deserve a personal welcome. A lot of respect. Extra help whenever you need it. And a commitment on our part to give you a level of attention that may surprise you, and that will certainly make renting a car from National one of the better experiences of your business trip.

Try us. Contact your travel consultant. Or call toll-free 800-328-4567. In Minnesota call 800-862-6064. In Alaska and Hawaii call 800-328-6321. In Canada call collect 612-830-2345. We're going to prove it: There *is* a difference between car rental companies, and it's called "National attention.SM"

We feature GM cars like this Buick Skylark.

You deserve National attention.

National Car Rental

corresponds to the limit of infinite iterations of $f(x)$ where λ is set at Λ_∞, the value of λ at which the behavior of the velocity becomes aperiodic. At that juncture the details of the expression $f(x)$ become immaterial because $f(x)$ converges to g, a universal function. Although the mathematical form of g cannot be deduced, it can be approximated by numerical methods. As Feigenbaum writes in *Los Alamos Science,* a publication of the Los Alamos National Laboratory, "most measurable properties of [a period-doubling] system in this aperiodic limit now can be determined in a way that essentially bypasses the details of the equations governing each specific system because the theory of this behavior is universal over such details."

Efforts are in progress to apply the theory to cases of functional iteration in which volumes do not shrink. The theory could then predict the behavior of physical systems that do not dissipate energy. One example is the design of a particle accelerator in which a beam of protons circulates in a ring. Here the problem is to get the protons to return to a given area on a cross section of the ring. Again it is emerging that the details of the mathematics ultimately become immaterial and that the critical values of λ converge geometrically. In this case, however, the value of the universal constant is different: Feigenbaum's number is 8.721....

Fluorescent Footprints

In exploring the microscopic structure of the living cell, all that can be resolved cannot necessarily be seen. Many components of the cell can be distinguished only when they are made conspicuous by selective staining or labeling. A technique of labeling recently devised by Daniel I. Axelrod of the University of Michigan is unusual in that it marks not a permanent structural element but a feature that depends on the momentary configuration of the cell. The technique is an application of the physical phenomenon of total internal reflection; it makes visible the minute regions where the cell is in close contact with the substrate on which it is grown.

The technology of selectively staining biological specimens is a well-developed one. The Gram stain, which differentiates between groups of bacteria, and the Golgi stain, which is taken up by a few percent of all nerve cells, were both introduced in the 19th century. More recently the emphasis has been on methods that mark substructures of the individual cell. In one such method a fluorescent dye is attached to molecules of an antibody that binds to a particular component of the cell; the distribution of the fluorescence then indicates the distribution of the component. Axelrod's method of visualizing cell-substrate contacts also employs a fluores-

Growing up in Arabia

That's right, Arabia.

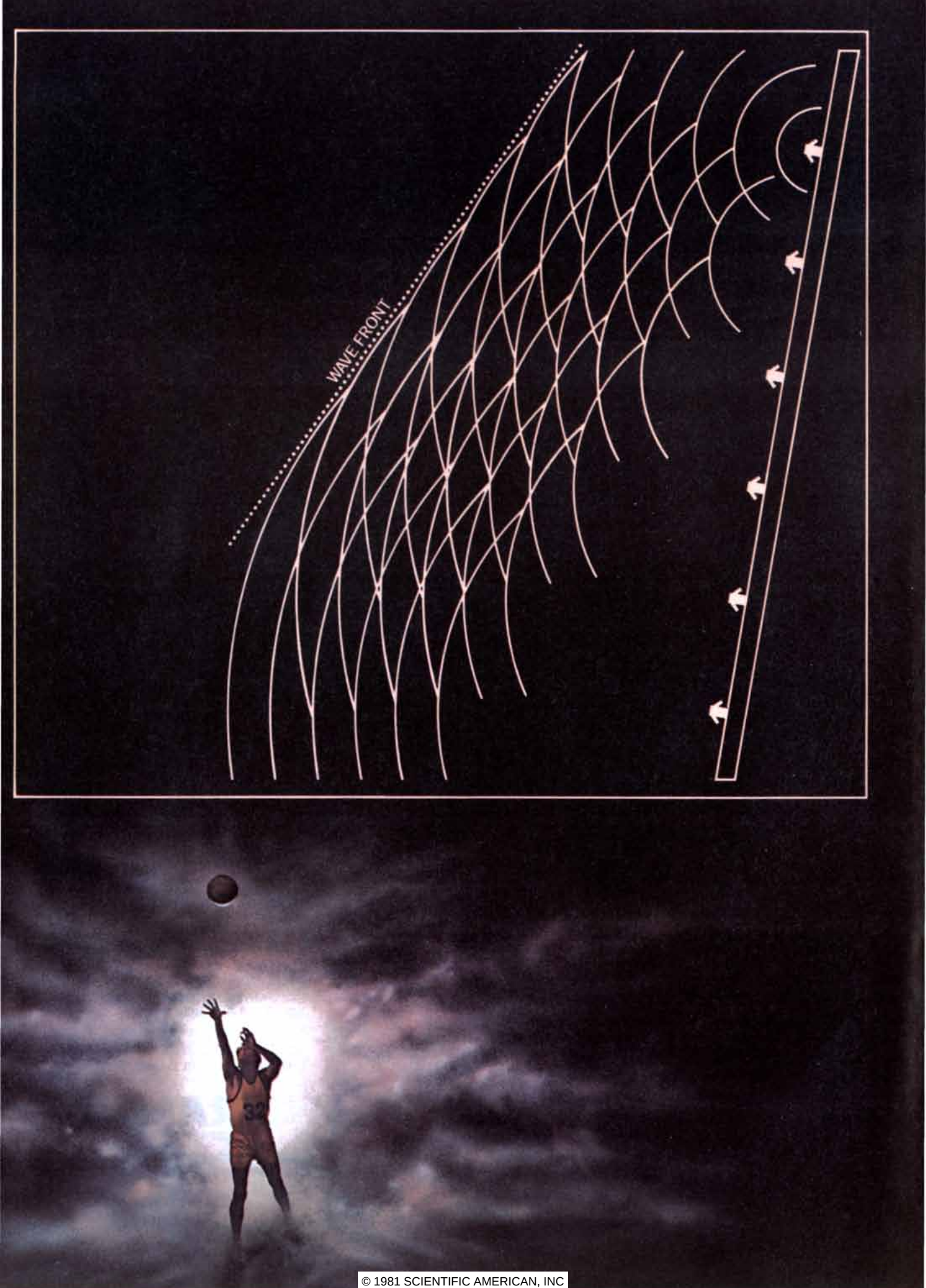
Your mental picture of Saudi Arabia probably doesn't include a scene like the one above. Nevertheless, Saudi Arabia is where young Stacey Callom takes riding lessons and goes to school and lives her typical-American-girl life. Her father works for us there.

We're Aramco, the Arabian American Oil Company. There are 13,000 North Americans in Saudi Arabia with us. And even though you hear a lot of news about Saudi Arabia, there are things that might surprise you about our lives there.

1. We're doing something important. Aramco produces more oil than any other company. Badly needed oil. Including about 15 percent of the oil the U.S. imports.
2. Aramco is working on some *incredibly* large energy projects. And on huge communications networks, electric utilities, and more.
3. Our people are glad to be in Saudi Arabia with Aramco. They came for excellent pay and professional challenges that are hard to find elsewhere.
4. Aramco is growing. We need more good people, and few companies can match the hundreds of interesting, rewarding jobs we can offer.
5. The horse is a blue-ribbon winner called *"Roc"*, after the legendary bird in *Sinbad the Sailor.*

ARAMCO
SERVICES COMPANY

1100 Milam Building, BA
Houston, Texas 77002 (713) 750-6965



We built a radar that can spot a basketball 1,200 miles away.

Not a real basketball, of course, but objects that size or larger. The radar not only spots targets—many of them—but identifies and tracks them as well. And all at the same time.

This particular radar is a large strategic system we have supplied to the U.S. Air Force. It's a prime example of how Raytheon is applying advanced phased array radar technology to meet very demanding requirements.

Unlike rotating antennas in traditional radar systems, a phased array antenna remains stationary. Its surface consists of individual radiating elements whose combined output produces a steerable antenna beam. The shape, position, and movement of this beam are controlled by changing the phase relationships among the individual elements. This electronic beam forming and scanning takes place in microseconds. The result is a radar system capable of performing many functions virtually simultaneously.

Our contributions to this technology span two decades and include pioneering work in antenna components and design. Today, phased array radar technology from Raytheon helps the U.S. Army, Navy, and Air Force handle a wide range of important missions—from tracking thousands of objects in space to safely landing tactical aircraft in heavy rain.

Tomorrow? Who knows where this technology will be put to use. But, at Raytheon we expect to be involved.

Raytheon...a $5 billion company in electronics, aviation, appliances, energy, construction, and publishing. For further information, please write Raytheon Company, Public Relations, Section 2-3, 141 Spring Street, Lexington, Massachusetts 02173.

RAYTHEON

Candidates interested in technical employment opportunities with Raytheon Company, An Equal Opportunity Employer, should forward a resume to Manager, Executive Placement, at the above address.

cent dye, but in a way somewhat different from the usual one.

The regions where a cell is attached to its substrate have recently attracted the interest of biologists for several reasons. When cells are grown on a glass plate, each cell generally spreads out to form a thin film, but only small patches on the surface of the cell are in close contact with the glass. The patches are essential to the motility of the cell: they are the anchor points needed for locomotion. Certain proteins tend to aggregate at the contact patches, and so do the fibers that make up the skeleton of the cell.

Methods of visualizing the contact patches have been known for a few years; what distinguishes Axelrod's technique is its clever application of fluorescence labeling and total internal reflection. Cells are grown on a glass cover slip and are made to take up a fluorescent dye. The cover slip is then placed on the stage of a microscope, with a fluid medium on the side of the cover slip bearing the cells and with a glass block on the opposite side. Light from an argon-ion laser is directed through the glass block and into the cover slip. If the light crosses the boundary between the glass and the fluid medium, thereby illuminating the cells, the dye is stimulated to fluoresce. In Axelrod's technique, however, the light is not transmitted across the boundary; instead the beam strikes the boundary at a glancing angle and is totally reflected.

If no light crosses the boundary, how is the fluorescence of the dye stimulated? The answer emerges from an analysis of total internal reflection in terms of the electric and magnetic fields that make up a light wave. Although the laser light itself remains entirely confined to the glass, an electromagnetic field called an evanescent wave is set up in the fluid near the boundary. The intensity of the evanescent wave decays exponentially with distance from the boundary, and it dies out entirely within about 500 nanometers. As a result fluorescence is stimulated only in those parts of the cell that lie within a few hundred nanometers of the glass surface.

Axelrod describes his method in *The Journal of Cell Biology*. He has employed it in studying the contact patches of human fibroblasts, which are cells of the connective tissues, and of rat muscle cells. The fibroblasts were labeled with a dye that is incorporated into the membrane of the cell; the regions in close contact with the substrate formed a weblike pattern of bright streaks. The rat muscle cells were labeled with a dye bound to a toxin molecule, which in turn binds to the protein in the cell membrane that serves as a receptor for the neurotransmitter acetylcholine. Fluorescence induced by totally reflected light showed the acetylcholine receptors to be aggregated in dense clusters at the contact patches.

A time of transformation. A time of emerging purpose. So, too, with Flow General Inc.

In business as in life, the ability to evolve with the changing times . . . to adapt to new realities, new challenges, and new opportunities . . . is the key to survival.

At Flow General's subsidiary, Flow Laboratories, one of the nation's most progressive forces in biomedicine, the transformation is ongoing.

The evolution is continuous.

The expansion of skills, markets—and profits—is without pause.

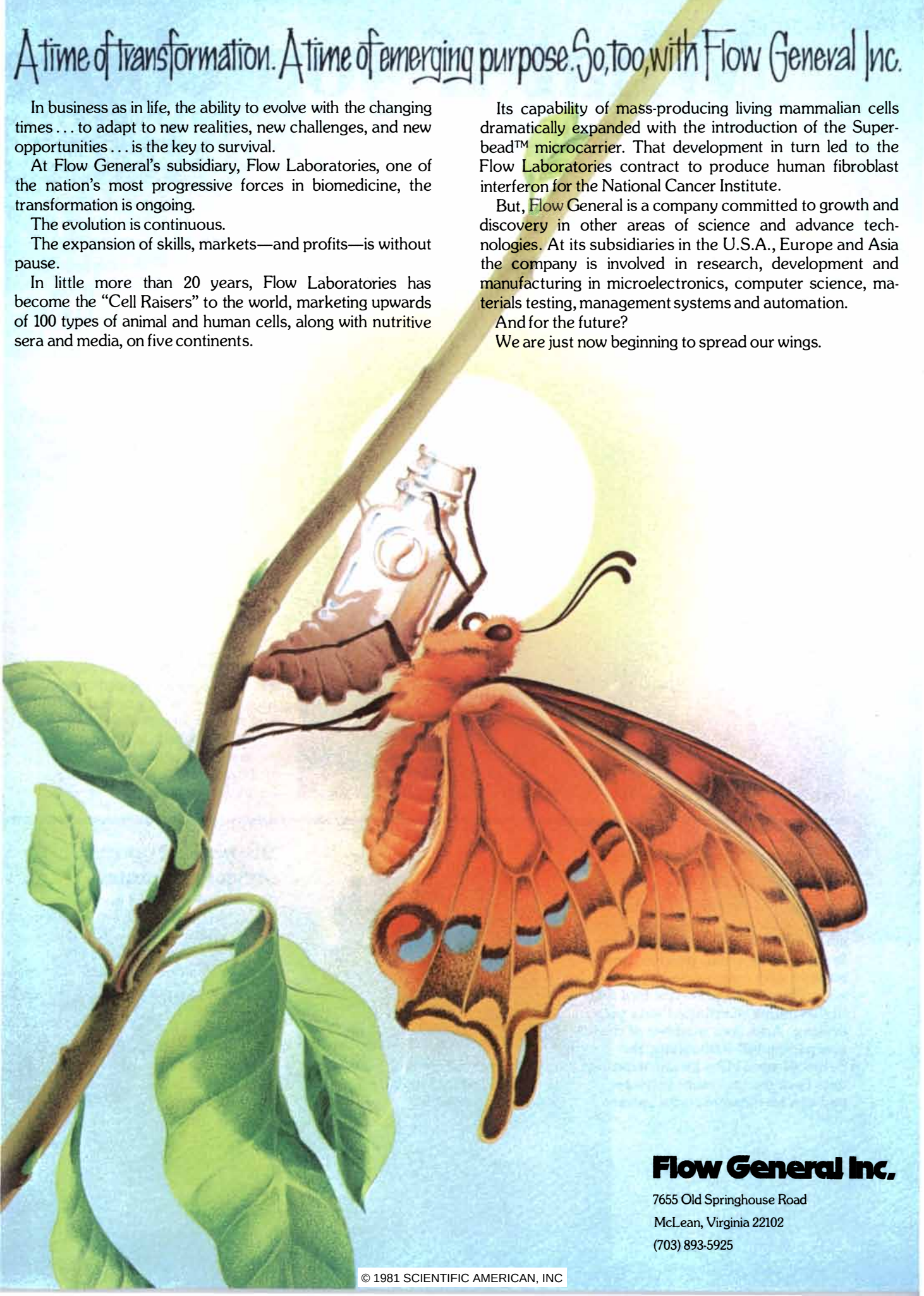
In little more than 20 years, Flow Laboratories has become the "Cell Raisers" to the world, marketing upwards of 100 types of animal and human cells, along with nutritive sera and media, on five continents.

Its capability of mass-producing living mammalian cells dramatically expanded with the introduction of the Superbead™ microcarrier. That development in turn led to the Flow Laboratories contract to produce human fibroblast interferon for the National Cancer Institute.

But, Flow General is a company committed to growth and discovery in other areas of science and advance technologies. At its subsidiaries in the U.S.A., Europe and Asia the company is involved in research, development and manufacturing in microelectronics, computer science, materials testing, management systems and automation.

And for the future?

We are just now beginning to spread our wings.



Flow General Inc.

7655 Old Springhouse Road
McLean, Virginia 22102
(703) 893-5925

What if you chose as a technical

"At Sun, an HP computer system helps maximize production and minimize equipment failures."

Sun Production Company, a subsidiary of Sun Company, uses an HP 1000 computer system to control pump units and monitor production at its Eliasville, Texas, oilfield.

Marvin Boyd, District Production Manager, says, "We find the HP 1000 an effective management tool. By providing constant surveillance of our operation, it alerts us to malfunctions immediately and shuts units down before damage can occur.

"Because the HP system eliminates overpumping and speeds response time we can reduce operating costs and still achieve maximum production rates. Based on these results, we are now installing additional HP 1000s at Sun's Bennett Ranch and Levelland units."

HP can be your business computer partner too!

The new, top-of-the-line HP 3000 Series 44 computer—with advanced systems software—makes it easy for novices to enter, process, and retrieve data from up to 96 terminals. Thus, it's a powerful tool for high-volume distributed data processing. And, as a member of the compatible HP 3000 family, the Series 44 uses HP's award winning data base management software, and can be networked for instant information access and resource sharing. Update kits for smaller 3000's are available.

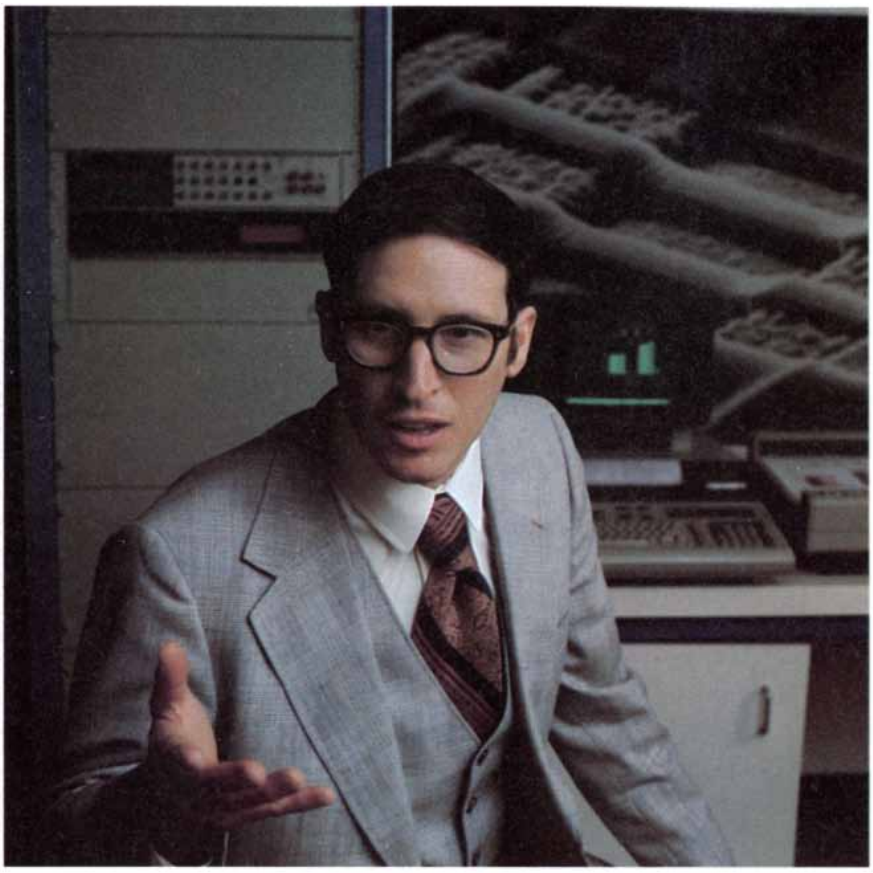
99-percent uptime service guarantee!

This unprecedented guarantee is available under full-service maintenance plans on Series 44's within 100 miles of any of the 43 HP service centers throughout the U.S.

World's most powerful computer CPU chip.

HP has developed a new proprietary chip containing 450,000 transis-

Hewlett-Packard computer partner?



"At GCA, an HP computer tests IC manufacturing processes, and paid for itself in less than a year."

GCA is a leading international manufacturer of semiconductor production equipment. At its Burlington Division, in Bedford, Mass., semiconductor fabrication processes are investigated in a production-oriented R&D lab.

Says Dr. Thomas P. Shaughnessy, Manager of Process Engineering, "Our goal is to understand and quantify process requirements for future products. Our HP 9845 computer system is crucial to the collection, analysis, and graphical display of our experimental data.

"We find the 9845's interfacing capabilities, plus its powerful software options have let us cut manual procedures 10 to 20 percent, saving us $50,000 to $100,000 a year. HP 9845-generated graphics are used for reports to customers, making the computer an effective marketing tool as well."

tors, more than double the number previously considered the technological limit. Shown here beside a paper match at 2X magnification, this central processor chip is an example of the leading edge technology that keeps HP computers among the world's most advanced.

HP's new Microsystem: modular and low in cost.

The HP 1000 Model 5 is the smallest, lowest-priced complete system in HP's family of real-time computers. It is easy to configure for a wide

range of industrial and lab operations, and uses software packages upwardly compatible throughout the HP 1000 line, including networking, data base management, and graphics. Prices start at under $10,000*.

*Domestic U.S. prices only.

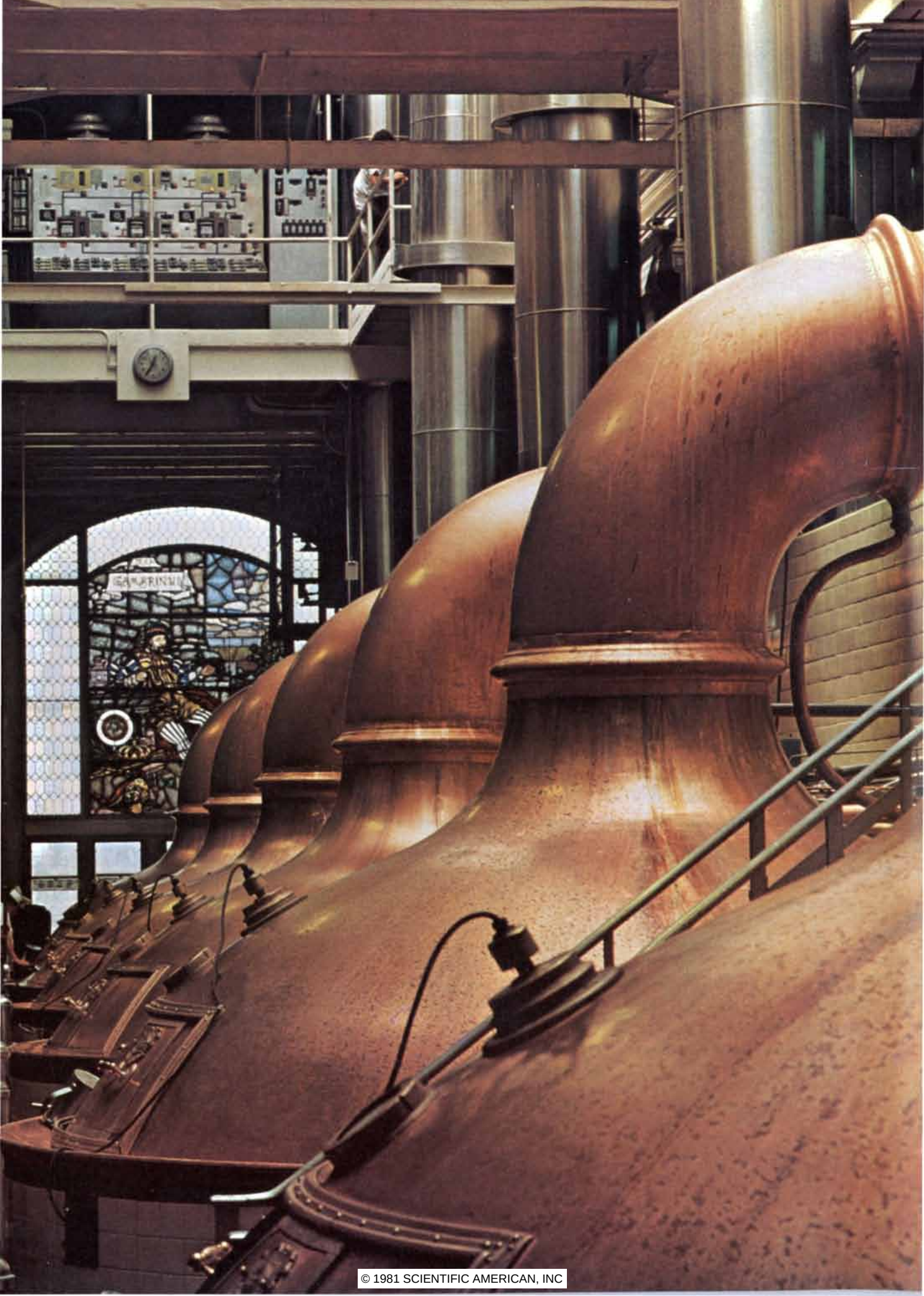
A working partnership with HP.

HP offers a free, 75-page catalog of computer products that provide solutions for Original Equipment Manufacturers. For your copy, call Dept. 304A toll free, (800) 547-3400 (except from Alaska and Hawaii). Oregon residents call 758-1010. Or write A.P. Oliverio, Vice-President, Marketing, Hewlett-Packard Co., 1502 Page Mill Rd., Palo Alto, CA 94304.

When performance must be measured by results

HEWLETT PACKARD

00145



The Microbiological Production of Food and Drink

Beer, wine, bread and cheese have been made by microorganisms since Neolithic times. To them have been added spirits, yogurt, pickles, sauerkraut, Oriental fermented foods and today single-cell protein

by Anthony H. Rose

Microorganisms were improving and spoiling the food and drink of human beings long before anyone realized that microorganisms exist. In time, but still without knowing what was happening biologically, people learned to encourage and exploit the fermentative action of microorganisms in the making of such things as cheese and beer. Today, with microbial activity fairly well understood, fermented foods and beverages constitute a large and important sector of the food industry. With the advent of the genetic-programming techniques David A. Hopwood discusses in the preceding article one can foresee large-scale advances in the quality and precision of the microbiological production of food and drink.

Milk was probably one of the first agricultural products. Since milk is quickly infected by bacteria, which sour it by converting its sugar (lactose) into lactic acid, it is likely that cheese was one of the first fermented foods. Over the millenniums this spontaneous process was gradually exploited and developed to make cheese and similar products. The manufacture of cultured dairy products is now second (in sales) only to the production of alcoholic beverages among the industries that rely on microbiological processes.

Cheesemaking basically calls for adding a starter culture of bacteria to the milk and letting the mixture incubate for a while. Then a proteolytic (protein-digesting) enzyme is added to coagulate the solids in the souring milk. Traditionally calf rennet, obtained from the fourth stomach of the unweaned calf, was the source of the enzyme, but it is gradually being replaced by microbial enzymes. The coagulated curd is separated from the whey, pressed to squeeze out some of the water and wrapped in cloth to dry. With some cheeses the growth of microorganisms on the outside of the cheese is encouraged during the curing process.

By about a century ago the art had advanced to the point where cheesemakers could stop relying on the spontaneous infection of milk by bacteria and could instead exploit one or more of several species of bacteria specifically cultured as cheese starters. The nature of the bacteria serving as the starter is one of several factors contributing to the enormous variety of cheeses. Other factors include the temperature of manufacture and the presence or absence of a secondary microbial flora on the cheese.

Soft cheeses have a high water content (from 50 to 80 percent) and are classified as ripened or unripened. A ripened soft cheese is a finished product as it comes from the initial processing steps; cottage cheese is an example. In an unripened soft cheese such as Camembert or Brie the growth of yeasts and species of the fungus *Penicillium* on the surface of the cheese is encouraged. If the cheese is to be semihard, it is cooked briefly to lower the moisture content of the curd to about 45 percent, thus making the curd firmer. Some varieties (Caerphilly for one) have a flavor like fresh curd; others (such as Limburger) are soaked in brine, which causes a surface flora of yeasts and bacteria to develop.

Hard cheeses, in which the water content is 40 percent or less, may have a simple bacterial flora, as Cheddar cheese does. Other hard cheeses differ in that the curd is inoculated with spores of mold (usually *Penicillium roqueforti*) that germinate when the curd is spiked to admit air. The growth of the mold in the cheese generates the flavor and aroma compounds that are characteristic of the individual cheese. Stilton, Danish blue, Roquefort and Gorgonzola are examples. A third class of hard cheeses, which include Gruyère, differs in that bacteria producing propionic acid are added to the starter mix. These bacteria, such as *Propionibacterium shermanii,* not only give the cheese a characteristic flavor but also, by generating carbon dioxide gas, give rise to the holes typical of such cheeses. Swiss mountain cheeses are in this class, but they are allowed to develop a surface flora of yeasts and bacteria that adds to their flavor and aroma.

Another type of fermented milk product differs from cheese in that it is liquid or semiliquid. The most popular members of the class are the yogurts. Yogurt is made by fermenting whole milk with a symbiotic mixture of two lactic acid bacteria, *Streptococcus thermophilus* and *Lactobacillus bulgaricus.* The fermentation is done at a temperature of about 40 degrees Celsius (104 degrees Fahrenheit). The characteristic flavor of a yogurt is attributable to lactic acid, made from the lactose in the milk, and to acetaldehyde; both are formed mainly by the *L. bulgaricus* bacteria. Because many people do not care for the tartness and acetaldehyde flavor of fresh yogurt the product is often flavored with fruit or fruit essences; more than 90 percent of the 500,000 pounds of yogurt produced in the U.S. each year are flavored in this way.

Related to the yogurts are a number of other fermented dairy products. Sour cream, for example, is made by souring pasteurized cream with lactic acid bacteria. Buttermilk is made by fermenting skimmed or partly skimmed pasteurized milk with a mixture of lactic acid bacte-

COPPER BREW KETTLES at the Pabst Brewing Co. plant in Milwaukee appear in the photograph on the opposite page. They serve in the boiling stage of brewing beer. The material boiled is wort, a water extract of germinated barley supplemented with hops to give flavor to the beer. Later the wort is put in tanks and fermented by a strain of the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae.* Boiling in a brew kettle is part of an ancient technology that has been modernized, as is indicated by the control panel above the stained-glass window. The figure in the window is Gambrinus Rex, or King Gambrinus, a mythological ruler said to be the patron saint of beer.

ria and related species. Among the more exotic products in this category are Bulgarian milk, kefir and koumis, which are popular in Slavic countries, and *vilia,* which is popular in Finland.

An ancient process that relies on microbial activity is the preservation of vegetables. It was in service long before the advent of canning and freezing and is still practiced on a commercial scale in several countries. Cabbage, olives and cucumbers in particular are preserved by a combination of brine treatment and fermentation. The vegetable is treated in a succession of brines containing different concentrations of salt. The final concentration is as low as 2 percent for cabbage and as high as 18 percent for olives. (Some pretreatment of the vegetable may be necessary. Olives, for example, contain an extremely bitter phenolic glucoside called oleuropein and need to be treated with a dilute solution of sodium hydroxide before brining to remove the bitterness.)

While the vegetables are in the brine they are subjected to the activity of a succession of microorganisms. The first step is the growth of the predominantly aerobic microbial flora that was on the surfaces of the vegetables before brining. Soon, however, the originally small numbers of lactic acid bacteria take over and, together with certain fermentative yeasts, including species of *Saccharomyces* and *Torulopsis,* carry out a fermentation that results in the production of lactic and acetic acids. Later the yeasts take over from the lactic acid bacteria. Fermentation ends when all the fermentable carbohydrates have been used up, although other species of yeast (mainly of the genera *Pichia, Debaromyces* and *Candida*) continue to grow as a film on the surface of the brine. In order to avoid having to rely on the flora of bacteria and yeasts naturally present in the vegetables and the brine, efforts have been made with some success to introduce cultures of the starter type, particularly of lactic acid bacteria, to better control the fermentations.

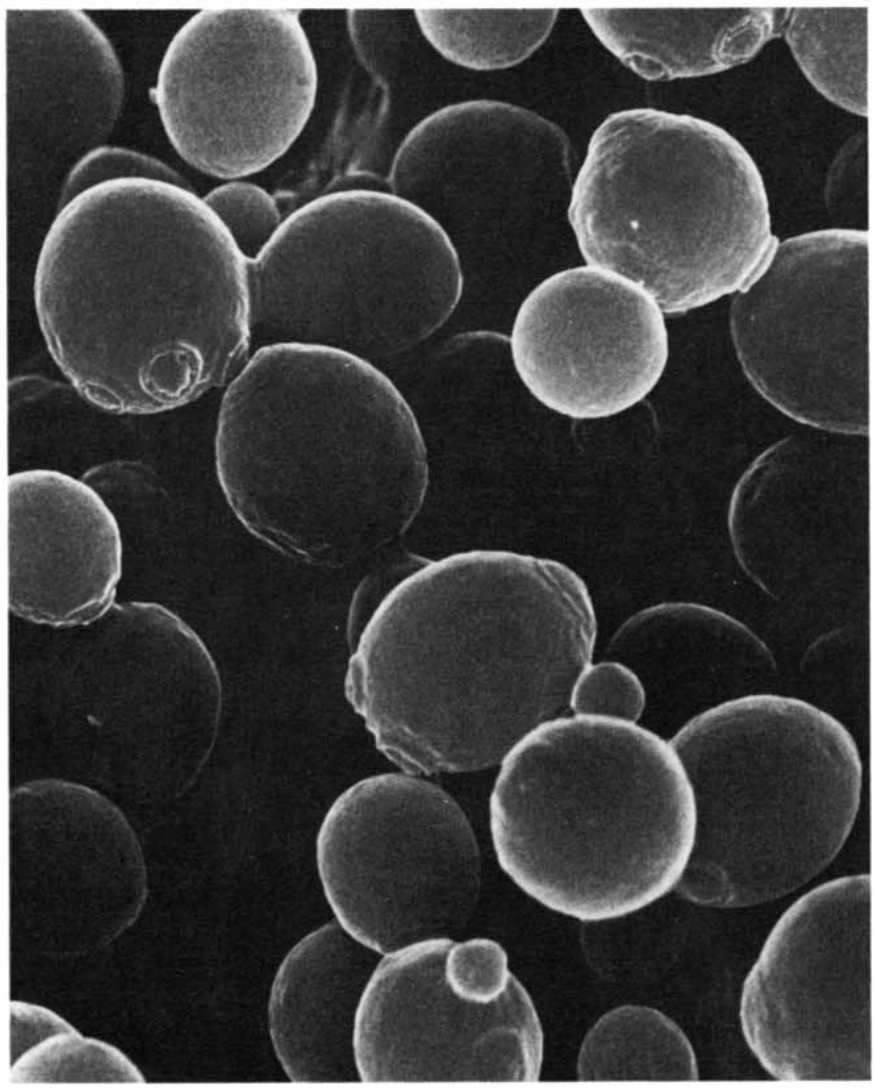
Whereas milk and vegetables are fermented primarily to preserve the nutrients of these basic foods, the growth of microorganisms is encouraged in other traditional types of fermented foods mainly to improve the taste and flavor of the product. Simultaneously the growing microorganisms increase the protein content of the food. Fermented foods of this class, which originated in the Orient, have fish or plant material (particularly soybeans) as the starting material. Fermented fish products are still largely limited to local consumption in Oriental countries, but soybean fermentations have gone farther afield, particularly among Oriental communities in North America.

Typical of these foods are the tempehs. A well-made tempeh consists of a compact cake of plant material completely covered and penetrated by white mold mycelia of species of the fungus genus *Rhizopus.* A word following "tempeh" designates the nature of the plant material that has been fermented. For example, *tempeh kedele* is made from *kedele,* the Indonesian word for soybeans. *Tempeh bongkreg katjang* is made from peanuts, *tempeh enthoe* from coconuts.

The plant material is soaked in water, dehulled, boiled or steamed and drained of excess water. Then raw tempeh from a previous batch is mixed in to supply spores of the *Rhizopus* mold. The mash is placed in trays, or in banana leaves when the tempeh is made in villages, and left until the mold has penetrated it sufficiently. Tempeh is usually not eaten raw but is deep-fried in coconut oil or cooked in some other way. Containing as much as 40 percent protein, tempehs are widely consumed in Indonesia.

Slightly different procedures are employed to make indigenous fermented foods in other countries. In Japan *natto* is the name given to the product that results when whole soybeans are fermented with the mold *Aspergillus oryzae.* A traditional Chinese food is *sufu,* a soft, cheeselike product made by fermenting soybean curd with a variety of molds, principally species of *Mucor.* Another variation on the theme is *ang-kak,* which originated in China. It is made by fermenting rice with the mold *Monascus purpureus.* Here the objective is not to alter the flavor of the rice but merely to color it red.

Soy sauce is a widely known product of the fermentation of soybeans. It was originally brewed in China many centuries ago and later introduced into other

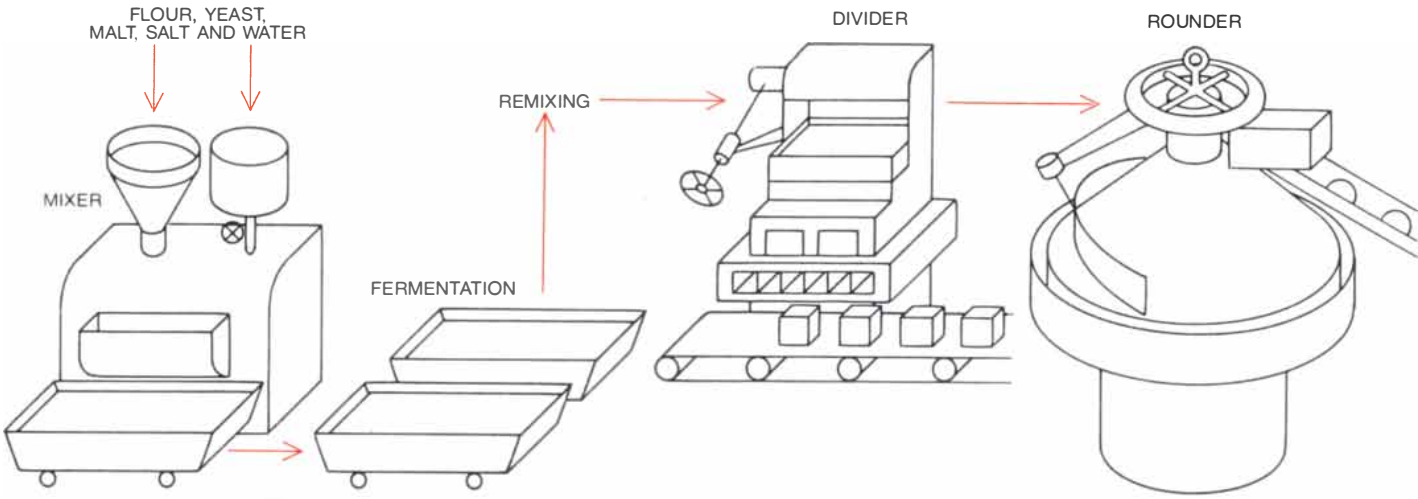


WORKHORSE OF FERMENTATION is the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae,* cells of which appear in this scanning electron micrograph made by Alastair T. Pringle of the University of California at Los Angeles. Each cell is about 10 micrometers in diameter. Strains of the yeast serve to raise bread and to make alcoholic beverages. As the cells ferment sugars they evolve carbon dioxide and also make alcohol; in dough the carbon dioxide forms the holes of bread. Several of the cells are budding (beginning to reproduce) and several budding scars are visible.

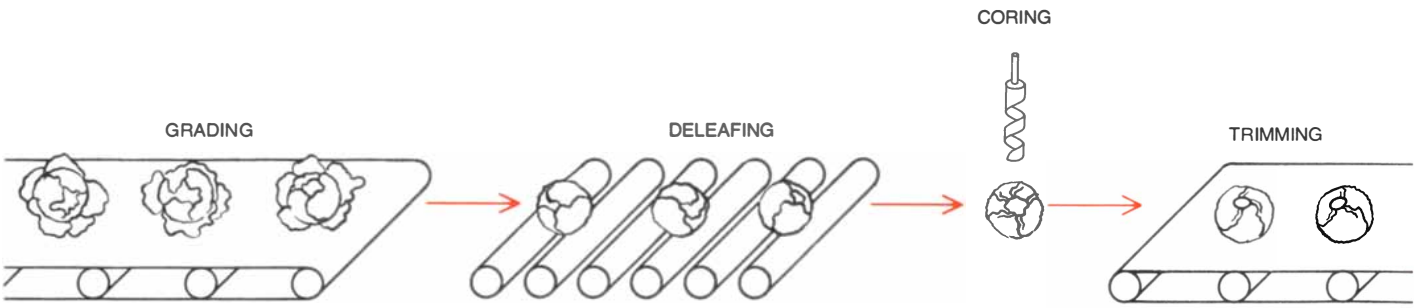
CHEESE	ORIGIN	MICROORGANISM		
SOFT, UNRIPENED				
COTTAGE CREAM NEUFCHATEL	CENTRAL EUROPE ? U.S. FRANCE	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris* *Streptococcus diacetilactis*	*Leuconostoc citrovorum*	
SOFT, RIPENED				
BRIE	FRANCE	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris*	*Penicillium camemberti* *Penicillium candidum*	*Brevibacterium linens*
CAMEMBERT	FRANCE	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris*	*Penicillium camemberti* *Penicillium candidum*	
LIMBURGER	BELGIUM	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris*	*Brevibacterium linens*	
SEMISOFT, RIPENED				
ASIAGO	ITALY	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris* *Streptococcus thermophilus*	*Lactobacillus bulgaricus*	
BLUE	FRANCE	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris*	*Penicillium roqueforti* or *Penicillium glaucum*	
BRICK	U.S.	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris*	*Brevibacterium linens*	
GORGONZOLA	ITALY	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris*	*Penicillium roqueforti* or *Penicillium glaucum*	
MONTEREY	U.S.	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris*		
MUENSTER	GERMANY	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris*	*Brevibacterium linens*	
ROQUEFORT	FRANCE	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris*	*Penicillium roqueforti* or *Penicillium glaucum*	
HARD, RIPENED				
CHEDDAR	BRITAIN	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris* *Streptococcus durans*	*Lactobacillus casei*	
COLBY	U.S.	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris* *Streptococcus durans*	*Lactobacillus casei*	
EDAM	NETHERLANDS	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris*		
GOUDA	NETHERLANDS	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris*		
GRUYERE	SWITZERLAND	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus thermophilus*	*Lactobacillus helveticus*	*Propionibacterium shermanii* or *Lactobacillus bulgaricus* and Propionic bacterium *freudenreichi*
STILTON	BRITAIN	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris*	*Penicillium roqueforti* or *Penicillium glaucum*	
SWISS	SWITZERLAND	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus thermophilus*	*Lactobacillus helveticus*	*Propionibacterium shermanii* or *Lactobacillus bulgaricus* and Propionic bacterium *freudenreichi*
VERY HARD, RIPENED				
PARMESAN	ITALY	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus cremoris* *Streptococcus thermophilus*	*Lactobacillus bulgaricus*	
ROMANO	ITALY	*Lactobacillus bulgaricus*	*Streptococcus thermophilus*	
PASTA FILATA (PLASTIC CURD)				
MOZZARELLA	ITALY	*Streptococcus lactis* *Streptococcus thermophilus*	*Lactobacillus bulgaricus*	
PROVOLONE	ITALY	*Lactobacillus bulgaricus*		

WELL-KNOWN CHEESES are charted according to their classification as ripened or unripened. A ripened cheese is a finished product when it emerges from the initial fermentation. In unripened cheeses the growth of yeasts and species of the fungus *Penicillium* on the surface of the cheese is encouraged after the initial processing. This list is far from exhaustive; the variety of cheeses is enormous.

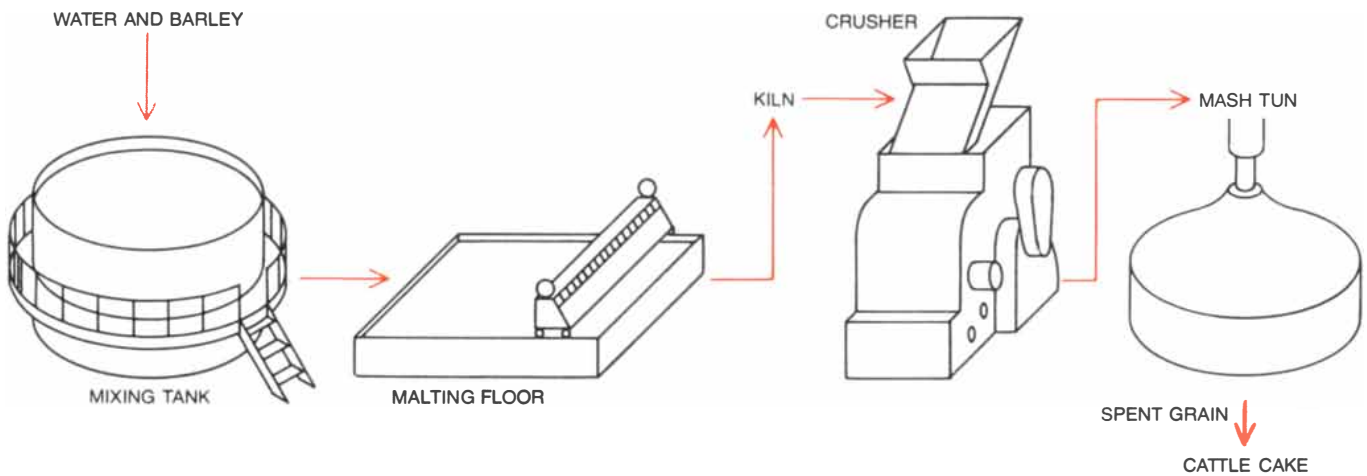
Oriental countries, particularly Japan, which is now the main manufacturer. It is made by fermenting a salted mixture of soybeans and wheat with the mold *Aspergillus oryzae* to yield a mixture called *koji,* which is put in a vessel with an equal amount of salt solution to make a mash known as *moromi.* The *moromi* is fermented in large tanks for from eight to 12 months, with a certain amount of agitation and preferably at a low temperature. The microorganisms chiefly responsible for the fermentation (the bacterium *Pediococcus soyae,* the yeast *Saccharomyces rouxii* and species of the yeast genus *Torulopsis*) originate in the *moromi.* Occasionally starter cultures of these microorganisms are added to the *moromi,* but in either process the metabolism of the microorganisms enriches the *moromi* with lactic acid and



MANUFACTURE OF BREAD is portrayed in this flow chart of the major steps. A "sponge," or starting mixture, containing only part of the flour that will eventually go into the bread, is kneaded in a mixer for several minutes and then fermented for several hours. The rest of the flour is added and the dough is remixed. The divider cuts the dough into loaf-size pieces, which are further shaped by the rounder.



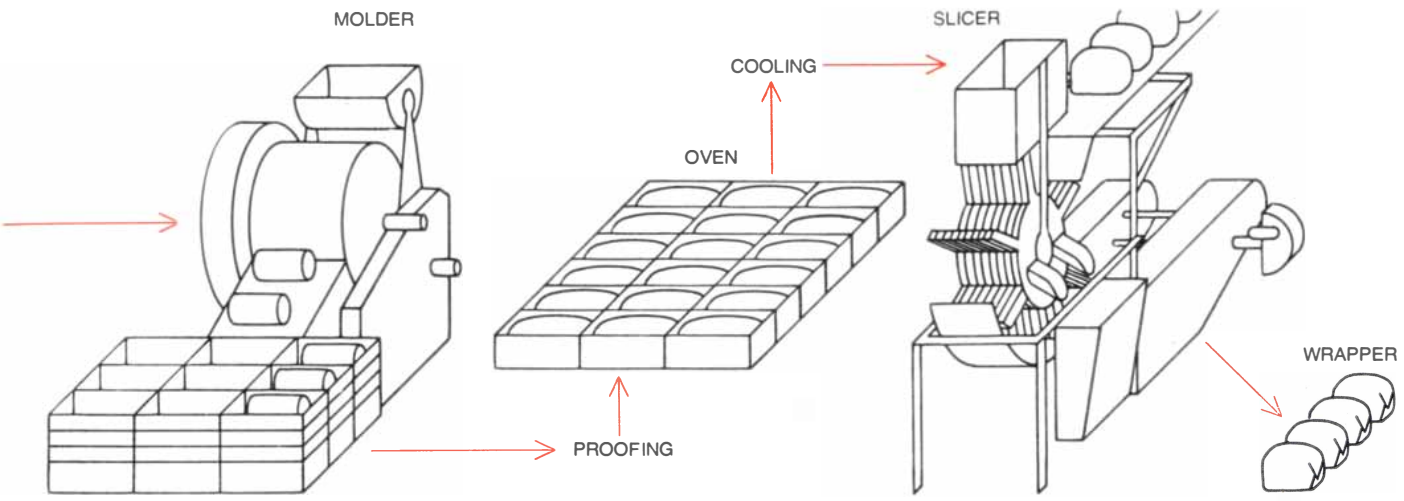
PRESERVATION OF VEGETABLES is an application of fermentation that long predates canning and freezing and is still widely practiced on a commercial scale. The process is depicted here for the preservation of cabbage as sauerkraut by the dry-salt method. In this



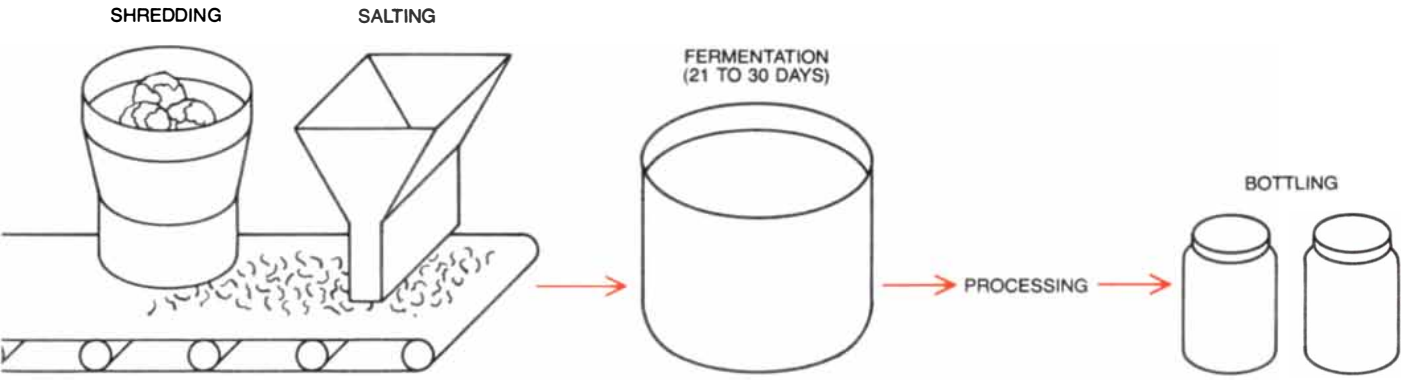
PRODUCTION OF BEER starts with the malting of barley, in which the grain is induced to sprout briefly to produce enzymes that will catalyze the breakdown of starch. The malt is ground and mixed with warm water (and often with other cereals such as corn) before going to the mash tun, where over a period of a few hours enzymes break down the long chains of starch into smaller molecules of carbo-

other acids and with ethanol. When the fermentation is complete, the *moromi* is pressed and the extruded soy sauce is packaged. The cake that remains is often fed to animals.

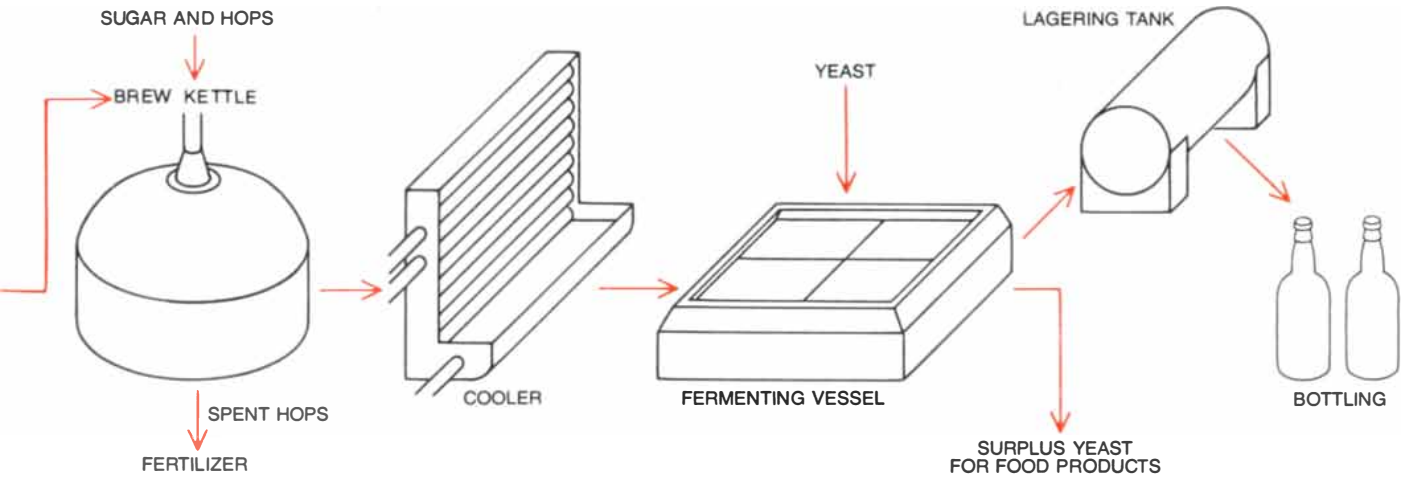
The discovery of flour and hence of breadmaking is thought to have been made very early in human development, probably in Egypt. The first breads were flat ones made by baking a mixture of flour and water. Precisely when dough was first leavened is not known. The main effect of leavening is to increase the volume of dough as a result of the breakdown of sugars by yeast to form bubbles of carbon dioxide. The bubbles are trapped in the dough, and when it is baked, they give leavened bread its characteristic honeycomb texture. Leavening may have come about as a result of the spontaneous growth of



At this stage the dough is rubbery; it is put through an intermediate proofing stage (not shown), where it rises and changes in structure and is therefore easier to mold. The molder shapes the pieces of dough into cylinders that are put in baking pans. In a final proofing stage the dough ferments further before being put in the oven. After baking for 20 minutes the loaves of bread are cooled, sliced and wrapped.



method a brine is generated by osmotic gradients arising from the interaction of the salt and the natural fluids of the cabbage. In the brine the lactic acid bacteria originating on the fresh cabbage become the dominant species in the extended process of fermentation.



hydrate. The aqueous extract called wort is separated from the mix and boiled with hops in a brew kettle. The boiling extracts flavors from the hops and stops the enzyme action in the wort. The hops are removed and the wort is put in a fermenting vessel, where it is pitched, or seeded, with yeast. After fermentation the beer may go to a lagering tank to mature, following which it is pasteurized and bottled.

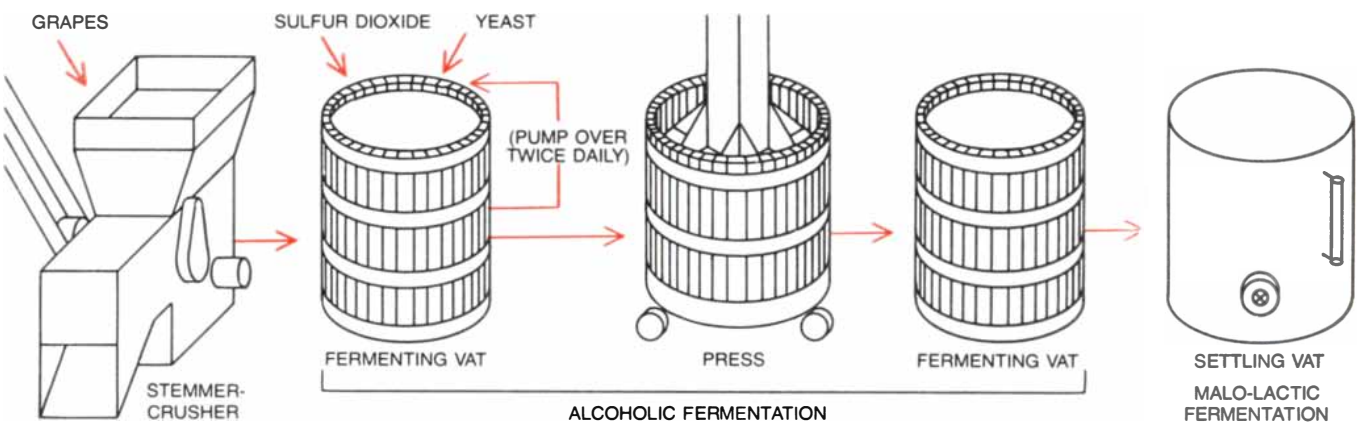
yeast in the mixture of flour and water or of the addition of fermenting beer to the dough.

Today breadmaking and the large-scale cultivation of yeast that is associated with it constitute one of the most sophisticated branches of industrial microbiology. Although flat breads are still made in many parts of the world, most bread in the developed countries is made by mixing flour (usually wheat flour) with water and smaller proportions of yeast, salt, sugar and shortening. After it is mixed or kneaded the dough is allowed to ferment at a temperature of about 25 degrees C. (higher in recently developed processes). During this time the yeast, a strain of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae,* breaks down sugars in the dough into a mixture of alcohol and carbon dioxide gas, bubbles of which become fixed in the dough. This is fermentation. When the dough is baked after the period of fermentation, the alcohol is driven off, but the bubbles of carbon dioxide remain to give texture to the bread. Some sugars are available to the yeast immediately, including added ones such as sucrose and cane sugar. They are supplemented by sugars liberated from the starch of the cereal grain by two enzymes, alpha-amylase and beta-amylase, that are constituents of the flour and are activated by water. The sugars include maltose and glucose. Maltose is usually fermented by the yeast toward the end of the fermentation process, when the other sugars have been almost used up.

Although the main function of the yeast in bakery fermentations is to raise the dough, it also has other effects. One effect is to change the structure and texture of the dough, which it does by modifying the structure of gluten, the principal wheat protein, as the dough is stretched mechanically. Moreover, by excreting compounds such as cysteine and glutathione, the yeast may alter the structure of gluten by breaking intramolecular disulfide (S–S) bonds. Products of the fermentation by yeast also modify the flavor of the baked dough and increase its nutritive value to a limited extent.

Over the past 25 years or so this method of breadmaking, which is often called the bulk-fermentation process, has been modified to enhance the possibilities of handling the dough rapidly by machine. All the rapid methods seek to produce baked dough at a faster rate than bulk fermentation does, and to this end the fermentation is done at a higher temperature (usually about 35 degrees C.) and the dough contains a higher proportion of yeast, which may also be a strain with greater fermentative activity. In addition the dough is subjected to intense mechanical mixing, which has an effect on the structure of the dough.

Modern breadmaking could not be the efficient industry it is without the associated industry manufacturing baker's yeast. Until the middle of the 19th century the yeast that went into bread dough was barm, the residual yeast from the brewing of beer. Barm proved to be unreliable, however, as the volume of breadmaking increased, and specialized plants were therefore built for the production of baker's yeast. In such plants specially selected strains of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* are grown in highly aerated conditions in a nutrient medium based on molasses. The bulk production of baker's yeast must be done under closely controlled conditions to ensure the constant fermenting ability that bakeries require day after day.

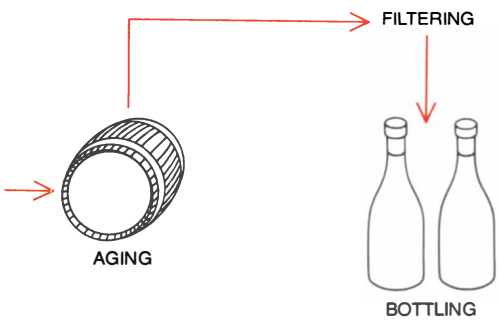


MAKING OF WINE is portrayed in a generalized process that in actuality differs somewhat for red wine and white wine. Here the wine is made in batches, which is by far the commonest way. Some of the cheaper wines are manufactured by a process of continuous fermen-

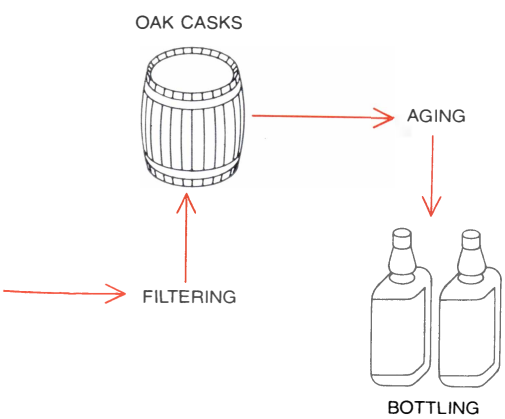
DISTILLED SPIRITS such as whiskey are made in a process that is much like the brewing of beer. It is depicted here for bourbon. Grains of corn are mixed with smaller amounts of rye and malted barley, crushed and mixed with warm water. The wort that emerges from the mash tun is transferred to a fermenter and pitched with yeast. After fermentation the beer is conveyed to a unit consisting of

The manufacture of alcoholic beverages also exploits the fermentation of sugars by *S. cerevisiae,* but here the main requirement is the alcohol rather than the carbon dioxide. Alcoholic beverages are grouped in three categories: the wines and beers, which are made by fermenting with yeast the juice of a fruit or a sugary extract of grain; the fortified wines, in which brandy is added to the wine, and the spirits, which are made by distilling wines or beers.

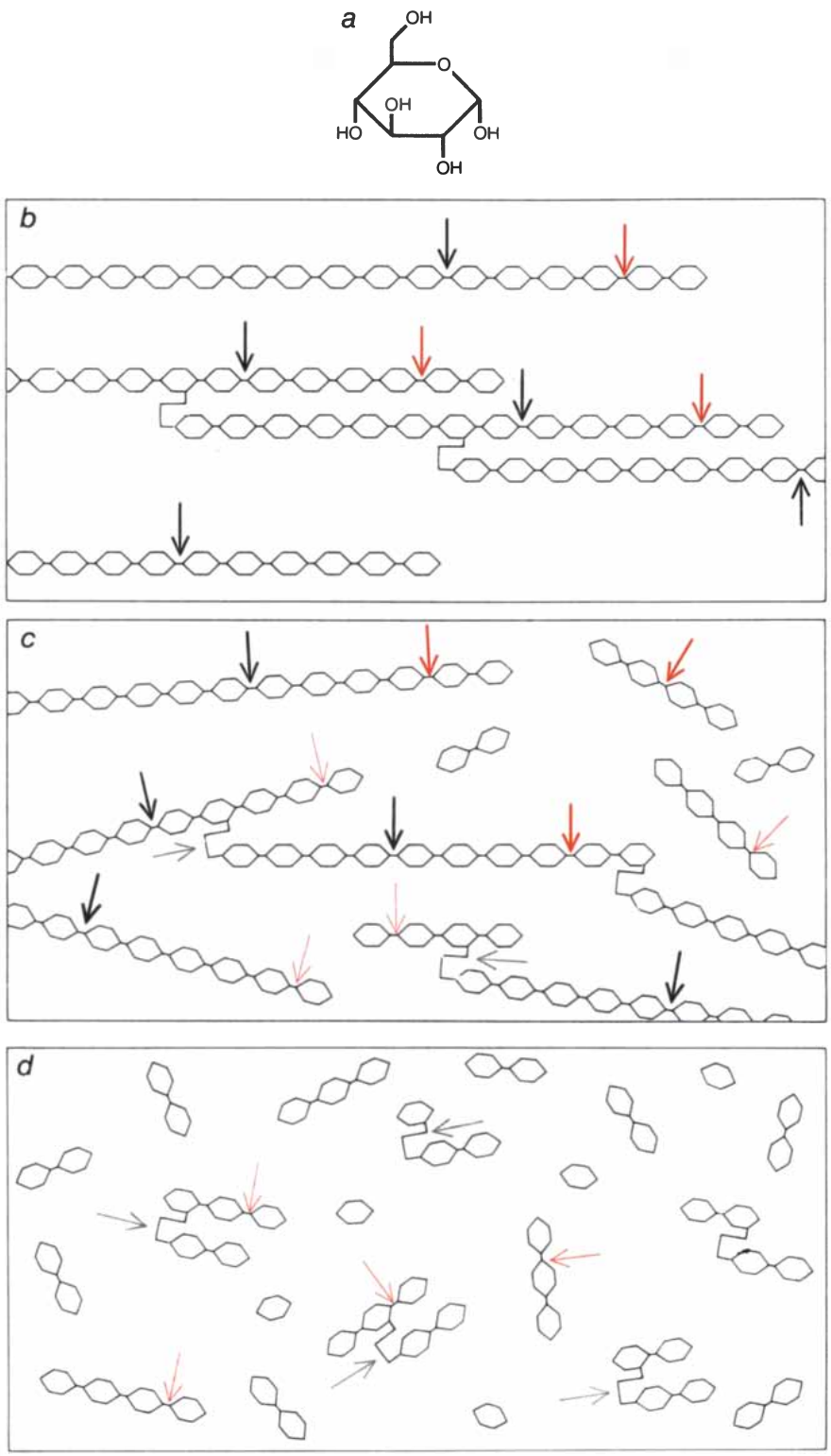
Any solution of the sugary substances of grain that is allowed to stand will soon become infected by microorganisms. Archaeological evidence shows that the fermentation of grain extracts was already an advanced art more than 6,000 years ago. The beers so made not only tasted better than water but also were safer to drink, since pathogenic organisms cannot grow in beer because of its acidity and its content of antimicrobial compounds derived from hops. The worldwide production of beer is now about 700 million hectoliters (18.5 billion gallons) per year, with the per capita consumption highest in West Germany and Australia.



tation. Grape juice is fed steadily into a fermenting stage and wine is steadily removed.



a beer still and doubler. The condensate is collected in a high wine tank and then matured for several years in oak casks before bottling.



BREAKDOWN OF STARCH in brewery fermentations entails the action of the malt enzymes alpha-amylase (*black arrows*) and beta-amylase (*dark colored arrows*) on long chains of glucose, one molecule of which is shown at *a*. The straight chains (*b*) represent one of the components of starch, amylose, and the branched structures represent the other component, amylopectin. Beta-amylase splits off two glucose units at a time (*c*) to yield maltose, a disaccharide. At the same time alpha-amylase acts deeper inside the chains to split off larger sections, which in turn are acted on by beta-amylase. The products of the action of the two amylases appear in *d*. Also shown (*c, d*) are the sites of action of the two enzymes that act on dextrin. A debranching enzyme (*gray arrows*) breaks branch linkages; amyloglucosidase (*light colored arrows*) splits off single residues of glucose from dextrins. The genetic manipulation of yeast cells has improved their ability to ferment dextrins, thereby using up more of the carbohydrates in the brew and giving rise to "light" beer, which is distinguished by being low in carbohydrates.

Most beer is made from barley, although small amounts are made from other cereal grains. The grains of barley are first malted, that is, allowed to germinate for a short time. The main objective of the malting is to produce enzymes in the grain that (either during malting or later) catalyze the breakdown of starch. The malted barley is then crushed and mixed with water at a temperature of up to 67 degrees C. Within a few hours enzymes in the mash break down the long chains of starch into smaller carbohydrate molecules and also break down other long-chain molecules such as proteins.

The aqueous extract, which is called malt wort, is separated from the spent grains and boiled, traditionally with hops to give flavor to the final beer. The boiling of the wort not only extracts flavor compounds from the hops but also stops further enzyme action in the wort and precipitates protein from it. Now the hopped wort is pitched, or seeded, with a strain of *S. cerevisiae*. The main action of the yeast is to convert the sugars in the wort into alcohol and carbon dioxide. (There is also a fivefold increase in the amount of yeast during the fermentation.) Other quantitatively minor products of yeast metabolism have a strong effect on the flavor of the final beer. They include higher alcohols such as amyl, isoamyl and phenylethyl alcohol, which are present in beer at concentrations on the order of milligrams per liter. Other important flavor compounds formed by the yeast are short-chain acids such as acetic and butyric acids and esters of them. At the end of fermentation the yeast is separated from the beer, which is then allowed to mature for an appropriate period. After filtration, pasteurization and possibly other steps the beer is ready to be packaged and sold.

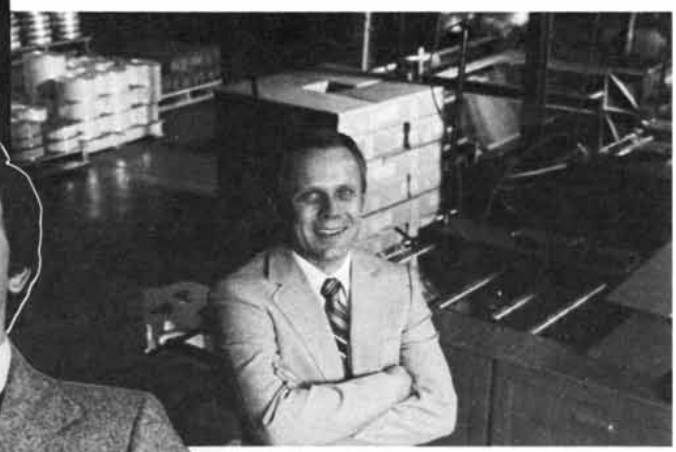
Traditionally two types of yeast are employed in brewing beer. The majority of beers are lagers, which by tradition are made with a yeast that settles to the bottom of the fermentation tank during fermentation. These bottom-fermentation yeasts were first isolated in pure culture about 100 years ago by the Danish botanist Emil Christian Hansen, working at the Carlsberg Institute in Copenhagen, and have been named *Saccharomyces carlsbergensis*. In Britain and in parts of Europe and North America the yeast employed in brewing beer rises to the surface during fermentation. Top-fermentation yeasts are classified as strains of *S. cerevisiae*. Taxonomists do not now distinguish these yeasts as separate species, although the two names continue to be used in brewing. The strains of yeast popular in breweries have been chosen by largely empirical means over centuries of brewing, but attempts are now being made to tailor the genetic makeup of brewing yeasts to the

"It's beautiful what your bucks will buy from Ohio Scientific."

Ohio Scientific was first to add Winchester hard disk drives to microcomputers. This advanced technology allows low cost microcomputers to store over 100 times as much information on line as they could before.

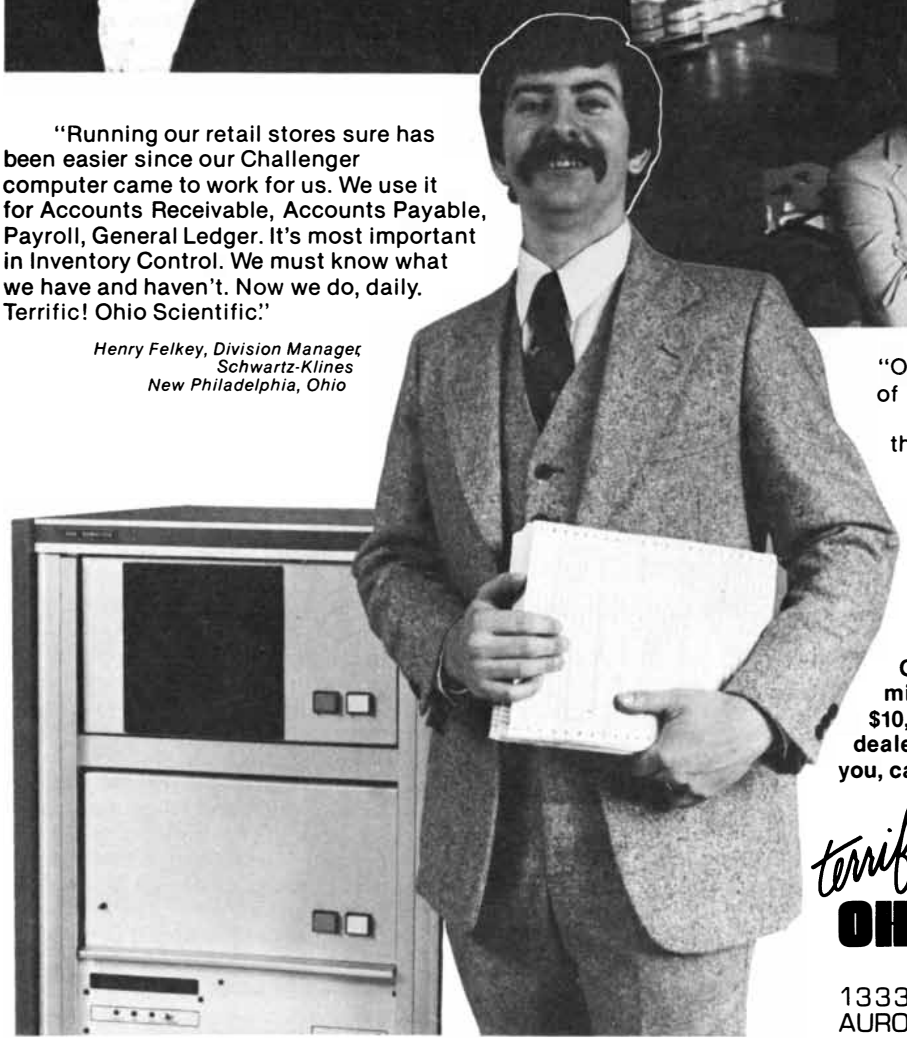
"Our Challenger C3-B has been running almost 24 hours a day for the last 18 months keeping track of countless details of our business. The Challenger's real time clock allows repetitive jobs to be scheduled months in advance, and runs them without operator intervention when the time comes. For example, every morning at 3 AM our Challenger knows it is time to update all the day's accounting records including the P&L, General Ledger, and Payables. It knows when it is time to file a tax return, and it makes out the quarterly reports. When it is through with all of this, it writes the checks. Periodically it does a comprehensive advertising analysis and updates any other files that are necessary."

Holly Quarles, President, Commonwealth Capital Corp.
Charlottesville, Virginia



"Running our retail stores sure has been easier since our Challenger computer came to work for us. We use it for Accounts Receivable, Accounts Payable, Payroll, General Ledger. It's most important in Inventory Control. We must know what we have and haven't. Now we do, daily. Terrific! Ohio Scientific."

Henry Felkey, Division Manager
Schwartz-Klines
New Philadelphia, Ohio



"Our Challenger gives us more control of scrap from our blown film extrusion operation. By putting shift reports through the computer, we spot waste immediately. Whether the problem is the extruder or the operator it's corrected fast. Wasted material is wasted money."

Wayne Johnson, Controller, Wyard
Industries, Cambridge, Minnesota

Ohio Scientific hard disk based microcomputers start at less than $10,000. And are sold by more than 400 dealers nationwide. For the one nearest you, call 1-800-321-6850, TOLL FREE.

terrific!

OHIO SCIENTIFIC
a M/ACOM Company
1333 SOUTH CHILLICOTHE ROAD
AURORA, OH 44202 • (216) 831-5600

requirements of the individual brewer.

The technology of wine making is much simpler. Until recently the process had changed little over the 5,000 years that wine has been made. Red or white grapes from selected varieties of the vine are collected and crushed to express the juice. Until recently the grape juice was allowed to ferment spontaneously by way of microorganisms present on the surface of the freshly picked grapes. The natural flora of the skins of grapes includes several different yeasts, some of genera other than *Saccharomyces.* Many of the yeasts responsible for the first part of the fermentation are later killed off by the alcohol released when strains of *S. cerevisiae* ferment sugars in the juice. After fermentation the wine is filtered and bottled.

In recent years the microbiology of wine making has changed. Instead of relying on spontaneous fermentation by skin-borne yeasts, many vintners now add specially selected cultures of *S. cerevisiae* to the grape juice. A number of producers now regulate the temperature of fermentation, the optimum being in the range from seven to 14 degrees C. In some areas wine is fermented not in batches but continuously. Juice is fed steadily into a fermentation process and wine is continuously removed. In general only the cheaper wines are made by continuous fermentation.

Similar methods serve for making wines from other fruit juices. The manufacture of sake, or rice wine, is more akin to making beer in that the rice contains starch rather than sugars. The starch has to be converted into fermentable sugars by means of the mold *Aspergillus oryzae.* Spores of the mold are mixed with steamed rice and the mixture is incubated for five or six days at a temperature of about 35 degrees C. to yield the product known as *koji.* Portions of *koji* are mixed with more steamed rice and some sake yeast, which is a strain of *S. cerevisiae.* This starter culture, which is called *moto,* serves to ferment the main batch of steamed rice (*moromi*) for as long as three weeks. Sake contains as much as 20 percent alcohol by volume.

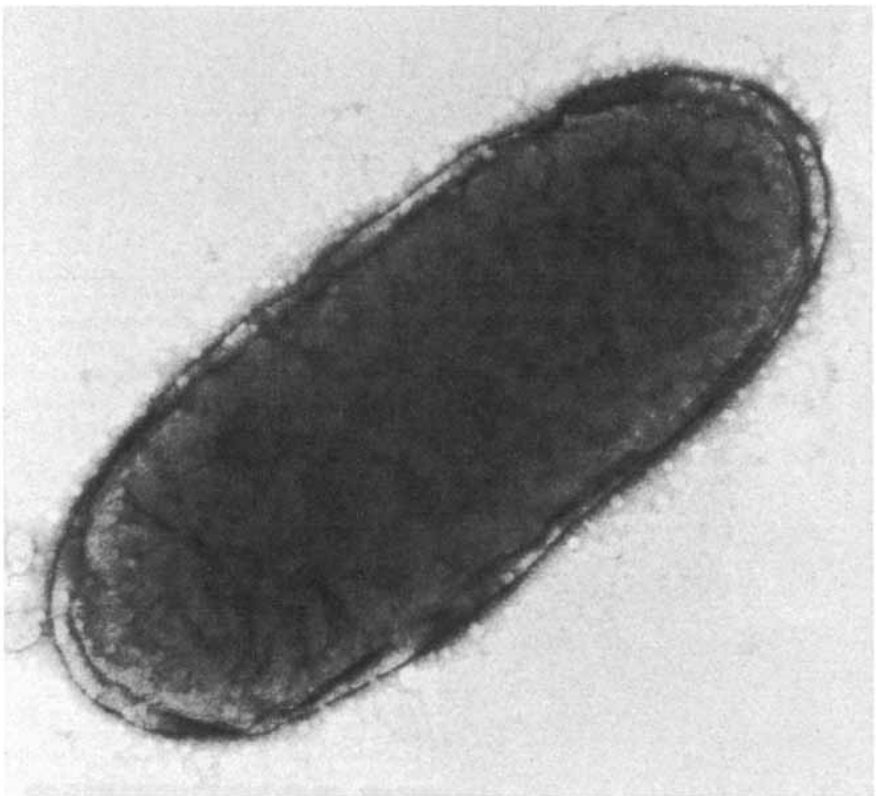
The addition of brandy to wine to fortify it was originally done to arrest the yeast-fermentation process and to make the wine biologically stable. Because fortified wine contains from 15 to 20 percent alcohol by volume it is not susceptible to microbial contamination. Except for fino and amontillado sherry, fortification simply involves adding an appropriate amount of brandy to the wine, storing the wine briefly and then making a final adjustment of the alcohol content, again with brandy. In the production of fino and amontillado sherry in the Jerez district of Spain the wine after fortification is matured in contact with the air to encourage the growth of a surface flora made up of a variety of yeasts. The metabolic activity of these yeasts contributes to the characteristic nutty flavor of the sherries.

The making of grain-based distilled spirits differs from the making of beer (apart from the distillation step itself) chiefly in the absence of a boiling stage. Therefore the enzymes that are active in the mash continue to operate during fermentation, breaking down more sugar and producing more alcohol. Distilled spirits differ from one another in the nature of the distillation process. Scotch malt whisky is distilled in small pot stills, whereas most other whiskeys are distilled in plants that operate continuously. With many spirits the fermented liquid is transferred to the still along with the yeast, since it has been shown that the yeast can contribute to the array of flavor compounds in the final distilled beverage. Also contributing to the flavor of the final distilled product are compounds extracted by the liquid from the wood barrels in which such spirits as whiskey and brandy are aged for a period of years.

I noted above that one of the main advantages of encouraging microbial growth in foods of the tempeh type is the increase in the protein content of the food. A logical extension of this idea is to grow suitable microorganisms on a large scale as a direct source of human food and animal feed. This was first done as a result of the shortage of food in Germany during World War I. In Berlin, Max Delbrück (not the late molecular biologist) and his colleagues developed processes for growing brewer's yeast (*S. cerevisiae*) on a large scale. Such production managed to replace as much as 60 percent of the foodstuffs Germany had been importing before the war. The yeast was incorporated mainly into soups and sausages.

Food yeast again made an important contribution to the diet in Germany in World War II. Special strains of food yeast (*Candida arborea* and *C. utilis*) were made in several production centers. During the 1960's the concept attracted a good deal of interest as a means of relieving food shortages in underdeveloped countries. Several large oil companies worked out processes for growing strains of *Candida lipolytica* in which the carbon and the energy for growth were provided by the alkanes (straight-chain hydrocarbon molecules) of petroleum. *C. lipolytica* resembles the food yeast *C. utilis,* but it has the additional property of being able to grow on alkanes.

It was at about this time that the term single-cell protein was coined to describe the new range of microbial food



MICROBIAL FOOD AND FEED named Pruteen is based on the large-scale cultivation of the bacterium *Methylophilus methylotrophus* by Imperial Chemical Industries in Britain. A single specimen appears in this electron micrograph; the enlargement is 78,000 diameters.

bio·industry-Innovative use of microorganisms in the profitable production of materials to fill human needs.

Bioindustrial Program*	Begun	Sponsor	Mid-1981 Status
Automated bioscreening	1971	Cetus	A basic Cetus tool for finding new genes and enzymatic activities.
Genetic improvement of pharmaceutical microorganisms	1973	Cetus & Schering	Commercial production of important antibiotics by Schering.
Engineer a series of organisms for specific industrial uses	1975	Cetus	N.I.H. has approved production of human interferon in *Bacillus subtilis*.
Develop immobilized cell and enzyme systems for chemical process industries	1976	Cetus	New chemicals under development. Patents issued; others pending.
Improve production of Vitamin B_{12}	1977	Cetus & Roussel Uclaf	In commercial production.
Manufacture fructose from inexpensive forms of glucose	1977	Cetus & Socal	Pilot plant being designed with Standard Oil Company of California.
Bioprocess alkenes to valuable oxides and glycols	1977	Cetus & Socal	Process under development with Standard Oil Company of California.
Produce ethanol by continuous fermentation	1978	Cetus & National Distillers	National Distillers has announced plans for a $100 million manufacturing plant.
Upgrade hydrocarbons microbiologically	1978	Cetus & Amoco	Patents filed on behalf of Standard Oil Company (Indiana).
Produce xanthan gum in oilfields for enhanced crude oil recovery	1978	Cetus & Amoco	Patents filed on behalf of Standard Oil Company (Indiana).
Make human insulin microbiologically	1978	Cetus	Process scale-up in progress.
Make human interferons microbiologically	1979	Cetus & Shell	Pilot plant under construction with Shell Oil Company.
Develop vaccine to prevent colibacillosis... a widespread disease of newborn calves and piglets	1979	Cetus	Near commercial introduction... this could be the first recombinant DNA product marketed in the U.S.A.
Produce monoclonal antibody for organ transplant tissue typing	1980	Cetus	The first product of Cetus Immune Corp. Marketed by Cooper Laboratories Inc.
Produce diagnostic kits for toxoplasmosis identification	1980	Cetus	The first product of Cetus Palo Alto Corp. Clinical tests are underway.

*For contractual and proprietary reasons, several Cetus programs are not listed.

Cetus has pioneered bioindustry since 1971.
Our 400 people share our science, our business, and our vision of the future.
Professionals in molecular genetics, microbiology, organic chemistry, biochemistry, automated bioscreening, fermentation and process engineering, instrumentation design, tissue culture, and computer applications are invited to contact Cetus Professional Development, 600 Bancroft Way, Berkeley, CA 94710, 415-549-3300.

cetus
The bioindustrial company

and feed. The main pioneering work was done by the British Petroleum Company. The product was named Toprina, and the process was developed to the point where a $100-million plant to make it was built in Sardinia. Unfortunately the plant will never make the expected contribution to the relief of food shortages. The rising cost of petroleum was a factor (it forced many other petroleum companies to withdraw from ventures in single-cell protein), but political problems intervened too, and the company was unable to convince the Italian authorities that Toprina was toxicologically safe. The plant remains idle.

Nevertheless, at least two companies retain interest in single-cell-protein projects based on methane as the substrate. They are Hoechst AG in West Germany and Imperial Chemical Industries in Britain. The British company has recently started production of the bacterium *Methylophilus methylotrophus* in a plant capable of turning out 75,000 tons per year. The bacterium can oxidize methane, but because of safety problems that can arise with mixtures of methane and air, methane is converted chemically into methanol, which then serves as the source of carbon and energy for the bacteria. The product is named Pruteen.

The rise and fall of the single-cell-protein venture largely reflects the impact of market forces. The rising cost of petroleum has made the product less competitive with its main rivals as a cheap source of animal protein: soybeans and fish meal. In the U.S.S.R., where comparable market forces do not operate, 86 plants making single-cell protein are reported to be operating; at least 12 of them are said to rely on hydrocarbons as the source of carbon and energy for the growing cells.

For nearly a century the microbiologists working with food and beverages have been trying to understand more fully the role of microorganisms in fermentation. With some foods, such as the tempehs, little is known so far beyond the names of the fermentative organisms. With others the understanding of the changes brought about by microbial activity is much deeper. In these instances a search has usually been made for strains of microorganisms that can achieve the desired changes in the food or beverage more efficiently.

Improved strains have been selected empirically, of course, for centuries, but modern knowledge enables the food-and-beverage microbiologist to look for strains that produce, for example, certain flavoring compounds in higher or lower concentrations. Until recently the relatively sophisticated techniques for selecting improved strains could be applied only to microorganisms that are amenable to genetic analysis. For example, some of the strains of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* that go into the fermentation of foods or beverages can be induced to form sexual spores, thereby making possible a program of yeast-strain selection based on hybridization. Such programs, which are necessarily empirical, have made a valuable contribution to the improvement of strains of yeast employed in breadmaking.

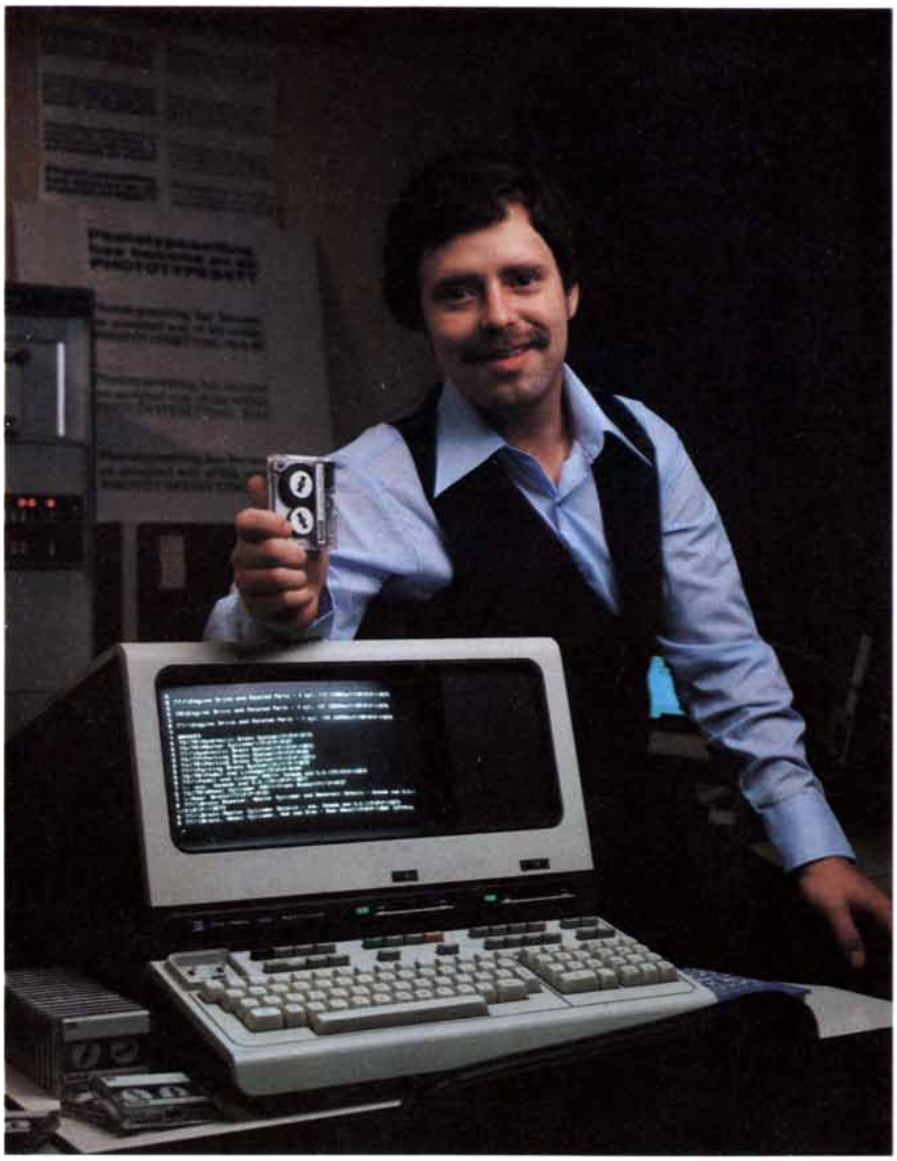
Newer techniques that manipulate *S. cerevisiae* genetically have recently been applied in the brewing industry. An example is an effort to change the ability of strains to ferment carbohydrate. The carbohydrates in malt wort consist of about 53 percent maltose, 12 percent glucose, 13 percent maltotriose, 22 percent dextrins and a trace of maltotetraose. The top- and bottom-fermenting strains of brewer's yeast are able to ferment all of them except the dextrins and occasionally the maltotetraose. Because of the widespread rise in the demand for "light" beer, meaning beer with a lower content of carbohydrates, efforts have been made to introduce into brewer's yeast the genetic information for fermenting dextrins, which make up such a substantial part of the carbohydrate content in wort. Fortunately *Saccharomyces diastaticus,* a species related to brewer's yeast, is able to ferment dextrin. The chief aim of the recent research has therefore been to introduce genes for the fermentation of dextrin into strains of *S. cerevisiae,* the standard brewer's yeast.

Several brewing companies have been successful in introducing the genes that break down dextrin into their own favored strains of yeast. So far, however, none of these genetically engineered strains has been put to work in the brewing of beer. The reason is that when genes from *S. diastaticus* are made part of brewer's yeast, the recipient strains thereafter produce beer with an unpleasant phenolic flavor.

It has been shown that the unpleasant flavor is caused by a compound, 4-vinyl guaiacol, that the yeast makes from a compound derived from wort. Originally it was thought the genes for making 4-vinyl guaiacol were closely linked to the genes regulating the breakdown of dextrin, so that the off flavor was unavoidable. Recent work by Roy Tubb and his associates at the Brewing Research Foundation in Britain has shown, however, that the two groups of genes do not always remain attached when strains of yeast are genetically engineered. The path to the construction of dextrin-utilizing strains of yeast for brewing beer therefore seems to be clear. It is likely to be the first of many programs in which genes are specifically tailored to achieve some desired flavor, quality or production technique in fermented foods and beverages.

SAMPLE OF PRUTEEN is in pellet form; the single-cell-protein food and feed is also made in granular form. Its color is light brown. The material is made by growing large numbers of *M. methylotrophus* bacteria, which are able to employ methane as a source of energy and carbon. In the industrial process methane is converted into methanol before it is fed to the bacteria.

"Our reputation rests on digits, decimal points, and details. We wouldn't trust them to anything less than Scotch® Brand Data Cartridges."



Bill Birkett, Vice President, Trade Graphics, Inc., Livonia, Michigan

The unique design of a data cartridge provides great reliability, high storage capacity and long tape life. And where could you possibly get better data cartridges than Scotch Brand, made by 3M, the people who invented the data cartridge system itself?

3M controls every step in manufacturing. Top quality magnetic tape and precision components are part of every Scotch Data Cartridge. Over twenty-five years of service to the computer industry assure you of the utmost reliability.

Scotch Data Cartridges are available in miniature DC 100A, the standard-size DC 300A and now, an extra-length DC 300XL with 50% more storage capacity. They are compatible with most cartridge systems including Hewlett-Packard, IBM, NCR, Tektronix and TI.

To find out where you can find Scotch Data Cartridges or virtually any other data recording medium, call toll-free: 800-328-1300. (In Minnesota, call collect: 612-736-9625.) Ask for the Data Recording Products Division.

If it's worth remembering, it's worth Scotch Data Recording Products.

3M

The Microbiological Production of Pharmaceuticals

The introduction of penicillin opened up a new era in medicine. Now microorganisms manufacture not only a host of other antibiotics but also vitamins, hormones, alkaloids, antitumor drugs and interferons

by Yair Aharonowitz and Gerald Cohen

The introduction of microbiology into the pharmaceuticals industry, which began in the 1940's, has brought about a transformation profound enough to be called a revolution. Advances in our understanding of microorganisms and techniques for manipulating them genetically are now routinely exploited in the identification of new therapeutic substances, in research and development and in the processes of industrial production itself. The linked chemical reactions that make up the metabolic system of a microorganism constitute the means of production. In huge tanks cultures of genetically identical cells bred for high yield are immersed in a rich liquid medium. The pharmaceutically valuable products of metabolism are later extracted and subjected to further processing.

Such cell cultures on a mighty scale are employed in the pharmaceuticals industry in three ways, which can be differentiated on the basis of how much of the information needed to make the product is present in the microorganism's unaltered genome (complete set of genes). In the case of the antibiotics the product is a natural metabolite, and all the information for its synthesis is native to the cell. (Even so, the product is often chemically modified later.) It was the identification of penicillin, a natural metabolite of the mold *Penicillium,* that initiated the transformation of the pharmaceuticals industry.

Commercially and clinically the antibiotics are the most important class of pharmaceuticals made by microbiological techniques. Similar techniques have also been adapted, however, to the production of substances that are not natural metabolites of microorganisms. In the manufacture of steroid hormones, for example, microorganisms carry out individual steps called bioconversions in a long sequence of synthetic processes; the other steps are accomplished by nonbiological methods. Only the information for the few biological steps resides in the genome of the organism.

In the third approach none of the information that defines the structure of the product molecule is initially found in the genome of the microorganism; the information is inserted into the cell. In this way bacterial or fungal cells can be made to produce human proteins. Methods of this kind are now being explored for the manufacture of such clinically important pharmaceuticals as insulin. Although these techniques are the newest and most glamorous in the pharmaceuticals industry, they are being assimilated into a field where microbiological methods have already brought forth a huge commercial enterprise. In 1979 the wholesale value of prescription drugs sold in the U.S. was about $7.5 billion; of this amount some 20 percent, or $1.5 billion, represented sales of drugs in whose production microorganisms played a significant role.

The largest class of pharmaceuticals consists of those in which most or all of the required genetic information is present in the unaltered genome of the cell. The antibiotics are the most important members of this class economically, but also included are viral and bacterial antigens, antifungal agents, certain antitumor drugs, alkaloids and vitamins. In 1978 the worldwide bulk sales of the four most important groups of antibiotics—the penicillins, the cephalosporins, the tetracyclines and erythromycin—amounted to $4.2 billion. (The sales are given for 1978 because that is the most recent year for which complete information is available for the international market; the amount has been adjusted to 1980 prices to compensate for the effects of inflation.) Another commercially important group of antibiotics consists of the aminoglycosides, which include streptomycin. After the antibiotics the pharmaceuticals with the next-highest sales were the vitamins; the wholesale value of the six most important vitamins in 1978 (again based on 1980 prices) was $670 million.

The industrial process that underlies this market is fermentation. The fermenters, or tanks, in which the metabolic manufacture of pharmaceuticals proceeds have a maximum volume of about 100,000 liters. Cultures of industrial strains of fungi or bacteria are started in smaller tanks, then transferred to the large fermenters, where strict control is maintained over the temperature, the *p*H, the oxygen supply and the nutrients in the culture medium. The mixture is stirred by blades inside the fermenter.

The microorganisms that carry out fermentation in the antibiotics industry are drawn from a rather narrow taxonomic range. János Berdy of the Research Institute for Pharmacological Chemistry in Budapest has classified them in three main groups. Six genera of filamentous fungi give rise to almost 1,000 distinct antibiotics. Among these fungi are molds of the genus *Cephalosporium,* which yield cephalosporins, and

MANUFACTURE OF PENICILLINS is accomplished in a combination of biological and chemical steps; shown here are crystallizers, the site of one of the key processes in production. Manufacture begins in fermentation tanks with a capacity of as much as 100,000 liters. In the tanks an industrial strain of the fungal mold *Penicillium chrysogenum* is grown in a rich liquid medium; a form of penicillin called penicillin *G* is a natural metabolite of the fungal cells. In this plant, operated by Pfizer, Inc., in Groton, Conn., as many as 15 fermentation tanks are linked on a staggered production schedule to provide a continuous output of the antibiotic. When fermentation, which takes several days, is complete, penicillin *G* is separated from the spent mold cells and injected into the crystallizers, where butanol is added. The butanol is evaporated, carrying water with it and leaving behind a crystalline slurry of penicillin *G* of more than 99 percent purity. Subsequent chemical modifications yield other forms of penicillin.

CATEGORY OF DRUG	MAJOR U.S. PRODUCERS	MARKET VALUE
PENICILLINS	Ayerst Laboratories Lederle Laboratories Eli Lilly and Company Smith, Kline & French Laboratories E. R. Squibb & Sons, Inc. Warner-Lambert Company Wyeth Laboratories	$220,943,000
OTHER BROAD- AND MEDIUM-SPECTRUM ANTIBIOTICS	Abbott Laboratories Bristol Laboratories Lederle Laboratories Eli Lilly and Company Merck Sharp & Dohme Schering-Plough Corporation E. R. Squibb & Sons, Inc. The Upjohn Company Warner-Lambert Company Wyeth Laboratories	$638,297,000
ANTIBIOTICS IN COMBINATION WITH SULFONAMIDES	Bristol Laboratories Burroughs Wellcome Co. Ross Laboratories	$16,921,000
TOPICAL ANTIBIOTICS	Lederle Laboratories Eli Lilly and Company Marion Laboratories, Inc. Schering-Plough Corporation The Upjohn Company Warner-Lambert Company	$17,064,000
VACCINES	Lederle Laboratories Merck Sharp & Dohme Warner-Lambert Company Wyeth Laboratories	$90,000,000
SULFONAMIDES	Alcon Laboratories, Inc. Lederle Laboratories Hoffmann–La Roche, Inc. Smith, Kline & French Laboratories E. R. Squibb & Sons, Inc. Warner-Lambert Company	$47,562,000
ANTIFUNGAL DRUGS	Ayerst Laboratories Barnes-Hind Pharmaceuticals, Inc. Ciba-Geigy Corporation Lederle Laboratories Ortho Pharmaceutical Corporation Hoffmann–La Roche, Inc. Schering-Plough Corporation E. R. Squibb & Sons, Inc.	$103,911,000
ANTISEPTIC PREPARATIONS	Burroughs Wellcome Co. Norwich-Eaton Pharmaceuticals Ortho Pharmaceutical Corporation Sterling Drug Inc. E. R. Squibb & Sons, Inc.	$15,000,000
TUBERCULOSTATIC AGENTS	Ciba-Geigy Corporation Dow Chemical U.S.A. Lederle Laboratories E. R. Squibb & Sons, Inc. Warner-Lambert Company	$12,835,000
DIGESTIVE ENZYMES	Armour and Company B. F. Ascher & Company, Inc. Hoechst-Roussel Pharmaceuticals, Inc. Organon Inc. Reed & Carnrick Warner-Lambert Company	$16,999,000
VITAMINS (PRESCRIPTION ONLY)	Abbott Laboratories The Central Pharmacal Company Lederle Laboratories Mead Johnson & Company Hoffmann–La Roche, Inc. Ross Laboratories E. R. Squibb & Sons, Inc. Warner-Lambert Company	$133,891,000

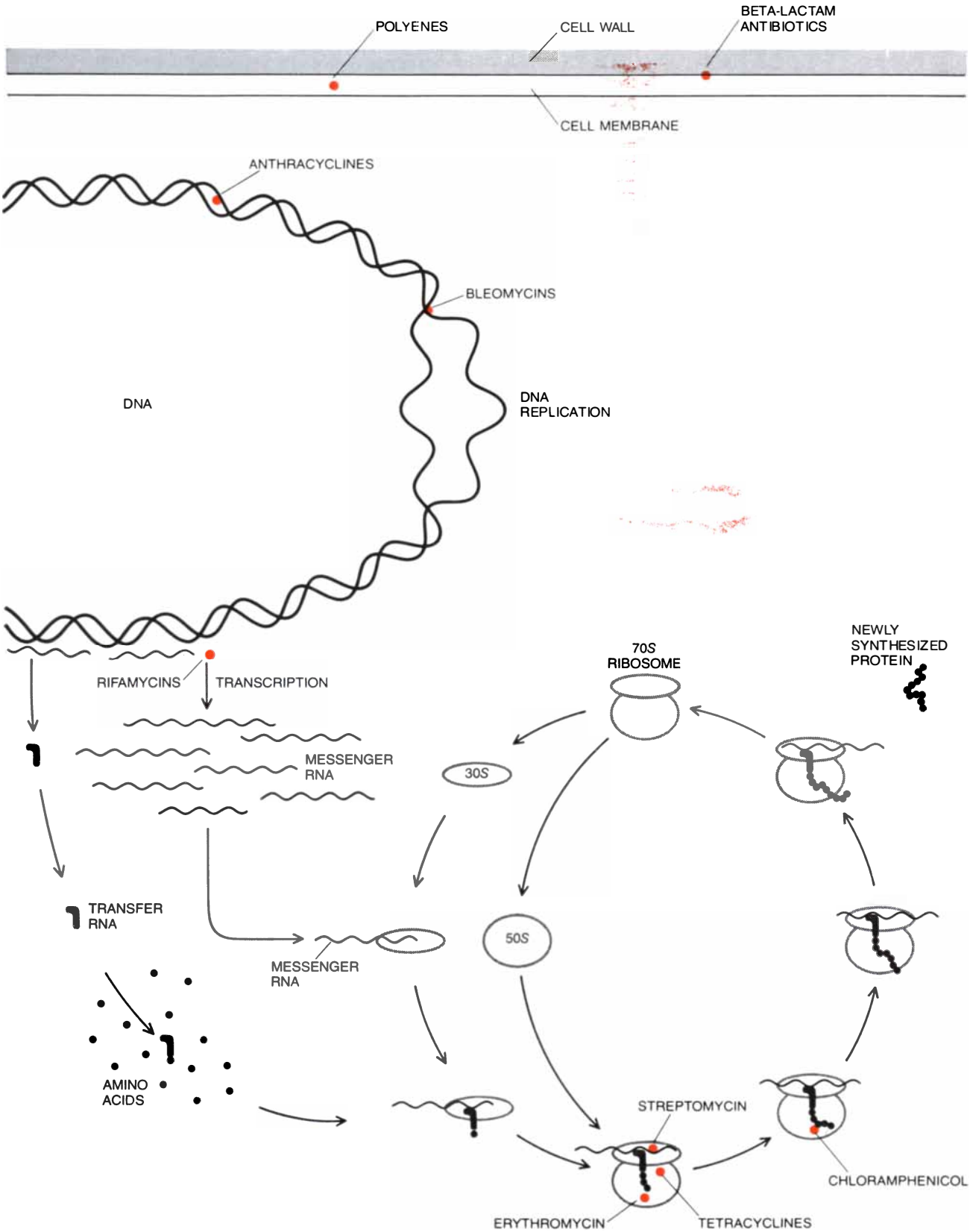
SALES OF THREE CATEGORIES OF PHARMACEUTICALS in whose production microorganisms play a significant role—anti-infective agents, enzymes and vitamins—are dominated by the systemic antibiotics. The data give the wholesale value of pharmaceuticals sold in the U.S. by American companies in 1979. Of the anti-infective agents some are produced microbiologically and some are not. The antibiotics are manufactured almost entirely by fermentation. Those of commercial importance other than penicillin include the cephalosporins, tetracyclines, erythromycin and streptomycin. The data for vaccines and antiseptic preparations are estimates. Before the introduction of antibiotics the sulfonamides were the main anti-infective drugs available to the physician. They now hold a small place in the market. Of the prescription vitamins some are made by fermentation and some by nonbiological methods.

the genus *Penicillium*, source of the penicillins. Among the nonfilamentous bacteria two genera synthesize roughly 500 antibiotics. By far the largest number of antibiotic substances come from the actinomycetes, a group of filamentous bacteria. Three genera of actinomycetes account for almost 3,000 antibiotic agents. Actinomycetes of the genus *Streptomyces* make the largest proportion of them, including the tetracyclines.

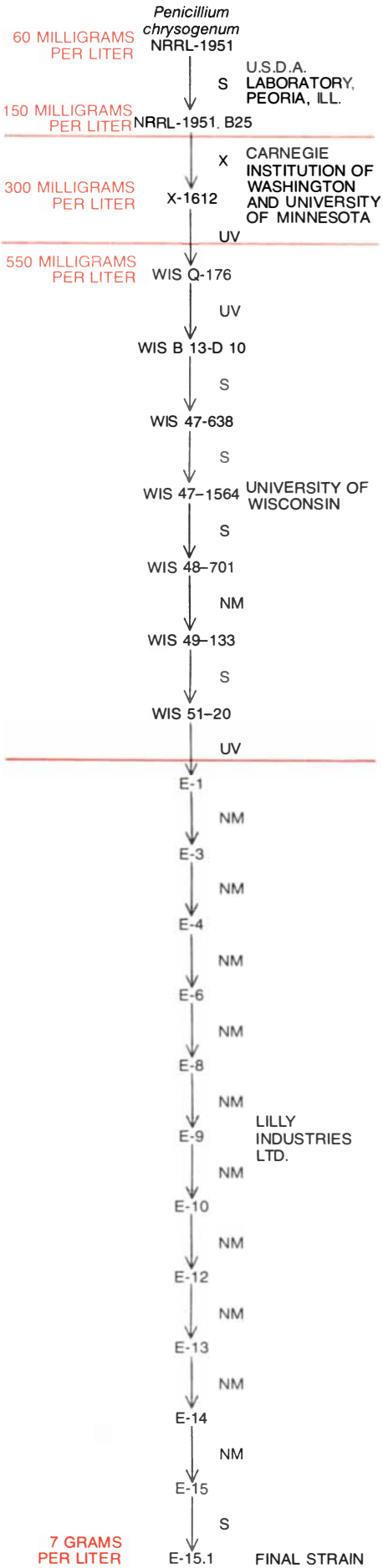
The number of antibiotic substances made by each genus does not bear much relation to clinical or commercial importance. Of the almost 5,000 antibiotics known only about 100 have been marketed. The majority of these are derived from the streptomycetes, which as of 1977 yielded 69 products. It is the penicillins and the cephalosporins, however, that dominate commerce in antibiotics. Of the $4.2 billion in world bulk sales of antibiotics in 1978 about $1 billion is attributed to sales of penicillins and $.5 billion to sales of cephalosporins. Most of the remaining sales were accounted for by products of the actinomycetes, including about $1 billion worth of tetracyclines. No bacterial product had a substantial share of the market, although some bacterial antibiotics are useful in particular clinical situations.

Although the taxonomic range of the organisms that make antibiotics is narrow, the molecules themselves are extremely diverse both in chemical structure and in physiological function. Antibiotics have been identified that interfere with almost every phase of the life cycle of a bacterial cell; a few have been found that attack fungal cells. The penicillins and cephalosporins interfere with the assembly of the bacterial cell wall; the polyene macrolides, such as amphotericin *B*, disturb fungal membrane functions; the bleomycins and anthracyclines interfere with DNA replication; the rifamycins interrupt the transcription of DNA into messenger RNA; erythromycin, the tetracyclines and streptomycin disable the ribosomal complex (the site of protein synthesis).

Because of the diverse structures and functions of the antibiotics it is not easy to define them; a practical definition of an antibiotic is a microbial product of low molecular weight that specifically interferes with the growth of microorganisms when it is present in exceedingly small amounts. Most of the substances that satisfy this definition are fungal or bacterial metabolites, which have no obvious role in the growth and maintenance of the cell. These molecules are called secondary metabolites, to distinguish them from the primary metabolites needed in the growth of the organism. Alkaloids, toxins and pigments are also secondary metabolites. Such compounds are formed only after the growth of the cell has slowed and the



SITES OF ACTION of the antibiotics are extremely diverse, including almost every important process in the life of a bacterial cell. The penicillins and the cephalosporins interrupt the construction of the bacterial cell wall. The bleomycins and the anthracyclines interfere with the replication of DNA. The rifamycins prevent DNA from being transcribed into messenger RNA. Erythromycin, streptomycin, chloramphenicol and the tetracyclines all disable the ribosomal complex, where messenger RNA is translated into protein. These metabolic processes are subtly different in bacteria and in mammalian cells, and so antibiotics are toxic for microorganisms but safe for human beings. The treatment of fungal infections and of cancer is currently less effective than that of bacterial infections because few substances with selective toxicity for tumor cells and for fungi have been found. One group of antifungal agents that has been found is made up of the substances called polyenes. These drugs, which include amphotericin *B*, interfere with the function of the fungal cell membrane.



REPEATED MUTATIONS were necessary to create a strain of the mold *Penicillium chrysogenum* that synthesized enough penicillin to form the basis of a commercial process. Radiation and chemical agents were employed by four groups of investigators to induce mutations in the mold. ("S" stands for spontaneous mutation, "X" for X-radiation, "UV" for ultraviolet radiation and "NM" for nitrogen mustard.) Selection of the superior strains ultimately gave rise to strain *E* 15.1, which yielded 55 times as much penicillin as laboratory strains. Simultaneous improvements in fermentation technique increased yields still further; yield figures in this chart reflect both kinds of increase. Classical genetic techniques such as these are still important in the antibiotics industry; complexity of antibiotic synthesis in microorganisms makes it impractical to develop new strains by directly altering single genes. Current fermentation methods yield more than 20 grams per liter.

cell has entered the stage of its life cycle called the idiophase. The function of antibiotics in the cells that make them is not clear, although it has been suggested they serve to inhibit the growth of competing microorganisms.

Like other secondary metabolites, an antibiotic is the end product of a long series of enzymatically catalyzed reactions. Many genes, both structural and regulatory, contribute to the synthesis; molecular precursors must also be synthesized. The complexity of the metabolic pathways leading to the manufacture of an antibiotic has important consequences for industrial production and for research methods employed to improve the commercial product.

Although antibiotics have a wide range of chemical structures and varied sites of action, they all satisfy the principle of selective toxicity formulated early in this century by Paul Ehrlich. The principle holds that an effective chemotherapeutic agent should be safe for human tissues but toxic to the infecting organism. Although the fundamental processes of cell metabolism in the human body are similar to those in much simpler organisms, subtle differences can make an antibiotic lethal to the infecting agent but harmless to the patient. This discrimination is an essential property of antibiotic action. Many substances have been found to exhibit selective toxicity for bacteria, but there has been conspicuously less success in the search for agents effective against fungi, viruses, parasites or tumor cells.

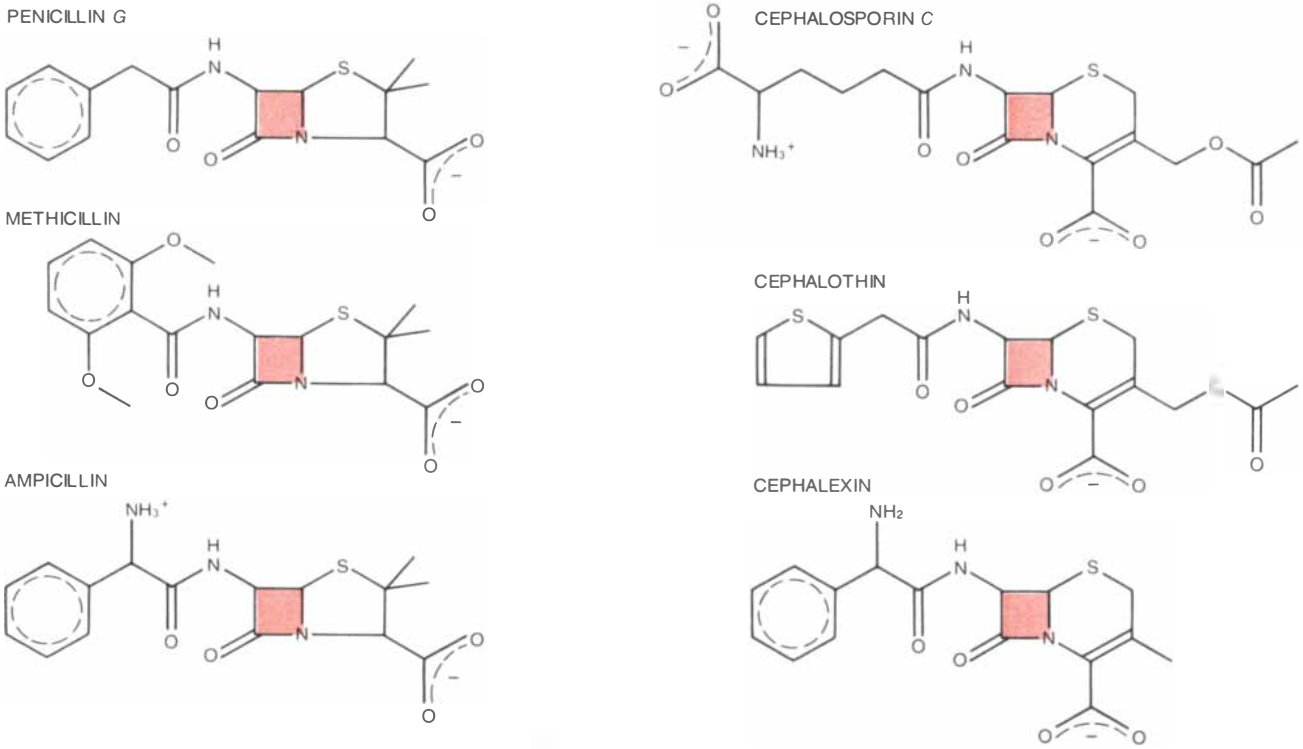
Penicillin's toxicity for bacteria was first noted by Alexander Fleming in the 1920's; that the effect is selective was demonstrated by Howard W. Florey, Ernst B. Chain and their colleagues at the University of Oxford in 1941, when they showed that penicillin could cure bacterial infections. Penicillin is harmless in man because the site at which it acts—the bacterial cell wall—has no exact equivalent in a human cell. Neither of these findings by themselves, however, would have led to a practical antibiotic for clinical purposes; the amount of penicillin made by laboratory strains of *Penicillium* molds, a few milligrams per liter of culture, was far too small to form the basis of an industrial process.

In an attempt to improve the yield a highly productive strain of *Penicillium chrysogenum* was exposed systematically to a variety of mutagens, including nitrogen mustard, ultraviolet radiation and X-radiation; advantage was also taken of spontaneous mutations. After each round of exposure the next generation of mold cells was examined for mutants with higher productivity. The process was repeated at length; 21 rounds of mutation and selection carried out in a number of laboratories were needed to increase the yield of penicillin by a factor of 55. Combined with improvements in fermentation technique this was sufficient for the first commercial production. Since then further selection and improvements in fermentation technology have raised the efficiency of manufacture to 20 grams per liter or more, an improvement of 10,000-fold over the yield in Florey's laboratory.

Classical genetic techniques that rely on random mutation are cumbersome and time-consuming, mainly because mutations that increase antibiotic yields offer no advantage to the microorganism. It is therefore necessary to screen many colonies of survivors to determine their yields under fermentation conditions. In addition productive mutants appear infrequently. Although more sophisticated methods aimed at altering single genes are now available, classical methods are still indispensable for improving antibiotic yields.

The reason for the retention of older methods lies in the nature of secondary-metabolite synthesis. Unlike a protein, which is the immediate product of a single gene, an antibiotic is made by the joint action of the products of between 10 and 30 genes. For most commercial antibiotics the entire pathway has not been worked out. As a result attempts to alter single genes are for the most part not effective in increasing yields. The one major recent modification of genetic screening has been the development of automatic methods for examining the survivors of the process of inducing mutations and identifying new strains with higher yields. The automatic equipment screens tens of thousands of survivor types per round of mutation.

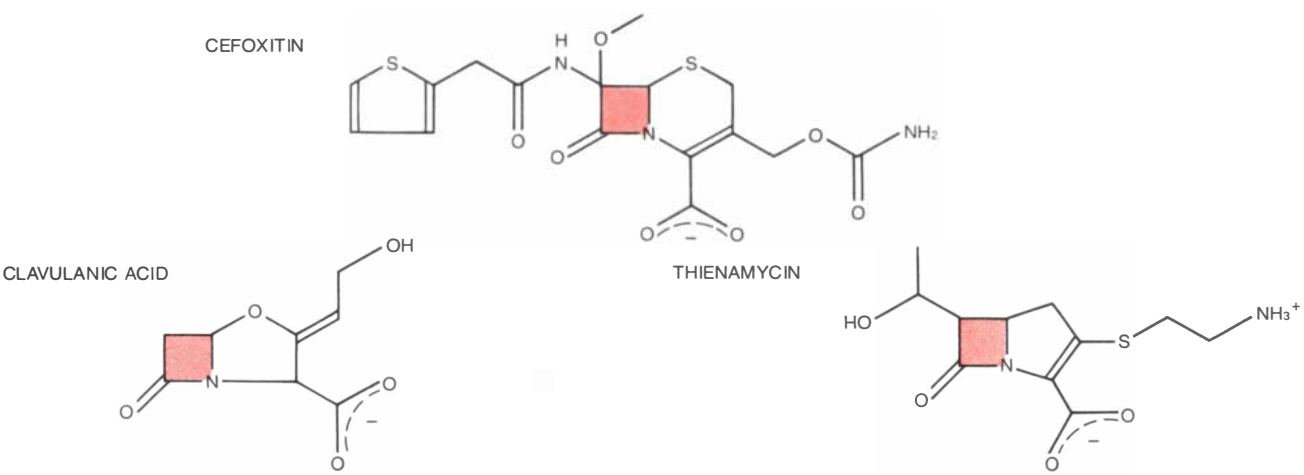
Penicillin is dramatically effective against a wide range of Gram-positive bacteria. (Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria are distinguished on the basis of a staining procedure developed in 1884 by Hans Christian Joachim Gram; the test is sensitive to fundamental differences in the cell walls of



CHEMICAL STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION of the penicillins and the cephalosporins hinge on the four-member beta-lactam ring (*color*); the drugs are called beta-lactam antibiotics. The ring is essential to the action of these compounds in halting the construction of the bacterial cell wall. Side groups attached to the ring can increase the potency of the antibiotic and improve its pharmacological properties. In the penicillins a single side group varies. In commercial production penicillin *G* serves as a core structure for the attachment of new side chains after the removal of the benzyl group. Methicillin is resistant to inactivation by bacterial enzymes; ampicillin is effective against Gram-negative bacteria. Both of these improvements over penicillin *G* are accomplished by the alteration of the side group. The cephalosporins possess two variable side chains. Cephalosporin *C* is employed as a core structure in a way analogous to penicillin *G*.

the bacteria.) When penicillin was introduced into clinical practice, it was found that many common bacterial infections, such as streptococcal pharyngitis, pneumococcal pneumonia and most staphylococcal infections, could be cured rapidly and completely. Penicillin also cured serious and frequently fatal infections such as meningococcal meningitis, and it was effective in treating some forms of bacterial endocarditis that had invariably been fatal.

These striking clinical results stimulated a search for additional naturally occurring antibiotics. The search was motivated by two factors. Penicillin was much less effective against the Gram-negative bacteria. It was also observed that certain Gram-positive bacteria possessed enzymes capable of inactivating penicillin; thus the bacteria were resistant to the antibiotic. By means of a newly developed technique for screening the microorganisms present in soil, Selman A. Waksman and his colleagues at Rutgers University isolated streptomycin and other antibiotics from ac-



NEW BETA-LACTAM ANTIBIOTICS were discovered in the fermentation broths of microorganisms of the genus *Streptomyces*, a subgroup of the filamentous bacteria known as actinomycetes. Until the streptomycete products were isolated the fungal molds *Penicillium* and *Cephalosporium* had been the only sources of beta-lactam antibiotics. All three molecules possess antibiotic activity; clavulanic acid is also a potent inhibitor of the action of the beta-lactamases. These bacterial enzymes are capable of rendering beta-lactam antibiotics ineffective by splitting open the beta-lactam ring. Clavulanic acid is now being marketed in combination with the beta-lactam drug amoxicillin; this pharmaceutical hybrid, known as augmentin, is a potent antibiotic that is also resistant to beta-lactamase inactivation.

tinomycetes of the genus *Streptomyces;* some of these preparations were effective against Gram-negative bacteria, and others against Gram-positive bacteria. The mold *Cephalosporium acremonium* was isolated in 1945 from the sea off Sardinia by G. Brotzu of the Institute of Hygiene of Cagliari. The cells of the mold were found to synthesize several related antibiotics, one of which, named cephalosporin *C,* was particularly effective against penicillin-resistant Gram-positive pathogens.

Although the penicillins, the cephalosporins and streptomycin were the most important discoveries of the early period of antibiotic identification, there were many others. The number of new antibiotics identified each year increased in a roughly linear way from the late 1940's through the early 1970's, when about 200 new substances per year were being characterized. By the end of the 1970's new antibiotics were being found at a rate of about 300 per year, of which roughly 150 were products of the actinomycetes.

The proportion of the discoveries that were put into commercial production, however, declined rapidly after the 1950's. It became increasingly difficult to isolate a new antibiotic sufficiently superior to an existing product to warrant its introduction into clinical practice. As a result of this diminishing return and the development of resistance to antibiotics in many bacteria the focus of research shifted. By the mid-1960's most work was directed toward modifying the structure of existing antibiotics to increase their potency, protect them from bacterial inactivation and improve their pharmacological properties.

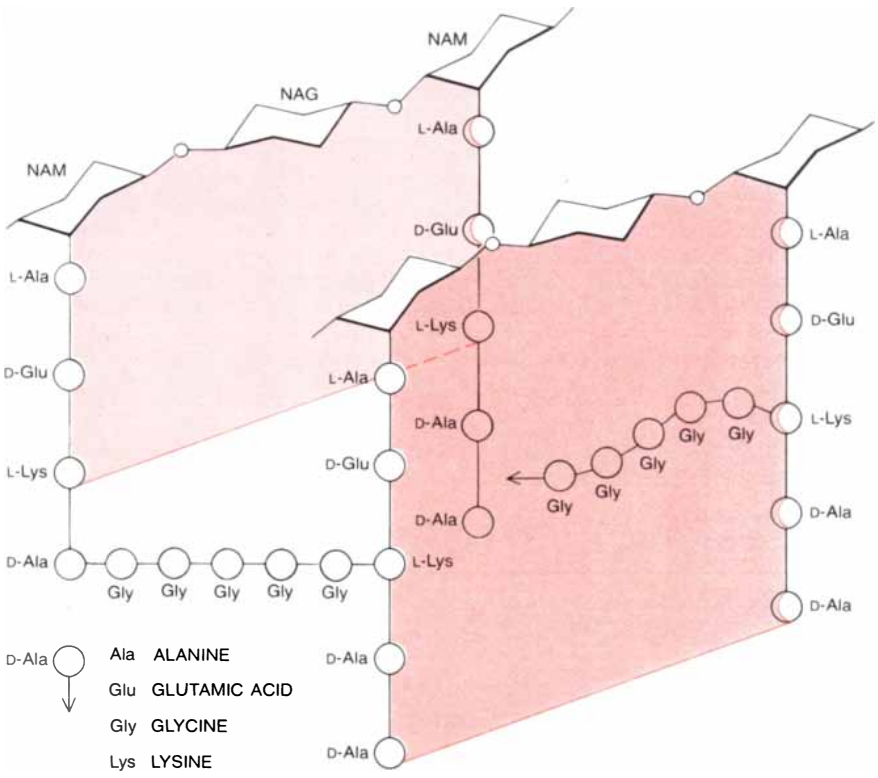
Most of the effort was focused on the penicillins and the closely related cephalosporins. In both groups the central structure of each molecule is the four-member beta-lactam ring, composed of three carbon atoms and a nitrogen atom; the penicillins and the cephalosporins are collectively known as the beta-lactam antibiotics. In addition to having a broad spectrum of antibacterial activity the beta-lactam antibiotics are probably the least toxic of all the major groups of antibiotics.

Although the exact mechanism by which the beta-lactam antibiotics destroy bacteria has not been completely elucidated, it is clear that they interrupt the manufacture of the cell wall. Specifically they interfere with both the synthesis and the assembly of peptidoglycan, the major constituent of the wall. They do so by attaching themselves to at least three enzymes—transpeptidase, carboxypeptidase and endopeptidase—that catalyze the polymerization and insertion of peptidoglycan into the wall. Disruption of this process leads rapidly to the dissolution and death of the cell. The ubiquity of peptidoglycan in the cell wall of prokaryotes and its absence in higher organisms are responsible for the highly selective toxicity of the beta-lactam antibiotics.

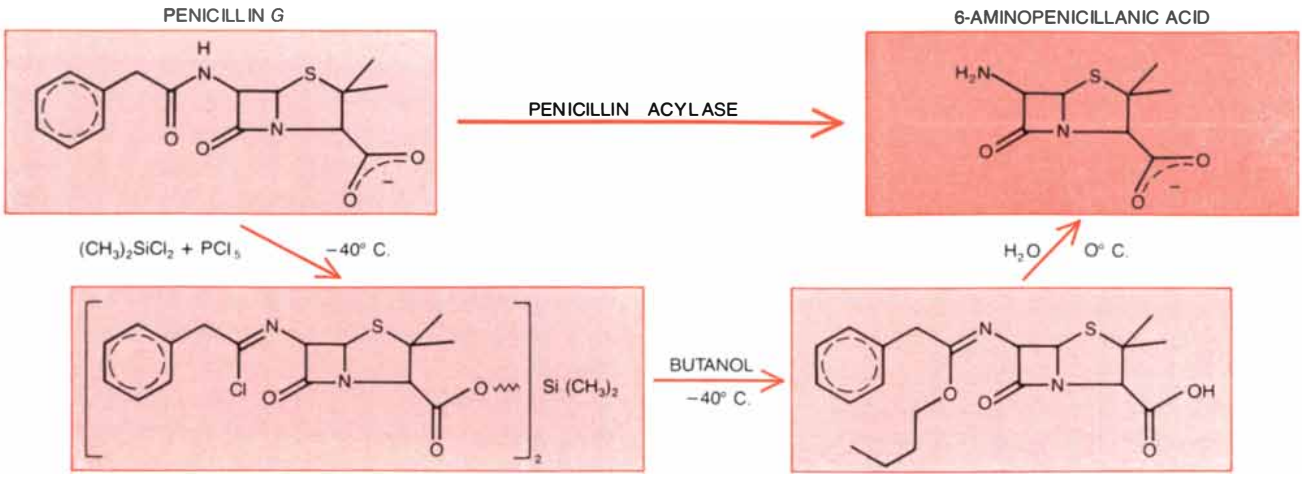
For more than 30 years two molds, *Penicillium chrysogenum* and *Cephalosporium acremonium,* were the exclusive sources of the beta-lactam antibiotics. Recently, however, in an intensive screening program of prokaryotic soil organisms undertaken by Eli Lilly and Company and Merck, Sharp & Dohme, new beta-lactam antibiotics were found in the fermentation broths of streptomycetes. These compounds, the cephamycins, have a structure similar to that of the cephalosporins, with the addition of a methoxyl group (CH_3O–) on the beta-lactam ring. In some instances the side group increases effectiveness against both Gram-negative and penicillin-resistant organisms.

In the 1960's and 1970's efforts to improve the beta-lactam antibiotics focused on adding new side groups to the beta-lactam ring. The semisynthetic approach, which is now widely adopted in manufacturing penicillins and cephalosporins, relies on chemical synthesis to substitute one side chain for another after fermentation has produced a molecule with the central ring. The addition of new side chains, an approach that has also been taken with the aminoglycosides, including streptomycin, can improve the potency, lack of toxicity and stability of the substance; it can also broaden the spectrum of organisms against which the antibiotic is effective.

In the semisynthetic manufacture of penicillin an industrial strain of *Penicillium chrysogenum* is grown in the presence of phenylacetic acid, which results in the formation of penicillin *G.* The production of penicillin *G* is carried out on a large scale. A number of fermentation tanks are usually operated on a staggered schedule to provide a virtually continuous yield for the recovery and modification processes. The plant operated by the Dutch company Gist-Brocades NV in Delft, for example, has 14 fermenters, each with a capacity of 100,000 liters. The time required for fermentation is 200 hours; the recovery process takes 15 hours, and so the 14 fermentation tanks allow the re-



CROSS-LINKAGE OF PEPTIDOGLYCAN CHAINS in the formation of the bacterial cell wall is interrupted by the beta-lactam antibiotics. Each chain consists in part of alternating units of the amino sugars N-acetylglucosamine (NAG) and N-acetylmuramic acid (NAM). The NAM units are attached to polypeptide groups. The cross-linking of the polypeptides to one another by peptide bonds gives the cell wall its rigidity. In the bacterium *Staphylococcus aureus* the linkage is accomplished when the final glycine unit of one chain is inserted into the bond linking two alanine units of another chain. The final alanine unit is cleaved away and a new bond is formed between the next alanine and the final glycine. The creation of this bond is catalyzed by enzymes called transpeptidases and carboxypeptidases. By binding to the peptidases and inactivating them the beta-lactam antibiotics prevent the linking of the peptidoglycan chains. These antibiotics are thus damaging to growing cells that are forming cell walls.



MICROBIOLOGICAL CONVERSION of penicillin *G* into 6-aminopenicillanic acid (6-APA) has fewer steps and is cheaper than the chemical conversion. In the production of semisynthetic penicillins 6-APA forms a chemical nucleus to which side chains can be attached, yielding new antibiotics. In performing the chemical conversion three steps must be carried out at low temperature and under strictly anhydrous conditions with a number of chemical solvents. The biological process relies on bacteria that make enzymes called acylases; the enzymes cleave away the benzyl group, leaving 6-APA. The fermentation can be carried out in water at 37 degrees Celsius.

covery to proceed without interruption.

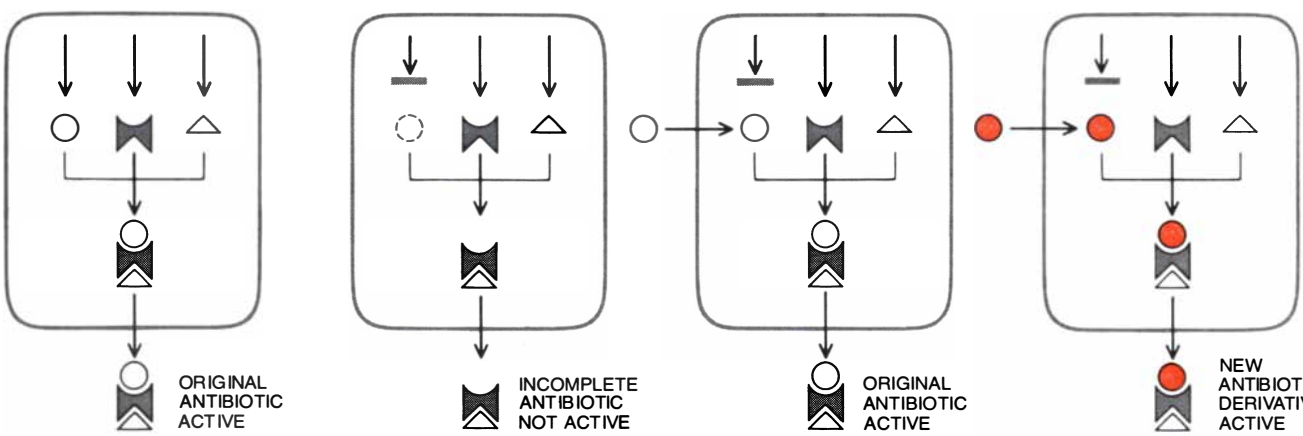
The fermentation is a "fed batch" process, in which a sugar solution is added to the fermentation broth continuously. Phenylacetic acid is the precursor of the benzyl side chain of penicillin *G*. When the fermentation is complete, the thickened broth is passed through a rotating filter to separate the mold cells from the liquid medium that contains the penicillin; the cells are then washed. The filtrate and the washings are put through a chemical extractor. A source of potassium ions is added to the mixture, and the result is the crystalline potassium salt of penicillin *G*. The filtered and dried salt constitutes a stream of the antibiotic of 99.5 percent purity.

Following recovery the penicillin *G* is injected into the fermentation broth of a strain of bacteria that secrete the enzymes called acylases. The acylases selectively remove the benzyl group from the molecule, yielding 6-aminopenicillanic acid, or 6-APA. This core structure has weak antibacterial properties. It also forms a convenient molecular center for the attachment of the side groups that are capable of increasing the potency of the antibiotic.

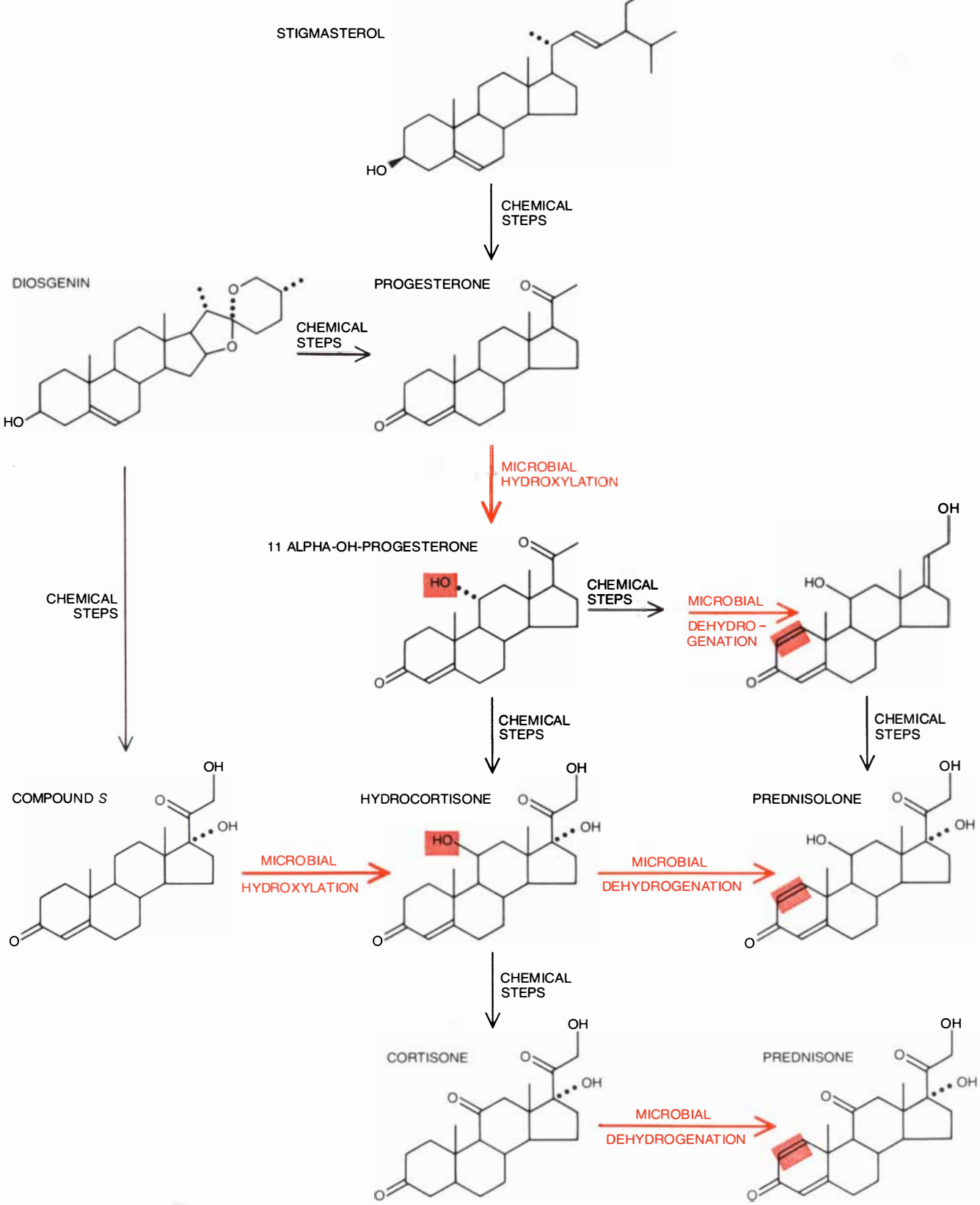
The semisynthetic approach has also been adopted in the manufacture of the cephalosporins. The starting point is cephalosporin *C*, made by *Cephalosporium acremonium*. Cephalosporin *C* acts against both Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria, but the activity is too weak for clinical purposes. When an amide side chain of the molecule is removed, however, the remaining molecular core, 7-alpha-aminocephalosporanic acid, or 7-ACA, is useful in the way 6-APA is. By the attachment of appropriate side chains a variety of semisynthetic cephalosporins are created.

Effective as the beta-lactam antibiotics are, they can be thwarted by bacterial resistance. The biochemical basis of the resistance is the hydrolysis, or cleavage, of the bond in the beta-lactam ring called the cyclic amide bond. The hydrolysis renders the molecule incapable of attachment to the bacterial peptidases. This destruction of the antibiotic is catalyzed by the enzymes called beta-lactamases, which are widespread in bacteria, actinomycetes, cyanobacteria ("blue-green algae") and yeasts. Moreover, the enzymes can be passed from one microorganism to another by plasmids bearing the gene for them. The widespread use of antibiotics has created selective pressure favoring the survival of those microorganisms that have acquired the gene.

A critical task in antibiotic development is overcoming this enzyme-based inactivation of the beta-lactam antibiotics. At least two strategies have been pursued. One is the identification of natural antibiotics that are not susceptible to inactivation by bacterial beta-lac-



MUTATIONAL BIOSYNTHESIS, or mutasynthesis, is an elegant method of developing new antibiotics. A mutation induced in the gene that codes for one precursor of a microorganism's natural antibiotic leads to the synthesis of an incomplete antibiotic molecule, lacking a single chemical constituent. When the missing precursor is added to the medium in which the microorganism is grown, the natural antibiotic is produced. When precursors with slightly different structures are added to the medium, new antibiotics are synthesized.



MANUFACTURE OF STEROIDS includes several important microbiological steps in a process made up primarily of chemical syntheses. The raw materials of production are the complex alcohols called sterols. Stigmasterol is a by-product of the soybean-oil industry; diosgenin is extracted from the roots of the Mexican barbasco plant. The sterols are converted in a series of chemical steps into one of two intermediates: compound *S* and progesterone. A fungal mold (either *Rhizopus nigricans* or *Curvularia lunata,* depending on the intermediate compound) is then used to hydroxylate the molecule, adding a hydroxyl group (–OH) to the four-ring steroid nucleus. This microbial step was critical in the development of a commercially feasible method of manufacturing steroids. The chemical method of hydroxylation is complex and difficult; finding a biological method reduced the complete synthesis from 37 to 11 steps and greatly reduced the unit cost of manufacture. Steroids, widely used for the control of inflammation, were thus brought within economic reach of most patients. The other important microbial step is dehydrogenation: the removal of two hydrogen atoms from the steroid nucleus. Processes resembling this generalized scheme are employed in producing cortisone, hydrocortisone, prednisolone and prednisone, which are all medically important synthetic molecules having pharmacological properties different from those of the natural steroids.

tamases. Five years ago, in the course of a search for inhibitors of peptidoglycan synthesis, workers at Merck, Sharp & Dohme discovered a new class of beta-lactam antibiotics. These compounds, the thienamycins, were found in the fermentation broths of *Streptomyces cattleya.* They are extremely potent against many Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria; more important, they are capable of inhibiting the beta-lactamases, thereby protecting themselves against inactivation.

The second strategy is to find substances that possess little or no antibiotic activity of their own but are potent inhibitors of the beta-lactamases. Such an inhibitor is then combined with a beta-lactam antibiotic to create a composite that resists inactivation. The beta-lactamase inhibitors clavulanic acid and the olivanic acids were identified by workers at the Beecham Pharmaceutical Company in Britain. These substances share the beta-lactam structure, but their greatest effect is the inhibition of enzymes. Recent studies by Jeremy Knowles and his colleagues at Harvard University have shown that clavulanic acid and olivanic acid inactivate the enzyme by the "suicide" method. They bind to the beta-lactamase molecule, initiating a catalytic reaction. In contrast to other beta-lactam substances, however, which are hydrolyzed and then released, the inhibitors remain jammed in the active site of the enzyme, precluding further activity. Clavulanic acid is an effective inhibitor of the beta-lactamases of most clinically important microorganisms. The new antibiotic augmentin, made by Beecham, is a combination of the beta-lactam antibiotic amoxicillin and clavulanic acid.

Along with classical genetic techniques, identification of natural metabolites and semisynthesis, several new genetic methods have recently been added to the microbiologist's armamentarium. One elegant process is mutational biosynthesis, or mutasynthesis, which consists in the creation by a specific mutation of a microorganism that is unable to synthesize one molecular precursor of an antibiotic. When that precursor is added to the cell culture, the organism's natural antibiotic is made. If another precursor with a slightly different chemical structure is added, a new antibiotic may be produced.

A second method derives from the fact that secondary metabolism is crucially dependent on the levels of primary metabolites present in the cell. Among the substrates of antibiotic synthesis are carbohydrates, amino acids, purines, pyrimidines, fatty acids and activated acetyl and propinyl molecules. The rate of production of the antibiotic may be limited by the rate of synthesis or availability of a primary metabolite. When that is the case, and the gene for the primary metabolite has been identified, it is possible by genetic manipulation to create a strain that makes more of the precursor. The result is an increase in the yield of the antibiotic. One of us (Aharonowitz) has employed this approach to increase the yield of cephalosporins from *Streptomyces clavaligerus.*

Antibiotics are capable of inhibiting the growth of the cells that make them as well as the growth of pathogenic bacteria; normally the antibiotic is elaborated only after growth has ceased. Certain mutant strains, however, are resistant to their own antibiotics and are highly productive. For example, certain strains of *Streptomyces aureofaciens* that resist high concentrations of their own antibiotic, chlortetracycline, have turned out to manufacture it very efficiently.

Whereas the identification, modification and production of substances effective against bacterial infections has been remarkably successful, similar agents for viral and fungal infections and for tumors are still quite primitive. The drawback of most available antifungal and antitumor agents is a lack of selectivity; most are harmful to normal mammalian cells as well as to pathogenic organisms or cancerous cells. The majority of antifungal agents are toxic when they are taken internally and can only be applied topically. Several microbial metabolites inhibit tumor growth, but they too are toxic.

One antitumor substance that has merited serious attention is the glycopeptide bleomycin, isolated by Hamao Umezawa and his colleagues at the Institute of Microbial Chemistry in Tokyo from the culture broths of *Streptomyces verticillus.* It apparently acts by binding to and breaking the DNA of the tumor cells and interfering with the replication of both DNA and RNA. Another clinically important group of antitumor drugs is composed of an aminoglycoside unit and an anthracycline molecule. These substances also inhibit DNA and RNA synthesis. Both bleomycin and the anthracyclines, however, are potentially damaging to the heart.

The identification of agents effective against tumors, on the model of the antibiotics, will have to be based on differences in structure and function between the cells of the tumor and normal human cells. Because little is known about the essential differences between tumor cells and normal cells the process of developing antitumor agents is largely empirical, as antibiotic identification was in its early phases. The National Cancer Institute has initiated a large screening program with the goal of identifying agents selectively toxic to tumor cells.

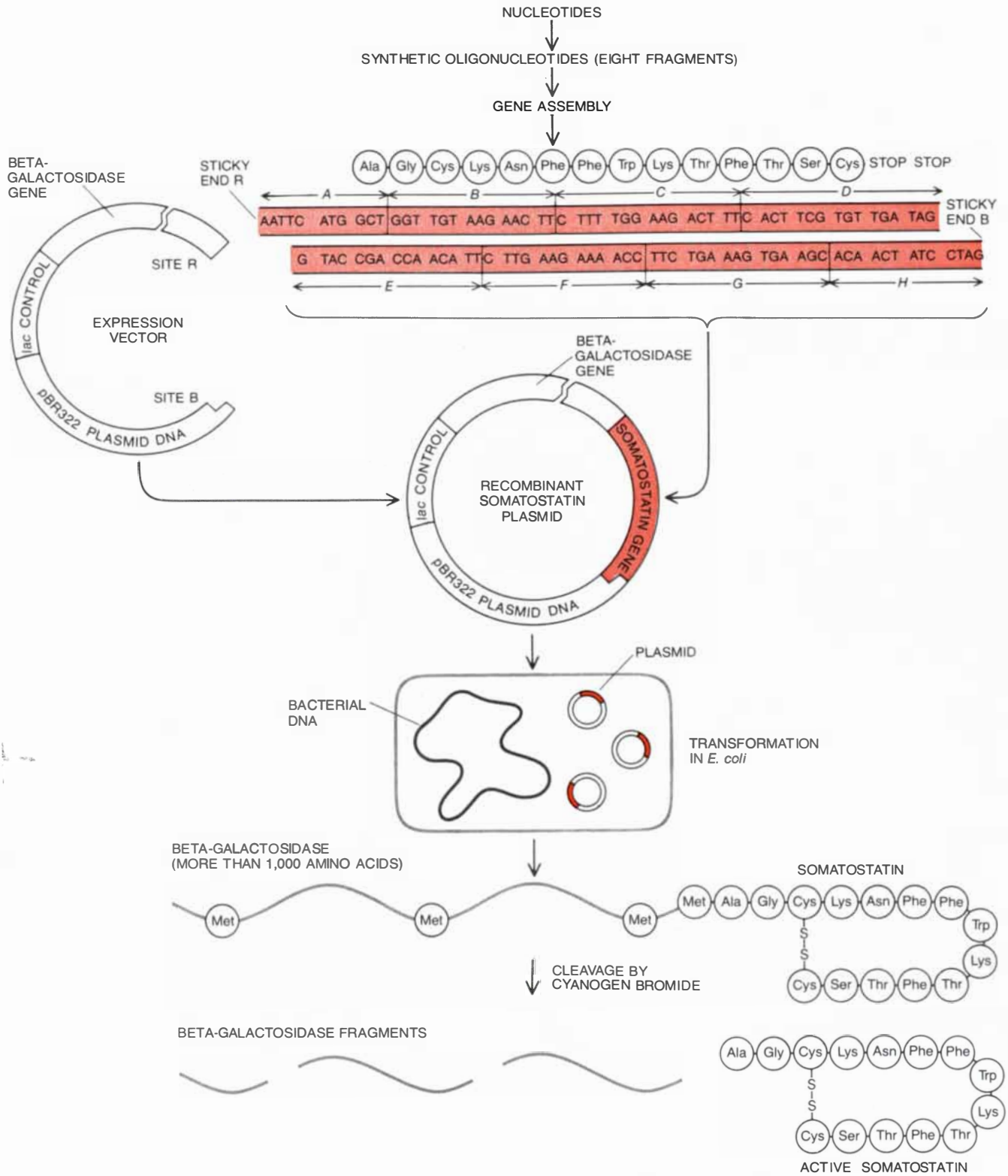
In the industrial production of the beta-lactam antibiotics most if not all of the information needed for synthesis is in the genome of the microorganism; the chemical modifications are relatively minor. In making other kinds of pharmaceuticals, however, microorganisms mediate only isolated steps, or bioconversions, in a much longer process that relies mainly on nonbiological synthesis. Ordinarily only the information for the isolated steps resides in the genome of the cell, and the DNA specifying these instructions makes up a very small part of the cell's genetic complement.

The most dramatic results of bioconversion methods have been obtained in the manufacture of the steroid hormones. In the early 1930's Edward C. Kendall of the Mayo Foundation and Tadeus Reichstein of the University of Basel isolated cortisone, a steroid secreted by the adrenal gland. About a decade later Philip S. Hench of the Mayo Foundation showed that administration of cortisone could relieve the pain of patients with rheumatoid arthritis. The immediate demand for the hormone was substantial; chemical methods for its synthesis were developed since the potential market was clearly large. The chemical synthesis, however, was elaborate, requiring 37 steps, many of them under extreme conditions. Cortisone made in this way cost $200 per gram.

One of the major complications in the chemical synthesis of cortisone is the need to introduce an oxygen atom at a position in the four-ring steroid structure designated position 11; this step is crucial in determining the physiological activity of the molecule. In 1952 D. H. Peterson and Herbert C. Murray of the Upjohn Company discovered that a strain of the bread mold *Rhizopus arrhizus* is able to hydroxylate progesterone, another steroid, thereby introducing an oxygen atom at position 11. Progesterone is an early intermediate in the synthesis of cortisone; by means of microbial hydroxylation (which is accomplished industrially with microorganisms closely related to *R. arrhizus*) the synthesis was shortened from 37 steps to 11. As a result the price of cortisone was reduced to $6 per gram.

The microbial hydroxylation of progesterone had economic consequences beyond abbreviating the chemical synthesis. The fermentation could be done at 37 degrees Celsius, with water as the solvent and at atmospheric pressure. Reactions under these conditions are much cheaper than those carried out under extremes of temperature and pressure and with solvents other than water, which had been required in the chemical synthesis of cortisone.

Several other uses for microorganisms have since been found in the industrial synthesis of the steroids. The commercially important steroids include the corticosteroids cortisone, hydrocortisone, prednisone and dexamethasone, the androgen testosterone and the estrogen estradiol (the last two used in contraceptives) and spironolactone (a diuretic). The raw materials for all of



SYNTHESIS OF SOMATOSTATIN, the first human polypeptide to be produced in bacterial cells, required that the somatostatin gene be inserted into the bacteria by means of an expression vector constructed partly from a plasmid. Somatostatin is a hypothalamic hormone 14 amino acid units long that controls the release of several hormones from the pituitary. The gene was synthesized from eight blocks of single-strand DNA fragments made up of a few nucleotides each, which are indicated in this simplified diagram as *A–H*. The fragments had overlapping complementary sequences to allow for correct assembly of the gene. Of the 52 base pairs in the gene, 42 make up the code for somatostatin; the remainder provide the two "sticky ends" that allow the gene to be inserted into the plasmid and include the information needed for proper expression of the gene and recovery of the hormone. The expression vector was constructed from the plasmid pBR322, to which was added the control region and most of the beta-galactosidase gene from the bacterial *lac* operon. Beta-galactosidase is an enzyme involved in lactose metabolism; the control region contains the regulatory elements needed for expression of the beta-galactosidase gene. The somatostatin gene was inserted into the plasmid next to the beta-galactosidase gene; after the plasmid was introduced into cells of the bacterium *Escherichia coli* the human hormone was synthesized as a short peptide tail at the end of the enzyme. Cleavage with cyanogen bromide freed the hormone, which has been demonstrated to be identical with the molecule in human beings.

them are the complex alcohols called sterols. There are two common sources of sterols: the production of soybean oil leaves a waste rich in stigmasterol and sitosterol; the roots of the Mexican barbasco plant contain diosgenin.

The first step in steroid production from plant sterols is the degradation of the side chain of the sterol molecule. Several pharmaceutical companies have found it economic to rely on mycobacteria (a group of aerobic, Gram-positive bacteria) to perform this step, which was formerly accomplished nonbiologically. The mycobacteria use sterols as a source of carbon and energy; mutant strains that lack certain enzymes cannot complete the degradation. These mutants are exploited in partial degradations that yield valuable intermediates. Other bacteria modify the steroid nucleus to yield a number of derivatives.

The introduction of these microbiological processes has been of great significance in the manufacture of the steroids, first in making steroid synthesis commercially feasible and later in progressively lowering the unit cost of production. In 1980 the price of cortisone in the U.S. was 46 cents per gram, a 400-fold reduction from the original price. The identification of new uses for steroids (in contraception and in treating hormonal insufficiencies, skin diseases, inflammation and allergies) in conjunction with more efficient production has created a substantial demand for them. World bulk sales of the four major steroids (cortisone, aldosterone, prednisone and prednisolone) amounted to about $300 million in 1978. These are the most important commercial products of bioconversion processes but by no means the only ones.

In the third major class of microbiological processes employed in the manufacture of pharmaceuticals none of the information for the product is initially included in the DNA of the organism; all of it is inserted into the cell. The gene that specifies the structure of the product is first either chemically synthesized or isolated from another organism. By one of several methods the gene is introduced into the cell. Once that is done the existing machinery for gene expression constructs the desired molecule.

The development of methods for transferring a specific gene from one cell to another and for inducing the new host to faithfully and efficiently express the gene has created an enormous potential for the pharmaceuticals industry. A number of companies have been formed to exploit these new capabilities. The immediate outcome has been the production of human polypeptides (short chains of amino acids) by bacteria.

The first human peptide to be synthesized in a bacterial cell was the hypothalamic hormone somatostatin. Somatostatin is one of a group of hormones made in the hypothalamus at the base of the brain; it is then transported in the blood to the pituitary gland, where it acts to inhibit the release of insulin and human growth hormone. Investigators at the City of Hope National Medical Center in Duarte, Calif., and at the University of California at San Francisco chose to work with somatostatin in 1977 mainly because it consisted of only 14 amino acid units. The gene for somatostatin had not been isolated from human cells, but a nucleotide sequence could be deduced from the known order of amino acids in the peptide. A synthetic gene was therefore constructed from blocks of three nucleotides each. Of the 52 base pairs in the synthetic gene, 42 constitute the structural gene for somatostatin. The remaining nucleotides were incorporated to provide suitable "sticky ends" for joining the double-strand DNA fragment to a plasmid, and to facilitate proper expression of the gene and the recovery of the hormone.

The gene was to be inserted into cells of the bacterium *Escherichia coli.* To make the transfer possible the synthetic gene was combined with a plasmid labeled pBR322 and with a segment of the *lac* operon from the *E. coli* genome. (The *lac* operon consists of three physically linked genes involved in lactose metabolism, together with the genetic elements that control their transcription and translation.) The somatostatin gene was inserted close to the end of the gene that codes for the enzyme beta-galactosidase. As a result when the plasmid was placed in the *E. coli* cell, somatostatin was made as a short polypeptide tail attached to the enzyme. By treatment with cyanogen bromide, which breaks proteins into polypeptide fragments at methionine amino acid units, the somatostatin molecules could be recovered. Because the gene had been synthesized chemically it was a simple matter to place a methionine in front of the somatostatin molecule. This approach was necessitated by the fact that when somatostatin is manufactured independently of the enzyme, it is rapidly degraded by bacterial proteins. Somatostatin generated in *E. coli* has been shown to be identical with the natural human hormone. The yield is about 10,000 somatostatin molecules per cell, high enough to encourage further attempts at the industrial production of polypeptides.

Similar techniques have been applied to the bacterial synthesis of human insulin, human growth hormone and interferons. The production of insulin has been even more efficient than that of somatostatin, yielding 100,000 molecules per bacterial cell; insulin is also of greater immediate medical importance than somatostatin. Insulin consists of two polypeptide chains, 21 and 30 amino acid units long. Synthetic genes coding for the polypeptides were constructed in three months' work by Roberto Crea, Adam Kraszewski, Tadaaki Hirose and Keiichi Itakura of the City of Hope National Medical Center. Eighteen fragments of a few nucleotides each were assembled to make the gene for the longer chain, and 11 fragments were joined into a gene for the shorter chain. Each synthetic gene was linked to a plasmid near the end of a beta-galactosidase gene, as in the case of somatostatin. After gene expression and the translation of messenger RNA into protein the two polypeptides were cleaved from the enzyme and linked to form the complete insulin molecule.

The economics of the market for insulin may be fundamentally altered by the application of microbiological techniques. The insulin currently used in diabetes therapy is extracted from the pancreas of cattle and swine. The insulins of these species differ slightly from human insulin in their amino acid sequence; although the animal insulins are effective in controlling the major symptoms of diabetes, they do not prevent some of its ancillary effects, including deterioration of the kidneys and the retina. Moreover, some diabetics are allergic to the animal hormones.

If human insulin manufactured by bacteria proves effective in controlling these pathologies, it will almost certainly gain a substantial share of the world market for insulin, which is now estimated to be about $200 million. Eli Lilly has announced plans to introduce a commercial process for the manufacture of human insulin based on gene transfer. If the yields can be increased to the level of those of other industrial processes that employ *E. coli,* 2,000 liters of fermentation broth could yield 100 grams of purified insulin. This is the amount extracted from some 1,600 pounds of animal pancreatic glands.

The production of somatostatin and insulin by microbiological methods relies on the synthesis of structural genes. With the methods now available, however, it is not economically practical to synthesize genes for peptides longer than about 30 amino acid units, and many clinically important proteins are much larger. Their production calls for the isolation of a natural gene. The starting point in the process is the messenger RNA that encodes the nucleotide sequence for the polypeptide. A complementary DNA copy is made from the messenger RNA by means of the enzyme reverse transcriptase. The double-strand DNA molecule is then replicated many times, and an appropriate vector is chosen to introduce it into bacterial cells.

This approach is beginning to yield results in the production of human growth hormone and the interferons. A deficiency of the pituitary growth hormone results in a form of dwarfism that can be cured by administering the hor-

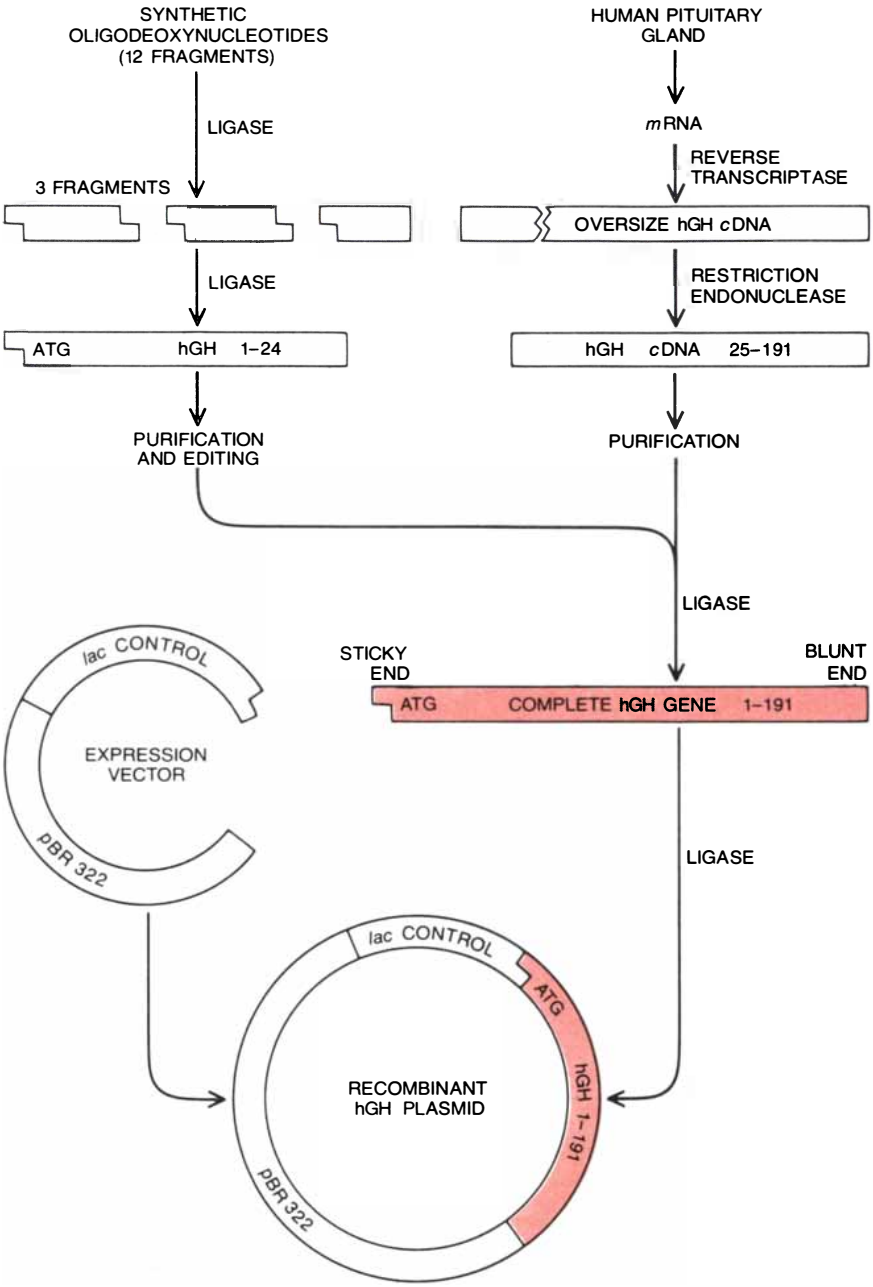
mone. The hormone is species-specific; its main source has been human cadavers. Growth hormone may have many clinical uses, but the extremely limited availability of the substance has impeded research. Microbiological production may not only increase the commercial availability of the drug but also make it possible to investigate its potential applications. Genentech, one of the companies formed to exploit recombinant-DNA technology, has established a joint venture with Kabi Gen AB, a Swedish company, to make human growth hormone.

Among the other polypeptides under consideration for production by bacteria, the interferons have the most promising applications but also the most uncertain. Interferons seem to have antiviral effects, particularly in preventing (rather than curing) viral infections. They may also have an inhibiting effect on tumor cells. Interferons are synthesized by leukocytes (white blood cells) and by fibroblasts (connective-tissue cells). The interferons available up to now have mainly been extracted from human cells, and the yield is low: two liters of human blood yield one microgram of leukocyte interferon.

Recent developments in recombinant-DNA techniques have made it possible to produce 600 micrograms of leukocyte interferon from a liter of fermentation broth, more than a thousandfold improvement over that obtained from the same volume of blood. The improvement in yield has required a series of modifications of the production process, many of them devised by David Goeddel and his colleagues at Genentech and by Charles Weissman and his colleagues at BioGen. At least four companies are attempting to develop commercial methods of interferon production. One of the most interesting recent developments has been the production of high yields of interferons in yeast cells by fermentation.

Recombinant-DNA methods, particularly those applied to the production of the interferons, may well represent the next great advance in clinical medicine and in the industrial practices of the pharmaceuticals industry. Besides the interferons and insulin the most likely candidates for this form of industrial process include coagulation factors (blood proteins that are required for efficient clotting), enzymes that could serve in replacement therapy for congenital genetic disorders, urokinase (an enzyme that dissolves blood clots), immunostimulants (proteins that trigger immune reactions), antibodies and the antigenic proteins found on the surface of viruses, which might be utilized in the manufacture of vaccines.

The introduction of new genetic methods, however, can hardly represent a departure more radical than the one created by the introduction of antibiotics. The methods associated with antibiotics brought dramatic changes: clinical practice, research and development and industrial production. The manufacture of human polypeptides by microorganisms may lead to the introduction into clinical use of substances, such as the interferons, that have clinical properties as novel as those of the antibiotics. In research and development and industrial production, however, the new methods represent no more than dramatic extensions of genetic methods and fermentation techniques that are already operating on a huge scale in the manufacture of pharmaceuticals.

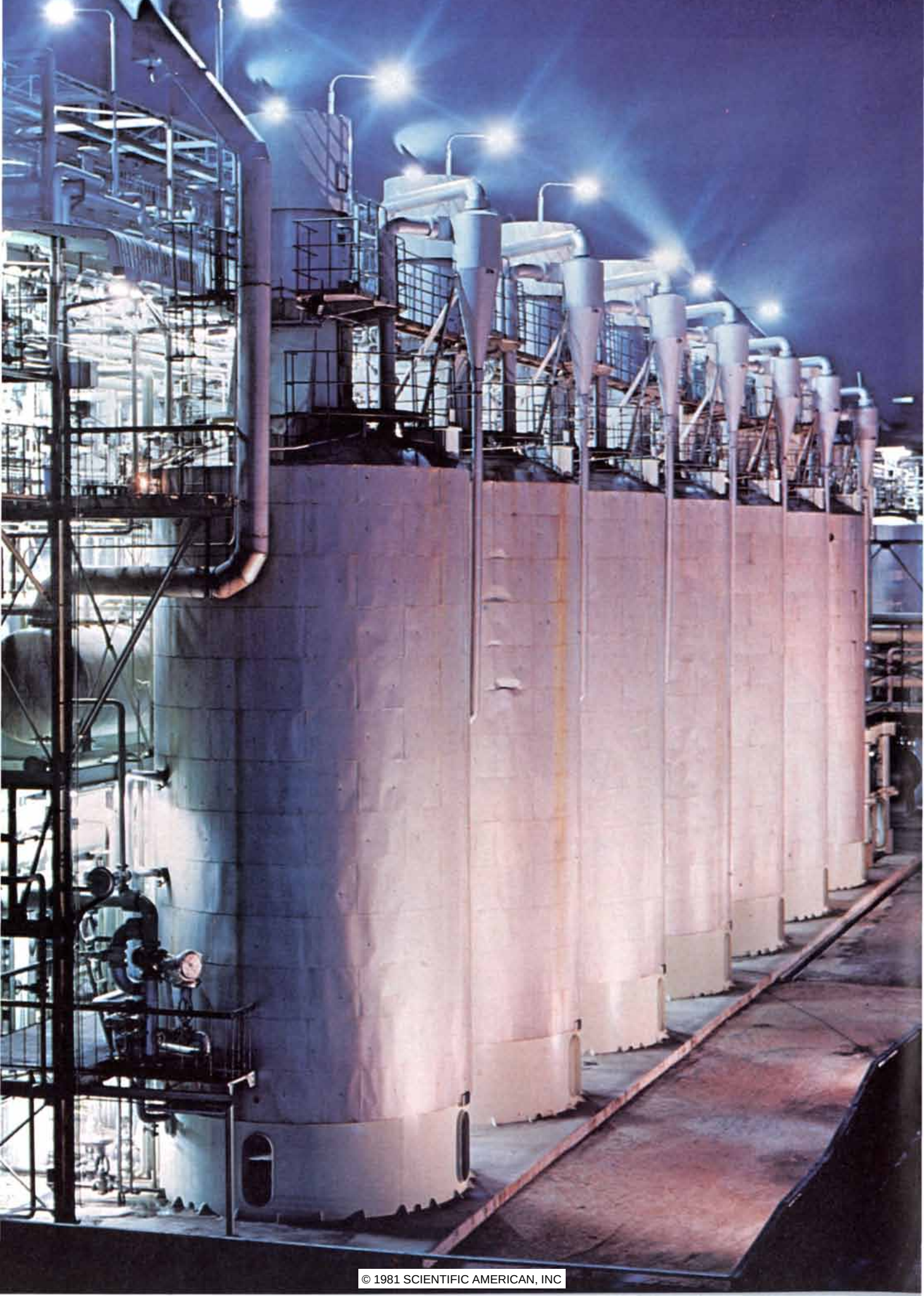


GENE FOR HUMAN GROWTH HORMONE was created by a combination of chemical synthesis and isolation of the natural molecule. Human growth hormone is a polypeptide 191 amino acid units long elaborated by tissues of the pituitary gland. Medical interest in it stems from the fact that its absence leads to a form of dwarfism that can be cured by administration of the hormone. The segment of the gene that codes for the first 24 amino acids of the peptide was constructed chemically from blocks of nucleotides. To obtain the rest of the gene a series of enzymes were used, as this simplified diagram shows. Reverse transcriptase was employed to copy the gene for the hormone from messenger RNA obtained from human pituitary tissues. Restriction endonucleases cut out the needed fragment. DNA ligase was then used to join the natural and the synthetic fragments. The complete gene was inserted into a modified version of plasmid pBR322 incorporating the *lac* operon. The synthetic part of the growth-hormone gene had been constructed with its own initiation codon (*ATG*), the group of three bases that provides the signal to start the process of transcription. The hormone could therefore be produced independently in bacterial cells, without the need for attachment to a bacterial protein.

When curiosity flourishes, worlds can be changed.

Why? How? What if? Young people question. Taking joy i the search for solutions. Their worlds abound with endless possibilities. So, too, it is with scientists. Whose laboratories are as limitless as the universe. Whose ideas shape worlds. To interest young minds in the wonders of science, Phillips Petroleum has made possible a film series called "The Search for Solutions." Stimulating films aired on PBS and seen by over two million students per month. They capture the excitement of discovery. And the discoverer. To teach. To encourage. But most of all, to interest. Because childlike curiosity in the right hands can help turn darkness into light.

PHILLIPS 66



The Microbiological Production of Industrial Chemicals

Tonnage amounts of many chemicals have traditionally been produced synthetically from fossil fuels. The rising price of petroleum makes fermentative production from other feedstocks increasingly attractive

by Douglas E. Eveleigh

The synthetic capabilities of microorganisms are not confined to food, drink and pharmaceuticals. Microorganisms also produce industrial chemicals that can either serve as or be employed to make solvents, lubricants, emollients, demulcents, extractants, adhesives, acidulants, plastics, surface coatings, explosives, propellants, gasoline additives, alternative fuels, pesticides, dyes, cosmetics, antifreeze, brake fluid, meat tenderizers, digestive aids, vitamins and flavorings. At various times in the 20th century microbiological fermentation has been the method of choice for the manufacture of citric acid, lactic acid, ethanol, *n*-butanol and more recently enzymes.

Often an organic substance with industrial applications can be made either biologically or by chemical synthesis. The decision to make it one way or the other is essentially an economic one. A major consideration is the cost of the raw materials. In microbiological fermentation the chief raw material is the growth substrate, which is usually molasses or starch; in chemical synthesis the principal raw material is often petroleum or a derivative of it. The efficiency of the process must be taken into account: What fraction of the substrate is converted into the product and how long does the conversion take? Another factor is the cost of recovering the product from the fermentation medium or from the feedstock in chemical synthesis. One must also weigh the potential value of by-products and the cost of disposing of wastes.

Microorganisms are known to produce some 200 substances of commercial value, but only a few of them are currently made by biological methods in industry; they include ethanol, *n*-butanol, acetone, acetic acid, citric acid, lactic acid, amino acids and enzymes. Economic considerations suggest that microorganisms will have a larger role in many industries in the 1980's. Because of increases in the price of petroleum the synthetic-chemicals industry no longer enjoys the advantage of an abundant and inexpensive feedstock. Furthermore, the advent of recombinant-DNA techniques makes fermentation more attractive.

Until recently the industrial microbiologist worked with a finite microbial genome; the chief methods available were to search for superior organisms among the products of random mutation or to manipulate growing conditions and thereby modify regulatory pathways to advantage. With the new genetic methods of programming the microbiologist can replace an existing pathway with a new one conducive to higher yields or to faster and more efficient synthesis. To put it another way, he can construct organisms that have novel characteristics and capabilities. Microbiological fermentation in conjunction with the new techniques of genetic programming will contribute significantly to the production of three broad classes of industrial chemicals: enzymes, aliphatic organic compounds and amino acids. I shall take up each of these categories in turn.

OUTDOOR FERMENTATION TANKS contain microorganisms that convert sugar into the amino acids glutamic acid and lysine. Glutamic acid serves as a flavor enhancer in the form of the salt monosodium glutamate (MSG). Lysine is an amino acid that is essential to the nutrition of man and nonruminant animals but that cannot be synthesized by them; it is added to animal feed. Each tank holds 63,420 gallons and is roughly 100 feet high. The photograph shows seven of some 20 identical tanks at the plant of Kyowa Hakko Kogyo Co., Ltd., at Hofu in Japan. The tanks, which were built in the early 1970's, are the largest ones at the plant that make amino acids. Kyowa Hakko annually produces at least 20,000 tons of MSG and 10,000 tons of lysine. The amino acids are made by an aerobic process; from each tank the pipe that appears to pass through a funnel expels exhaust. Amino acids constitute a class of industrial chemicals that can be made microbially; two other classes are enzymes and aliphatic organic compounds.

Enzymes can catalyze both the making and the breaking of chemical bonds, but they have been exploited commercially mainly to catalyze the decomposition of large molecules such as carbohydrates and proteins. Of the first importance in industrial processes is the specificity of enzymes: each enzyme acts only on a particular substrate molecule.

Because an enzyme is a protein whose functioning depends on the precise sequence of amino acids that make up its structure, large-scale chemical synthesis is impractical. Enzymes either are made by microorganisms grown in culture or are obtained directly from plants and animals. Today costs generally favor the microbiological methods. A major exception is papain, which serves as a digestive aid and a meat tenderizer; it comes from the papaya fruit.

Enzymes have been exploited commercially since the 1890's, when extracts from fungal cells were introduced into brewing to accelerate the breakdown of starch into sugar. Four enzymes are now made on a large scale: protease, glucamylase, alpha-amylase and glucose isomerase. Protease actually encompasses several enzymes that degrade proteins by attacking peptide bonds. The main industrial protease, obtained from the bacterium *Bacillus licheniformis,* serves chiefly as a cleaning aid in detergents. Proteases from other bacteria and fungi are employed on a smaller scale as digestive aids in animal feed and as meat tenderizers. The amylases are a family of enzymes that break down starch first into short chains of glucose molecules and then into free glucose. Glucose isomerase converts glucose into its stereoisomer fructose, a sweetener.

Industrial fermentation is responsible for making some 1,270 tons per year of

the four enzymes: 530 tons of protease, 350 tons of glucamylase, 320 tons of alpha-amylase and 70 tons of glucose isomerase. Sales of all enzymes worldwide now amount to about $300 million. The industry is dominated by European companies, with Novo Industri in Denmark and Gist-Brocades NV in the Netherlands having 60 percent of the world market. The industry is expected to grow in the next decade as recombinant-DNA techniques are applied to the microbiological production of enzymes. Because an enzyme is a direct product of a gene the yield can be improved by introducing multiple copies of the gene into the DNA of the organism, by maximizing the expression of the gene through insertion of regulatory sites in the DNA called promoters and by facilitating the secretion of the enzyme from the cell.

The process that has most clearly demonstrated the value of microbiologically synthesized enzymes is the conversion of starch into the sweetener high-fructose corn syrup, which is rapidly replacing sucrose in soft drinks. Although the conversion was introduced only recently, it is already yielding more than two million tons of high-fructose corn syrup per year. The conversion has three steps, in which the feedstock is acted on successively by alpha-amylase, glucamylase and glucose isomerase.

The cost of making fructose sweeteners depends strongly on the efficiency with which the enzymes can be obtained. Bunji Maruo and his co-workers at Nihon University have increased the yield of alpha-amylase from *Bacillus subtilis* almost 200 times by combining the classical method of mutation and selection with the technique of genetic recombination. They have found a number of regulatory steps controlling the synthesis of alpha-amylase that act synergistically to give enhanced yields in the selected strains of *B. subtilis*.

Recombinant-DNA techniques have also been applied to the production of a heat-stable alpha-amylase. *B. subtilis* grows at room temperature and the alpha-amylase it synthesizes is readily denatured by heat. If the enzyme could act at a higher temperature, the catalytic conversion of starch into glucose would proceed at a higher rate. One way of making such an enzyme would be to insert the alpha-amylase gene from a thermophilic bacterium into *B. subtilis*. Thermophilic bacteria live under conditions of high temperature and make enzymes that are resistant to inactivation by heat. They cannot be advantageously exploited to produce alpha-amylase, however, because their genetic structure is poorly understood. Shoji Shinomiya and his co-workers at the University of Tokyo have demonstrated that increased yields of thermostable alpha-amylase can be obtained by the insertion of an amylase gene from a thermophilic bacterium into *B. subtilis*.

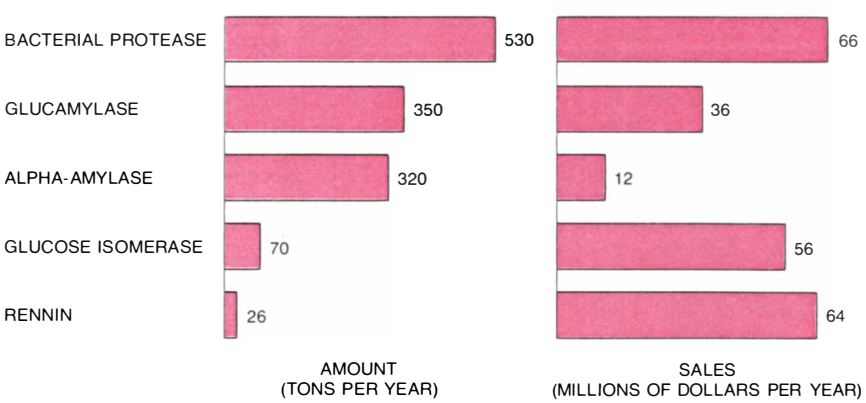
Another way of increasing the efficiency of fructose manufacture would be to condense the present three steps into one step. This might be accomplished by incorporating genes for alpha-amylase, glucamylase and glucose isomerase into a single microorganism. Starch would then be converted into high-fructose corn syrup in a single fermentation vessel.

A realm in which enzymes derived from microorganisms may soon make an important contribution is the $50-billion plastics industry. Several plastics are made by the polymerization of alkene oxides, that is, oxides of straight-chain carbon compounds in which at least one of the bonds between carbon atoms is a double bond. The alkene oxides are now made by chemical synthesis from petrochemical feedstocks. An elegant enzymatic approach to the synthesis of alkene oxides was recently proposed by Saul L. Neidleman of the Cetus Corporation. Peter J. Farley, the president of Cetus, expects that the enzymatic synthesis of propylene oxide will be introduced commercially before the end of the decade and will reach annual worldwide sales of between $2 billion and $3 billion.

The enzymatic synthesis of alkene oxides from alkenes relies on three enzymes: pyranose-2-oxidase from the basidiomycete fungus *Oudemansiella mucida*, a haloperoxidase from the fungus *Caldariomyces* or other sources and an epoxidase from *Flavobacterium*. In the first step of the synthesis pyranose-2-oxidase promotes the formation of hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), with glucose serving as the substrate and energy source. In the second step, which is mediated by the haloperoxidase, the hydrogen peroxide combines with an alkene and a halogen ion (fluoride, chloride or bromide) to form an alkene halohydrin: an alkene bonded to a hydroxyl group (–OH) and a halogen. In the final step, mediated by the epoxidase, the hydrogen of the hydroxyl group and the halogen ion are stripped away, leaving the alkene oxide.

The enzymatic production of alkene oxides could have economic advantages over chemical synthesis. A halogen ion can be supplied by a simple salt such as sodium chloride and is therefore less expensive than an elemental halogen, which is required in the chemical synthesis. The enzymatic system can also generate by-products such as fructose and gluconic acid. (The latter is added to dishwater detergents because it prevents the precipitation of calcium and magnesium salts, which can leave spots on glass surfaces.) The production of fructose from glucose in Neidleman's proposal is of major importance in view of the growing use of fructose as a sweetener. In Neidleman's scheme the conversion of glucose first into glucosone and then into fructose has a 100 percent yield, which compares favorably with the maximum yield of about 50 percent in the enzymatic conversion of starch into high-fructose corn syrup.

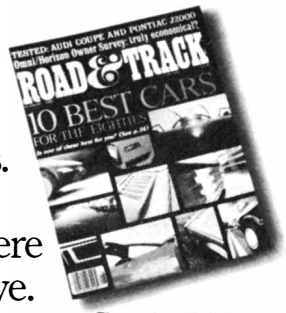
Another advantage of the enzymatic synthesis of alkene oxides is its flexibility: by changing the substrate on which the haloperoxidase acts the process can be adjusted to yield different alkene oxides, such as propylene oxide for the plastic polypropylene and ethylene oxide for the plastic polyethylene. Still another advantage is the absence of pollutants because the halogen can be recy-



WORLDWIDE SALES OF ENZYMES were $300 million in 1980. Here the annual tonnage and the annual sales are given for five enzymes that are made on a large scale by microbiological methods. Bacterial protease, which degrades proteins by cleaving peptide bonds, has commercial value chiefly as a cleaning aid. The enzymes alpha-amylase, glucamylase and glucose isomerase serve mainly to convert starch into the sweetener high-fructose corn syrup, which is replacing sucrose in soft drinks. Amylases break down starch to yield glucose; glucose isomerase converts glucose into fructose. Rennin is employed in making cheese. It can be extracted from the fourth stomach of a calf or a cow or it can be made microbiologically. Data came from the Office of Technology Assessment and from J. Leslie Glick of the Genex Corporation.

THE EDITORS OF ROAD & TRACK UNANIMOUSLY CHOSE SAAB AS THE BEST SPORTS SEDAN FOR THE '80s.

NOT BMW. NOT AUDI. NOT VOLVO. SAAB.



The editors of Road & Track magazine were asked to come up with "10 best cars for the '80s."

They did it without thinking about categories.

They did it without thinking about price.

And surprisingly enough, when the results were in, the ten best cars weren't the ten most expensive.

What wasn't surprising, at least to us, was that the Saab 900 Turbo was on *every* editor's list.

We could go into long speculation as to why, complete with technical details and a list of past accomplishments. But we'd rather just quote the editors, who said, "We have all enjoyed its sporting characteristics on the road."

So if you don't have the time to drive every top-performance sedan on the market, start with the one preferred by those who did. The Saab 900 Turbo.

SAAB

THE MOST INTELLIGENT CAR EVER BUILT.

Who will be first to electronically forecast the future?

It could be you and Hughes Support Systems.

In fact, a big part of our business is to simulate tomorrow's possibilities today — and in a variety of ways.

Our logistics support, our computerized training systems, our electronic simulators are all firsts that in a specialized way forecast, plan or prepare for almost every kind of crisis.

So that everyone — from pilots in hazardous skies, to troops at the front, to the technicians who support them — is ready for the future when it arrives.

With Hughes Support Systems, you could be part of state-of-the-art electronics here at home, or part of a field support team that's swept to almost any site on earth. You could be involved in an almost unlimited array of support programs and systems and devices that affect defense avionics, missiles, and electro-optics — and the people who depend on them throughout the free world.

An it's all part of Hughes, with 1,500 projects and a backlog of over $6 billion.

Who will be first with the electronics and support of tomorrow? Who will be first to teach the technology of the future?

It could be you and Hughes.

At Hughes Support Systems, we'll introduce you to people, ideas and jobs that could change your world. And maybe ours.

It could be you and Hughes **Support Systems**

Call or send resume to:

Hughes Support Systems
B130/MS4, Dept. 225
P.O. Box 90515
Los Angeles, CA 90009
(213) 670-1515, ext. 5444

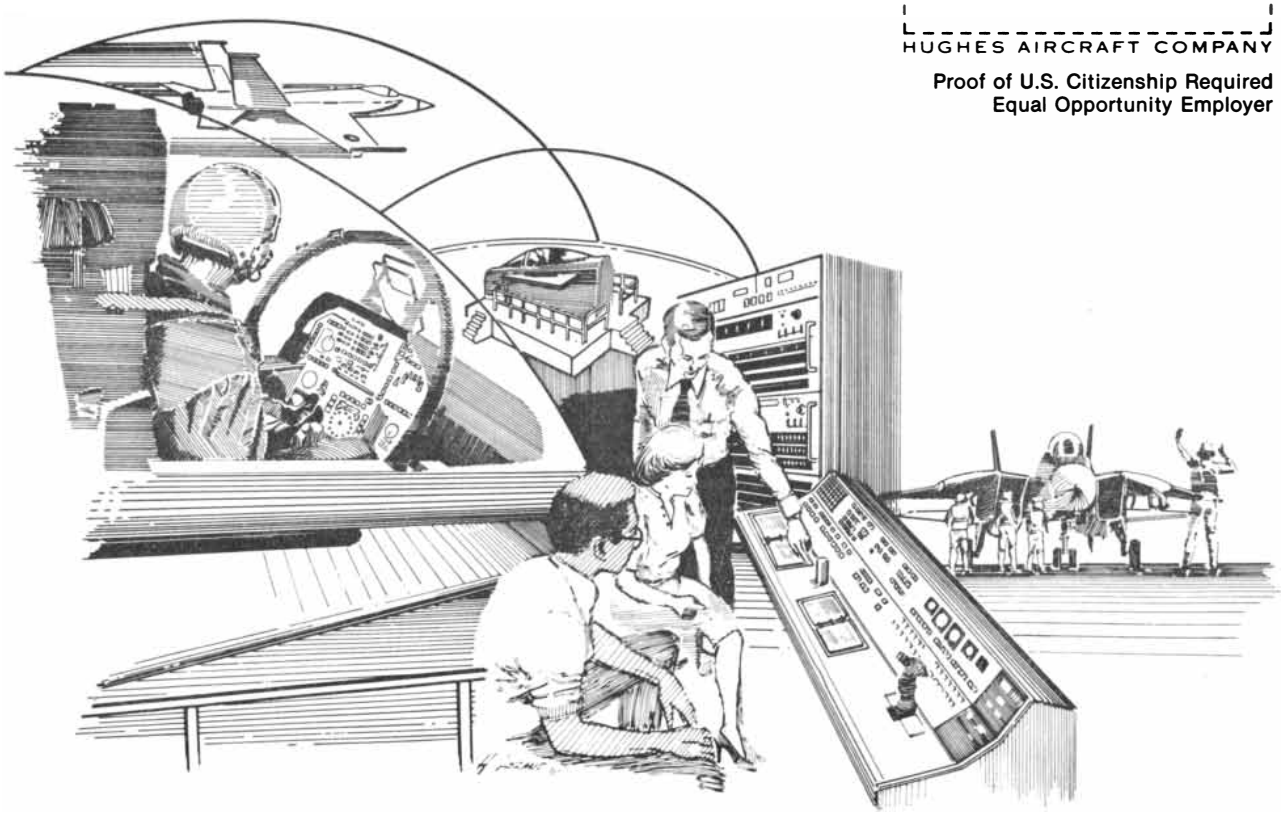
Current openings:

Field Engineering
Product Support
Logistics Support Analysis
Maintainability
Electro-Optical Testing
Real-Time Programming
Analog/Digital Circuit Design
Automatic Test Systems Design
Systems Engineering
Project Engineering
Calibration
Engineering Writing
Training Engineering

HUGHES

HUGHES AIRCRAFT COMPANY

Proof of U.S. Citizenship Required
Equal Opportunity Employer



HELP DRESS A DANCER AT AMERICAN BALLET THEATRE.

We do our best to make ends meet, but we can't be self-supporting. Our ticket income of $5 million is only half the money we need to stay on our feet. And with new government cutbacks in funding for the arts, we'll have to stretch those dollars even further.

This season, we hope you'll be able to give more than applause to American Ballet Theatre dancers like Cynthia Gregory, Natalia Makarova and Martine van Hamel. Because without your contributions, theirs would be impossible.

$10 buys her tights for one performance.

$50 keeps her in makeup for the season.

$30 buys her a new pair of toe shoes. (She'll need another after just one evening.)

$100 buys the sheet music for her ballet.

Please use my tax deductible check or money order of $_____ to dress a dancer at American Ballet Theatre, 890 Broadway, New York, N.Y. 10003.

I'd like to donate ☐ pairs of tights @ $10 ea.
I'd like to donate ☐ pairs of toe shoes @ $30 ea.
I'd like to donate ☐ makeup collections @ $50 ea.
I'd like to donate ☐ musical scores @ $100 ea.

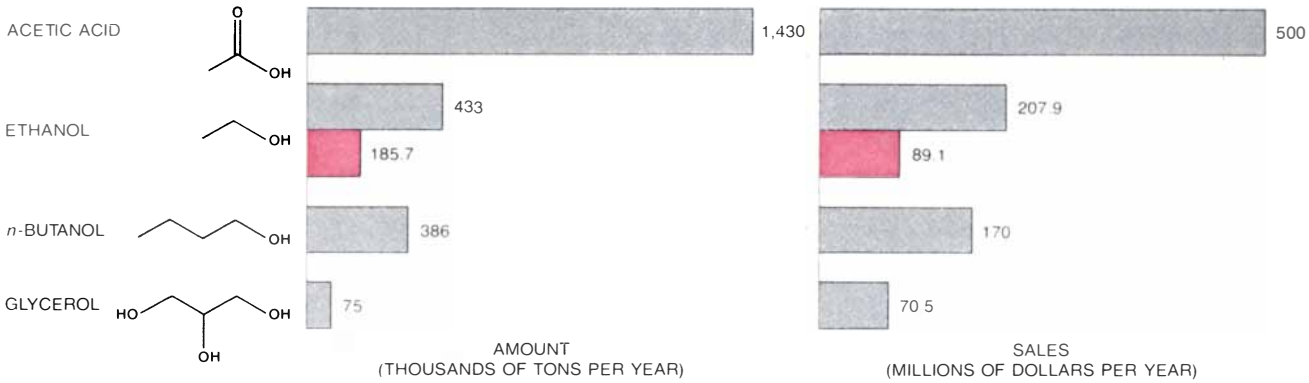
In gratitude for your gift(s) of $100 or more, we'll send you a complimentary copy of our Annual Souvenir Program (48 pages of season highlights, captured in full-color photography).

Name _____

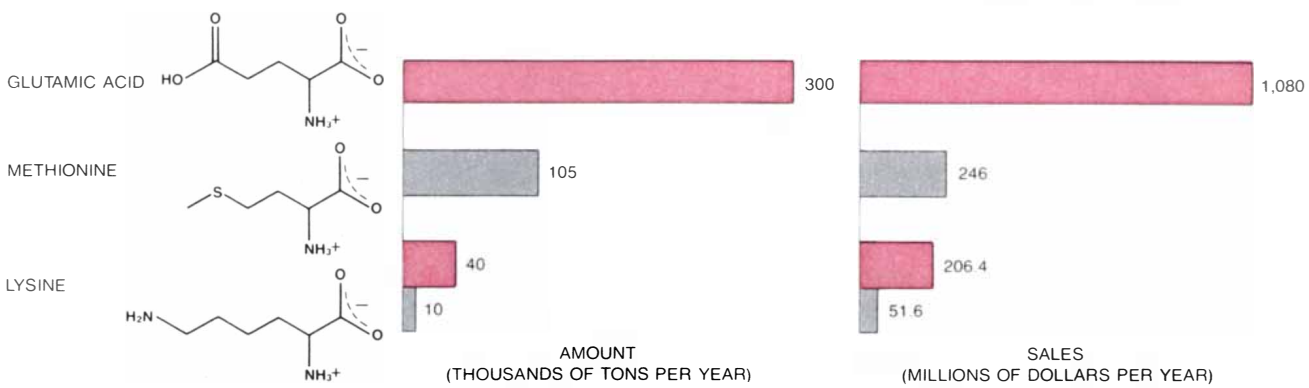
Street _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

Colleen O'Callaghan, American Ballet Theatre.



ALIPHATIC ORGANIC COMPOUNDS, apart from methane, had total sales in the U.S. of $3 billion in 1980. The aliphatic compounds include solvents and organic acids. Shown here are four that are made in large quantities: acetic acid, ethanol, *n*-butanol and glycerol. Excluded from this accounting are the ethanol made for alcoholic beverages and the acetic acid employed as vinegar. All four compounds can be made by biological means but only ethanol is now made that way in industry, and 70 percent of the industrial ethanol is synthesized nonbiologically from petroleum derivatives. The colored bars mark biological syntheses, the gray bars nonbiological ones. The aliphatic industry is expected to adopt fermentation more generally because of the cost of petroleum, the possibility of exploiting thermophilic (heat-loving) bacteria and the prospect of new feedstocks. Data are from the U.S. International Trade Commission.



WORLDWIDE SALES OF AMINO ACIDS were $1.7 billion in 1980. The three amino acids shown are the ones now made in the largest quantities: glutamic acid, methionine and lysine. Glutamic acid is made by fermentation. Like lysine, methionine is a nutritionally essential amino acid that is made commercially as an animal-feed additive. Methionine is manufactured by chemical synthesis, but 80 percent of the lysine is produced biologically. Each amino acid has two isomers, only one of which participates in biological reactions. Fermentation yields only the biologically active isomer; in chemical synthesis half of the yield is the inactive one. This specificity makes biological means more efficient, but it has not always been possible to exploit it. With increased understanding of cellular metabolism all industrially valuable amino acids may soon be made by fermentation. Data are from the Office of Technology Assessment and from Glick.

cled. Moreover, the enzymatic system will undoubtedly be improved by recombinant-DNA techniques. To begin with, genetic programming should be able to increase the yield of the three enzymes from their microbial sources. An intriguing but remoter possibility is to enhance the performance of the enzymes by modifying their active sites.

Commercially produced enzymes are playing an increasing part in medical diagnosis. For example, the enzyme cholesterol oxidase is employed to monitor the level of cholesterol in blood serum, and the enzyme uricase serves to monitor the level of uric acid.

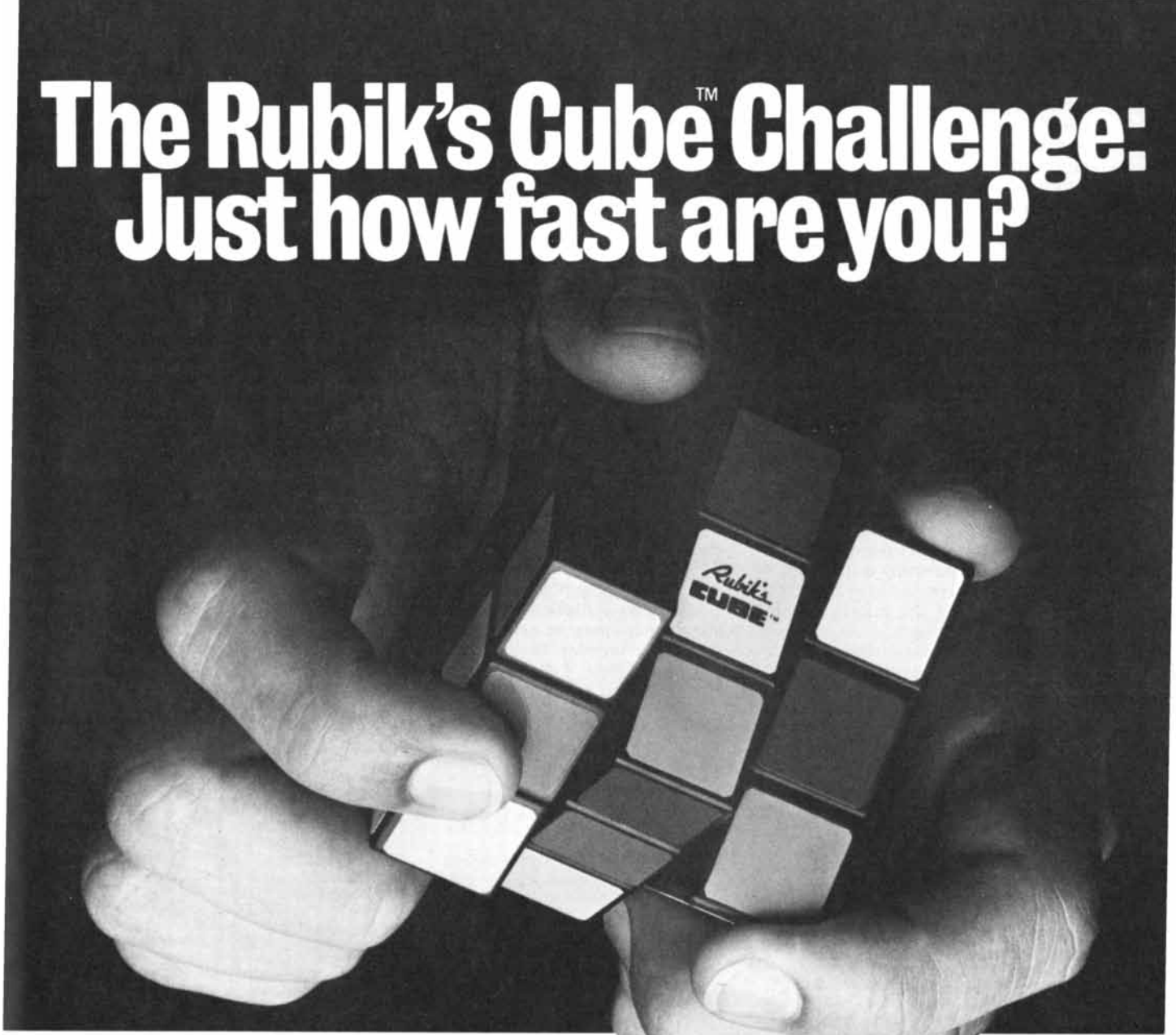
Recombinant-DNA technology itself requires certain enzymes such as restriction endonucleases for cutting open DNA, and ligase for resealing the cut ends. The companies that work with recombinant DNA clearly have an interest in the inexpensive production of these enzymes. Ronald W. Davis and his co-workers at the Stanford University School of Medicine have achieved a 500-fold increase in the yield of ligase by inserting multiple copies of the ligase gene into *Escherichia coli*. The enzymes required by recombinant-DNA techniques have been beneficial in medical diagnosis. For example, the prenatal detection of sickle-cell anemia can be done by applying a restriction endonuclease to the DNA of fetal cells in the amniotic fluid. This method has none of the hazards of the traditional diagnostic technique, in which blood is drawn from the fetus.

Recombinant-DNA techniques have much to offer the enzyme industry apart from the simple enhancement of enzyme yield. Direct modification of the gene could yield enzymes with greater specific activity and greater thermal stability. Eventually the rational design and synthesis of enzymes will be possible. Other factors of economic importance in the production of enzymes include the more efficient use of the feedstock and other raw materials, inhibition of the synthesis of unwanted enzymes and the more efficient recovery of enzymes from dilute solutions. Each of these factors can be addressed by genetic-programming techniques.

The operational efficiency of the fermenter might also be improved by genetic-programming techniques. When the fermenter is a fungus, the long filaments of the fungus often become tightly intertwined, like a clump of spaghetti, with the result that they cannot effectively take in nutrients from the growth medium. If the fungus could be genetically modified so that it grew not as filaments but as single cells, it could consume more nutrients and ferment more efficiently.

The second major class of industrial chemicals is made up of aliphatic organic compounds, which are distinguished by the absence of benzene rings and similar structures. The aliphatic substances with industrial applications can be broadly divided into two categories: solvents and organic acids. The sol-

The Rubik's Cube™ Challenge: Just how fast are you?



If you can solve Rubik's Cube™, then we've got a contest for you. It's the Rubik's Cube™-a-thon, and it's the search for the world's fastest "cubist".

The Regional Challenge

Here two age groups compete (16 years & under and 17 & over), in one of four regional competitions. The winner of each age group will receive cash prizes plus an all expense paid trip to New York City for the National Tournament. The regionals will be held in October at the following locations: Six Flags Great Adventure, Jackson, New Jersey; Six Flags over Mid America, St. Louis, Missouri; Six Flags over Texas, Dallas and Six Flags Magic Mountain, Valencia, California. Check your local newspaper for exact dates and times.

The National Tournament

In November all the regional tournament champions, in both age groups will "cube off" not only for big cash prizes but also for the right to represent the United States in the World Championships. And of course, the champion will have all of his/her expenses paid for by Ideal.

The World Championship

The best "cubist" from 21 countries will gather in April 1982. The winner will receive a fantastic assortment of prizes as well as bragging rights to the world. And if you'd like to get a jump on the competition, you can pre-register by writing to Ideal Toy Corporation, 184-10 Jamaica Avenue, Hollis, New York 11423. Or by filling out a registration form at your local toy or hobby store. Good luck.

SIX FLAGS® IDEAL

Rubik's Cube

It's your move.

vents include ethanol, *n*-butanol, acetone and glycerol; the organic acids include acetic acid, citric acid and lactic acid. In general the solvents are not currently made by biological means on an industrial scale, although *n*-butanol, acetone and glycerol were once made that way. Nevertheless, the solvent industry may return to fermentation because of the cost of petrochemicals, the prospect of exploiting thermophilic bacteria and the availability of new feedstocks.

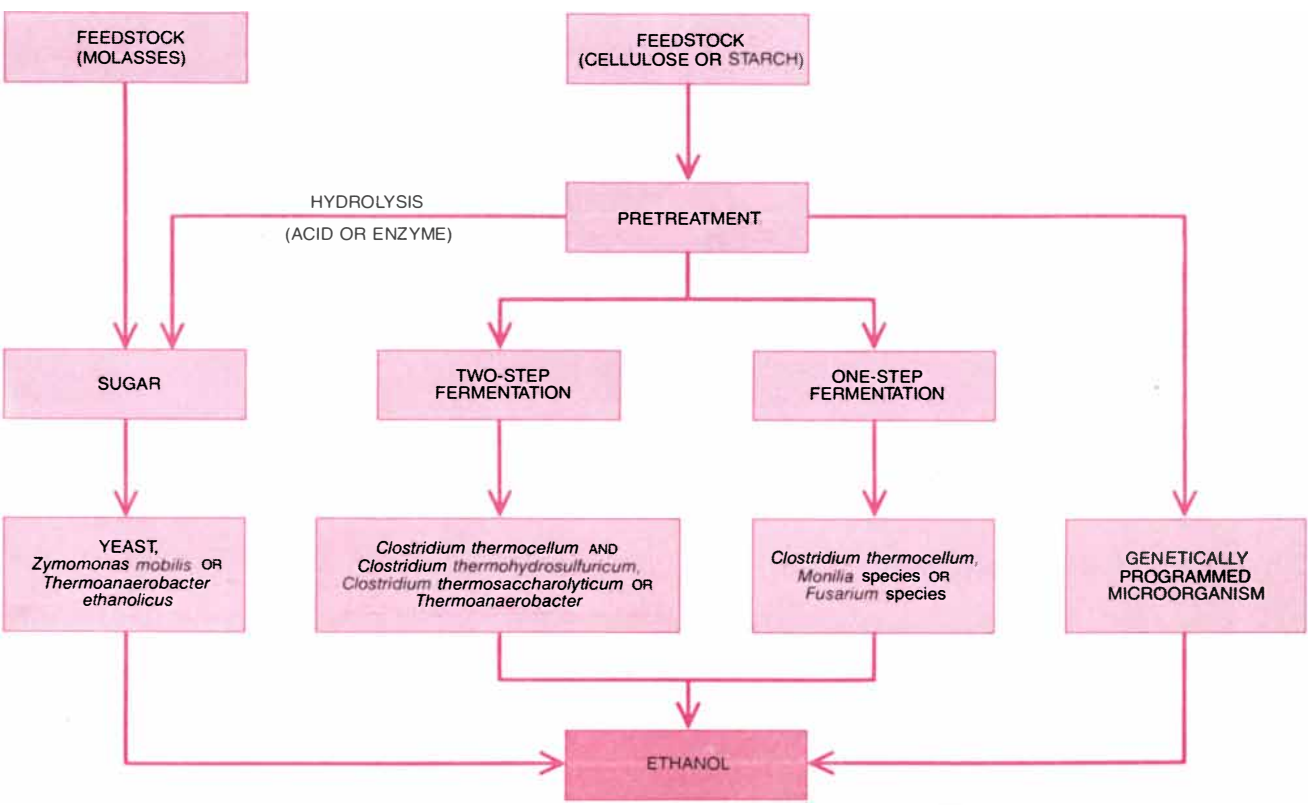
Thermophilic bacteria grow rapidly in the range of temperatures between 60 and 75 degrees Celsius. Their chief advantage over microorganisms that grow at a lower temperature is their faster metabolism. Another benefit is that the fermenter need not be cooled much in order to remove the heat given off by the metabolism of the bacteria. In addition, when the solvent stream issues from the fermenter at a high temperature, less energy is needed for the subsequent purification of the product by distillation.

Abundant and inexpensive feedstocks will be needed if the microbiological production of solvents is to compete with chemical synthesis from petroleum derivatives. In the earlier methods of preparing solvents by fermentation the substrate was sugar from sugarcane or beet molasses or starch from corn, wheat, rye or cassava. The price of sugarcane, molasses and starch is subject to wide fluctuations, and so it would be difficult to base a large fermentation industry on these substrates. Furthermore, these materials are needed for food. The alternative substrates being considered include cellulose, methanol and organic wastes.

Cellulose and related polymers are a major constituent of almost all plant materials and thus represent a renewable feedstock. A promising source of cellulose for the production of solvents is wood. It is widely available and has a stable, low price compared with that of sugar and starch. Wood has three structural components: lignin and the polysaccharides cellulose and hemicellulose. For the fermentation of wood to compete with the synthetic-chemicals industry all three components must be utilized. Lignin presents no problem: it can be burned as a high-caloric fuel. Efficient methods must be developed, however, for fermenting the cellulose and the hemicellulose. I shall discuss these methods below when I describe the production of ethanol.

Methanol, another possible substrate, can be made from coal that has been converted into synthesis gas. Methanol has a single carbon atom, and subtle biochemical pathways are required for its conversion into more complex molecules in which carbon atoms are bonded together. Only a few microorganisms are able to get all their carbon from single-carbon compounds such as methanol, and so any commercial process based on a methanol substrate will have to rely on one of those organisms. Appropriate regulatory mechanisms and biochemical pathways will have to be genetically programmed into the organisms. Imperial Chemical Industries in Britain has grown the bacterium *Methylophilus methylotrophus* on methanol, having first deleted an energy-dependent pathway by methods of genetic engineering. The bacterium produces a single-cell protein that is sold as an animal feed called Pruteen.

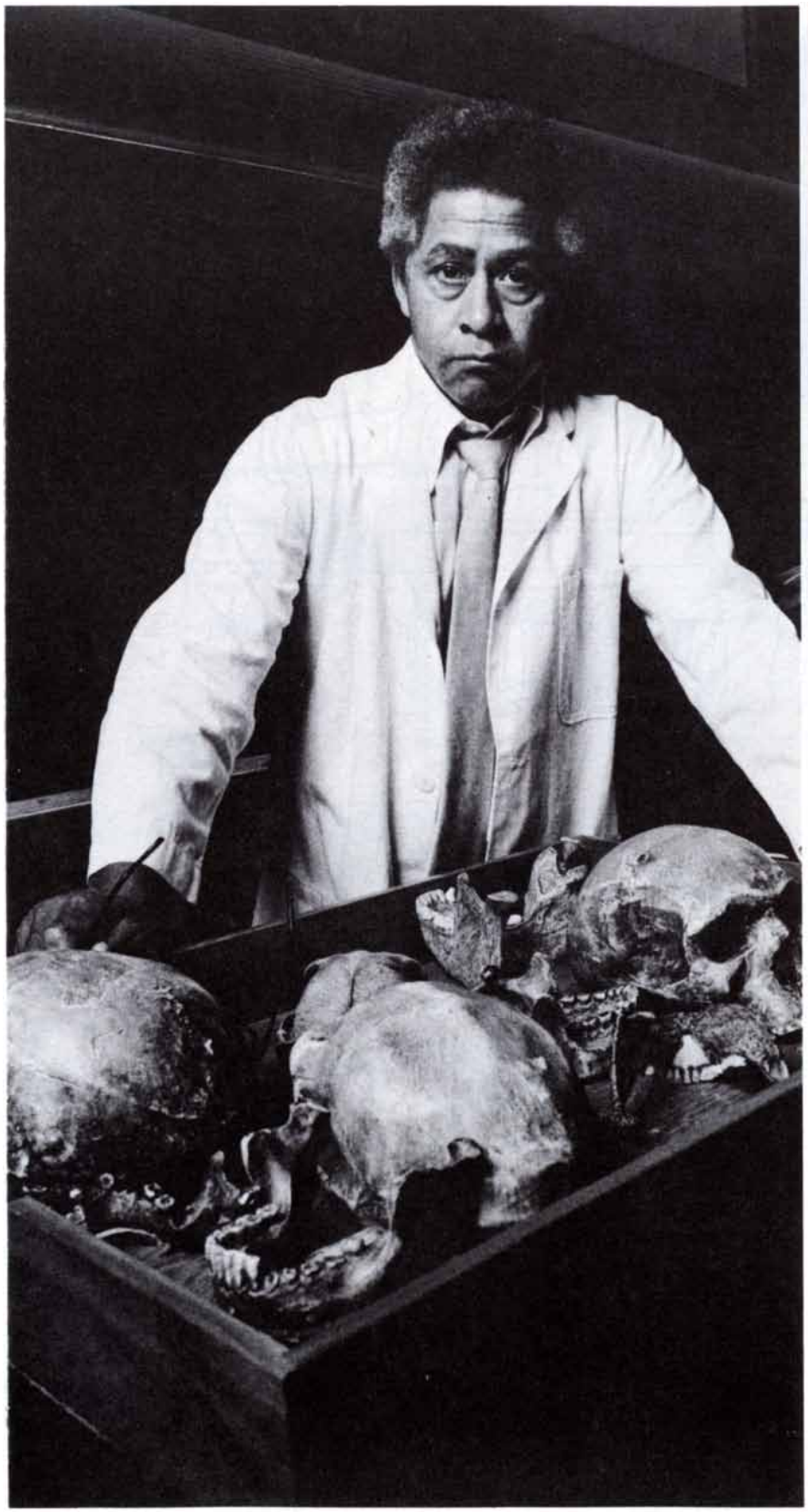
The use of organic wastes as a substrate for the production of solvents would have the secondary benefit of disposing of noxious materials. The wastes



BIOLOGICAL SYNTHESIS OF ETHANOL is now done by essentially the same method employed in making alcoholic beverages, but other methods are being considered. The substrate is now either crude sugar (from sugarcane or beet molasses) or starch (from corn, wheat, rye or cassava) that has been converted into sugar. A yeast has usually been the fermenting organism, but the bacteria *Zymomonas mobilis* and *Thermoanaerobacter ethanolicus* may be more efficient. The prices of crude sugar and of starch fluctuate widely, so that it would be difficult to base a large fermentation industry on these substrates. Furthermore, these materials are needed as food. Three other strategies rely on cellulose and related polymers of wood, which are abundant, renewable and inexpensive. The cellulose can be fermented in either two steps or one step. In the two-step process one microorganism breaks down the cellulose into its component sugar units, which are subsequently fermented into ethanol by another microorganism. In the one-step process a single microorganism both breaks down the cellulose and ferments the resulting sugar solely into ethanol. Microorganisms that have this capability are apparently rare, and so the fourth strategy is to genetically program a yeast or a bacterium so that it converts cellulose into ethanol in one operation.

DEWAR'S® PROFILE

A thirst for living...a taste for fine Scotch.



MELVIN D. WILLIAMS

BORN: Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania.

HOME: West Lafayette, Indiana.

PRESENT TITLE: Professor of Anthropology and Director of Africana Studies and Research Center, Purdue University.

BIGGEST DISLIKE: Boredom. After 15 years of running his own business, Mel got tired of success. Against the advice of family and friends, he entered graduate school in anthropology. And now, just 7 years after getting his Ph.D., he is a full professor, as well as the author of many articles and books in his field.

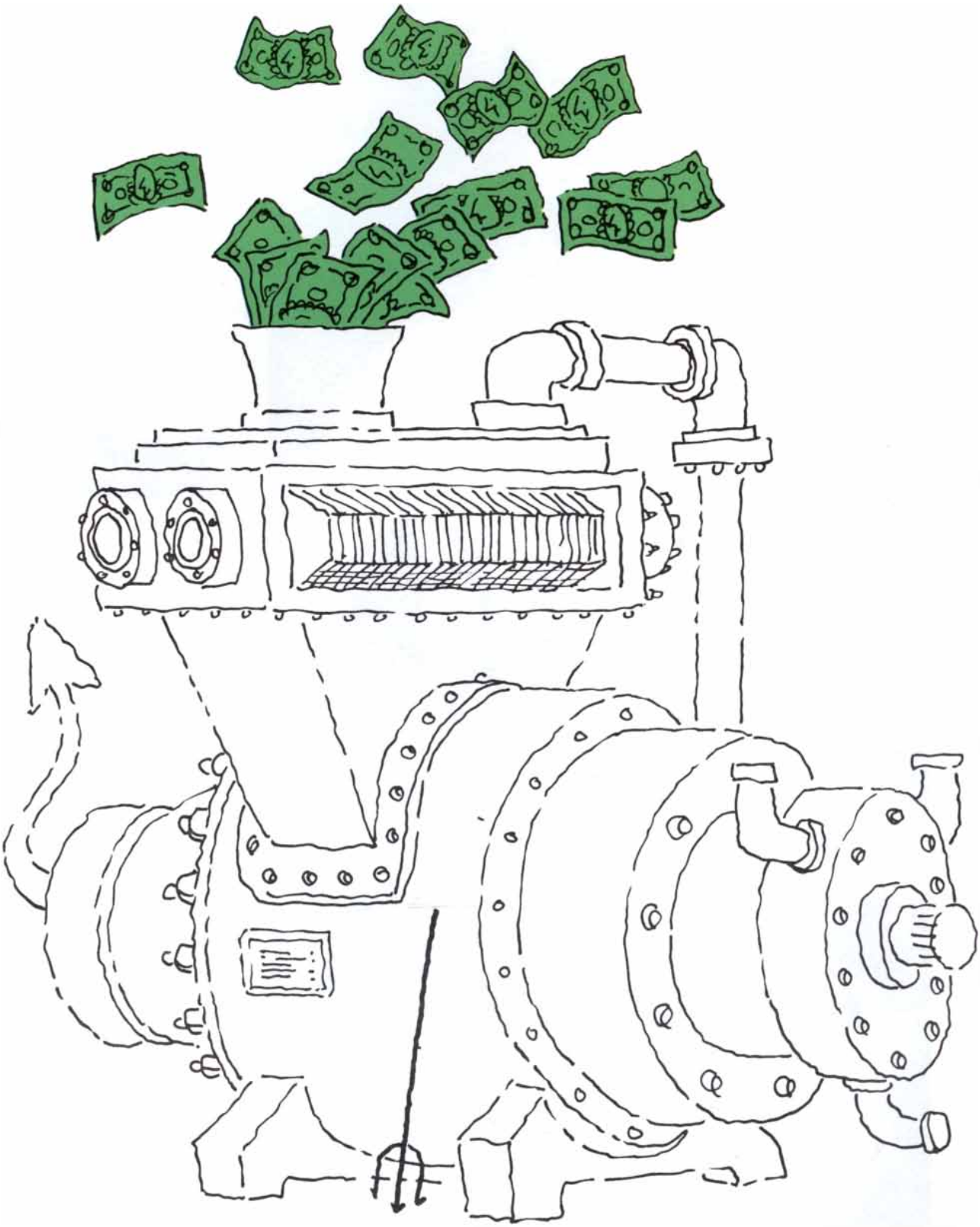
POINT OF VIEW: "When there's no horizon to reach for, I have to back away and try something else. To me there's nothing more tedious than predictability."

SCOTCH: Dewar's® "White Label."® "I was introduced to Dewar's by an informant in the 'field' after a long day of interviews. I took it on the rocks then, and I still do."

Melvin D. Williams

BLENDED SCOTCH WHISKY • 86.8 PROOF
© 1980 SCHENLEY IMPORTS CO., N.Y., N.Y.

Imagine turning hot exhaust into cold cash.



We did.
And lowered fuel costs up to 30%.

You don't become a Garrett engineer by letting energy go to waste. If there's a way to save it, you find it. And one of the things we've found is a way to help make industrial gas turbines work even harder.

By applying Garrett's advanced heat transfer technology, we've designed a new kind of gas turbine regenerator that can reduce a turbine's fuel bill by up to 30%. Simply by making more efficient use of exhaust heat to increase the temperature of the incoming air.

Because greater efficiency goes hand-in-hand with longer service life, Garrett regenerators are designed to last up to 20 years before needing any maintenance. The credit goes to a patented core configuration that solves thermal fatigue problems. And the use of corrosion-resistant stainless steel that easily handles operating temperatures up to 1,200°F. These new regenerators will be on-line and operational in more than 30 installations by the end of 1981.

Equally remarkable is the application of that same heat transfer technology to other areas of industry. By putting high temperature flue gas back to work with a special kind of heat exchanger called a recuperator, we'll be reducing the fuel requirement of large industrial furnaces this year by more than 25% Comparable savings are also available for direct-fired manufacturing processes, like glass-making.

At Garrett, we earned our wings in aerospace, then built ourselves into an industrial giant by keeping our feet on the ground. And our hands on a technology base one step ahead of tomorrow. We're uniquely structured to put that asset to work for you, today. Our engineers work in teams. No one is isolated. They work together. The result has been results.

You'll find us in everything from nuclear powerplants to hospitals. Agriculture to automobiles. But the real frontier for us, is you.

If you'd like to make your endeavors more energy efficient, you'll find us easy to work with. Just write our President, Jack Teske. You'll find him at: The Garrett Corporation, P.O. Box 92248, Los Angeles, CA 90009.

GARRETT The Garrett Corporation
One of The Signal Companies

Garrett

The aerospace company with its feet on the ground.

Physician, did you miss any of these significant developments in medical science?

• ***Campylobacter fetus* subsp. *jejuni* is associated with a colitis that can clinically and sigmoidoscopically resemble acute idiopathic ulcerative colitis. Stool cultures are in order for *C. fetus* before beginning nonspecific anti-inflammatory therapy.**

• **Coumarin derivatives cross the placenta. A recent study shows that the consequences for the fetus can be severe. These include embryopathy, stillbirth, and premature delivery.**

• **Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs may produce a marked reduction in glomerular filtration rate; with termination of the drug, GFR returns to normal.**

• **Pittsburgh pneumonia agent (PPA) and atypical *Legionella*-like organisms (ALLO) are particularly dangerous in immunosuppressed patients.**

IF THESE ITEMS are familiar you must be a prodigiously energetic or prodigiously lucky reader. With 2,000 or more journals published each year, information that significantly affects patient management all too easily slips by. Textbooks are out-of-date before they are published.

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN *Medicine* is the busy clinician's answer to this problem.

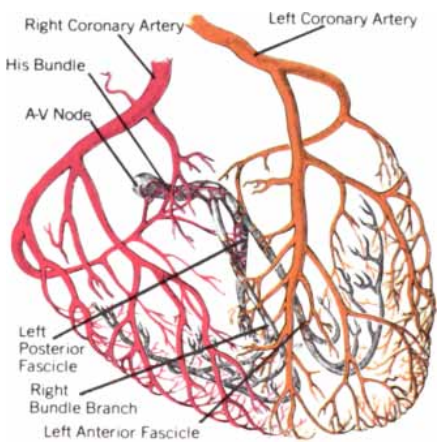
Because its authors update SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN *Medicine* every month, it is always current. Because the new information appears in a single source, it is there when you need it.

This 2,000-page, innovative union of publishing and electronic technology is the work of leading scholar-practitioners from Harvard and Stanford. The editors are Edward Rubenstein, M.D., F.A.C.P., and Daniel Federman, M.D., F.A.C.P.

Each month as authors update their contributions, revisions are entered on the magnetic tape on which the text and index are stored. The tape drives high-speed phototypesetting equipment so that subscribers receive about eight new chapters and a new index every four weeks; a bulletin highlights new developments.

New material replaces old material in the living text, so that the information is there – up-to-date, at your fingertips.

A CME program of eight patient management problems offered over a 12-month period is available at no extra cost. As an organization accredited for continuing medical education, the Stanford University School of Medicine designates this continuing medical education activity as meeting the criteria for 32 credit hours in Category 1 for Educational Materials for the Physician's Recognition Award of the American Medical Association, provided it has been completed according to instructions. This program is approved by the American Academy of Family Physicians for 32 Elective Hours of CME credit.



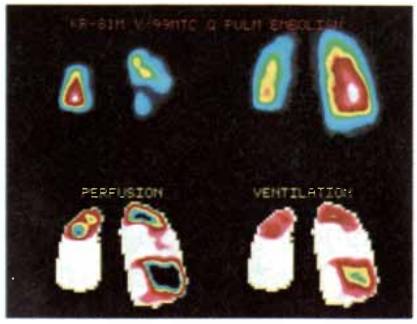
Branches of the right and left coronary arteries supply blood to the AV node and intraventricular conduction system.

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN *Medicine* is lucidly illustrated with drawings and photographs. Some examples are seen here and on the facing page.

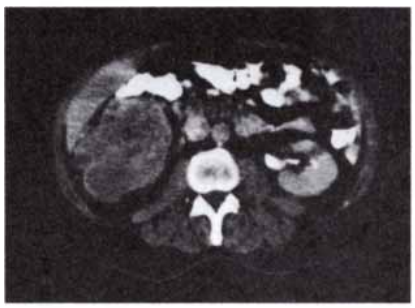
Trial Offer

We invite you to try SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN *Medicine* — for two months at no cost. Send us the coupon and you will receive the two-volume text and two monthly updates. You may also take a CME test for credit. At the end of 60 days, if you decide to continue the subscription, we will bill you for $185 for the full 12 months (renewal is $160); otherwise just return the volumes to us.

Please mail the coupon today and let us take the hassle out of keeping up.



Computerized scintigraphy reveals pulmonary thromboembolism.



Abdominal computed tomogram reveals large renal carcinoma replacing part of right kidney.

THE DISTINGUISHED AUTHORS AND THE FIFTEEN SECTIONS OF SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN ***MEDICINE***

1. Cardiovascular Medicine

Edgar Haber, M.D., Harvard Medical School and Massachusetts General Hospital

E. William Hancock, M.D., F.A.C.P., Stanford University School of Medicine

Roman W. DeSanctis, M.D., Harvard Medical School and Massachusetts General Hospital

Adolph M. Hutter, Jr., M.D., F.A.C.P., Harvard Medical School and Massachusetts General Hospital

Eve Elizabeth Slater, M.D., Harvard Medical School and Massachusetts General Hospital

2. Dermatology

Eugene M. Farber, M.D., Stanford University School of Medicine

Elizabeth A. Abel, M.D., Stanford University School of Medicine

3. Endocrinology

Daniel D. Federman, M.D., F.A.C.P., Harvard Medical School

4. Gastroenterology

Gary M. Gray, M.D., Stanford University School of Medicine

Peter B. Gregory, M.D., Stanford University School of Medicine

John Austin Collins, M.D., Stanford University School of Medicine

5. Hematology

Stanley L. Schrier, M.D., Stanford University School of Medicine

6. Immunology

John David, M.D., Harvard Medical School and Robert B. Brigham Hospital

7. Infectious Disease

Thomas C. Merigan, M.D., Stanford University School of Medicine

Morton N. Swartz, M.D., F.A.C.P., Harvard Medical School and Massachusetts General Hospital

Cyrus C. Hopkins, M.D., Harvard Medical School and Massachusetts General Hospital

Adolf W. Karchmer, M.D., F.A.C.P., Harvard Medical School and Massachusetts General Hospital

Robert H. Rubin, M.D., F.A.C.P., Harvard Medical School and Massachusetts General Hospital

Harvey B. Simon, M.D., F.A.C.P., Harvard Medical School and Massachusetts General Hospital

Peter F. Weller, M.D., Harvard Medical School

8. Intensive and Emergency Care

Edward Rubenstein, M.D., F.A.C.P., Stanford University School of Medicine

9. Metabolism

George F. Cahill, Jr., M.D., Harvard Medical School, Howard Hughes Medical Institute, and Peter Bent Brigham Hospital

10. Nephrology

Roy H. Maffly, M.D., Stanford University School of Medicine and Palo Alto Veterans Administration Medical Center

11. Neurology

Robert W. P. Cutler, M.D., Stanford University School of Medicine

12. Oncology

Saul A. Rosenberg, M.D., F.A.C.P., Stanford University School of Medicine

13. Psychiatry

Ned H. Cassem, M.D., Harvard Medical School and Massachusetts General Hospital

14. Respiratory Medicine

Eugene D. Robin, M.D., F.A.C.P., Stanford University School of Medicine

15. Rheumatology

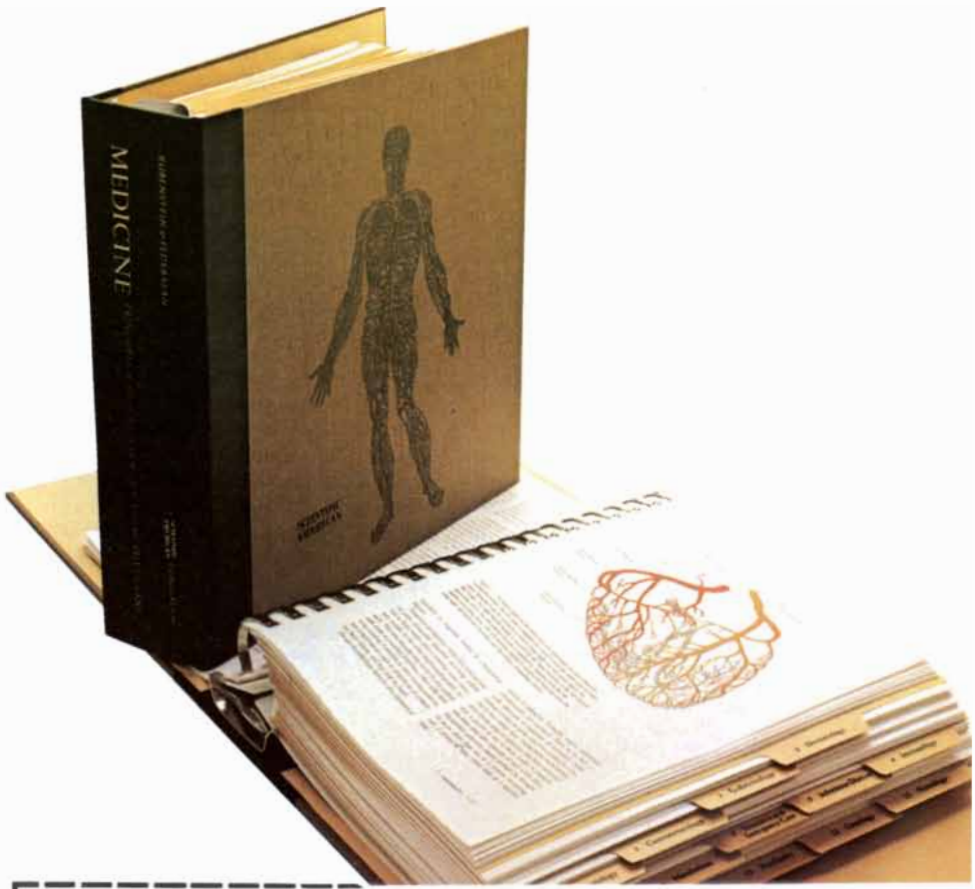
Stephen M. Krane, M.D., Harvard Medical School and Massachusetts General Hospital

Dwight R. Robinson, M.D., Harvard Medical School and Massachusetts General Hospital

Andrei Calin, M.D., M.A., M.R.C.P., Stanford University School of Medicine and Palo Alto Veterans Administration Medical Center

Order by Phone

You can order SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN *Medicine* by telephone. **Please call this toll-free number: 1-800-227-3900 (in California call 800-632-2122);** you will be billed after your subscription begins. Toll-free calls are acceptable only for orders placed in the continental United States.



SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN MEDICINE

415 Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017

Please enroll me as a subscriber to SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN *Medicine*. On receipt of this coupon you will send me the advanced two-volume text described in your announcement and update it regularly by sending me new monthly subsections. I understand that the price of $185 for the first year of service is tax deductible, as is the renewal price of $160. If I am not entirely satisfied, I may cancel at any time during the first 60 days, returning all materials for a *complete refund.*

☐ Please enter my subscription for SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN *Medicine*
☐ I shall also enroll in the CME Program
☐ I enclose a check made out to SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN *Medicine* for $185*
☐ Please bill me

* Please add sales tax for California, Illinois, Massachusetts, Michigan, Ohio and New York

Name _____

MD Specialty _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

Signature _____

Subscribers outside of the U.S. and possessions will be charged extra for shipping and handling; updates will be sent by surface routes unless airmail delivery is requested. Please allow 6-8 weeks for delivery. B1

are a complex mixture of substances, some of which are toxic. In order to ferment the wastes a microorganism must be found that is resistant to any toxins present and that can consume several component substances of the mixture. A promising family of bacteria consists of the pseudomonads. Ananda M. Chakrabarty of the General Electric Company genetically programmed *Pseudomonas putida* so that it utilizes naphthalene, xylene, alkanes and camphor. The suggestion that the bacterium could degrade oceanic oil spills exaggerates its capabilities, but it will prove useful in several industrial settings, such as waste-disposal ponds, in which the temperature and other environmental factors can be controlled.

Ethanol is one of the most important organic chemicals in industry. In the U.S. 619,000 tons were produced last year, for total sales of $297 million. (These amounts do not include the ethanol made for alcoholic beverages.) Ethanol is employed as a solvent, an extractant and an antifreeze. Moreover, it is a substrate for the synthesis of other organic compounds that serve as solvents, extractants, dyes, pharmaceuticals, lubricants, adhesives, detergents, pesticides, plasticizers, surface coatings, cosmetics, explosives and resins for the manufacture of synthetic fibers.

Ethanol can be made either synthetically from petrochemical feedstocks or biologically by the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* or other microorganisms. In a common chemical process ethylene derived from petroleum or natural gas is converted at a high temperature into ethanol by the addition of water and in the presence of certain catalysts. In the microbiological process a yeast secretes ethanol as a by-product of fermenting either crude sugar or starch that has been converted into sugar. At the beginning of the 20th century ethanol was produced on a large scale by fermentation. In recent years 70 percent of the ethanol made in the U.S. has been made by chemical synthesis, chiefly because of the cost of sugar and starch. The rising cost of petroleum, however, is pushing the industry back to fermentation.

Indeed, the balance of costs has shifted to such an extent that the fermentative manufacture of ethanol as an alternative to gasoline is now well established. Brazil plans to replace gasoline with ethanol by the 1990's. In the U.S. gasohol, a 9:1 blend of gasoline and ethanol, has been enthusiastically received in the Middle West. Replacing gasoline with gasohol throughout the country would require at least 12 billion gallons of ethanol per year; current production is about .3 billion gallons, of which only a third is employed as a fuel. Nevertheless, the price of ethanol made by fermentation is comparable to the price of gasoline.

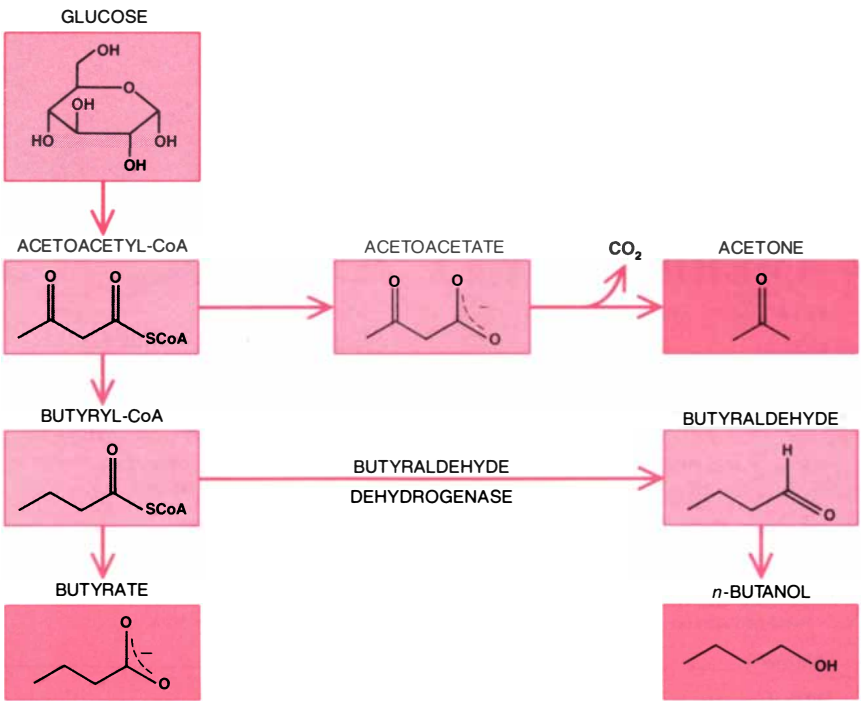
If ethanol is to serve as a fuel, the requirement of an abundant and inexpensive substrate is particularly pressing. In a corn glut, such as the current one in the U.S., excess grain could be used as the substrate, but it would yield at most perhaps two billion gallons of ethanol per year.

A more abundant substrate is wood, but the biological synthesis of ethanol from wood is appreciably more complicated than that from grain. The wood must be pretreated in various ways and its cellulose and hemicellulose must be separated. Then the cellulose can be fermented either in two steps or in one step. In the two-step process the cellulose, which is a polymer of glucose, is broken down into its component sugar units, which are fermented into ethanol. The process is efficient, but its compound nature adds to the cost. The alternative approach is to break down the cellulose and ferment the resulting sugar in one operation. Microorganisms with the full complement of enzymes needed to bring about this transformation are apparently rare. As a result investigators are trying to genetically program an ethanol-producing yeast or the bacterium *Zymomonas* so that it can degrade cellulose.

Similar efforts center on the hemicellulose xylan, which is a polysaccharide having a structure somewhat different from that of cellulose; it is composed of the pentose sugar xylose. Xylan can make up as much as 30 percent of the mass of wood. Groups of investigators led by Henry Schneider of the National Research Council of Canada and George T. Tsao of Purdue University have independently shown that if xylose is converted into xylulose, it can be fermented by yeast to yield ethanol. The conversion of xylose into xylulose is mediated by the enzyme xylose isomerase, and so investigators are trying to incorporate into yeast the gene for xylose isomerase.

What microorganism produces the most ethanol? Yeasts, of course, have been the traditional choice, but workers at the University of New South Wales and at Rutgers University have discovered that the bacterium *Zymomonas mobilis,* found in palm wines and in the Mexican beverage pulque, ferments sugar twice as fast as yeast does. Ultimately thermophilic bacteria will probably prove to be the most efficient fermenters. Even their efficiency is subject to improvement by recombinant-DNA techniques, which can serve to increase the amount of certain enzymes in the cell or to replace one enzyme with another that has a higher specific activity.

A major limitation on the fermentative production of ethanol and other solvents is the capacity of the microorganism to tolerate the solvent. Not much is known about what makes a microorganism resistant to ethanol, but tolerance seems to be linked to the fraction of fatty acids in the cell membrane that are chemically unsaturated, or deficient in hydrogen. One possible explanation



SYNTHESIS OF *N*-BUTANOL can be accomplished by microbiological means, but such methods have not been adopted because the biochemical pathways are not well understood. The pathways shown here represent the fermentation of glucose into *n*-butanol by the bacterium *Clostridium acetobutylicum*. Butyrate (the salt of butyric acid) is formed initially, followed by a metabolic rerouting to the production of acetone and *n*-butanol. The mechanism that controls this is not known. Another critical factor is the toxicity of *n*-butanol to the bacterium.

Qantas Business Class. A cut above the competition.

Despite some attempts at imitation, Qantas Business Class remains unequalled.

Face it, when you've been in the business for better than sixty years and you fly the longest hauls in the world, you learn a few tricks of the trade.

For instance, we know when you need attention. And when it's hands off.

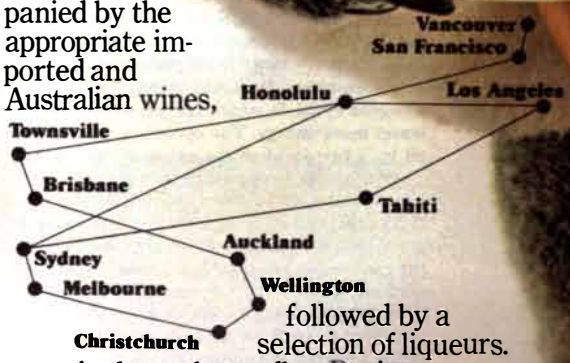
Now about our Business Class chairs. Other

"That's the unkindest cut of all, Qantas."

airlines call ours first class. And we guarantee you'll never be more than one seat from an aisle.

You enjoy the creature comforts of complimentary cocktails and in-flight entertainment.

There's a choice of entrées accompanied by the appropriate imported and Australian wines,



followed by a selection of liqueurs.

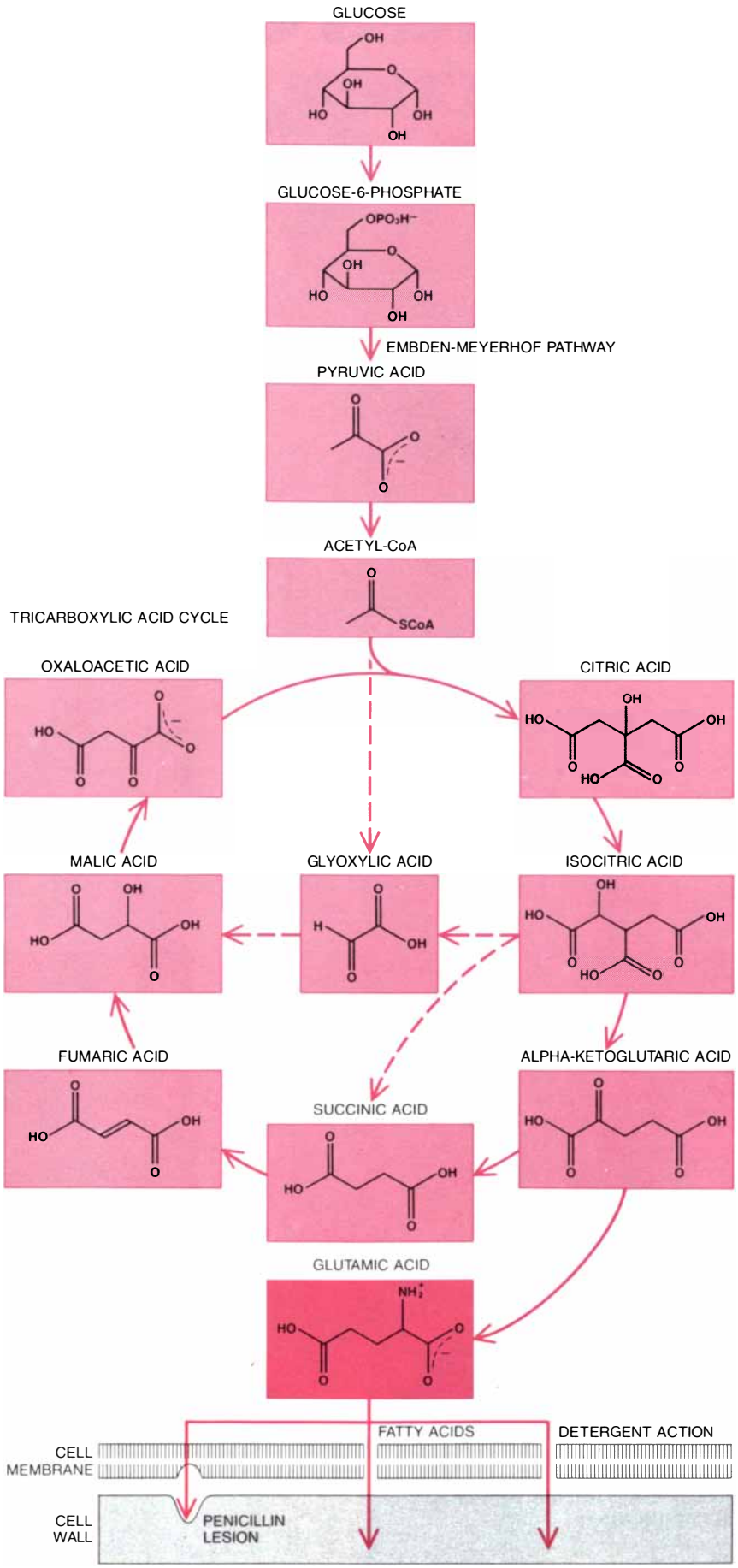
And you always fly a Boeing 747. Because Qantas is the world's only all-747 airline.

On the ground you get quick check-in at the First Class counter and priority baggage handling.

Ask your Travel Agent about Qantas Business Class. It goes for about U. S. $100 more than the Economy Class fare to Australia.

Talk about the competition. What competition?

QANTAS The Australian Airline.



PRODUCTION OF AN AMINO ACID by biological methods depends on strategies for altering the metabolism of the cell and for promoting the excretion of the product from the cell. Shown here is the conversion of glucose into glutamic acid (or the salt MSG) by *Corynebacterium*. Glucose is converted into pyruvate by the Embden-Meyerhof pathway (glycolysis), a fundamental mechanism by which a cell derives energy from glucose. The pyruvate then enters the Krebs cycle, or tricarboxylic acid cycle, in which further oxidation releases more energy. The cycle is short-circuited by a low level of the enzyme alpha-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase, which promotes the conversion of alpha-ketoglutaric acid into succinic acid, and by a high level of the enzyme glutamate dehydrogenase, which encourages the conversion of alpha-ketoglutaric acid into glutamic acid. At the same time the glyoxylate cycle, represented by the broken arrows, is activated to produce more energy. While the cell is growing the glyoxylate cycle competes with the glutamic acid shunt for alpha-ketoglutaric acid. Eventually all the substrate is shunted into glutamic acid. There are several strategies for inducing the cell to excrete glutamate in large quantities. If the cell is deprived of the vitamin biotin, the membrane develops leaks, allowing more glutamate to pass through. The membrane can also be effectively modified by adding to the growth medium a saturated fatty acid or a detergent. Addition of penicillin to growth medium causes lesions in the cell wall, through which large quantities of glutamic acid can be excreted.

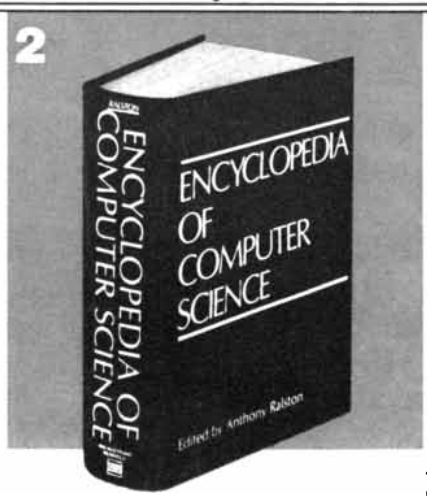
is that unsaturated fatty acids make the membrane more permeable to ethanol and thereby reduce the intracellular concentration.

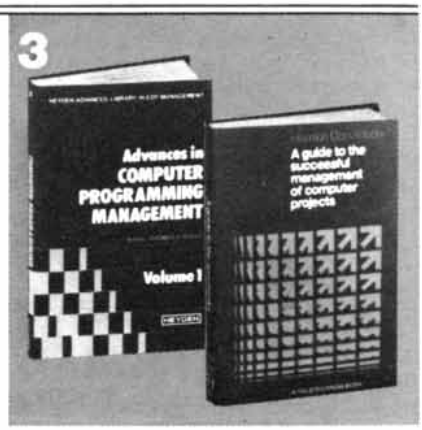
Another organic solvent is *n*-butanol. (The *n* stands for "normal" and signifies that the molecule is a straight chain of carbon atoms rather than a branched chain.) It is employed extensively in the manufacture of plasticizers, brake fluids, gasoline additives, urea-formaldehyde resins, extractants and protective coatings. Today virtually all *n*-butanol is made by chemical synthesis, but a biological pathway has long been known. In 1912 Chaim Weizmann, who was then working at the University of Manchester, developed a bacterial fermentation culture for the production of *n*-butanol, from which he synthesized butadiene for synthetic rubber. Acetone is a by-product of the fermentation, and in World War I there was a great demand for acetone as a solvent in the manufacture of the explosive cordite. After the war the demand for acetone decreased but the need for *n*-butanol increased.

The fermentation devised by Weizmann was based on the conversion of starch by the bacterium *Clostridium acetobutylicum* or the conversion of sugar by *Clostridium saccharoacetobutylicum*. The production of *n*-butanol by fermentation declined in the 1940's and the 1950's mainly because the price of

The Library of Computer and Information Sciences

invites you to...





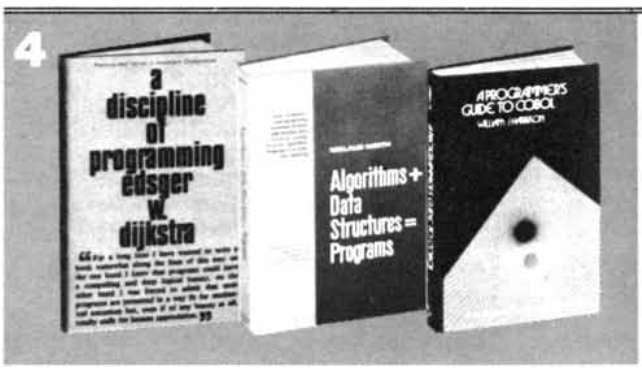
DATABASE LIBRARY
Two comprehensive volumes form an invaluable professional tool for reference, planning and design. **Computer Data-Base Organization.** *Second Edition. James Martin.* Over 700 pages, with more than 200 diagrams. A major contribution by the world's foremost computer author. **Database: Structured Techniques for Design, Performance and Management.** *S. Atre.* Filled with trouble-shooting techniques and real-world methodologies. Extensive insights into data models, data storage and access methods, data base administration and more. **Publisher's Price $55.90.**

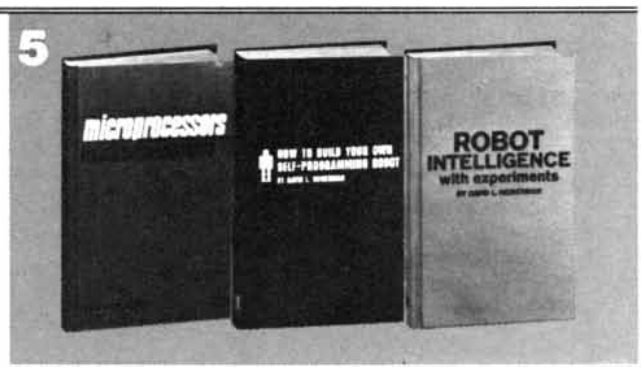
THE ENCYCLOPEDIA OF COMPUTER SCIENCE
The Encyclopedia of Computer Science. *Anthony Ralston.* A mammoth volume covering everything from access methods to working set. 1,523 pages, 470 articles and over 1,000 illustrations, tables and charts. Compiled by over 200 internationally respected authorities. **Publisher's Price $60.00.**

THE PROGRAMMING MANAGER'S LIBRARY
Provides practical techniques for handling the day-to-day challenges of programming management. **A Guide to the Successful Management of Computer Projects.** *Hamish Donaldson.* Covers all aspects of project management—from mainframes to minicomputers, from interactive systems to batch computing modes. With detailed case examples and informative diagrams. **Advances in Computer Programming Management.** *Edited by Thomas A. Rullo.* Focuses on how to maintain the "people" side while dealing with increasingly complex computer technology. **Publisher's Price $64.45.**

Take any set for only $2.95

You simply agree to buy 3 more books—at handsome discounts—within the next 12 months.





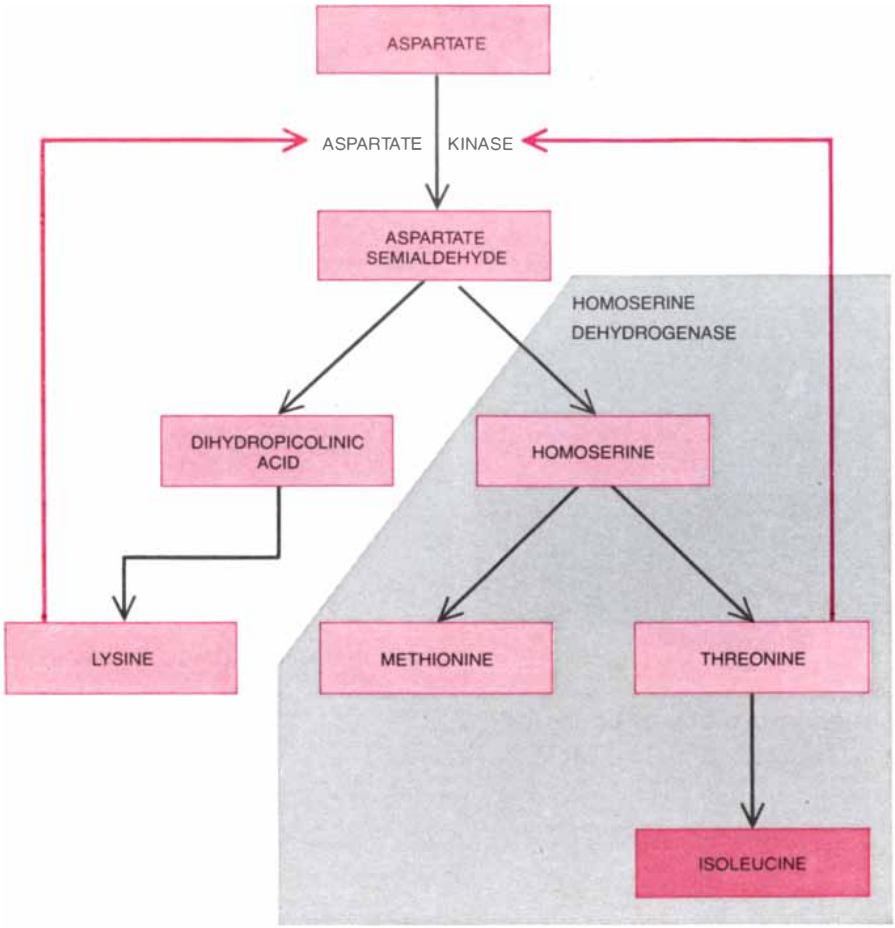
THE PROGRAMMER'S LIBRARY
Three volumes give an extensive overview of computer programming. **A Discipline of Programming.** *Edsger W. Dijkstra.* A classic work by the noted author. **Algorithms + Data Structures = Programs.** *Niklaus Wirth.* Coverage of fundamental data structures, internal and external sorting, resursive algorithms, dynamic data structures, language structures and compiling. **A Programmer's Guide to Cobol.** *William J. Harrison.* Spells out the total data processing cycle and presents sample programs for understanding the rules of COBOL based on typical usage. **Publisher's Price $62.85.**

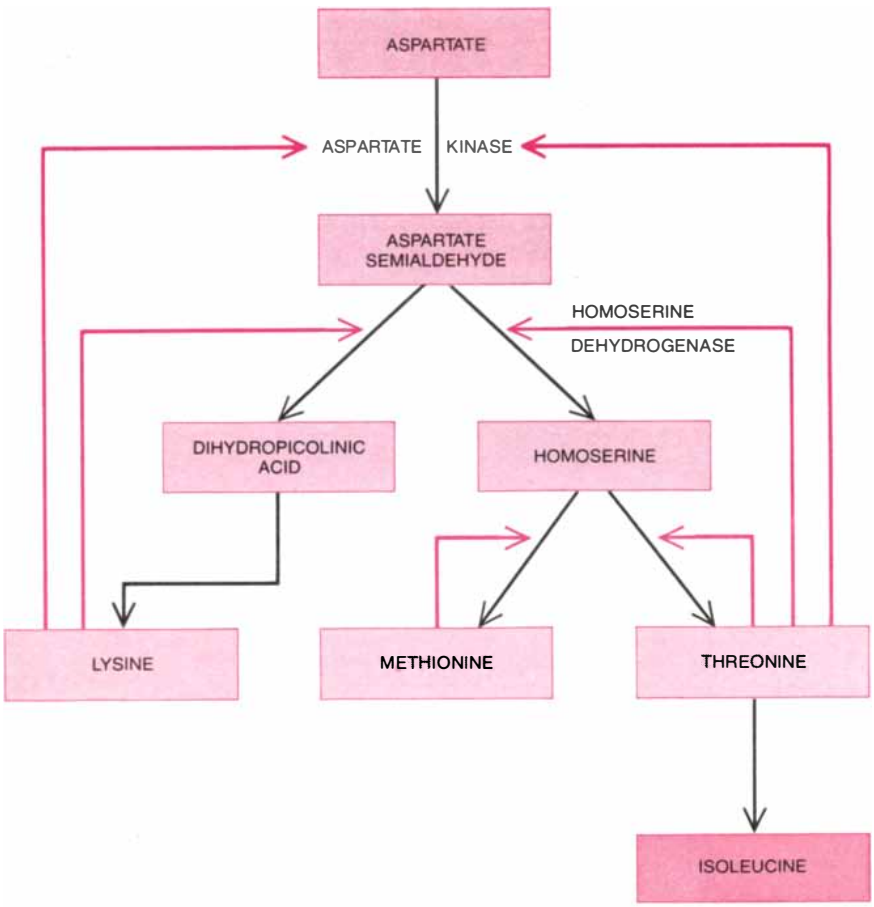
THE COMPUTER HOBBYIST'S LIBRARY
Microprocessors: From Chips to Systems. *Third Edition. Rodnay Zaks.* An easy-to-use guide to the design and construction of microprocessor-based systems. **How to Build Your Own Self-Programming Robot.** *David L. Heiserman.* Details the intelligence features of Alpha, Beta and Gamma robots, robot mainframe and auxiliary power supply, designing and running an Alpha-Rodney system (the simplest robot) and more. **Robot Intelligence... With Experiments.** *David Heiserman.* Includes dozens of source programs and subroutines to use on any home computer. **Publisher's Price $54.90.**

The Library of Computer and Information Sciences is a book club especially designed for the computer professional. In the incredibly fast-moving world of data processing, we make it easy for you to keep informed on all areas of the information sciences.

Join The Library of Computer and Information Sciences for a trial period and we'll ship your choice of the Encyclopedia of Computer Sciences or any of the 4 sets shown for just $2.95.

If the reply card has been removed, please write to
The Library of Computer and Information Sciences
Dept. 7-AW2, Riverside, N.J. 08075
to obtain membership information and an application.





petrochemicals dropped below that of starch and sugar substrates such as corn and molasses. Today *n*-butanol is made by fermentation only in South Africa, where petroleum is scarce because of the international embargo. The substrate is molasses, and coal is also required as a source of energy; the spent bacteria are recovered and sold as a feed for ruminants. In response to the rising cost of petrochemicals, industry in other countries is reexamining fermentation as a source of *n*-butanol.

One impediment to the large-scale adoption of microbiological methods for *n*-butanol synthesis is a lack of understanding of metabolic pathways. Another critical factor is the toxicity of *n*-butanol to the bacterium. The first industrial strains of *C. acetobutylicum* fermented at most 3.8 percent of the starch substrate to yield 1.2 percent *n*-butanol. The bacteria are killed by higher concentrations of this product of their own metabolism. Investigators have not had much success in selecting mutant strains with greater tolerance to *n*-butanol. In laboratory evaluations a tolerance of 2.85 percent has been achieved by adding activated charcoal to the fermentation medium, but it is not known whether this can be done on a large scale. Once it is understood what makes a substance toxic to an organism, recombinant-DNA techniques may suggest a strategy for increasing the organism's resistance.

Glycerol serves as a lubricant in the manufacture of pet food, baked goods, candy, icing, toothpaste, adhesives, glue, cork board, cellophane and certain kinds of paper. As an emollient and demulcent it is an ingredient in many pharmaceuticals and cosmetics. As a solvent it has been added to extracts, other flavorings and food col-

FEEDBACK INHIBITION is an intracellular regulatory mechanism that must be overcome in the commercial production of certain amino acids such as lysine. The upper diagram shows the metabolic pathway for the fermentative production of lysine by *Corynebacterium glutamicum*. The colored lines represent feedback inhibition. Lysine and threonine are both made by the bacterium, and their simultaneous accumulation inhibits the action of the first enzyme in the pathway, aspartate kinase, and hence inhibits the further production of lysine. In a mutant strain that lacks the enzyme homoserine dehydrogenase the metabolic steps leading to the synthesis of threonine are eliminated; the missing steps are in the gray region. The mutant needs threonine in order to grow, but it is added slowly so that it and the accumulated lysine do not trigger feedback inhibition. In the absence of the inhibitory mechanism synthesis of lysine proceeds at a maximum rate. The lower diagram shows the metabolic pathways for the production of lysine by *Escherichia coli*. The mechanism of feedback inhibition is more complex, as the colored lines indicate, and so *E. coli* is not employed commercially to make lysine.

Improve your vision with a Hasselblad.

If you've spent most of your photographic life peering with one eye through the tiny peephole of a 35mm camera, you're in for a big surprise the first time you view through a Hasselblad. You hold the camera at chest level and look down into the focusing hood with both eyes. And there on the big 2¼" x 2¼" focusing screen is a bright, sparkling two-dimensional image of the same size and composition of the finished photograph. You can check your subject corner to corner. Framing and focusing were never easier, or more enjoyable.

If you need to focus more critically, just unfold the fine-focus magnifier built into the hood.

The Hasselblad viewing system gives you some other interesting advantages.

Because it provides you with a square image, you never have to hold the camera sideways, as you sometimes have to do with a 35mm.

You can shoot low angle photographs with the camera on the ground, without having to lie down yourself.

You can view with the camera held upside down overhead, to shoot over the heads of people.

You can even view with the camera aiming sideways, left or right, to catch your subject unaware.

And if you have more specialized needs, you can interchange your focusing hood with any of seven other viewfinders.

Camera shown actual size, without focusing hood.

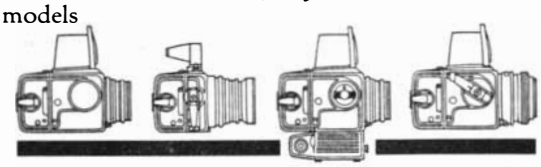
Once you own a Hasselblad camera —and there are four different models to choose from—you have a vast number of options in terms of interchangeable components. Because Hasselblad is the world's largest medium format system.

You also have a choice of three different film formats, simply by changing the magazine backs. You can shoot in the truly ideal 2¼" x 2¼" format, which results in an image 3½ times larger than 35mm—large enough to view unmagnified, with both eyes. You can choose the 6 x 4.5 cm format, which enlarges to 8" x 10" proportions. Or you can shoot "superslides", with twice the image area of 35mm, that gives you a dramatic screen-filling image when projected with any 35mm projector.

All in all, we think you'll agree that shooting with a Hasselblad is an eye-opening experience.

See your Hasselblad franchised dealer or write for one of our bulletins on square composition, and a comprehensive brochure on the Hasselblad system to:

Victor Hasselblad Inc.,
Dept. B15,
10 Madison Road,
Fairfield, N.J. 07006.



HASSELBLAD

When you shoot for perfection

ors. Esters of glycerol figure in the manufacture of explosives and propellants.

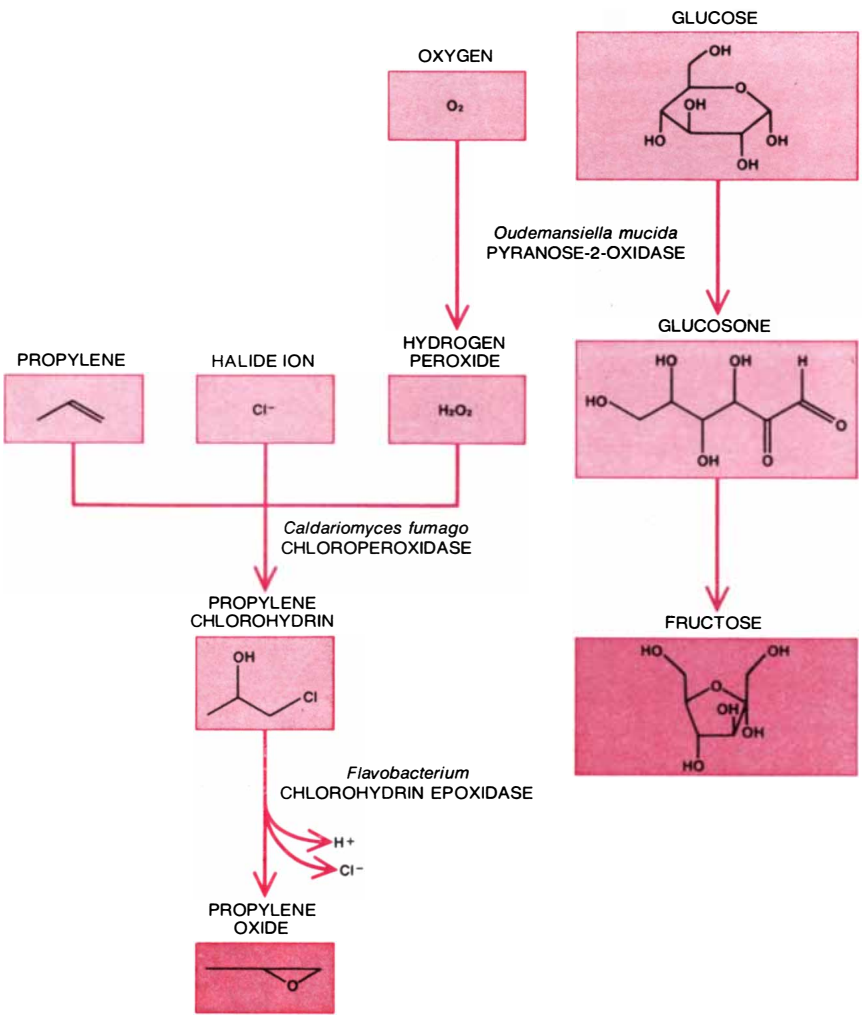
During World War I, Germany made large amounts of glycerol by fermentation for use in explosives. The process consisted in adding sodium sulfite to an ethanol fermentation culture. The sulfite interferes with the synthesis of ethanol by combining with an intermediate molecule. In the resulting diversion of the metabolic pathways glycerol becomes the major end product. Since World War I glycerol has been made commercially not by fermentation but by the saponification of fats and by synthesis from propylene and propane. The microbiological production of glycerol is being considered again mainly because of the discovery of yeasts that can synthesize it without the need for sodium sulfite or other steering agents.

Of the industrial organic acids acetic acid is the most important. In the U.S. more than 1.4 million tons are produced each year, with a value of $500 million. (Excluded from these amounts is the acetic acid that serves as vinegar.) The acid also has applications in the manufacture of rubber, plastics, acetate fibers, pharmaceuticals, dyes, insecticides and photographic materials. In Japan acetic acid is a substrate for the fermentative production of amino acids.

Acetic acid can be formed by the microbiological oxidation of ethanol, but except in making vinegar the process is not currently competitive with the chemical synthesis, which is based on the carbonylation of methanol. In the U.S. promising work is being done on the fermentation of cellulose into acetic acid by a thermophilic bacterium. Another possible approach is the conversion of hydrogen and carbon dioxide into acetic acid by the bacteria *Acetobacterium woodii* and *Clostridium aceticum*. The development of such a technology will depend on deciphering the genetics of these little-studied bacteria.

Citric acid, an essential ingredient in foods, is produced efficiently from molasses by *Aspergillus niger*. The world market for citric acid is 175,000 tons per year, for sales of $259 million. The fermentation would be more economical if it were based on a less expensive substrate such as cellulose. This could be achieved by transferring to *A. niger* genes for enzymes that easily decompose cellulose. The commercial fermentative production of certain organic acids such as acrylic acid, which is used in plastics, and N-acetyl *p*-aminophenol, which is marketed as the aspirin-substitute Tylenol, will benefit less from genetic programming than it will from a better understanding of the regulatory mechanisms favoring their synthesis.

Lactic acid, which serves as an acidulant in food and a mordant in textiles and is employed in electroplating, electropolishing and the manufacture of plastics, was the first organic acid to be made commercially by fermentation. In the U.S. and Europe about 40,000 tons are made each year, with sales of $56 million. Virtually all the lactic acid produced in the U.S. is now made by chemical synthesis, whereas only half of it is made that way in Europe. Lactic acid is fermented efficiently from glucose by the bacterium *Lactobacillus delbrueckii*, but the recovery of the acid from the culture is expensive.



ENZYMATIC SYNTHESIS OF ALKENE OXIDES, which are raw materials in the plastics industry, has been proposed by Saul L. Neidleman of the Cetus Corporation. Plastics such as polypropylene and polyethylene are made by the polymerization of alkene oxides, which are now synthesized from petrochemical feedstocks. The enzymatic synthesis relies on three enzymes: pyranose-2-oxidase, a haloperoxidase and an epoxidase. The fungal and bacterial sources of the enzymes are indicated in the diagram. The system can generate valuable by-products.

I turn now to amino acids, the small molecules that are assembled to make up proteins. Of the 20 amino acids that are generally incorporated into proteins eight cannot be synthesized in man; among these eight essential amino acids lysine and methionine are particularly important to nutrition because most cereal grains are deficient in them. Lysine and methionine are therefore made commercially as animal-feed additives. Methionine is produced synthetically, whereas only 20 percent of all lysine is made that way; the remaining 80 percent is made by fermentation. Another industrially important amino acid is glutamic acid, which is employed as a flavor enhancer in the form of a salt, monosodium glutamate (MSG); it is made only by microbiological means. The fermentative production of 40,000 tons of lysine per year and 300,000 tons of MSG per year is a success story in the microbiological production of industrial chemicals.

In general an amino acid can be made more efficiently by fermentation than by chemical synthesis whenever the intracellular metabolic pathways governing its production are understood and are not too complex. For each amino acid there are two isomers, or mirror-image arrangements of the molecule. With few exceptions only one of the isomers participates in biological reactions. The microbiological production of an amino

10 good reasons to buy a Smith-Corona.

(No other electric portable has them.)

When you buy a Smith-Corona* cartridge electric portable, you get a lot more than a typewriter. You get a *total typing system.*

That's because our unique cartridge ribbon system lets you change from fabric to clean, crisp film (like the expensive office machines have) in a snap—literally. And your typing always looks just right, no matter what.

Best of all, there are two different ways of correcting. And both of them are easy, quick and effective. There's our new Lift-Rite™ correction cartridge, which works with its own companion film ribbon. It actually *lifts* mistakes right off the page! Which means you can type more neatly than ever before—and on any color paper. And our Re-Rite® cartridge covers mistakes with a thin white impression.

How Smith-Corona corrections are different (and better).

Now, it's true that other electric portables have correction systems. But none of them work like the Smith-Corona system does. For one thing, no other portable has a cartridge that snaps in and lifts off mistakes.

For another thing, the Smith-Corona correction system lets you erase whole words, sentences, even paragraphs without the time-consuming single correction backspacing you have to do with many other portables and even some office typewriters.

And with Smith-Corona correction cartridges—unlike some other correction ribbons—you don't ever type over a spot that has already been used. Or have to fumble around to find an unused spot. And they never flake. Never. Or fail to correct the mistake. (We don't believe in corrections that are as sloppy as mistakes.)

The typewriter at the center of the system.

When you buy a Smith-Corona cartridge electric portable, you're buying a typewriter that's built to last. It's still made to the same exacting quality control standards that have made Smith-Corona a household word for "typewriter."

Smith-Corona typing *looks* the way typing should look. Crisp, clean, straight-as-a-die, and absolutely even. And Smith-Corona has more authorized typewriter service centers than anyone else in America—just in case something ever does go wrong. (And we might add, a Smith-Corona electric portable comes with a carrying case worthy of the machine it carries.)

So there are really ten good reasons to buy a Smith-Corona. Nine unique cartridges, and a typewriter built to give you years of dependable use. Which is something no other electric portable in the world can give you.

Smith-Corona. Makes your words (and your mistakes) sing. (Like no other portable.)

Smith-Corona

acid yields solely the biologically active isomer, whereas the chemical synthesis yields equal amounts of both spatial arrangements. In other words, half of the yield in the chemical synthesis is biologically inactive. Moreover, methods for separating the isomers are expensive and in some instances are not known at all. I suspect that with increased understanding of cellular metabolism all commercially valuable amino acids will be made solely by fermentation.

MSG is produced on a large scale by cultures of *Corynebacterium glutamicum* and *Brevibacterium flavum*. In the U.S. the flavoring industry consumes 30,000 tons of MSG annually; a third of this amount is imported from Japan and from South Korea. The principal substrate has been glucose; alternatives are the *n*-paraffin fractions of petroleum, which were employed in the late 1960's when they were plentiful and cheap, and acetic acid, which is inexpensive and gives rise to fewer wastes than glucose.

An important factor in the commercial production of MSG (and other amino acids) is inducing the cell to excrete it in large quantities. One strategy adopted for this purpose is to grow *Corynebacterium glutamicum* in a medium with less than the optimum amount of the vitamin biotin. The cell membrane then becomes deficient in phospholipids; as a result it develops leaks and allows more MSG to be excreted. If the growth medium has a high level of biotin, the membrane must be modified in another way, such as by the addition of a saturated fatty acid or a detergent. Also effective is the addition of penicillin, whose antibacterial mode of action is to inhibit the synthesis of peptidoglycan in the cell wall.

When the mechanisms governing the excretion of MSG are understood, it should be possible to apply recombinant-DNA techniques to *C. glutamicum* in order to create leaky membranes. Such genetically altered strains will yield high levels of MSG without a requirement for precise regulation of the growth conditions and without the need for expensive additives such as saturated fatty acids, detergents or penicillin.

The yield of an amino acid can also be increased by the development of a bacterial strain in which a regulatory mechanism that ordinarily limits the production of an amino acid is circumvented. In *C. glutamicum*, for example, lysine and threonine are both products of the same sequence of synthetic events, and the simultaneous presence of both amino acids inhibits an enzymatic step early in the pathway and hence impedes the further production of lysine. In a certain mutant strain the steps leading to the synthesis of threonine are blocked. The mutant bacteria need threonine to grow, but it is added slowly so that it and the accumulated lysine do not inhibit the further production of lysine. With the

Smart Sets

For chess people on the move.

Now you can keep up with your game wherever you go, with Executive Chess, the newest computer chess game from SciSys. Incorporating the latest computer programming and microprocessor technology, Executive Chess also features the largest LCD chessboard available today. The chess pieces are electronically displayed, and are moved by a unique four-sided, touch-sensitive cursor control.

Executive Chess won't accept or allow illegal moves, and offers automatic castling, "en passant" and pawn promotion. Its 8-level computer program will entertain the novice as well as fully extend the enthusiast. Years ahead of all other portable electronic chess games, it slips comfortably into an attache case. At just under $130., Executive Chess is just one of eight SciSys computer games, that range in price from under $50. to under $500.

Executive Chess, one of the Smart Sets from SciSys, the ultimate intelligent computer games.
Write for literature and the name of your nearest dealer.

FIDE

SciSys computer chess is exclusively endorsed by the World Chess Federation.

SciSys

SciSys Computer Inc.
One World Trade Center,
New York, N.Y. 10048 (212) 432-8529

loss of regulation the synthesis of lysine proceeds at the maximum rate. In another approach no steps are blocked but the mechanism of feedback inhibition itself is disabled, and so the lysine and threonine are allowed to accumulate.

The outlook for the amino acid industry is bright because of new and expanded markets. The world demand for animal protein is high, and so is the need for lysine and methionine as feed supplements. The Eurolysine Company in Amiens, France, recently invested $27 million to double its production of lysine. There has been an increase in the use of the amino acids glycine and alanine as flavoring agents and in that of cysteine as a bread texturizer. It has also been suggested that gastric ulcers be treated with the amino acids glutamine and histidine and that liver disorders be treated with arginine.

How will the fermentation industry respond to the higher demand? One can expect the commercial production of more amino acids and an improvement in yield brought about by the application of recombinant-DNA techniques to the circumvention of intracellular regulatory mechanisms. Where the regulatory mechanisms are too complex to be circumvented conveniently, a precursor of the amino acid can be made by fermentation and subsequently transformed enzymatically.

Perhaps the most significant contribution of genetic engineering to amino acid synthesis will be to make possible the fermentative production of methionine, of which 105,000 tons per year are chemically synthesized. The biological synthesis has always been a goal, but microorganisms that yield large amounts of methionine have not been obtained by mutation and selection. The approach has failed because it can exploit only existing biochemical pathways. With recombinant-DNA techniques one should be able to introduce the necessary new pathways and regulatory mechanisms.

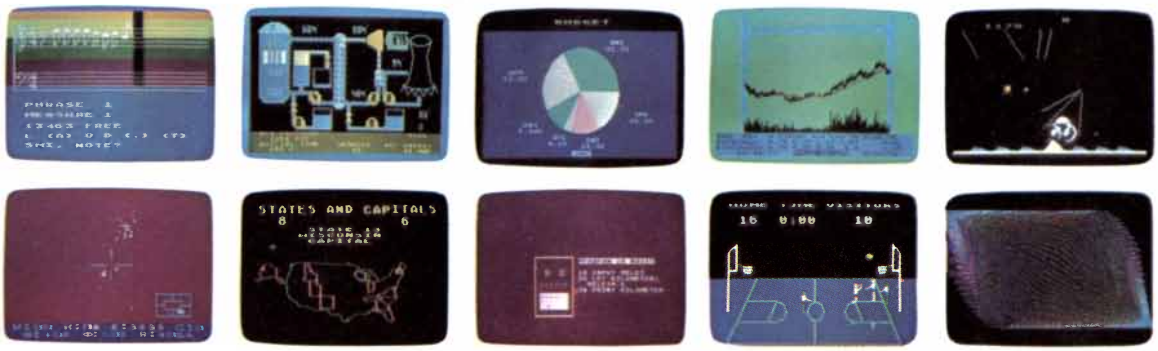
An alternative to the commercial production of methionine would be the production of a protein rich in methionine. When methionine is added directly to animal feed, the feed is bitter. If the bitterness could be eliminated, methionine might be added to human food as a nutritional supplement. A protein incorporating large amounts of methionine is more palatable than methionine alone.

It is only a matter of time before the synthetic-chemicals industry cedes to biological methods the production of all amino acids. The new genetic-programming techniques may render obsolete the "Organic Chemist's Ode":

Lord, I fall upon my knees
And pray that all my syntheses
May no longer be inferior
To those conducted by bacteria.

THE GRAPHIC DIFFERENCE

BETWEEN ATARI® COMPUTERS AND ALL OTHERS.



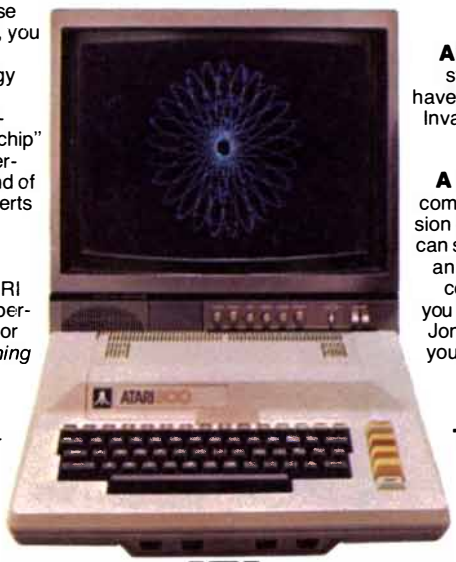
Computers for people.™ ATARI Personal Computers are designed for use in the homes of people like you. After all, you don't have to be a computer wizard to appreciate what breakthrough technology can mean, do you?

ATARI does more. All personal computers contain a microprocessor...the "chip" that's so often in the news. But ATARI Personal Computers also have a special kind of chip, one that's custom designed by experts to provide extraordinary capabilities. Which means that an ATARI computer can *do more* for you.

The Graphic Difference. In an ATARI computer, a separate microprocessor operates what experts consider the finest color display in the industry...*without diminishing your ATARI computer's capacity for work*–or play.

So, whether you're using the ATARI computer program that monitors your investment portfolio or the Video Easel™ program that teaches design and perspective, the information shown on the screen isn't just more colorful, it's more complete.

Hear the difference. There's a separate chip that produces sound, too. It controls four built-in synthetic sound generators that can play simultaneously, producing everything from pure musical tones to explosion sounds.



All work and no play? With separate systems for sound and color, do we even have to say how much fun games like Space Invaders,* Star Raiders™ and Missile Command™ are? These you'll have to see–and hear–to believe.

A beginning, not an end. The ATARI computer is built with one goal...the expansion of your world. And your family's world. It can speak several programming languages, an important extra. And it is expandable... communications expansion alone can let you use it to send messages, bring the Dow Jones averages and the UPI newswire into your home, and give you access to millions of bits of information from outside data banks. All with ATARI computer peripheral equipment.

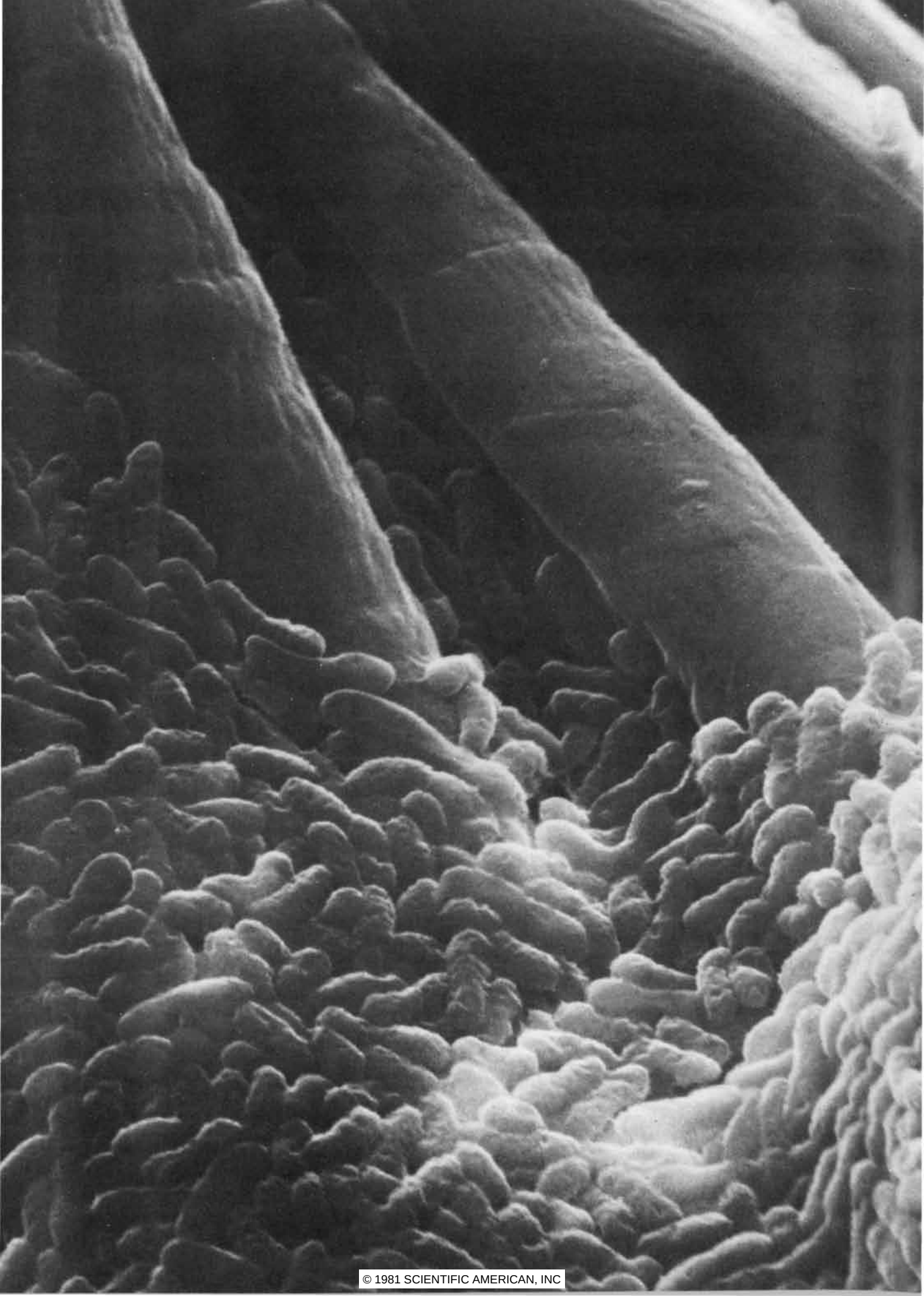
The lasting difference. ATARI Personal Computers are designed not to become obsolete. If we make improvements in the operating system, *you* can update your ATARI computer as easily as changing a cartridge.** In short, your ATARI computer won't be obsoleted by future developments...because it already incorporates the future.

*Trademark of Taito America Corporation.
**ATARI 800™ computer only.

ATARI®

Computers for people.™

A Warner Communications Company



Production Methods in Industrial Microbiology

Traditional practice combines with the scale on which most products are made to favor manufacture in batches. Newer, continuous methods, however, are being explored

by Elmer L. Gaden, Jr.

In the applications of microbiology to industry the most distinctive element is usually the biological one: the exploitation of a living organism for the manufacture of a useful substance. As is set forth elsewhere in this issue of *Scientific American,* the methods of genetic engineering promise to increase the efficiency and the versatility of the organisms on which such industries depend. It must be kept in mind, however, that a biological process can attain its full utility only when it is adapted to a context of production. Raw materials must be brought together with living cells or with components (notably enzymes) extracted from the cells; conditions that favor the biochemical transformation of the raw materials into products must be maintained; often a product must be isolated from other substances with which it is mixed. Hence industrial microbiology requires not only microorganisms but also an environment in which the organisms can grow and a technology for handling them and their products. Both the environment and the technology are generally provided by a system of vats, pipes, pumps, valves and other devices. It follows that genetic engineering is only one factor in the success of a biological industry; the contributions of process engineering are also essential.

For any given biochemical procedure there are many ways to organize a plant of industrial scale. So far, however, only a few ways are practiced; they can be divided into two broad categories: batch processes and continuous processes. In a batch process a vessel is filled with starting materials, often including the microorganisms themselves. The biochemical conversion takes place in the vessel over a period that can range from a few hours to several days. Ultimately the vessel is emptied, the product is purified and a new batch is started. In a continuous process the raw materials are supplied and the finished products are withdrawn in a steady stream. With such a process all stages in the biochemical conversion must proceed simultaneously and at essentially the same rate. The batch process can be likened to the operation of a steel mill, whereas the continuous process stands in closer analogy to the operation of a petroleum refinery.

The choice between the batch and the continuous methods must be made on economic grounds. In general the continuous methods are best suited for a large volume of production; nevertheless, up to now most products of industrial microbiology have been made in batches. The reasons, which I shall take up below, have to do in part with the biological nature of the processes and in part with the scale on which most industrial microbiology is conducted. They may continue to favor batch methods for some time to come.

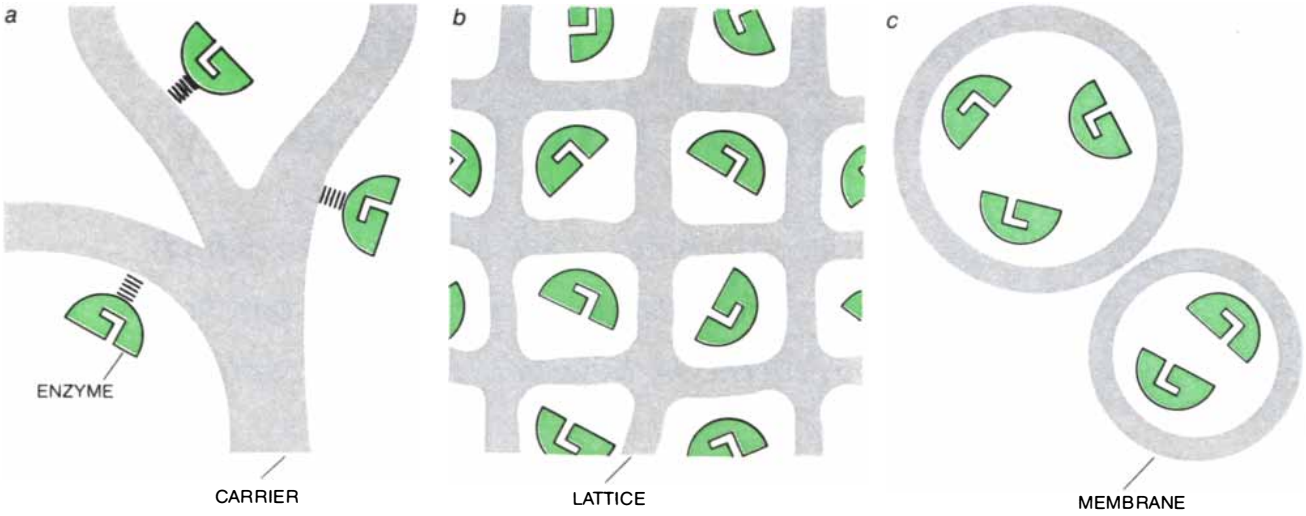
As the preceding articles have shown, the industrial processes carried out by microbiological means vary greatly in their details. In broadest outline, however, they are much the same. From the point of view of the technologist the biological steps can almost always be understood in terms of the chemical process of catalysis. The transformation of a substrate into the desired product is accelerated by the presence of a catalyst and is thereby selectively favored over other possible reactions.

According to this scheme, a microorganism is merely a catalyst of exceptional complexity. For example, the yeast employed in making beer or wine can be regarded as a catalyst for the conversion of sugars into ethanol and carbon dioxide. Of course, the actual agents of chemical change are the enzymes made by the organism, and in some instances the enzyme itself can serve in place of the complete cell. In the brewing industry this practice is well established: an enzyme separated from barley malt or from a mold breaks down starch into molecules of sugar.

More commonly, however, the biological transformation of the substrate includes several interlocking chemical reactions, each reaction catalyzed by a separate enzyme. Where the biological process is the synthesis of a complex molecule, such as an antibiotic, or of a protein, such as insulin, entire systems of enzymes are recruited to the task. Such systems have not yet been made to function outside the living cell. Indeed, where the product is the cell itself, as in the culturing of baker's yeast, all the enzymes that participate in the metabolism of the cell can be considered components of the catalytic system.

A distinguishing feature of a biological catalyst, and a feature that has a ma-

BACTERIA ARE IMMOBILIZED on cotton fibers for the manufacture of an industrial alcohol (ethanol) in a scanning electron micrograph made by Carl E. Shively of Alfred University. The bacteria, of the species *Zymomonas mobilis,* have been employed for centuries in Central America for making fermented beverages. One such beverage is pulque, made by fermenting the juice of the agave plant. It now appears the bacteria are more efficient than yeast at converting carbohydrates into ethanol. To make the micrograph, cotton fibers were woven onto a supporting plastic mesh and inoculated with the bacteria. The mesh was fitted into a horizontal glass chamber 22 inches long. Nutrients including glucose were introduced at one end; the spent medium, including ethanol, flowed out at the other end. After 15 days of operation a sample of the immobilized bacteria was taken. It remains uncertain whether the bacteria are entangled among the fibers or are held to them by a force such as electrostatic attraction.



ENZYME IS IMMOBILIZED for long-term employment as a catalyst in a reactor vessel by any of several methods. The enzyme molecules can be held by adsorption or by chemical bonding to a solid carrier such as cellulose (*a*), they can be trapped in the lattice formed by a permeable polymer such as a silica gel (*b*), or they can be trapped in spherical capsules made of semipermeable polymer membrane (*c*).

jor influence on the design of an industrial plant, is the need of the catalyst for a precisely controlled milieu. Even an inorganic catalyst operates best at some particular combination of temperature, pressure and other physical conditions. The constraints on the functioning of a biological catalyst are much more stringent. The temperature and the *p*H cannot be allowed to vary beyond a narrow range. Moreover, when the biological catalyst consists of living cells, the medium in which the reaction takes place must furnish all the nutrients and other substances needed to sustain growth.

The medium serves as a reservoir for the substrate and the nutrients and it provides the environment where the substrate and the catalyst interact. The dominant component of the medium is almost always water. Even where microorganisms grow on a solid substrate, such as grain or hay, the substrate must be dampened in order to support microbial or enzymatic action. Although some microorganisms and enzymes can be preserved by careful drying, they have no catalytic activity in the absence of water.

In addition to providing a suitable aqueous environment, the medium must meet the nutritional needs of the microorganism. A primary need is a source of carbon, which ordinarily supplies the energy for metabolism. In some cases the carbon source is also the substrate of the catalyzed reaction, as in the fermentation of sugar to yield ethanol. The commonest sources of carbon are the carbohydrates, such as starch and sugar. In the 1960's, however, certain hydrocarbons from petroleum and some natural fats such as soybean oil were considered as alternative sources of carbon and energy. Many microorganisms of industrial importance can exist on such materials, although sometimes a period of adaptation is needed. Alternative substrates were of interest then because grain was expensive and petroleum was comparatively cheap. The price structure has clearly changed; indeed, the biological conversion of carbohydrates into hydrocarbon fuels is now being considered. Nevertheless, there are a few applications in which petroleum fractions poorly suited to the making of gasoline serve as ingredients in a biological process.

The consideration given to hydrocarbon substrates is an apt illustration of the versatility of microorganisms; it should be pointed out that the technology supporting the microorganisms cannot always adapt to change as readily. Hydrocarbons and fats incorporate less oxygen than carbohydrates do, and so more oxygen must be supplied. Up to three times as much oxygen may be needed, and the heat released when the substrate is consumed is greater by a similar ratio. Occasionally the equipment available has been unable to provide sufficient cooling when petroleum or fats are introduced as raw materials.

After carbon is provided, the nutrients needed in substantial quantities are sources of nitrogen and phosphorus. Both elements are incorporated into the structural and functional molecules of the cell. They also become part of the product molecules. A number of other nutrients, such as vitamins and metal ions, are required in smaller amounts. Again, some of these "micronutrients" appear as part of the product molecules. For example, in the manufacture of cobalamin, or vitamin B_{12}, a supply of cobalt must be ensured because each molecule of the vitamin incorporates an atom of cobalt.

Oxygen is another element whose supply must be taken into consideration. Some fermentative organisms are strictly anaerobic, and so oxygen must be excluded from their environment. Where oxygen is needed for metabolism, however, the need is absolute. Filtered air is the usual source of supply, but with the recent increases in the price of electricity the cost of pumping large volumes of air has become significant. The cryogenic fractionation of air into its component gases offers a possible remedy. By employing enriched air, which has more oxygen than the usual 21 percent, the volume to be pumped can be reduced.

Whatever the chemical composition of the medium, it is imperative that all the components be thoroughly mixed, so that the microorganism has ready access to the available nutrients and to the substrate. Most bacteria and some yeasts commonly grow as individual cells or as aggregates of a few cells each, and they remain suspended in the medium. Even in a dense population they have little effect on the physical properties of the fluid in which they are growing, apart from making it cloudy. In some cases, however, the cells secrete natural polymers that greatly increase the viscosity of the medium; they can also form large aggregates or grow as a slimy film on a surface.

Other bacteria and yeasts and most molds have a quite different growth habit. When they are allowed to grow undisturbed, they form a tough, continuous film, and when they are dispersed throughout a fluid medium by vigorous stirring, they create a fibrous pulp. If enough nutrients can be supplied, the cells proliferate until the suspension has

Good professional people have the talent to see what is right. But to act on their convictions with courage and creativity, they need more than talent. They need freedom from the fear that even a professionally responsible action could put their reputation in jeopardy.

Professional liability insurance from the CNA Insurance Companies can provide that kind of freedom. CNA has long been aware of the liability exposures people in various professions face. And we have seen the demoralizing effect these exposures can have on professional performance.

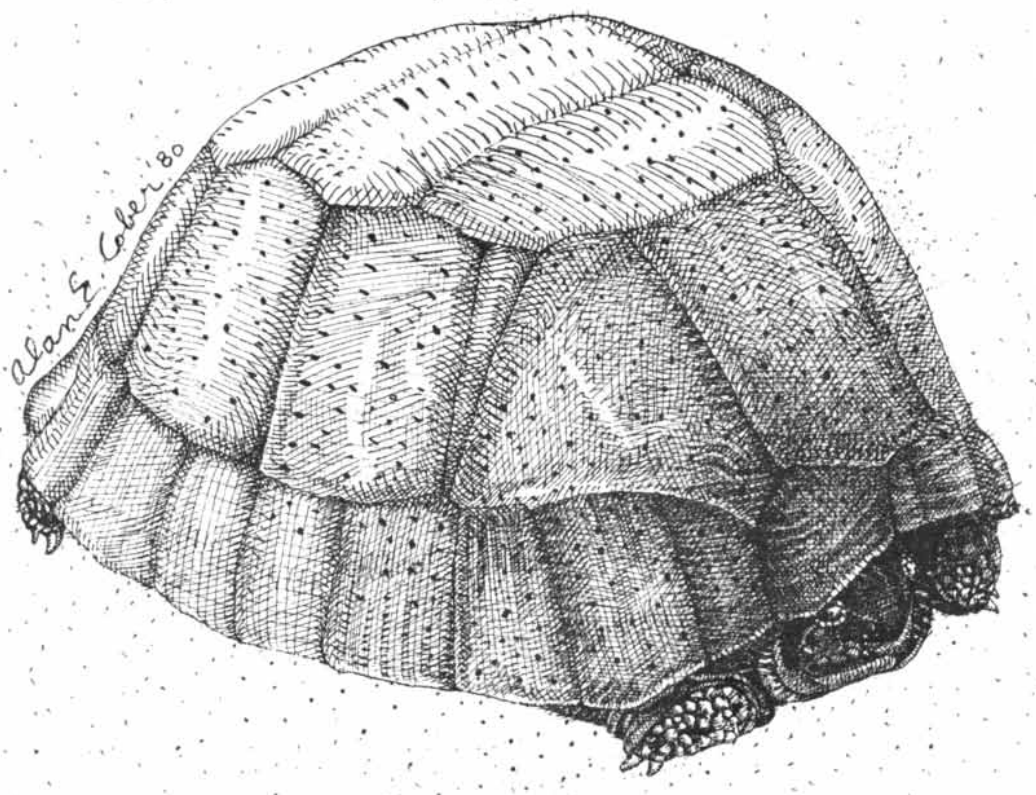
For more than a quarter of a century, CNA has been committed to protecting professionals with liability insurance they can depend on. Through the years, CNA has custom-tailored programs to match the specific and changing needs of various professional groups. CNA's professional liability specialists are ready to work with professional groups to develop effective loss control programs to improve performance safety and help control insurance costs.

Learn how CNA's professional liability insurance can help you and the members of your professional group meet your responsibilities with confidence and creativity.

Ask your independent insurance agent or your association executive to contact Vice President, Professional Liability, CNA, CNA Plaza, Chicago, IL 60685.

"TO SEE WHAT IS RIGHT AND NOT TO DO IT IS WANT OF COURAGE."

Confucius



CNA Professional Liability Insurance protects professional group members including: □ Doctors □ Attorneys □ Architects □ Engineers Accountants □ Corporate Directors and Officers □ School Boards □ Hospitals □ Medical Clinics □ Publishers □ Broadcasters

INSURANCE FROM CNA

the consistency of oatmeal. Such changes in the medium have an effect on process technology. For example, oxygen bubbled through a watery medium is readily absorbed and transported to the sites where it is needed. In a pulpy or gelatinous medium, on the other hand, the absorption and transport of oxygen are impeded.

It bears emphasizing that the biological steps in an industrial process are seldom the only steps. The pretreatment of raw materials and the extraction, purification and further alteration of products are major factors in the economics of industrial microbiology. The importance of the nonbiological stages can be made plain by considering two examples: the production of ethanol and that of cobalamin.

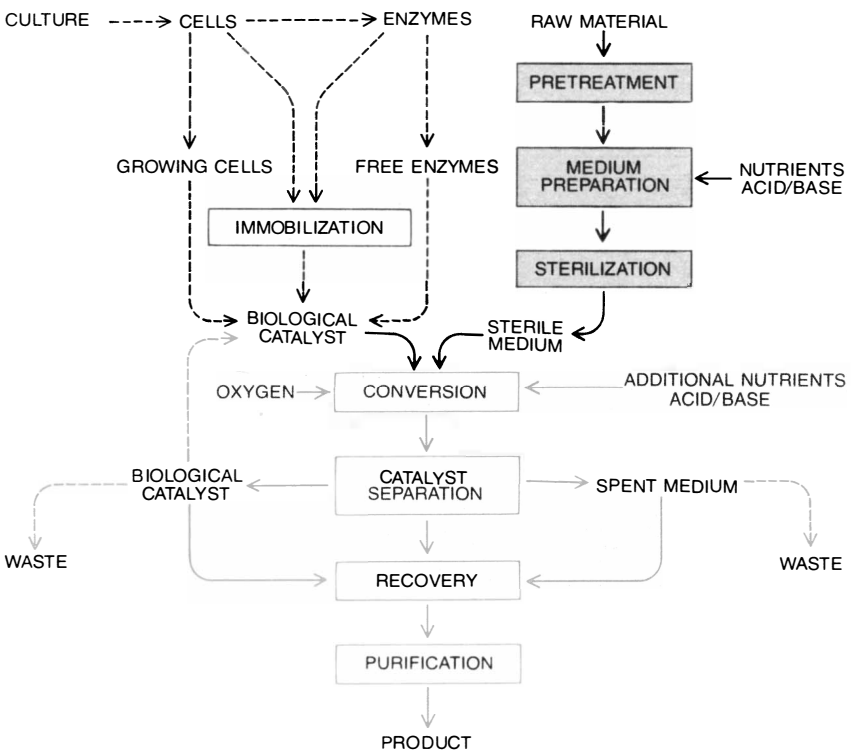
The commonest raw materials for the production of ethanol are molasses, which is about 50 percent sugar, and corn, in which the major carbohydrate is starch; yeasts can metabolize the sugar but not the starch. Either material, however, requires considerable preparation before the yeast cells can be introduced. Molasses must be diluted and made more acidic; it may also be necessary to add minor nutrients and to remove other substances (such as iron) that are sometimes present in concentrations high enough to inhibit the growth of the yeast or the formation of the alcohol. When corn is the raw material, the grain is cooked to make the starch soluble; then the starch must be converted into sugar by the action of enzymes from malt. As with molasses, nutrients may have to be added and the *p*H may have to be adjusted. All these procedures require time, equipment and energy.

When fermentation of the sugar is complete, ethanol makes up from 6 to 8 percent of the spent medium, which also includes by-products, wastes, unconsumed nutrients and many minor constituents. The ethanol is recovered and purified by distillation. In the fermentation of grain the solid residue is also of value; it is recovered by evaporation and drying. The residue consists of dead yeast cells, grain proteins and other materials, and it makes a nutritious animal feed. The sale of the residue contributes to the economic feasibility of making ethanol from grain.

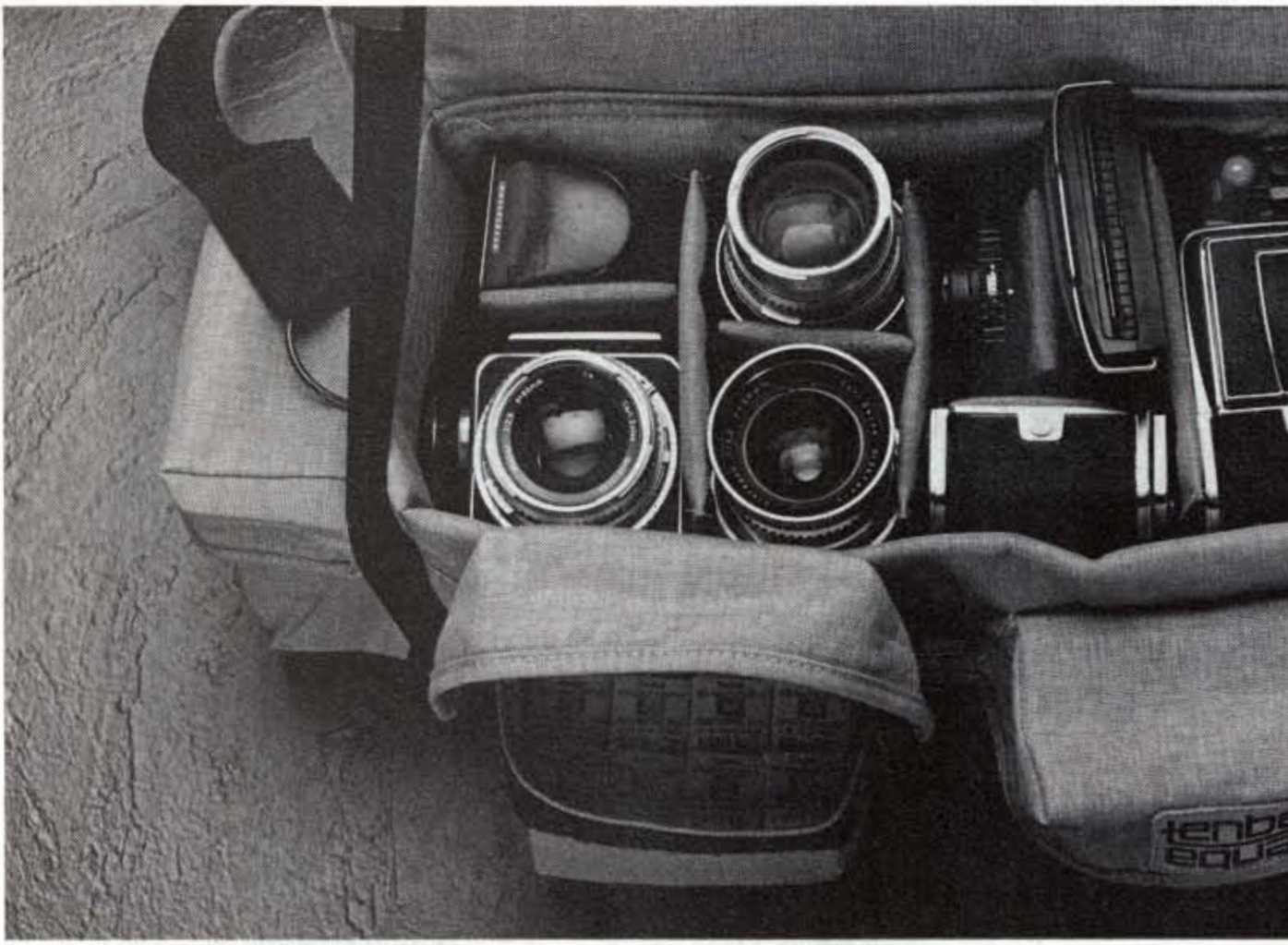
In the manufacture of cobalamin and related substances the biological catalyst is not a yeast but a bacterium; several species can carry out the synthesis. The preparation of the starter culture of bacteria and of the growth medium are much the same as they are for yeast, although more stringent controls are needed to avoid contamination of the culture. The key difference is encountered when the conversion is completed: most of the vitamin is not excreted by the bacteria, as ethanol is by yeasts, but is retained within the cells. The cells must therefore be treated in a way that will release the cobalamin and the related substances. It is then possible to extract a crude product of roughly 80 percent purity that can serve as a vitamin supplement in animal feed. The purity of from 95 to 98 percent required for medicinal purposes can be attained only through a much more complex and thoroughgoing extraction procedure.

A concern common to almost all biological technologies is the need to maintain aseptic conditions. The reason is that most products of such technologies are synthesized by a pure culture: a population of organisms made up of a single species or even a single strain of a species. If foreign organisms contaminate the culture, they can disrupt its operation in several ways. They can directly inhibit or interfere with the biological catalyst, whether it is an isolated enzyme or a living cell; they may even destroy the catalyst entirely. Alternatively, the contaminating organisms may leave the catalyst unaffected but destroy the product. Further, the foreign organisms can introduce noxious substances that are difficult to separate from the product. In the manufacture of pharmaceuticals the risk of toxic impurities is of particular concern.

In order to avoid contamination all materials entering the culture medium are sterilized, including the large volumes of air required for aerobic processes. Foreign organisms are filtered from the air by a deep bed of glass wool, which can itself be sterilized at intervals with steam. Steam is also employed to sterilize reactor vessels, pipelines and other surfaces with which the medium comes in contact. The apparatus must be designed and operated so that the opportunities for invasion by unwanted organisms are minimized. Maintaining the integrity of various entry and exit points in the system is notably difficult. In spite



SEQUENCE OF STEPS in the industrial application of a bacterium, a yeast or a mold as a biological catalyst varies from one process to another, but it always follows the outline shown. Solid lines represent the main steps common to all processes; broken lines represent options. The preparation of the catalyst is shown at the upper left. Whole cells are often employed; increasingly, however, enzymes (the true agents of change) are isolated from the cells. Increasingly too the cells or the enzymes are immobilized to trap them in the reactor vessel. The preparation of the medium is shown at the upper right. Typically the medium is aqueous and carries in solution or suspension the substrates: the substances the catalyst transforms. Where the catalyst consists of living cells the medium must also supply nutrients. The *p*H of the medium is adjusted and the medium is sterilized in an effort to prevent contamination by foreign organisms. The synthesis and subsequent isolation of the product are shown at the bottom. First the catalyst acts on its substrates; then the catalyst and the medium are separated. Some products (such as vitamin B_{12}) remain bound to the catalyst. Others (such as penicillin) are excreted into the medium. The product emerges in a dilute solution from which it must be purified.



TENBA INC. believes that there is only one way to build a bag for the serious photographer. It must be easy to work out of, light to carry, protective of its equipment, and completely reliable. We take no shortcuts, and make no compromises in quality.

Why You Should Invest In Tenba Quality

- **Quick, positive, one-hand access and closure**
- **Everything at your fingertips**
- **More gear in less space**
- **Your interior-arranged as you like it**
- **Complete shock-proof padding**
- **Rugged dependable materials and construction**
- **Lightweight**
- **Complete weather protection**

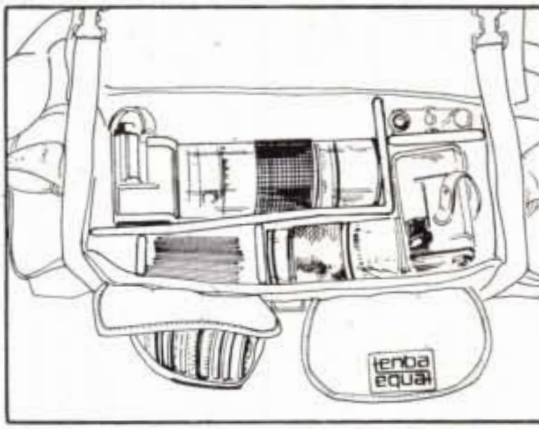
TENBA is a Tibetan word meaning *strong, unshakable* and *reliable.* From its first bag, TENBA, INC. has upheld the commitment to its name.

The goal of the TENBA Pro-pak is to facilitate you, the photographer, in reaching your objectives. We consider your photographic achievements, in part, a measure of our success.

For complete information see your dealer or write or call TENBA.

Adaptability

TENBA's system of inside compartment infinitely and securely adjustable to fit yo specific needs. The dividers can be eas moved and are absolutely secure when place. They are well padded for protecti Due to the total flexibility of the bag's interior, there is no wasted space (e.g. a 35mm camera may be placed vertically.



The Quality Bag For The Workin

NUTRIENT	RAW MATERIAL	PRETREATMENT
CARBON SOURCE	CORN SUGAR	
GLUCOSE	MOLASSES	"INVERSION" SUCROSE → GLUCOSE + FRUCTOSE
GLUCOSE	STARCH	COOKING FOLLOWED BY SACCHARIFICATION: STARCH → GLUCOSE
GLUCOSE	CELLULOSE	GRINDING AND COOKING FOLLOWED BY SACCHARIFICATION
FATS	VEGETABLE OILS	
HYDROCARBONS	PETROLEUM FRACTIONS	PURIFICATION BY DISTILLATION
NITROGEN SOURCE	SOYBEAN MEAL	
PROTEIN	CORNSTEEP LIQUOR (FROM CORN MILLING)	
PROTEIN	DISTILLERS' SOLUBLES (FROM ALCOHOLIC-BEVERAGE MANUFACTURE)	
AMMONIA	PURE AMMONIA OR ITS CHEMICAL COMPOUNDS	
NITRATE	NITRATE SALTS	
NITROGEN	AIR (FOR NITROGEN-FIXING ORGANISMS)	
PHOSPHORUS SOURCE	PHOSPHATE SALTS	

NUTRIENTS for the biological catalyst include sources of carbon, nitrogen and phosphorus. The choice of a source is made on economic as well as biological grounds; as a source of carbon, for example, carbohydrates from grain and other plant products are the ones in widest use. Many sources require a specific pretreatment. Starch, for example, must be cooked and then broken down into sugar (glucose) before most microorganisms can convert it into ethanol.

of all precautions, the potential for human error or mechanical failure is great, and serious losses are not uncommon.

In a batch process most or all of the constituents of the medium are combined with the biological catalyst at the start. Typically they are mixed in a cylindrical vessel whose height is from 2.5 to four times its diameter. The capacity of the vessel ranges from a few hundred gallons to several tens of thousands of gallons. In some applications the volume may be still greater. Before about 1950, when industrial alcohols such as butanol were made by fermentation, the process was done in spherical tanks with a capacity of up to 500,000 gallons. When the vessel is intended for the manufacture of products such as antibiotics pure enough for pharmaceutical use, it is constructed of stainless steel or of an alloy of comparable inertness. For less stringent applications a vessel of carbon steel or of steel with a coating resistant to corrosion will suffice.

After the vessel is sterilized the starting materials enter it by means of a number of tubes and pipes. Steam lines bathe the various entry points, attesting to the requirement that the process operate aseptically. In the vessel the catalyst and the constituents of the medium are mixed by a rotating central shaft that carries several impellers. Coils inside the vessel or jackets that surround it provide heating for sterilization and either heating or cooling to maintain an optimum operating temperature. Equipment to monitor and control the temperature and the *p*H of the medium is common. Somewhat less often one finds equipment to monitor and control the concentration of oxygen dissolved in the medium.

As the biological conversion proceeds, nutrients may be added to the mixture to sustain the growth of the organisms; if the process is an aerobic one, oxygen must be supplied continuously. Meanwhile samples of the mixture and of gaseous by-products can be removed for analysis by means of other tubes and pipes. When the concentration of the product reaches its maximum level, the finished batch is removed by means of still another pipe.

The monitoring of conditions in the reaction vessel during the progress of a batch is a matter of urgent concern. As mentioned above, the temperature, the *p*H and the concentration of dissolved oxygen can be recorded continuously. It is also useful to know the concentration of the substances that serve as sources of carbon, nitrogen and phosphorus, and perhaps also the concentration of a critical micronutrient. Of still greater interest are the amount of biological catalyst present and its level of activity. With the methods now available it is not possible to determine these values directly in the reaction vessel. Instead samples must be withdrawn for laboratory assay.

In principle a continuous industrial process often has numerous advantages over one done in sequential batches. For example, the continuous process usually has the potential of a higher volume of production for an installation of a given size. One approach to continuous operation is simply to modify a batch reactor so that fresh nutrient and substrate can continually be added and the products of the reaction can continually be removed. A device that has been modified in this way is called a continuous stirred-tank reactor. It can be controlled in two basic ways. In the first method the turbidity, or cloudiness, of the outlet stream is monitored. The turbidity, which is caused by microbial growth, yields a measure of the rate at which cells leave the tank. The measure controls the rate at which fresh nutrient is admitted. The reactor is called a turbidostat.

The second method of controlling a continuous stirred-tank reactor is simpler and can be applied in cases where the product of the reaction does not consist of cells. The reactor is called a chemostat, and it controls the reaction by monitoring not the output stream but the input stream. In chemostatic operation the concentration of a critical nutrient in the feed to the reactor is fixed at a

REPLAY IT ON SCOTCH® VIDEO TAPE. THE NETWORKS DO.

If the networks don't tape that big game, the game that will live forever is gone forever.

The networks tape for delayed broadcast just like you. They know that no other brand outshines Scotch® video tape in the brilliance and clarity of its picture. And that no other video tape shows the true colors of a colorful athletic event better. That's why all three major networks use Scotch video tape.

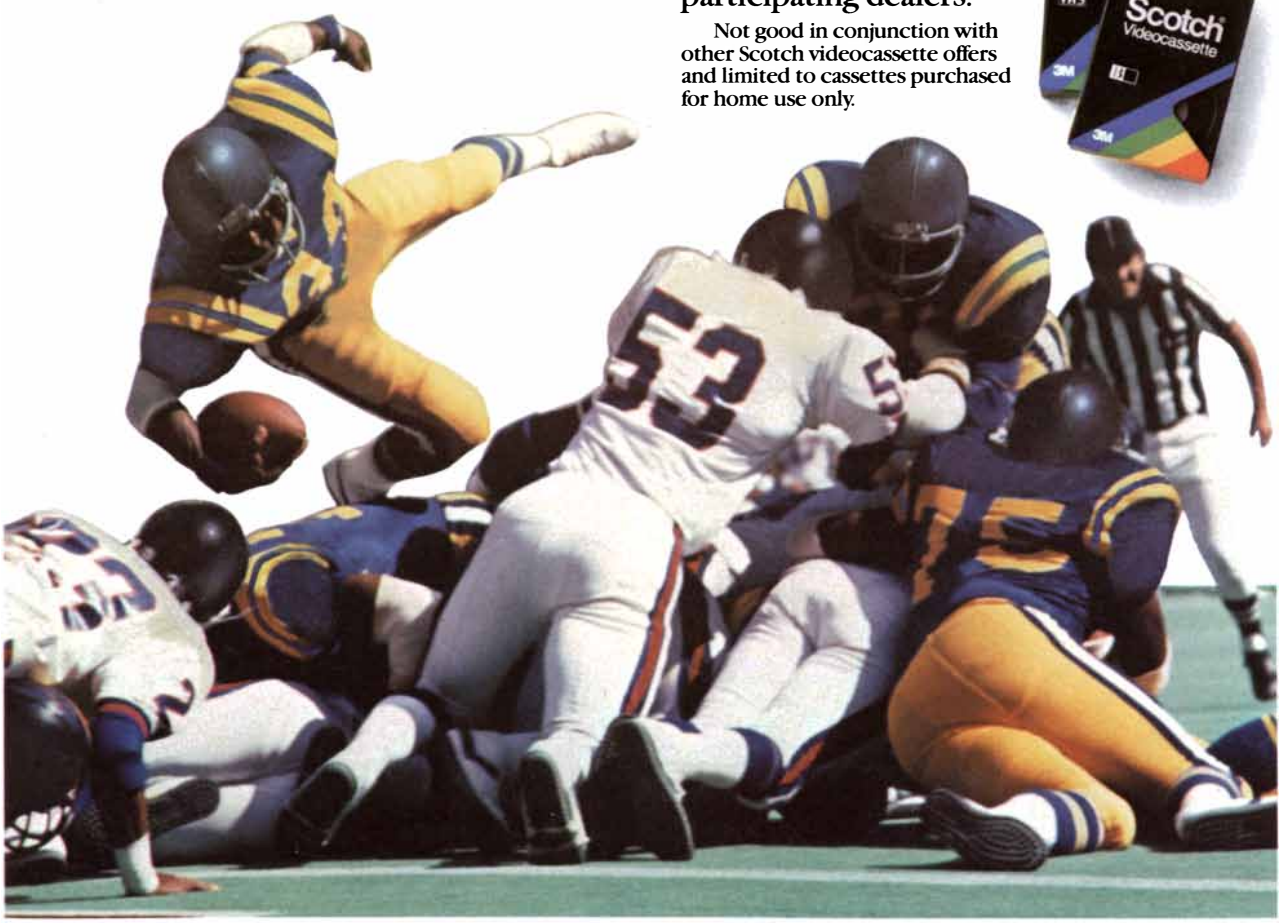
That's why you should use Scotch Videocassettes for your permanent replays at home. Scotch Videocassettes are engineered to give you all the color and clarity your VCR can deliver.

So when you record at home, do as the networks do. Get Scotch Videocassettes.

$2.00 REBATE OFFER.

Good on Scotch T-120 and L-500 videocassettes purchased from September 28, 1981, thru January 9, 1982. Limit of ten per household. Details at participating dealers.

Not good in conjunction with other Scotch videocassette offers and limited to cassettes purchased for home use only.



SCOTCH® VIDEOCASSETTES. THE TRUTH COMES OUT.

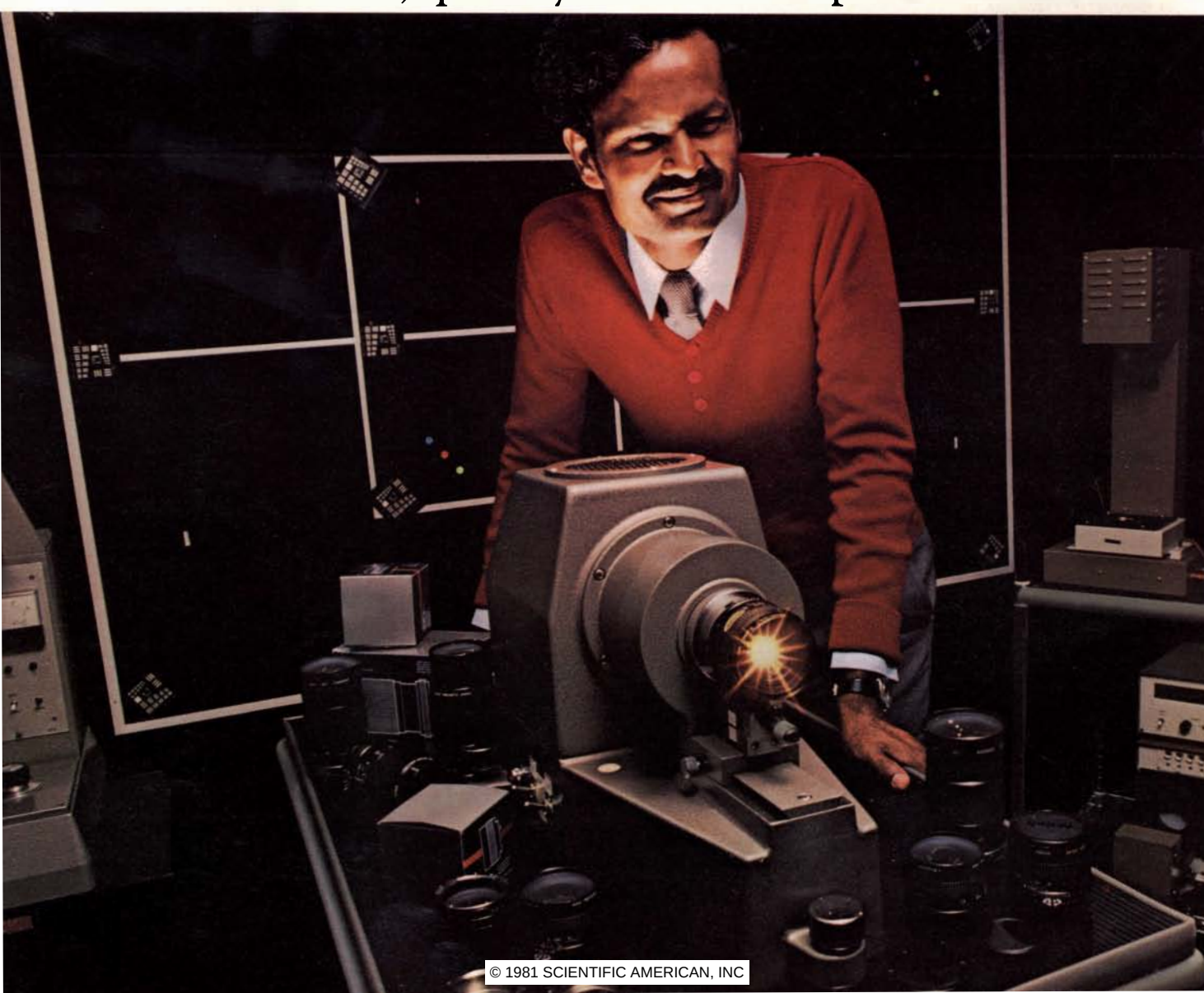
3M

Reddy Chirra improves his vision with an Apple.

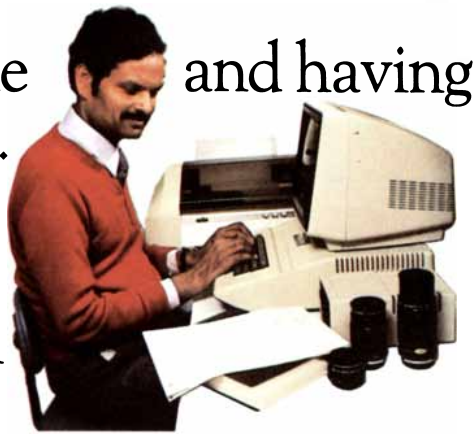
Reddy is an optical engineer who's used to working for big companies and using big mainframes.

But when he started his own consulting business, he soon learned how costly mainframe time can be. So he bought himself a 48K Apple II Personal Computer.

And, like thousands of other engineers and scientists, quickly learned the pleasures of



cutting down on shared time and having his own tamper-proof data base.



His Apple can handle formulas with up to 80 variables and test parameters on 250 different optical glasses.

He can even use BASIC, FORTRAN, Pascal and Assembly languages.

And Apple's HI-RES graphics come in handy for design.

Reddy looked at other microcomputers, but chose Apple for its in-depth documentation, reliability and expandability.

You can get up to 64K RAM in an Apple II. Up to 128K RAM in our new Apple III. And there's a whole family of compatible peripherals, including an IEEE-488 bus for laboratory instrument control.

Visit your authorized Apple dealer to find out how far an Apple can go with scientific/technical applications.

It'll change the way you see things.

The personal computer. apple

For the authorized dealer nearest you, call (800) 538-9696. In California, call (800) 662-9238. Or write: Apple Computer Inc., 10260 Bandley Dr., Cupertino, CA 95014

More than ever, companies need to cut costs to hold their profits in the market.

That's why many users of electrical or electronic interconnection systems are talking about alternatives to precious metals.

They don't have to with AMP.

The reason? We have developed a selective plating process that uses metals with extraordinary precision.

We call it ACCU-PLATE. It lets us use less gold, silver, palladium, or any other noble metal in places where other platings can't give the performance. As a result, nothing's wasted. And our customers are getting reliable connectors at prices they can afford.

How we help your company.

Whether you're looking for innovative connectors, interconnection systems, or new uses for either—we'll see that you get what's come to be expected from AMP around the world. Total involvement, when you ask for it. Products that help reduce the cost of making yours. And research and development that continues to make the rest of the industry followers.

We have a better way.

Plating technology to save you money is only one of the better ways we have to help make your company more productive. To learn more ways, write for our brochure, "AMP Has A Better Way." AMP Incorporated, Harrisburg, PA 17105.

Barcelona • Brussels • Buenos Aires • Frankfurt • Harrisburg • Helsinki • s-Hertogenbosch • London • Luzern • Mexico City
Montreal • Paris • San Juan • Sao Paulo • Stockholm • Sydney • Turin • Toronto • Tokyo • Valley Forge • Vienna

AMP means productivity.™

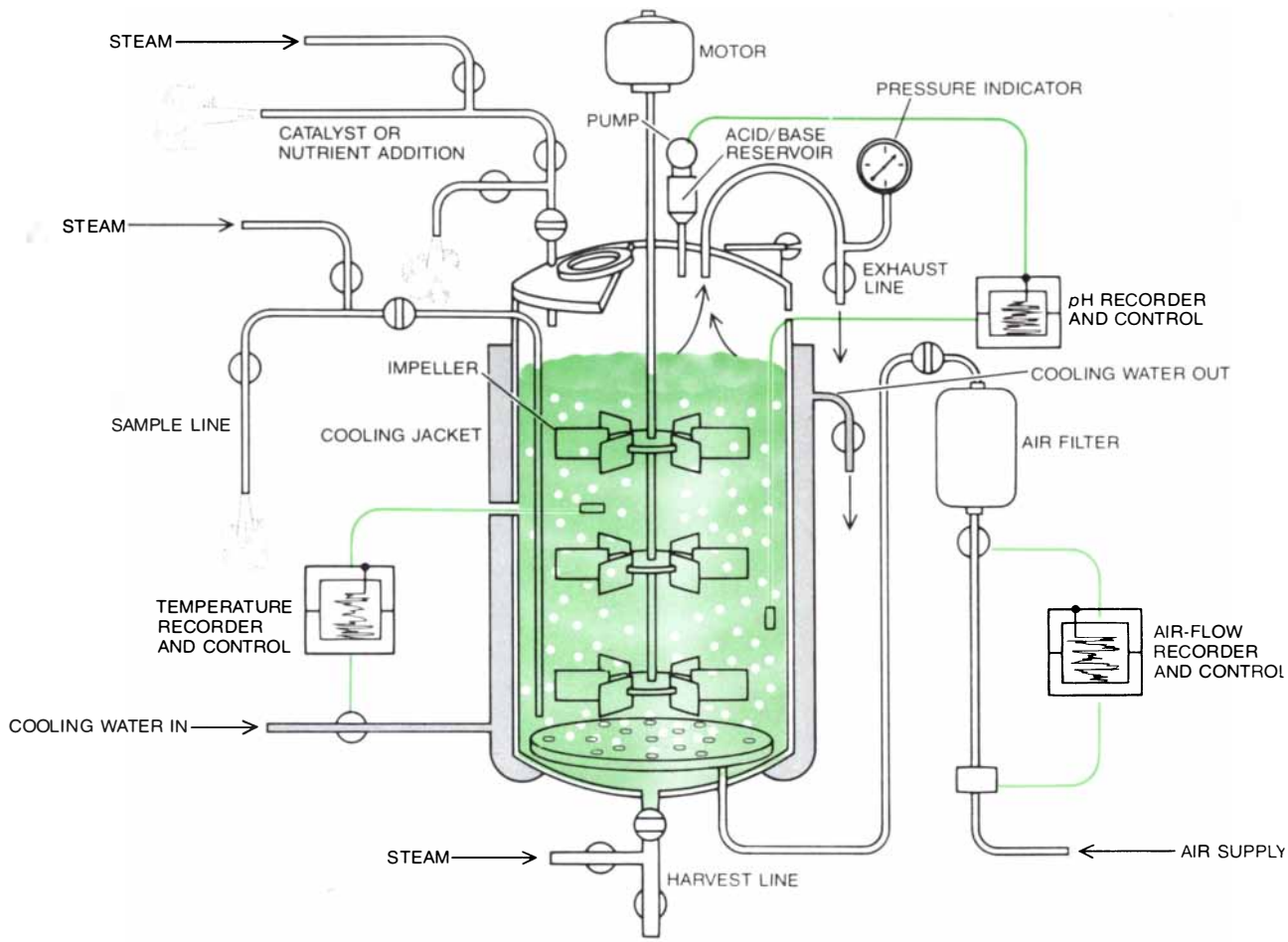
level such that the other nutrients are abundant. The level of the critical nutrient then limits the extent to which the microorganisms can proliferate. A drawback of the method is that the stream leaving the reactor includes appreciable amounts of nutrients that are not consumed.

Both mathematical models of the action of a chemostat and experimental studies show that a single-stage chemostat of practical size cannot yield a high concentration of a product and low concentrations of unconsumed raw materials. The inefficiency is particularly great in the synthesis of products such as penicillin, which is a secondary metabolite: it is made by living cells but its synthesis does not arise in the course of the metabolism that keeps the cells alive and growing. It is characteristic of the industrial production of a secondary metabolite that the proliferation of the organism precedes the accumulation of the metabolite by a significant margin. It is also characteristic that the conditions of temperature, *p*H and so on that are optimum for the growth of the organism differ from those that are optimum for the formation of the product. A single-stage chemostat can offer at best a compromise between the two conflicting optimum environments. Conditions more favorable to each stage in the life cycle might be provided by devising a chemostat in which the fluid stream cascades through a series of tanks. Such a device would be difficult to operate, however, and it seems unlikely that the volume of production would be large enough to justify the investment. The one application in which single-stage and multistage chemostats have found use is the biological treatment of wastes.

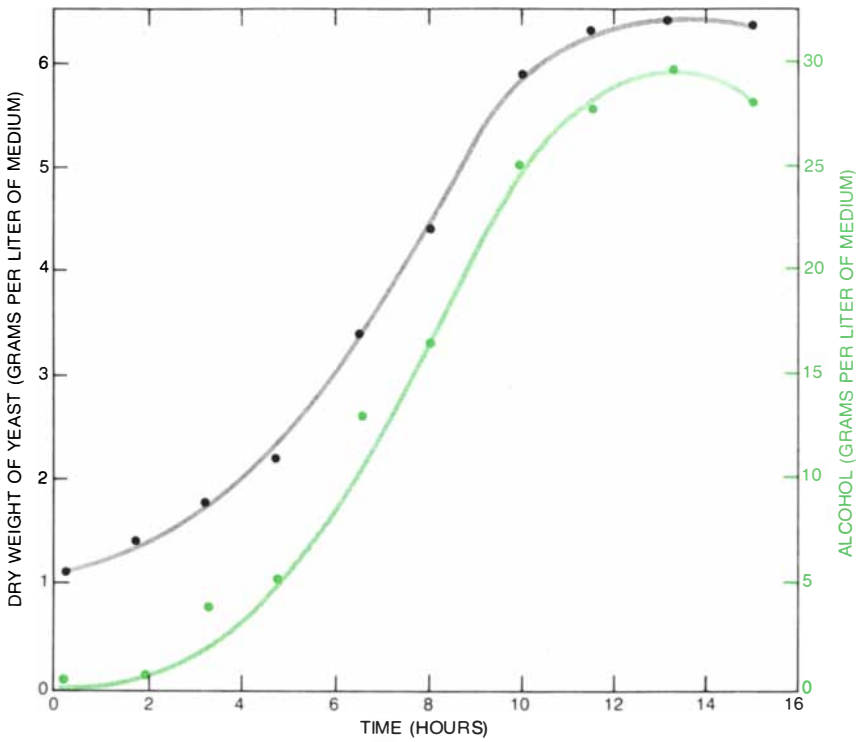
Another potential benefit of a continuous method of operation is in reducing losses of catalyst. A definitive characteristic of a catalyst is that it is not consumed in the course of a reaction; in most batch processes, however, the catalyst is discarded with the spent medium. The waste can be costly: the value of a biological catalyst is at least equal to the value of the nutrients consumed in growing the cells.

There are two ways to limit the amount of catalyst that is lost from the cycle. One way is recycling. In modern industrial applications, however, it is difficult to take living cells from a stream of fluid and return them to the reactor. Often the cells are damaged, and still more often the reactor becomes contaminated with foreign organisms.

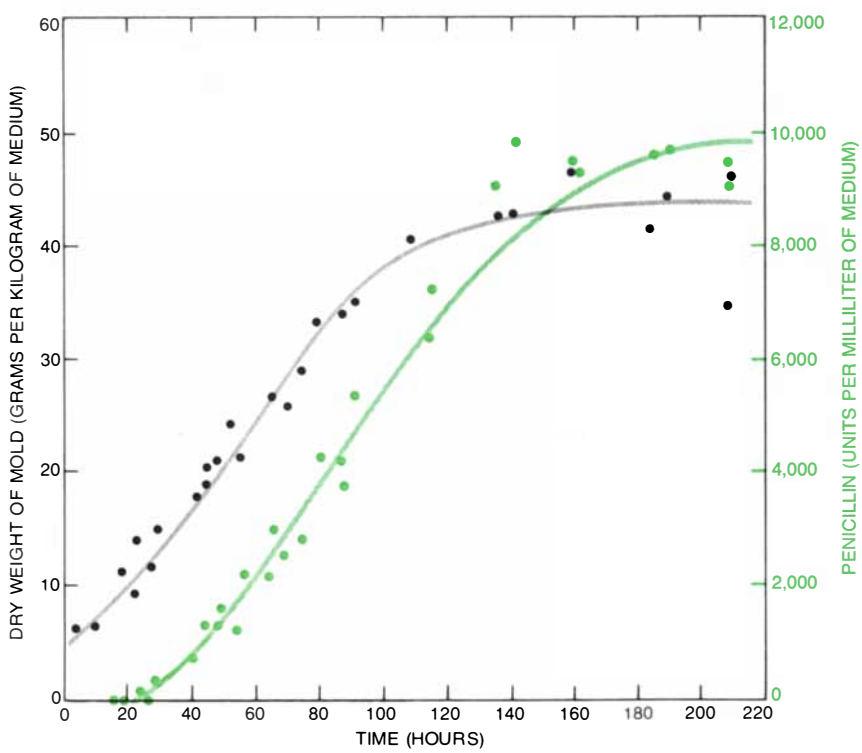
The other way to reduce losses is to keep the catalyst inside the reactor. The



BATCH REACTOR is employed for most current applications of industrial microbiology. In essence the reactor is a vessel in which quantities of the medium and the biological catalyst are mixed and then given an optimum environment in which to react. The temperature and the *p*H are regulated. Filtered air, sometimes enriched with oxygen, is bubbled through the mixture. Samples are removed for chemical and biological assay. Two strategies are employed to prevent contamination: steam is directed through the various inlets to keep them sterilized, and the pressure inside the vessel is maintained at a value greater than atmospheric pressure. At the end of a period that can range from hours to days the batch is drained from the vessel so that the product of the reaction can be isolated and purified.



PRIMARY METABOLITE is synthesized by a microorganism in the course of the metabolic processes that keep the cells alive and growing. In a reactor vessel a primary metabolite accumulates in tandem with the accumulation of the cells that synthesize it. The graph shows the accumulation of yeast cells (*black*) and the concomitant accumulation of ethanol (*color*).



SECONDARY METABOLITE is not formed as a direct result of the metabolism that keeps the cells alive. Hence the accumulation of a secondary metabolite in a reactor vessel lags behind the growth of the cells that produce it. The graph shows the accumulation of mold cells (*black*) and the subsequent accumulation of penicillin (*color*). The values of temperature and *p*H that are best for the growth of cells are seldom best for the synthesis of a secondary metabolite. In a batch process one seeks a compromise between the two sets of optimum conditions.

commonest technique employs a packed bed: a solid support on which the cells are encouraged to grow. A continuous reactor of this kind has long been employed for making vinegar. Diluted wine or fermented cider is percolated through a bed on which a culture of microorganisms that oxidize ethanol into acetic acid has been established. The microorganisms, which constitute a mixed culture rather than a pure one, form a slimy film on the surface of the bed. A conceptually similar scheme has evolved for the treatment of sewage and other wastes. The waste stream trickles through a filter of bits of stone, ceramic or plastic, where a microbial film traps the waste particles and oxidizes them.

In recent years several new methods of immobilizing both enzymes and whole cells have been devised. The earliest and simplest of the methods is adsorption: the enzyme molecules or the cells adhere loosely (without chemical bonding) to the surface of a material such as alumina, charcoal, clay or cellulose. Eventually the adsorbed agent washes away, but surprisingly long useful lives have been reported. For an isolated enzyme a firmer attachment can be created by forming a chemical bond between the enzyme molecule and a support material, which might be cellulose, glass or a manmade polymer. The result is a stable preparation capable of extended service; moreover, the fixation of the enzyme apparently interferes little with its activity. In both of these techniques the usual practice has been to divide the support material into small particles, creating a packed bed. It is also possible to bind the catalytic agent to a continuous, flat membrane or to the inner surface of a tube.

A third method of immobilization, applicable both to cells and to enzymes, is entrapment in a polymer matrix. When starch, a silica gel or certain other polymers are permeated with water, they form a meshwork of fibers with voids where enzyme molecules or cells can become trapped. A limitation of the technique is that molecules of the substrate, of the product and of the nutrients must diffuse through the solid matrix, reducing the rate of reaction. There are compensating advantages, notably that living cells can be held firmly in place without damage.

In the technique called microencapsulation enzymes or cells are enclosed in a spherical polymer membrane. The resulting capsules range in diameter from five to 300 micrometers; they look much like enlarged cells. The composition of the membrane is chosen so that it is semipermeable: the comparatively small molecules of the substrate and of the product pass through the membrane freely, but the larger molecules of an

NEW ISSUE

These securities having been sold, this announcement appears as a matter of record only. The Debentures were offered and sold outside the United States of America.

JULY 1981

Texas General Resources International N.V.

(Incorporated in the Netherlands Antilles)

U.S. $12,000,000

10½% Convertible Subordinated Debentures due 1996

Convertible into Common Stock of and Guaranteed on a Subordinated Basis as to Payment of Principal, Premium (if any) and Interest by

Texas General Resources, Inc.

(Incorporated under the laws of the State of Texas, United States of America)

Hill Samuel & Co. Limited

Al-Mal Group — **Banca del Gottardo**

Citicorp International Group — **Drexel Burnham Lambert Incorporated**

Handelsbank N.W. (Overseas) Limited

Alahli Bank of Kuwait K.S.C.
Amro International Limited
Arnhold and S. Bleichroeder, Inc.
Bache Halsey Stuart Shields Incorporated
Bear, Stearns & Co.
Bank Leu International Ltd.
Banque Bruxelles Lambert S.A.
Banque de Neuflize, Schlumberger Mallet
Banque de l'Union Européenne
Banque Worms
Chase Manhattan Limited
Crédit Commercial de France
Daiwa Europe Limited
Richard Daus & Co. Bankiers
Dillon, Read Overseas Corporation
Euromobiliare S.p.A.
Hambros Bank Limited
Kredietbank N.V.
Kuhn Loeb Lehman Brothers International, Inc.
Kuwait Foreign Trading Contracting & Investment Co. (S.A.K.)
Kuwait International Investment Co. s.a.k.
Lazard Brothers & Co., Limited
McLeod Young Weir International Limited
L. Messel & Co.
Samuel Montagu & Co. Limited
The Nikko Securities Co., (Europe) Ltd.
Sal. Oppenheim jr. & Cie.
Peterbroeck, van Campenhout & Cie. S.C.S.
Pierson, Heldring & Pierson N.V.
Société Générale de Banque S.A.
Shearson Loeb Rhoades International Limited
Smith Barney, Harris Upham & Co. Incorporated
Strauss, Turnbull & Co.
Sumitomo Finance International
Vereins- und Westbank Aktiengesellschaft
M. M. Warburg-Brinckmann, Wirtz & Co.
Wardley Limited
Wood Gundy Limited

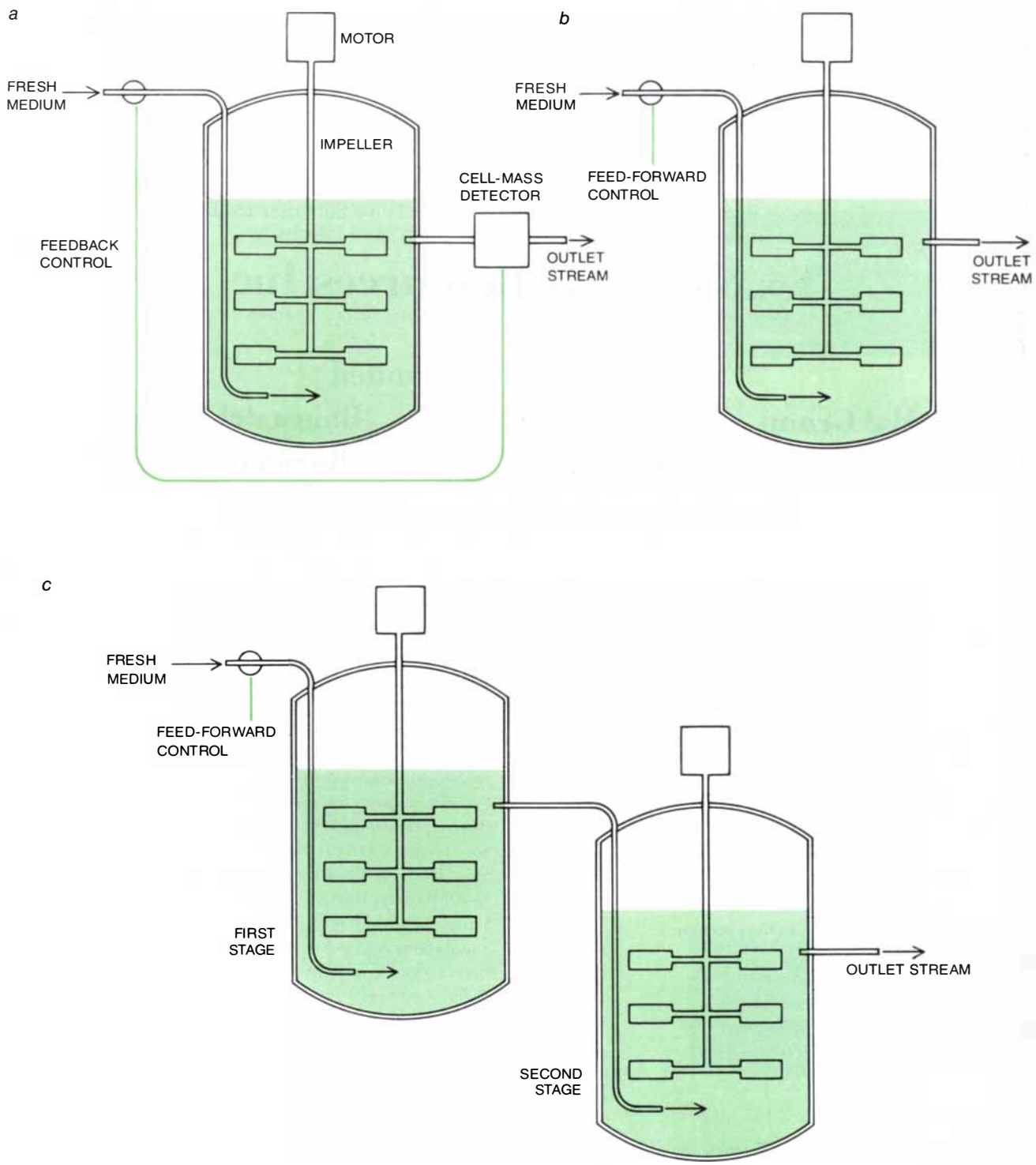
The undersigned assisted in the arrangement of this transaction:

Moncrief Smith & Company
Incorporated

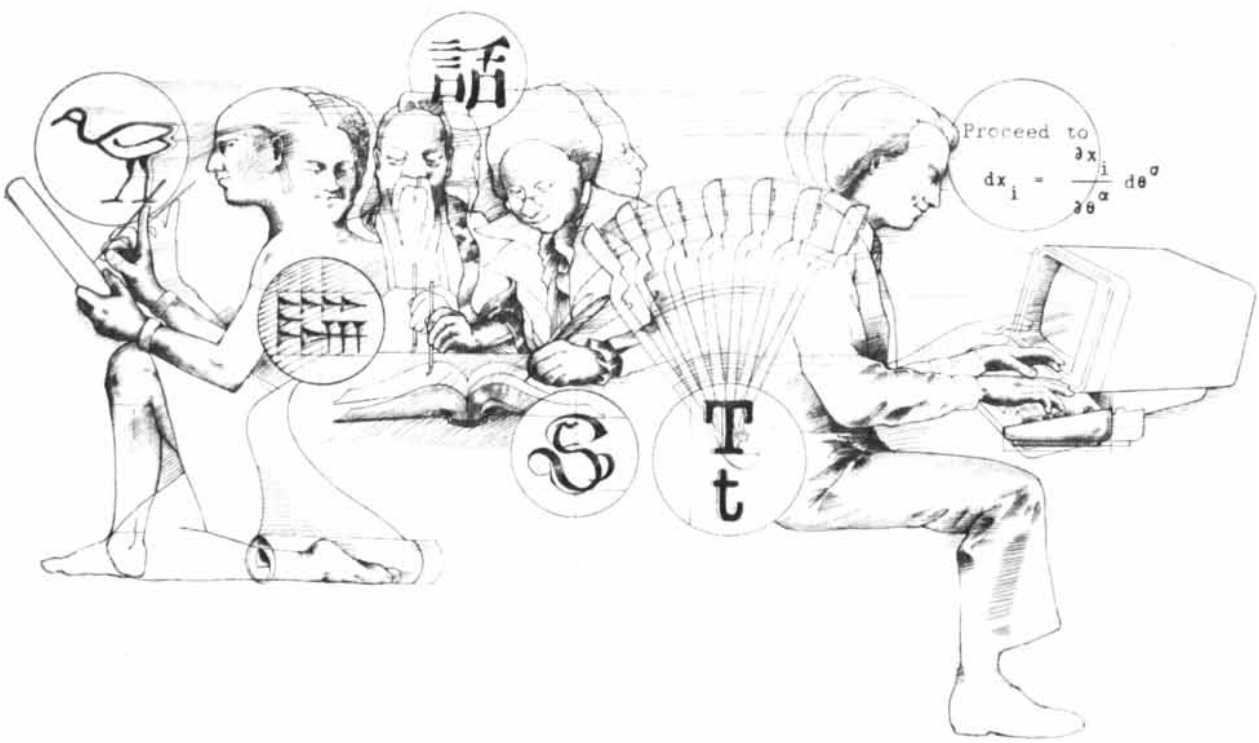
enzyme or the still larger structure of a cell cannot escape.

The newest approach to the retention of the catalyst is copied from the chemical industry. It is the fluid-bed reactor. The basic mechanism of such a reactor is a vertical tube that widens toward the top. The input stream is forced upward from the bottom, and so as the cross-sectional area increases with height the velocity of the fluid decreases. The catalyst, which is suspended in the fluid stream, settles at a level in the reactor below the level where the liquid stream is removed. The catalyst must of course have a form that keeps it suspended in the reactor. In some applications the catalyst (which can be either a microorganism or an enzyme) is immobilized on particles of coal.

Given the evident advantages of the



CONTINUOUS STIRRED-TANK REACTORS represent efforts to adapt batch technology to continuous operation. In a turbidostat (*a*) the rate at which cells leave the reactor vessel (as measured by the turbidity, or cloudiness, of the outlet stream) governs the rate at which fresh nutrients enter. In a chemostat (*b*) the rate at which a critical nutrient enters the reactor vessel is adjusted so that it limits the rate of the reaction. In a two-stage chemostat (*c*) the mechanism of control is the same but conditions in the two vessels can differ. Such an arrangement is useful, for example, in the production of a secondary metabolite or in the successive stages in the treatment of wastes.



Great MUSE for modern writing.

Word processing software so advanced it uses your computer to write everything from documents to scientific formulas.

Now, MUSE word processing software does everything standard word-processors do—and more—quicker, easier and more cost-effectively.

MUSE uses your *own* computer, runs simultaneously with any number of terminals, and fits all popular printers. What's more, MUSE has many features even standard word processors can't compete with.

It's great for first-time users.

MUSE is as easy to use as a typewriter. Most people learn how to operate it in just a few hours. For those without word processing experience, MUSE offers one of the quickest and easiest training programs available.

It saves time and money.

MUSE reduces your writing time to a minimum. It reduces your equipment cost drastically, too. If your corporation, business or educational facility already has computers and terminals, MUSE can save you as much as 50 percent in cost otherwise used to purchase expensive word processing equipment.

MUSE takes the work out of scientific formulas.

No word processor is easier to use for scientific typing. MUSE displays 6 levels of superscripts above the home line and 6 levels of subscripts below. Overlaid and Greek characters can be typed as shown:

$$\Delta\varepsilon\ (x,t) = \int_t^{t+\Delta t} 10^{B[T(x,t^1)]}\ dt^1$$

A twin-track printer interface makes typing scientific formulas simple. And, an optional terminal is available for reading and proofing scientific formulas right on the screen.

Call now for a free telephone demonstration.

See for yourself why we say MUSE is great for modern writing. For a telephone demonstration in the U.S. or Canada, call our California or Maryland phone number. For more information contact:

MARC Software International, Inc.
Our software makes it easy.

525 University Avenue
Suite 810
Palo Alto, CA 94301
Telephone: (415) 326-1971

4520 East West Highway
Suite 605
Bethesda, Maryland 20014
Telephone: (301) 656-7083

Bredewater 26
2715 CA Zoetermeer
The Netherlands
Telephone: 079.510411

Nippon MARC Co., Ltd.
No. 25 Mori Bldg.
4-30 Roppongi 1-Chome
Minato Ku
Tokyo, Japan
Telephone: 586-9669
TLX: 78129311

MUSE has been applied for as a trademark of MARC Software Int'l Inc.

About the illustration: "to find man's speech": *Egyptians used a hieroglyphics ibis that symbolized "to find". The Assyrian symbol for "man" was written in clay with cuneiform script. Early Chinese characters derived from ideograms depict "words" and "tongue" to symbolize "speech". The alphabet consisted of letters representing speech sounds. Industrialization gave us the typewritten word and today, electronic generated writing is the ultimate writing tool.*

continuous-stream method of operation, why has it made little progress in displacing batch methods? Some of the impediments are strictly technical. For example, it is harder to maintain aseptic conditions in a continuous reactor. When a product is made in batches, all the components of the apparatus can be sterilized after each batch, so that any contaminating organisms have only a limited period available for growth and proliferation. If the economies of continuous operation are to be fully achieved, the reactor must operate without interruption for long periods. Any microorganism that breached the barriers to contamination would grow unchecked.

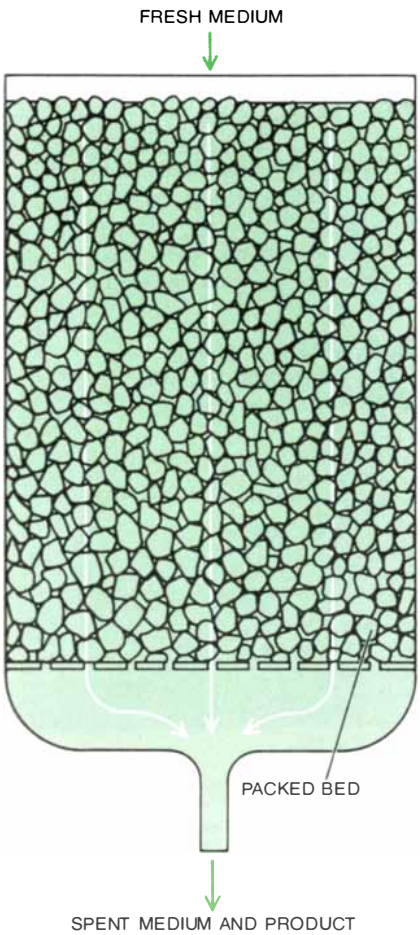
Difficulties of this kind could probably be overcome if there were enough economic incentive to do so. Actually the volume of production in most biological processes remains comparatively small, so that the efficiency of a continuous product stream could not be fully exploited. Moreover, batch methods offer great operational flexibility: a reaction vessel and the associated apparatus can produce a single batch of one product and can then be turned immediately to the production of a product in greater demand. This versatility is particularly important in the pharmaceutical industry, where the variety of products is large but the quantity of each product is small. It is notable that the one area where continuous processes are predominant, namely the treatment of sewage, is by far the largest microbiological industry in terms of the volume of material processed.

When the biological conversion is completed, the product or products must be separated from the spent medium and the product must be purified. Here a number of difficulties arise that are peculiar to industrial microbiology. First, many products are chemically fragile. It may be necessary to control carefully the temperature and the *p*H of the mixture. It may also prove necessary to exclude even traces of metals or other impurities. Second, the product is usually dissolved or suspended in a large quantity of water. Either the water must be removed from the product or the product must be removed from the water. Evaporation or distillation is sometimes effective. Distillation, however, is energy-intensive; its cost can constitute a substantial debit against the value of the product. Moreover, when the product molecule is fragile, evaporation or distillation would destroy it. A number of less stressful techniques have therefore been developed.

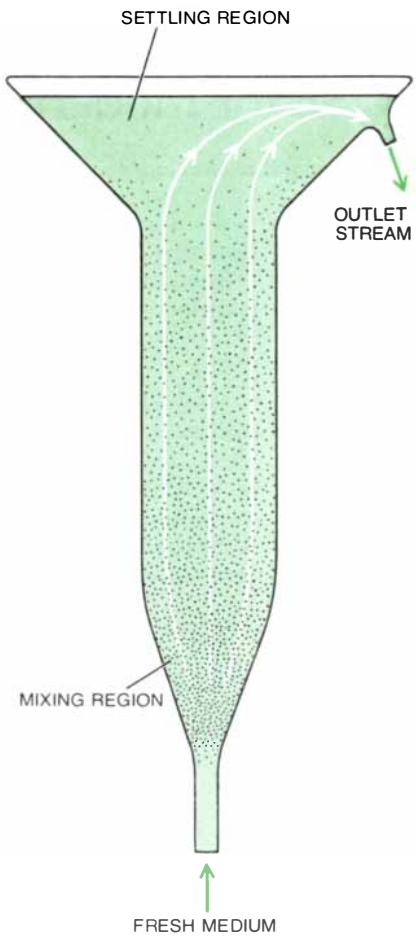
One technique is solvent extraction. The aqueous solution bearing the product is combined with a second liquid, immiscible with water, in which the product has a greater solubility. Another technique is adsorption. Here the product molecules leave the solution when they become attached to the surface of a solid material. Membrane separations, where the liquid is driven through a membrane that blocks the passage of the product, are finding increased application. Most of the techniques are applied to a stream of liquid from which the biological catalyst has been removed by a method such as filtration or separation in a centrifuge. Finally the product is purified. The volume of material that must be processed at this point is generally small and the techniques are specific to the product.

The exploitation of biochemical processes began with food and drink, and when industrial applications emerged in the 19th century, they were rooted in the sequence of steps that had become established through traditional practices. The first step remained the purification of raw materials and the development of a seed, or starter, culture: a natural population of microorganisms in which the organism whose catalytic activity is useful is dominant. Then came the biological conversion itself. With the manufacture of ethanol for use as a solvent rather than as a drink the need arose for techniques by which specific products could be recovered and purified.

The persistence of the traditional methods cannot be attributed simply to the inflexibility of the early industrial practitioners. The workings of microorganisms in an industrial process are complex and delicate, and many aspects of their functioning are still daunting today, when a large and prosperous industry operates throughout the world. For the most part the industry is limited to the small-scale batch production of substances of great value. The world economy is changing, however. If industrial microbiology should become competitive for the manufacture of products such as fuels and industrial chemicals, a body of knowledge and experience will be available to guide the effort.



PACKED BED is a well-tried technology in industries such as the treatment of wastes and the manufacture of vinegar. The catalyst is a slimy film of microorganisms that adheres to a solid bed. Often it is a natural culture. The medium trickles through the bed from above.



FLUID BED is new to industrial microbiology. The biological catalyst is immobilized on particles that are suspended in an upwelling stream of fresh fluid medium. A widening at the top of the reactor vessel slows the fluid and thus keeps the catalyst inside the vessel.

Meet some of the Stars of our show.

Take the little charmer to your right.

She's not exactly your run-of-the-mill starlet.

But then, NOVA isn't exactly your run-of-the-mill TV show.

NOVA is the PBS TV show about science—for people who didn't know they were interested in science. The show that explores everything from the underwater social life of a coastal lagoon to why boys "play rough" and girls don't.

And we're delighted to help make it possible in part by a grant from TRW.

NOVA

Our version of a star-studded evening.

This season on NOVA, you'll spend an hour star-gazing at other galaxies of our universe. Discover some new theories about dinosaurs and their extinction, with startling consequences for previously accepted ideas about the history of life on earth.

Or you can curl up with a live volcano, a dead sea. Take a trip through the human circulatory system, and see for yourself just what happens when a heart goes haywire.

This year NOVA will also take you rock-hunting on the moon.

Show you how sex got started and why some species manage quite nicely without it, thank you.

PBS PUBLIC BROADCASTING SERVICE

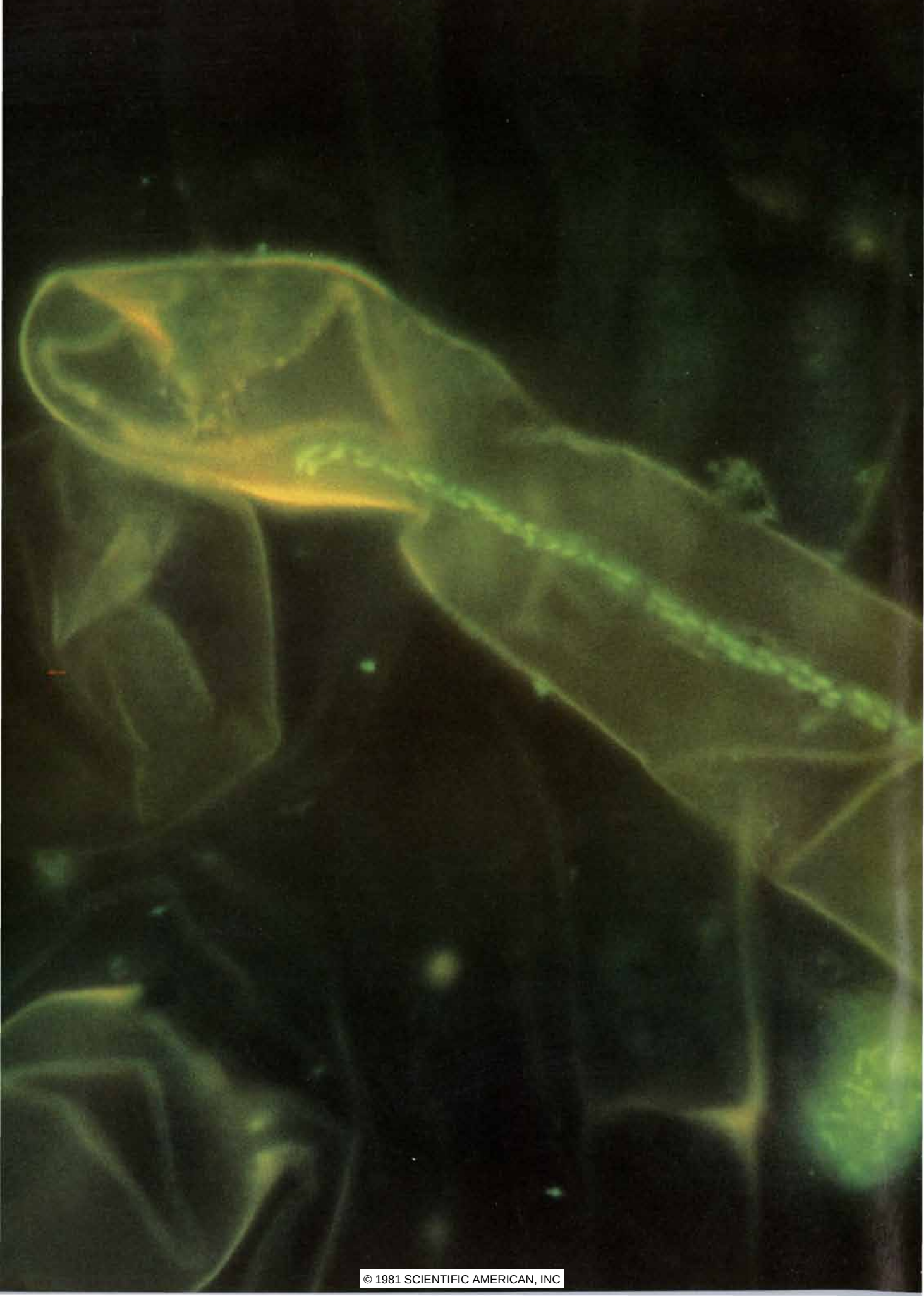
And, of course, you'll meet the star above in a NOVA program about why we're plagued by plagues of locusts.

You'll be entertained, absorbed, delighted by it all. Every Tuesday night. All season long.

On PBS. When NOVA takes you to worlds you've never seen.

NOVA is made possible in part by a grant from

A COMPANY CALLED TRW



Agricultural Microbiology

Introducing new genes into crop plants by recombinant-DNA methods is difficult and not in immediate prospect. Much progress can be made, however, by manipulating the microorganisms that live with plants

by Winston J. Brill

A handful of soil scooped from the fields of a mechanized farm is the locus of an unruly turmoil of competing microorganisms. In the soil thousands of strains contend for nutrients and energy, in the process altering the chemistry of the soil with the products of their metabolism. Moreover, the microorganisms themselves evolve in response to stresses imposed by their environment, including the stresses induced by the evolution of their fellow species. Suppose into the teeming genetic marketplace a new colony of bacteria is introduced, one selected, say, for the ability to invade the roots of certain crop plants. Even if the new bacteria can survive the competition and adapt to the changeable environment, they may not be able to carry out their intended function. They may find that the root system is already occupied by other strains of microorganisms.

Interference of this kind is commonplace in agricultural practice; it serves to illustrate the difference between the open field and the fermentation tank. There are also similarities: in both agriculture and industrial microbiology the aim is to meet human needs by the selective breeding, culturing and harvesting of living organisms. If the fermentation tank can be taken to represent an agricultural environment, however, it is one subject to exceptionally precise control. For example, the population of microorganisms is usually limited to a single species. In considering the potential applications of microbiology to agriculture, one must begin to explore the subtle question of the interaction of microorganisms with one another and with the biosphere as a whole.

The growing demand for food and other agricultural products is ample practical justification for undertaking the enormous research effort that will be needed in order to apply the methods of microbiology to agriculture. It has been suggested that the "engineering" of crop plants and of the soil microorganisms on which they depend may yield hybrid grains capable of obtaining their supply of nitrogen directly from the atmosphere. No crop plant now has this capacity; the nitrogen must be fixed, or converted into a biologically useful form, either by microorganisms or by the industrial manufacture of nitrogenous fertilizers, a process that calls for a large expenditure of fossil fuel. American farmers spend about $1 billion a year on nitrogenous fertilizers for the corn crop alone, and so the program of research on nitrogen fixation is a growing one.

Other lines of biological investigation may lead to the acceleration of photosynthesis and to the development of crops that can be grown on saline or highly acidic soil. These are ambitious goals, unlikely to be achieved commercially in less than 10 years. Nevertheless, a great deal of rational exploitation and modification of the microbiological environment of the farm is within reach during the next decade. The agricultural community has only recently begun to recognize the potential of microbiological techniques in plant-cell research. Recombinant-DNA technology may lead to improvements in existing crops and to the development of entirely new crop types. So far, however, its most important effect has probably been on industrial laboratories, which have been alerted to the possibility of applying biological methods to agriculture. Work of this kind is now under way in several dozen such establishments, focusing primarily on the design of microorganisms important to agriculture or on the application of microbiological techniques to the manipulation of plants. Perhaps the most significant indicator of the revolutionary nature of the work is that almost all these laboratories have been established within the past two years.

How can microbiological techniques be applied to traditional agricultural practices? There are three main strategies. First, microorganisms found to be beneficial to plants (or designed for this purpose) can be bred and grown in fermentation tanks for later introduction into the soil. Second, individual cells can be isolated from plant tissue and grown in nutrient solution. In such cell cultures the rate of mutation can be increased, making possible the selection of promising strains, the development of hybrid strains that would not be obtainable by standard breeding techniques and the manufacture in large fermenters of certain plant products, such as digitalis, pyrethrins (which are natural pesticides) and licorice.

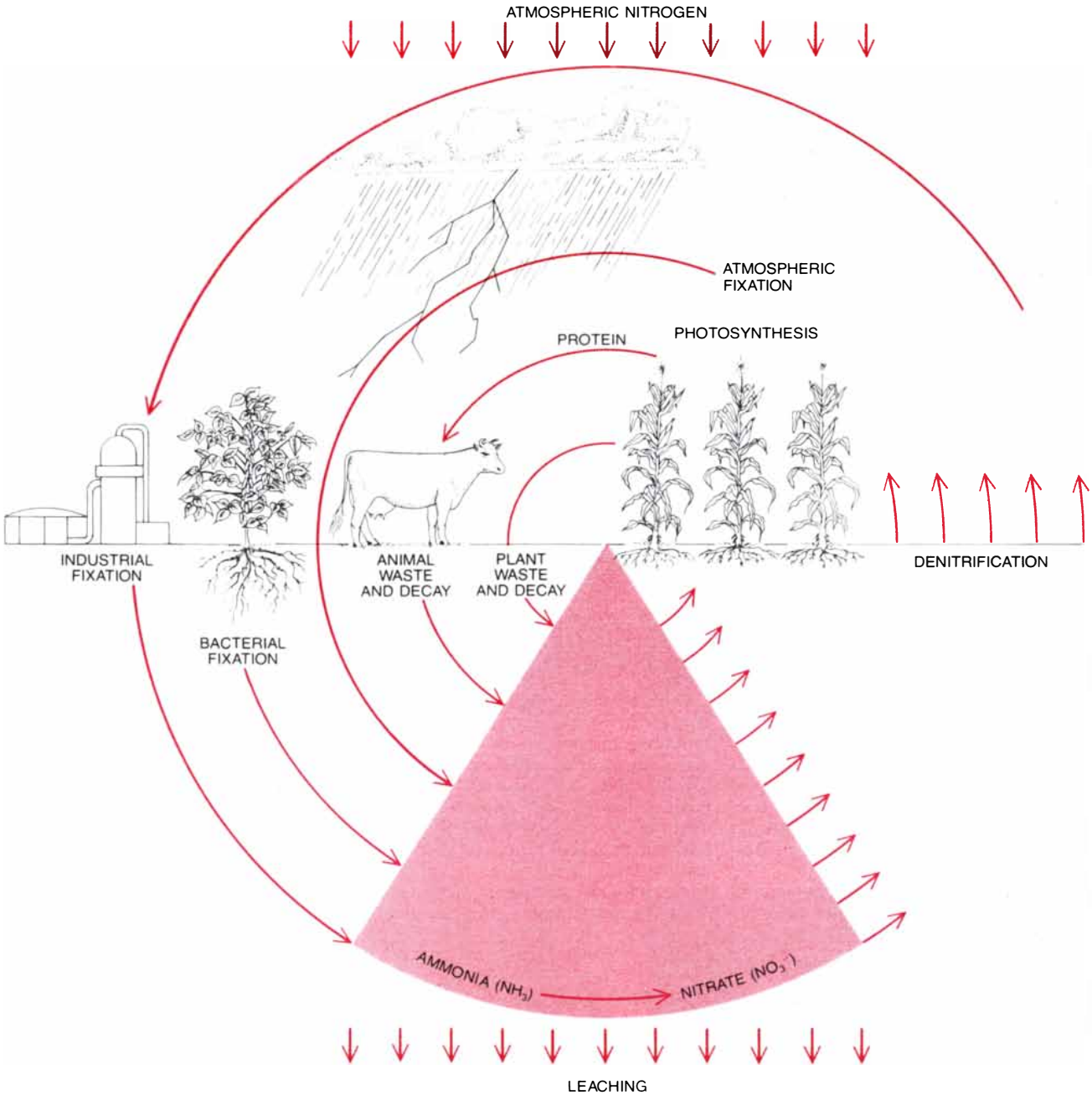
Third, foreign genetic material can in some cases be introduced into plant cells, a practice that could open the way for direct genetic engineering of the plants themselves. Such techniques are still primitive when they are compared with the achievements of recombinant-DNA technology with bacteria. Indeed, the reverse strategy of inserting plant genes into bacteria, so that plant proteins can be made by culturing bacteria in standard fermentation tanks, may

MICROORGANISMS ESSENTIAL TO AGRICULTURE include bacteria of the genus *Rhizobium*, which are seen infecting a root hair of a clover plant. In the photomicrograph, which was made by B. Ben Bohlool of the University of Hawaii at Manoa, the bacteria have been labeled with a fluorescent dye; they appear as bright chartreuse flecks. They form an infection thread that extends from the tip of the root hair into the interior of the root. *Rhizobium* bacteria live symbiotically in the roots of clover and other legumes; the bacteria supply the plant with fixed nitrogen necessary to photosynthesis and the plant nourishes the bacteria. Such interactions of microorganisms with plants suggest several ways the new methods of genetic engineering might contribute to agricultural practice. For example, the nitrogen-fixing capacity of the bacteria might be increased by genetic modification, or the bacteria might be induced to colonize plants other than legumes. If the modified organisms are to be effective, however, they must be able to compete successfully with strains indigenous to the open field.

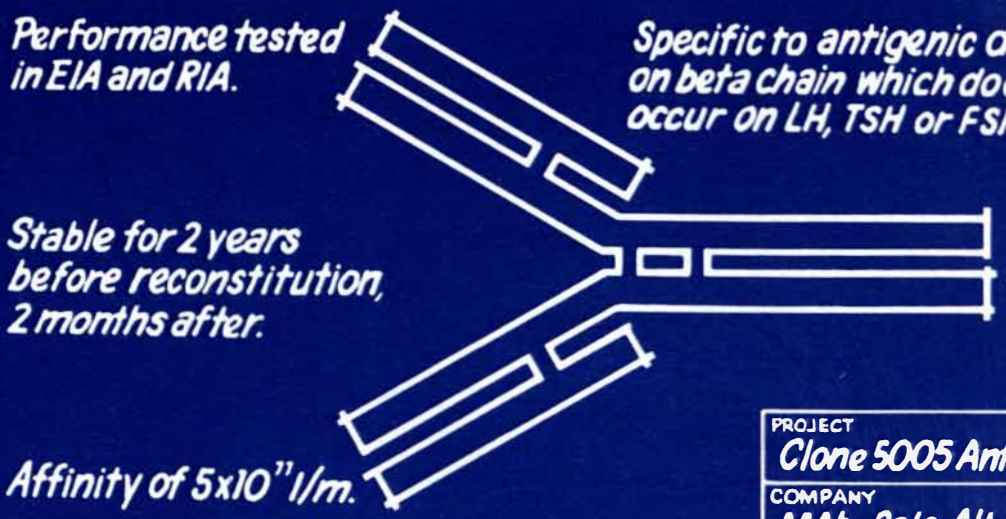
well precede the genetic engineering of plant DNA.

The exploitation of microorganisms in the soil is hardly new to agriculture. It was well known in Roman times that legumes such as beans, peanuts, alfalfa, soybeans, peas, clover and lupine enhanced the fertility of the soil. Soil from fields where legumes had been grown was added to fields that were to be assigned to legume cultivation for the first time. The Romans could not have known that the underlying justification of their sound empirical practice is the presence of bacteria of the genus *Rhizobium,* which infect the roots of some legumes and fix atmospheric nitrogen [see "Biological Nitrogen Fixation," by Winston J. Brill; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, March, 1977]. As the term infect suggests, the introduction of *Rhizobium* into legumes resembles a disease process, but it is one in which the plant cooperates. The *Rhizobium* bacteria enter into a symbiotic relation with the plant: the bacteria obtain nourishment from the plant and in turn provide the plant with usable nitrogen in the form of ammonia (NH_3). The relation is an intimate one, in which the bacteria actually enter the roots of the legume and form the visible growths called nodules.

For the Romans a population of *Rhizobium* bacteria in the soil ensured root nodulation and subsequent nitrogen fixation in new fields of legumes. It is also



NITROGEN CYCLE maintains a balance between two vast reservoirs of nitrogen compounds: the earth's atmosphere and the earth's crust. Because green plants can utilize nitrogen only when it has been incorporated into chemical compounds such as ammonia (NH_3) the plants cannot extract nitrogen directly from the atmosphere, where it takes the form of diatomic molecules (N_2). Atmospheric nitrogen must therefore be fixed either industrially or by bacteriological or other natural processes such as lightning. Although only a small fraction of the total nitrogen supply is required by plants, fixation must be carried out constantly. Fixed nitrogen is lost through the leaching of the soil, through the harvesting of crops and through the action of denitrifying bacteria that convert fixed nitrogen into its diatomic form.



ENGINEERING A USEFUL ANTIBODY

Persuading a few spleen cells to react to an antigen is no great trick. These days, virtually anybody with a few mice and a tissue culture laboratory can get into the monoclonals business. But there's a difference between getting into the business and making *useful* monoclonal antibodies.

At MAb (Monoclonal Antibodies, Inc.), we've been at it for nearly three years. Before that, our principal scientist pioneered monoclonal technology. And while the newer firms have been learning how to make monoclonals, we've been inventing a process for making *useful* monoclonals... a process we call "monoclonal engineering."

Because the techniques involved are neither simple nor inexpensive, monoclonal engineering has so far been applied only to internal development projects. But now, to make a point, we offer research quantities of an important antibody created by MAb monoclonal engineering... Clone 5005 Anti-hCG-β.

Clone 5005 was engineered for clinical chemistry. If you've experimented with monoclonals, you know that they rarely shine in assay applications. Despite ambitious specificity claims, for example, monoclonal antibody to hCG often reacts with Lutenizing Hormone in assays. And, somehow, monoclonal affinity often proves less than fierce in competitive binding. Or the antibody isn't stable long enough to be useful.

Clone 5005 is a typical example of MAb monoclonal engineering. It produces antibody to a site on the beta chain which is one of the few hCG antigenic determinants not appearing on LH (or TSH or FSH). That's why Clone 5005 antibody shows less than 1% crossreactivity with LH in RIA and EIA competitive binding assays.

The best monoclonal anti-hCG-β affinity specification we've seen published is $5x10^9$ l/m. Through monoclonal engineering, Clone 5005 produces anti-hCG-β with an affinity of $5x10^{11}$ l/m.

As delivered (lyophilized in sealed vials), Clone 5005 anti-hCG-β is stable for two years at 2–8°C. After reconstitution, it is stable for 60 days at 2–8°C.

Applications are presently limited to investigational use only. Not for use in humans or for diagnosis.

Since the first monoclonal antibodies were made in 1975, hundreds of scientists have become interested in these pure, potent immune proteins.

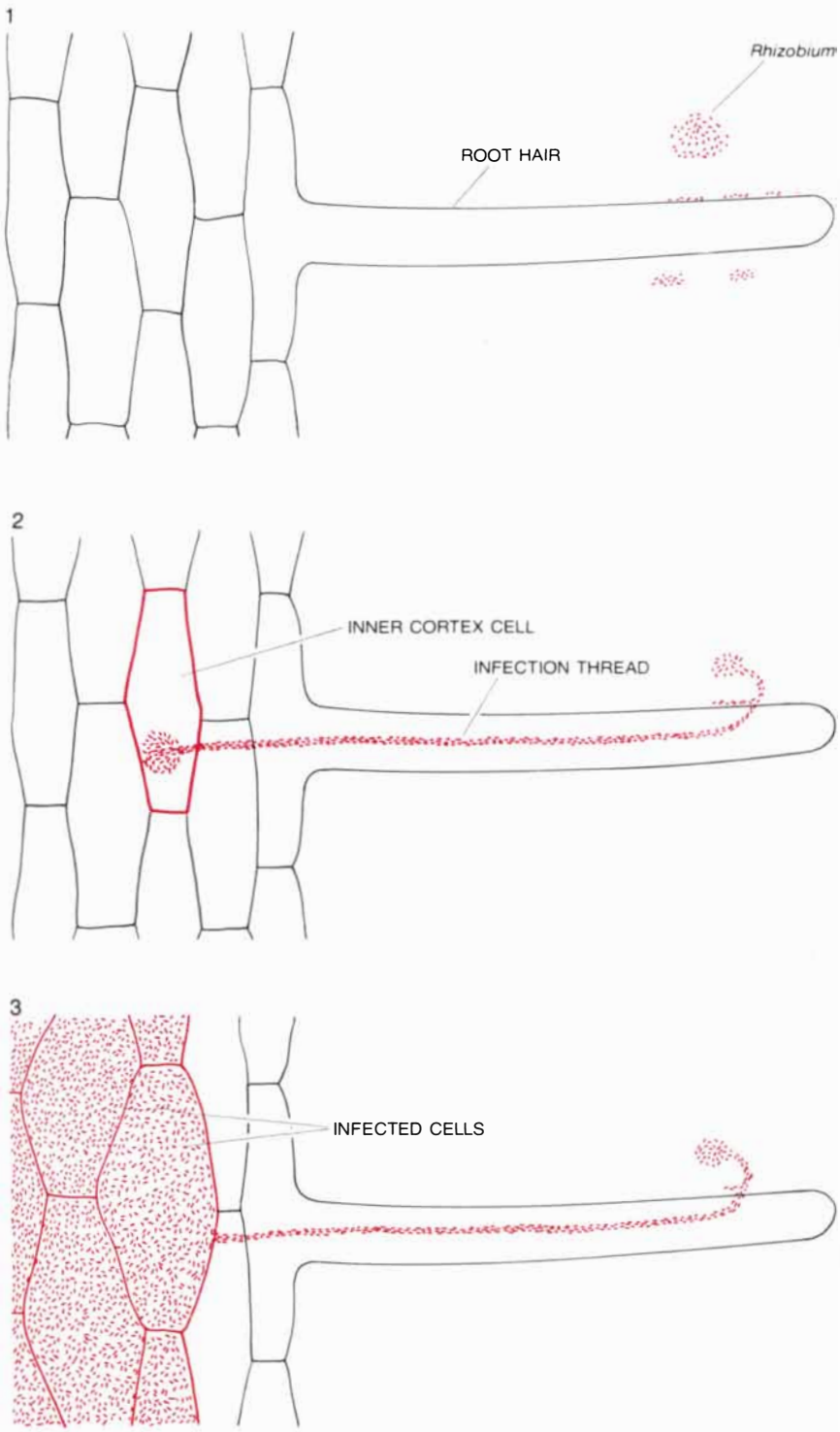
Write or call for price and technical data on Clone 5005 anti-hCG-β or the potential application of monoclonal engineering in your scientific, medical or industrial business.

MAb THE MONOCLONAL ENGINEERS

MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES, INC. • 719 COLORADO AVENUE, PALO ALTO, CA 94303, 415-327-2204

the basis of the traditional practice of crop rotation, because fixed nitrogen left in the soil by a crop of legumes can be taken up by grain plants, which do not form nodules. In 1888 *Rhizobium* was isolated by the German investigators Hermann Hellriegel and H. Wilfarth, and within 15 years deliberate inoculation of soil with cultured bacteria became agricultural practice. Today strains of *Rhizobium* are packaged with a supporting agent such as peat.

The importance of nitrogen to plant metabolism is now well understood bio-



INFECTION OF A ROOT HAIR of a legume by *Rhizobium* **begins when the bacteria attach themselves to the root hair (*1*) by means of a template-matching mechanism. The plant and the bacteria recognize each other through specific proteins. The bacteria then enter the root hair through an infection thread and stream into an internal cell of the root (*2*). The infection causes the cell to swell and divide (*3*). The result is a root nodule: a thick mass of infected cells.**

The New Discipline Of Immuno-Genetic Engineering

DNAX is assembling the basic research and appropriate development capabilities to generate products based upon the binding properties of antibodies. A broad range of specific opportunities is expected to be opened by combining genetic engineering, immunobiology and polymeric delivery technologies, for which we have adopted the name Immuno-Genetic Engineering.

The first goal of DNAX is to develop the technology to produce, on an industrial scale by fermentation techniques, the essential segments of the immunoglobulin proteins responsible for the specific and strong affinities of antibodies. These novel molecules are called:

Minimum Binding Site (MBS)™ peptides.

One significant field of applications for MBS™ peptides is therapeutic products. The drug delivery technology pioneered by ALZA Corporation and licensed to DNAX will facilitate the creation of therapeutic systems that take full advantage of the properties of MBS™ peptides suitable for particular diseases.

Many other applications of MBS™ peptides in diagnosis and chemical processes are also envisioned.

Dr. Alejandro Zaffaroni, founder and chairman, has assembled a team of distinguished advisors* and researchers with the knowledge and skills necessary to realize the company's objectives.

The DNAX Research Institute of Molecular and Cellular Biology has been organized in Stanford Industrial Park as an open environment to encourage close collaboration with other researchers in academic institutions and industry.

*THE DNAX SCIENTIFIC ADVISORY BOARD INCLUDES:

Paul Berg
William Dreyer
Avram Goldstein
Edgar Haber
Leroy Hood
Michael Hunkapiller
Kurt Isselbacher
Arthur Kornberg
Roger Kornberg
Thomas Kornberg
Ronald Levy
Harden McConnell
George Palade
Samuel Strober
Irving Weissman
Charles Yanofsky

For further information on DNAX (pronounced dee-nax), write to William P. O'Neill, Ph.D., Vice President, Corporate Development, at the address below.

DNAX Research Institute of Molecular and Cellular Biology, Inc.
1454 Page Mill Road, Palo Alto, California 94304.

ENGINEERS

HERE'S WHAT WE'RE DOING NOW.

Boeing is widely known as the world's number one manufacturer of aircraft.

And indeed we are.

But we would also like our associates in the scientific and engineering community to know some of the other areas in which Boeing innovation is creating opportunities for Boeing people by expanding the frontiers of knowledge and capacity.

That is the intent of this report. But frankly we are also looking for engineers and scientists who can help us carry a myriad of high technology projects through to successful completion.

If this interests you, we would like to hear from you. Just see the Help Wanted section of this report.

BEYOND FRONTIERS OF SPACE.

If your field is deep space, you will find Boeing there, too.

We are working on a design for an orbiting manned spacecraft for NASA — a centuries old dream of a small community in space with practical operational as well as scientific functions.

And we will be going deeper into the darkness of space with an Inertial Upper Stage space truck designed to carry both man's cargo and curiosity to new distances not reachable by conventional spacecraft.

During this decade, we will also deliver a platform for a Viking Satellite spacecraft that will give planet Earth a new perspective on the universe. This spacecraft is more than a vessel. Indeed, it's an enormously sophisticated tool that will house instruments that can measure the subtle interaction of solar wind and the earth's magnetosphere. And, thus, the mysteries of the aurora borealis and its impact on communications may well be near solution.

BACK ON PLANET EARTH.

Boeing technology is also being put to work to make this planet a better place on which to live and work.

At Boeing, we believe imaginative technology as well as social engineering can provide the answers to problems of providing a better standard of living in a crowded and resource-short world.

Consider energy. It's a bit like the weather. Everyone talks about it. But, at Boeing, we are doing something about it, based on decades of aerospace experience.

And the things we have learned about critical scheduling, reliability and innovative engineering, we put to work on projects like massive oil production platforms that are built onshore and floated out as giant islands to previously inaccessible oil reserves.

Boeing's energy projects are not limited to fossil fuels, however.

We are also looking for new, more efficient ways to produce energy from the wind and sun.

We have already built giant wind turbines which are producing energy for electric utilities.

And we are designing an advanced solar central receiver for second generation power plants.

We are also applying the Boeing principles of innovation and accomplishment to dozens of other fields — highly sophisticated military systems, mass transportation, electronics, desalination, pollution control, power and computer systems — to name just a few.

GETTING PEOPLE TOGETHER.

And in the business of building airplanes?

Boeing's leadership in the commercial airplane industry has advanced with the rollout of the 767, a new generation of fuel-efficient jetliners engineered to save millions of gallons of fuel.

The same engineering excellence that made possible the new 767 and another advanced model, the 757 (scheduled for rollout in January 1982), is being applied to updating and improving our entire family of jet transports to meet the changing industry and passenger needs of the world.

All of these goals have been achieved because of an important factor.

Our engineering and design teams have dedicated themselves wholeheartedly to the development of new designs, new materials, new aerodynamics and advanced technology.

And that takes talent.

HELP WANTED.

Right now, we are looking for more good people — the best electrical, mechanical and aeronautical engineers — to help us achieve even more aggressive goals.

If you would like to become part of an innovative engineering team that specializes in advanced technology, please send your résumé to The Boeing Company, P.O. Box 3707-CCK, Seattle, WA 98124.

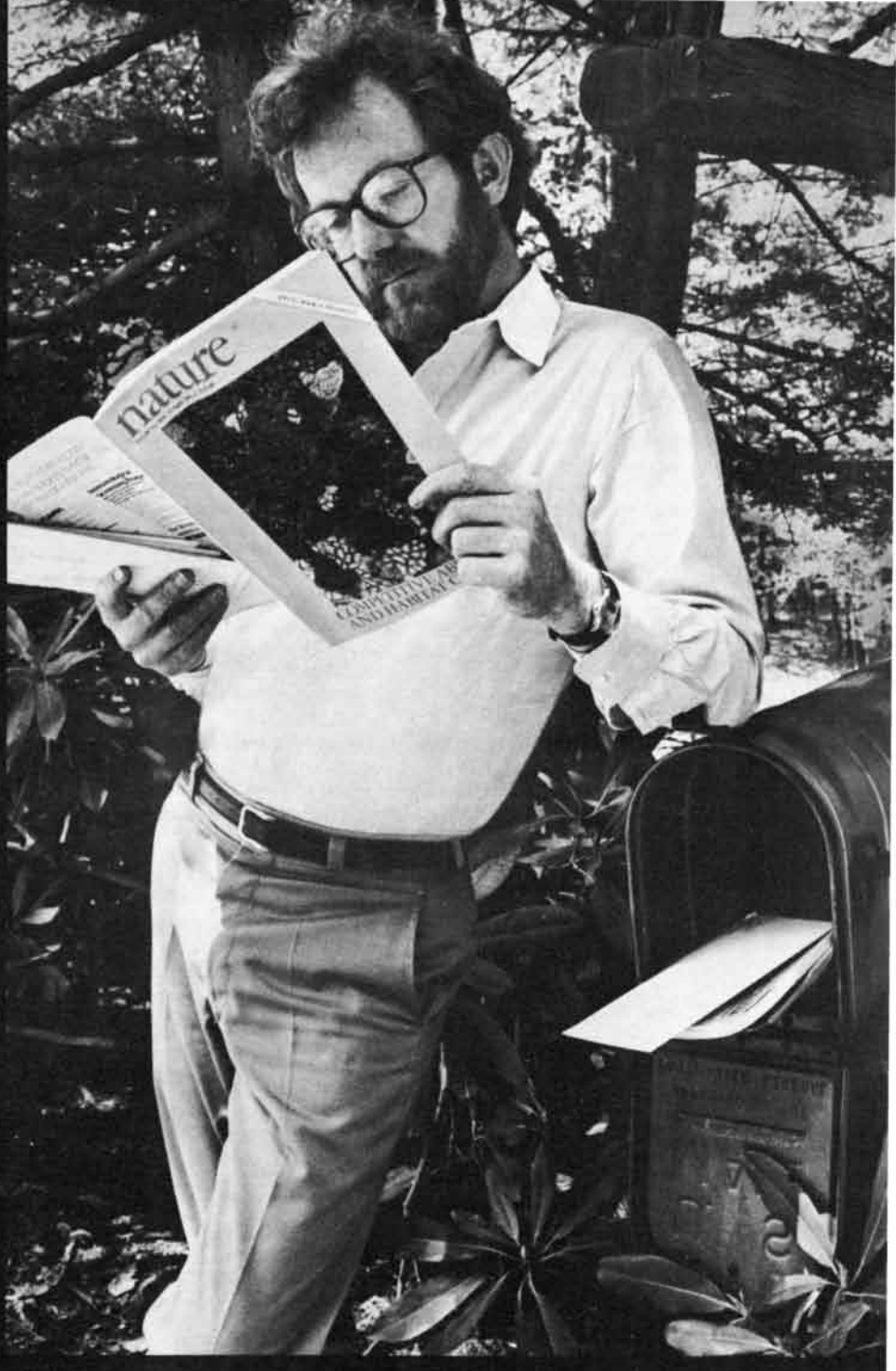
After all, at Boeing, we reach for the stars. Even when we are building airplanes.

An equal opportunity employer.

WHO KNOWS WHAT WE'LL BE DOING NEXT.

BOEING
GETTING PEOPLE TOGETHER

The world's leading scientists get it every week and so should you... at ½ price.



Scientists who are leaders in their field and who get to reap the rewards of their achievements are among *Nature's* most eager readers.

And they are renewing their subscriptions to *Nature* in record numbers.

If, like them, you keep searching for ways to speed up your research, or if you're looking for advancement where you work, or are thinking of moving on to something more stimulating, how can you afford to be without your own personal subscription to *Nature*?

It's the most certain and consistent way to get the research results, news, opinion, and analysis you need, while they're still fresh and can be applied most usefully to your own work.

With your own *Nature*, you'll be well ahead of the monthly journals whose reports often lag a year or more behind ours. And there isn't a science weekly anywhere that covers research developments in as many parts of the world, as fully and authoritatively, as *Nature* does.

The good news is that we've cut *Nature's* personal subscription rate in half and, to top it off, if you subscribe for a full year, we'll send you, free, a copy of *Nature's* new, annual *Directory of Biologicals*. Planned for fall 1981, the *Directory* will be the first truly worldwide buyers' guide to biological products. It will be available only to yearly subscribers (or, for $45, to buyers of the hardcover version, in bookstores).

Now: Nature at ½ price – plus a bonus book, free

A personal subscription to *Nature* has never been more attractive. We urge you to clip and mail the coupon today. For credit-card orders only, **call toll-free now: (800) 824-7888. Ask for operator 130.**

In California: (800) 852-7777

Ask for

SB-09

To: **Nature** 15 East 26th Street, New York, N.Y. 10010

☐ Please send me a year of *Nature* at ½ price, $86.50, plus my free *Directory of Biologicals*

☐ I prefer to try *Nature* for 6 months: $50. ☐ 3 months: $30

☐ I enclose my *personal* check

☐ Please bill my credit card account

Account No.

☐ Visa ☐ Master ☐ Amer. Ex. Exp. Date

Name

Address

City State Zip

Orders *must* include personal check or credit card data. Offer good in the U.S. and Canada and is subject to change without notice. In the U.K., send personal check for £37.50, or credit card data, to: Nature, 4 Little Essex St., London WC2R 3LF

chemically. Nitrogen is incorporated into a great variety of biological molecules, and it is an essential constituent of proteins, where the peptide bond that links one amino acid to the next is formed between a nitrogen atom and a carbon atom. If the amino acids of dead plants were simply returned to the soil, new crops could recycle the dead matter immediately into new proteins. In the soil, however, amino acids are dismantled to yield ammonia or nitrate ions (NO_3^-). The nitrates are further broken down by the bacteria called denitrifiers into molecular nitrogen (N_2), which is returned to the atmosphere, completing a nitrogen cycle. Moreover, when crops are harvested or when rainwater carries dissolved nitrogen compounds to deeper levels of the ground, the nitrogen-bearing matter is physically removed from the topsoil. Leaching, harvesting and the activities of denitrifying bacteria result in a net loss of fixed nitrogen, which must be replaced if the next crop is to synthesize more protein for growth.

How can the nitrogen-fixing action of *Rhizobium* on legume roots be enhanced, thereby increasing crop yield? A straightforward approach is through plant breeding, which does not require microbiological techniques at all. For example, if the rate of photosynthesis were increased by selective breeding, the bacteria in the nodules might be able to fix more nitrogen. By combining plant breeding with microbiological techniques for modifying the *Rhizobium,* however, even higher yields of plant protein might be obtained.

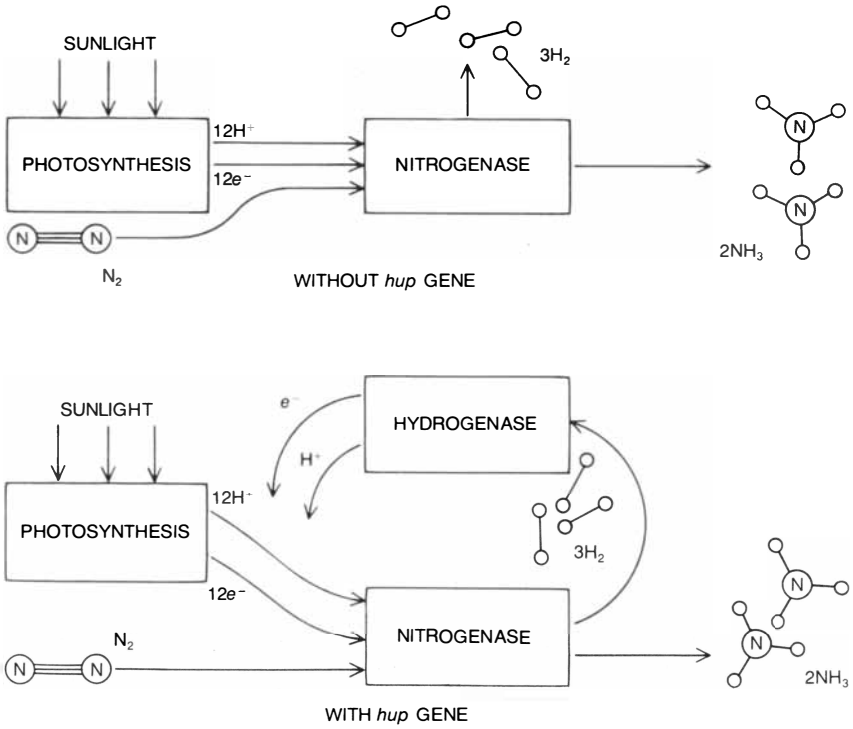
A few years ago my colleagues and I at the University of Wisconsin at Madison began to apply the screening procedures of the pharmaceutical industry to nitrogen-fixing bacteria. The bacteria were first exposed to mutagenic substances or to ionizing radiation as a means of increasing the rate of mutation in the colony. Plants were then inoculated with mutant bacteria and the amount of nitrogen fixed by each strain of bacterium was measured. In this manner we obtained several mutants capable of significantly higher levels of nitrogen fixation than those afforded by standard inoculants. The soybean plants in the experiment showed superior growth.

The experiment was done in a laboratory growth chamber, and it was important to test the effects of the mutant bacteria on plant growth under field conditions. Soybeans were planted in nitrogen-poor Wisconsin fields; one plot in each field was inoculated with the mutant bacteria and a second was not inoculated. There was no difference in growth or yield between the two plots: even the uninoculated control plot produced a good soybean crop.

We had encountered precisely the effect that distinguishes agricultural from industrial practice: the effect of natural populations of microorganisms in the uncontrolled environment of the open field. Indigenous strains of *Rhizobium* formed most of the root nodules in both test plots; the superior nitrogen-fixing mutants were unable to compete with the indigenous strains. When the mutant bacteria were introduced into fields where legumes had never been cultivated, they did lead to greater yields of soybeans. Our current plan to overcome the difficulty borrows a traditional tactic of the plant breeder: we seek to identify the most competitive strains of bacteria and to obtain mutants with better nitrogen-fixing properties from those strains.

The procedure of inducing random mutations and then screening for useful mutant bacteria is inefficient. Microbiologists in a number of laboratories are studying the genetics and the biochemistry of infection by *Rhizobium* so that the bacteria can be directly modified by genetic engineering. In all nitrogen-fixing organisms the agent responsible for fixation is the enzyme nitrogenase, which catalyzes the conversion of molecular nitrogen into ammonia. In the reaction a transport protein donates electrons to the nitrogenase, which in turn transfers them to the diatomic molecule of nitrogen by a mechanism that is not yet fully understood. Three negatively charged electrons come to be associated with each atom of nitrogen; thereafter three protons (hydrogen nuclei) are withdrawn from the intracellular medium to neutralize the charge. Hence each diatomic molecule of nitrogen yields two molecules of ammonia.

The transfer of electrons from nitrogenase to molecular nitrogen has an energetically wasteful side reaction. Many of the electrons recombine with protons before they reach the nitrogen; the recombined electrons and protons are released as molecular hydrogen gas (H_2). Certain strains of *Rhizobium* synthesize hydrogenase, an enzyme that converts molecular hydrogen back into electrons and protons for reuse by nitrogenase. Hydrogenase could therefore serve as a kind of afterburner that would make the nitrogen-fixing bacteria more energy-efficient. The enhanced bacterial efficiency would enable the plant to direct its energy more to seed yield than to the support of its symbiotic bacteria. Investigators at Oregon State University have recently demonstrated the effectiveness



BIOCHEMICAL SHORT CIRCUIT leads to a wasteful release of hydrogen gas (H_2) as a by-product of the enzymatic reaction by means of which *Rhizobium* bacteria convert molecular nitrogen (N_2) into ammonia (NH_3). The hydrogen has no known value to the plant or to the bacteria; instead it seems merely to waste energy derived from photosynthesis. The energy serves to segregate free protons (H^+) and electrons (e^-), which then drive the reactions of nitrogen fixation. If the protons and electrons recombine to form hydrogen, however, the energy is dissipated. In some strains of *Rhizobium* bacteria a gene carried by a plasmid circumvents this inefficiency. The gene, designated *hup,* codes for the synthesis by the bacteria of the enzyme hydrogenase. Hydrogenase catalyzes the breakdown of hydrogen gas into its constituent protons and electrons for reapplication in nitrogen fixation. The introduction of the *hup* gene into a *Rhizobium* inoculant has been shown to give the inoculated plant higher seed yields than those of plants infected with strains of *Rhizobium* bacteria that do not synthesize hydrogenase.

of hydrogenase in the open field. They showed that field-grown soybeans inoculated with a strain of *Rhizobium* that makes hydrogenase have a greater yield than soybeans inoculated with a strain lacking the enzyme.

Workers at the John Innes Institute in Britain have shown that the hydrogenase made by certain strains of *Rhizobium* is coded for by a single gene and that the gene is found on a plasmid, a loop of DNA separate from the bacterial chromosome. It should be possible to transfer the hydrogenase gene to *Rhizobium* strains that lack the enzyme but have other characteristics making them desirable as nitrogen fixers.

Not all symbiotic nitrogen fixation is conducted by *Rhizobium* bacteria, and not all nitrogen-fixing bacteria attach themselves to legumes. The key to engineering microorganisms that fix nitrogen for cereal crops may be in understanding the details of such natural symbioses. There is only one well-documented instance in which *Rhizobium* has been found to nodulate a plant other than a legume; it was reported by an investigator in Western Australia. A number of other nitrogen-fixing bacteria, however, have been identified and isolated. The bacterium *Frankia alni* fixes nitrogen for the alder tree and certain other nonlegume plants. Alder can therefore be employed in crop rotation much as legumes are: alder seedlings are mixed into forests in order to enrich the soil for commercially valuable trees such as Douglas fir and poplar.

Some bacteria fix nitrogen in the soil without entering into symbiosis with a plant. In my laboratory Stephen W. Ela and I are trying to get the nitrogen-fixing bacterium *Azotobacter vinelandii,* which does not take part in natural symbiotic relations, to bind to the roots of corn and so fertilize the corn. Ordinarily *A. vinelandii* makes no more ammonia than it needs for growth. Hence our first step was to obtain mutants that excrete excess ammonia. This can be accomplished by finding mutants for which feedback pathways that report an excess accumulation of ammonia have been blocked.

To make the ammonia available only to the corn our next goal has been to make the bacterium bind tightly to the roots of the corn plant. Several years ago two of my colleagues transferred certain *Rhizobium* genes to *A. vinelandii* and succeeded in getting the latter to stick tightly to clover roots. If genes that specify binding to corn roots rather than clover roots can be introduced into *A. vinelandii,* the corn should be able to take in the ammonia excreted by the bacteria.

In another aspect of the same project we are attempting to breed varieties of corn that will be able to meet the ener-

gy requirements of the bacterium. The corn plants currently under cultivation in the U.S. cannot support *A. vinelandii*. By selective breeding of varieties of corn from throughout the world Ela has been able to increase the production on corn roots of carbon compounds that serve as a source of energy and electrons for nitrogen fixation by *A. vinelandii*. We have now developed corn plants capable of obtaining perhaps 1 percent of their nitrogen from the bacterial association, and we are sufficiently encouraged by our results to try to improve the percentage.

Plants can benefit from many other associations with microorganisms that are just beginning to be understood. At the University of California at Berkeley biologists have shown that the addition of certain strains of the bacterium *Pseudomonas putida* to sugar beet seeds or to potatoes increases the yield of the plant. It appears the bacterium secretes agents that sequester iron in the soil. By this means the iron near the roots of the plant is made unavailable to potentially harmful fungi and bacteria that need iron for growth.

The soil fungi called mycorrhizae colonize plant roots and can create what amounts to an extension of the root system of the plant. For example, they can make phosphate available to plants in phosphate-poor soil by converting the phosphate into a soluble form and transporting it to the roots of the plants. Mycorrhizae can also transport water to the plant, collected beyond the reach of the plant's root system. Plants grown on land reclaimed from strip-mining have been inoculated with strains of mycorrhizae. Other strains may soon have considerable economic importance in forestry because they stimulate the growth of tree seedlings. So far, however, there has been relative-

AUGMENTED ROOT SYSTEM is formed when loblolly pine seedlings are inoculated with the soil fungus *Pisolithus tinctorius*, a species of mycorrhiza. In the upper photograph the fungi are absent and the surface area of the roots is limited. In the lower photograph the mycorrhizae contribute to a denser root system with a larger surface area for the absorption of water and nutrients. The inoculated seedlings grow more rapidly and are more likely to survive. Colonies of mycorrhizae can also extend into regions of the soil not accessible to the root system of a plant, thereby increasing the volume of the soil that can be tapped by the root system.

Sometimes it does pay to put all your eggs in one basket.

Despite the old adage, putting your eggs in one basket can make sense. If you're talking about financial eggs—and the basket is Bank of America! Especially if you still have a lot of goals yet to be achieved. Because that's when you can use all the help you can get. And the more you use us, the more help we can be.

A wide range of financial services. At Bank of America, you'll find a myriad of services that are valuable when used separately—invaluable when used together. Take Combined Balance Service,™ for instance. With it, you can use your savings account to help you get checking free of monthly charges. Even Interest Checking. Or say you're ready to buy a second car or a bigger house. If you have a good working relationship with us, it's easier for us to advise you about your financing needs—to be of more assistance to you with financial planning and give you better advice about how to succeed in today's complex economic environment.

More money convenience. When you bank at Bank of America, you have access to the services provided by California's largest financial institution. Services like Money Transfer Service and, if you qualify, Instant Cash for overdraft protection and BankAmericard® Visa.® And since many of our branches offer VERSATELLER™ Pushbutton Banking™ machines, you can do your banking every day from 6 a.m. to midnight. Put it all together and you'll see why putting it all together at Bank of America means you can spend less time on banking and more time on the things you really want to do.

Now is the time to start building a permanent relationship with us. That way, we can be an even greater help to you today, and in the future. So come in and talk to one of our financial officers and we'll be glad to share our expertise with you. And show you why it really can pay to put your financial eggs in one basket.

BANK OF AMERICA

EQUAL HOUSING LENDER

Bank of America NT&SA • Member FDIC

ly little work done to match specific strains of mycorrhizae to specific plants and growing conditions.

The culture of individual plant cells or groups of cells can provide a source of plant products that is not subject to variability of crop yields or to the uncertainties of international trade. Many plant products, such as pharmaceuticals, pesticides and flavoring agents, have been isolated from tropical plants and can probably be produced by growing plant cells in large fermenters. Moreover, the individual plant cell is an extraordinarily efficient and convenient medium in which to develop new plant varieties. When plant cells are exposed to a mutagen and placed in a stressful environment, varieties adapted to the stress quickly appear and can be selected for culturing.

When a stress such as a toxic agent or the lack of an essential nutrient is imposed, only those mutant cells that by chance are adapted to the stress will survive. In successive generations of cells the progeny of the selected cells can be developed into finely tuned organisms adapted to a specific set of environmental conditions. The same method has long been employed in selecting industrial microorganisms such as molds and bacteria that can synthesize antibiotic agents resistant to degradation.

Once the desired plant cell has been selected it can be grown in culture to form the mass of unorganized tissue called a callus. Plant hormones can sometimes cause the callus to become organized into the stems, roots and other differentiated parts of the mature plant. A plant resistant to the fungal toxin that causes southern corn leaf blight was developed from tissue culture by biologists at the University of Minnesota. They applied the toxin to the culture and then selected the resistant cell lines.

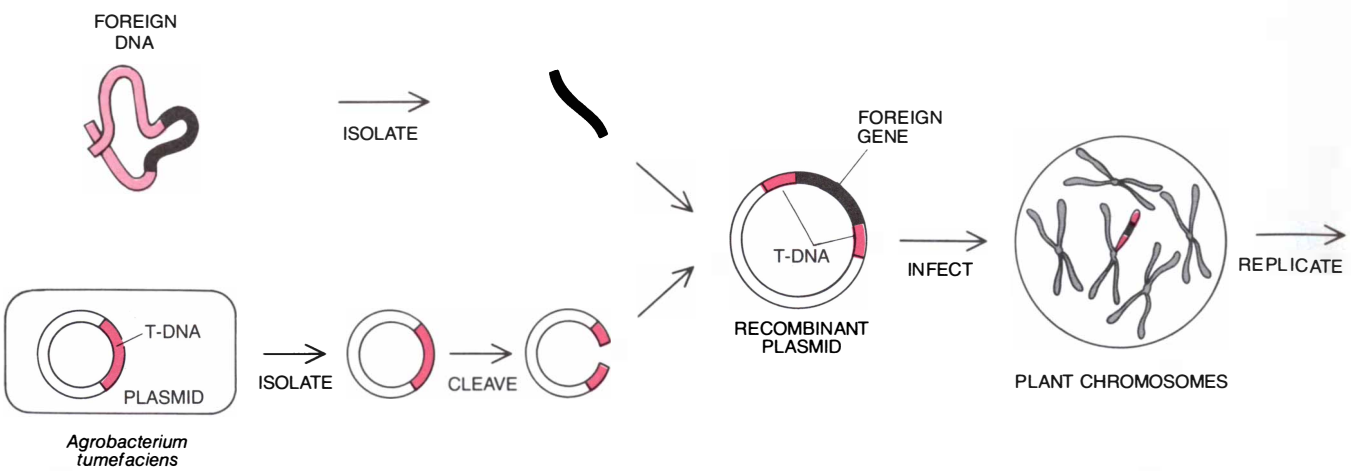
Only a few plants have been successfully regenerated from single cells, and the regenerated plants do not always inherit the properties selected for in the single cell. A herbicide-resistant cell does not necessarily give rise to a herbicide-resistant plant, even though the individual cells remain herbicide-resistant when they are grown again in culture. Moreover, single plant cells grown in culture are usually diploid or polyploid: each cell has at least two copies of every chromosome. The genetic information carried by the cell is therefore coded at least twice. In these circumstances most mutations are recessive. The recessive gene has no effect on the parent plant, but it may make its presence felt in succeeding generations. As a result the characteristics of the progeny of the cells cannot be predicted with certainty. Haploid cells, which have only one copy of each chromosome, have now begun to be cultured, and it should be easier to detect the mutants.

Removing the walls of a plant cell with enzymes gives rise to the naked cell called a protoplast. Protoplasts from two unrelated plants can be made to fuse, creating a single cell that can regenerate a cell wall and grow for many generations in a nutrient solution. In a sense the process is equivalent to sexual reproduction between different species of plants, but a mature hybrid plant is seldom generated. At the Max Planck Institute for Biology in Tübingen protoplasts from a potato and a tomato were fused and did develop into a mature hybrid plant that has been given the name pomato. The pomato plant is sterile, however, and bears neither potatoes in the ground nor tomato fruits hanging from the stems.

The transfer of genes from one organism to another represents the most sophisticated application of microbiological strategies to agriculture, but it is the least well developed of the three I have mentioned. Indeed, compared with the recombinant-DNA methods developed for work with animal genes the work done with plant genes is quite limited. The principles of foreign gene insertion, however, are the same for plant cells as they are for animal cells and for bacterial cells.

In order to insert a plant gene into a bacterium it is first necessary to isolate the gene by means of the enzymes known as restriction endonucleases. The target gene must then be transported inside the host cell by a plasmid or virus vector. In this way workers in a number of laboratories have cloned plant genes in the bacterium *Escherichia coli*. The successful introduction of a foreign gene into a cell, however, does not always mean that the protein product of the gene will be expressed by the cell. For proteins to be expressed additional intracellular chemistry must be set in motion, and it is not yet understood precisely how this can be accomplished in every case.

If microbiologists succeed in expressing plant proteins in bacteria, the proteins can be made by growing the bacteria in fermentation tanks. The process could then be carried one step further, at least in principle. Numerous valuable plant products such as pharmaceuticals, pesticides, oils, waxes and flavoring agents are generally synthesized by plants in multistage chemical reactions where several enzymes take part. If the genes for all the enzymes can be expressed in a bacterium, the bacterium can in effect become a factory for the synthesis of the plant compound.



INTRODUCTION OF FOREIGN DNA into plant cells may be accomplished by exploiting the natural infection process of the bacterium *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*. The bacterium carries a plasmid (a loop of DNA separate from the bacterial chromosome) that causes crown-gall tumors in most dicotyledonous plants and induces the infected plant cells to synthesize the nitrogen compounds called opines. The mechanism of the infection has been termed genetic colonization: a section of the plasmid called T-DNA combines with chromosomal DNA in the nucleus of the plant cell. The plasmid might therefore serve as a vector for inserting foreign DNA into plant cells. The

A much more challenging goal is the introduction of foreign genes into plant cells. Several potential paths are being explored. Perhaps the most promising method focuses on a plasmid found in the bacterium *Agrobacterium tumefaciens. A. tumefaciens* induces a tumor called a crown gall in wounded dicotyledons, the large class of flowering plants that includes legumes, tomatoes and numerous other crop plants (but not the cereal grains). The mechanism of the infecting bacterium is to insert a segment of its plasmid into a chromosome of the plant cells. The inserted segment is called transfer DNA, or T-DNA.

The insertion of T-DNA is therefore a natural form of genetic modification, and it endows the infected plant cells with several unusual properties that are probably essential to the formation of a crown gall. Ordinary cells proliferate in culture only in the presence of plant growth hormones, but cells infected with *A. tumefaciens* do not require such hormones. The release of the cells from hormonal control may account for their unusually rapid growth in the tumor. The infected cells also manufacture the enzyme opine synthetase, which catalyzes the synthesis by the plant cell of nitrogen-rich compounds called opines. Opines seem to be required by *A. tumefaciens* as a source of nitrogen. Hence crown galls can be understood as the outcome of a biological strategy developed by the bacterium to secure the nitrogen necessary for its growth.

Investigators at the University of Leiden have been able to infect tobacco cells in culture with *A. tumefaciens.* They showed that tobacco plants regenerated from the infected cells retained the T-DNA and continued to make opine synthetase. More recently investigators at the Max Planck Institute for Plant Breeding in Cologne demonstrated that the gene coding for the expression of opine synthetase is passed on through the seed to succeeding generations. Such results justify some confidence that if foreign genes can be spliced into the *A. tumefaciens* plasmid in association with the T-DNA, they will be expressed as proteins in the mature plant and carried through the seed to the progeny.

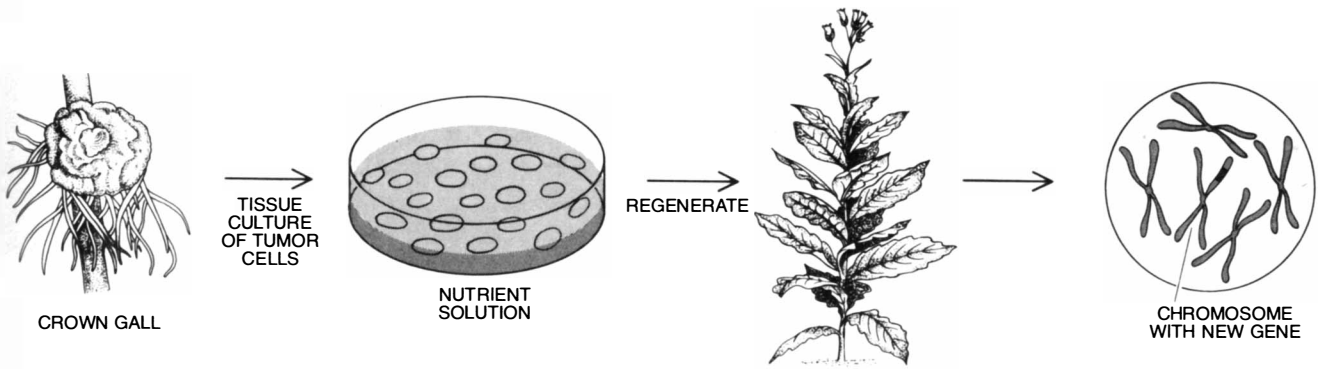
Another method under investigation for introducing foreign DNA into plant cells utilizes the cauliflower mosaic virus (CaMV). DNA from this plant virus can be isolated and spliced into a plasmid for insertion into the bacterium *E. coli.* There the DNA can be amplified, or reproduced many times; the amplified DNA retains the ability to infect the cauliflower and a range of plants related to it. Investigators are now working to determine which places along the viral DNA are suitable for the introduction of foreign genes.

If genes can be introduced into plant cells at will, one important application may be the insertion of nitrogen-fixing genes (*nif* genes) into cereal plants. Workers at the University of Sussex have assembled a bacterial plasmid that includes all 17 of the known *nif* genes from the nitrogen-fixing bacterium *Klebsiella pneumoniae.* When the plasmid was transferred to *E. coli,* the latter, which is normally incapable of fixing nitrogen, became a nitrogen-fixing microorganism.

Even more promising are the recent successes of groups of investigators at Cornell University, the Pasteur Institute and the University of Paris. They introduced the 17 *nif* genes of *K. pneumoniae* into yeast. Yeasts, being eukaryotic organisms whereas bacteria are prokaryotic, are much more closely related to the higher plants than they are to bacteria. Hence the introduction of *nif* genes into yeast cells marks the crossing of a significant biological barrier.

Nevertheless, the yeast cells carrying the *nif* genes were not able to express the inserted DNA: they were not able to fix nitrogen from the atmosphere. The failure illustrates the complexity associated with the genetic engineering of biological functions embodied in more than one gene. The transferred DNA must first be transcribed correctly into RNA by the yeast. Correct transcription cannot be assumed as a matter of course, because the yeast must correctly interpret the bacterial signals to start the transcription and to stop it. The RNA must then be exported from the nucleus and be recognized by the ribosomes as a messenger RNA for translation into protein. The 17 proteins that express the *nif* genes must then function together in the foreign cytoplasm of the yeast cell. There may be impediments to such functioning. For example, the nitrogenase molecule has in its structure a large number of iron atoms. Enough iron is evidently on hand in nitrogen-fixing bacteria, but it is not certain the heavy demand for iron can be met in a plant cell without jeopardizing the synthesis of other enzymes essential to the plant.

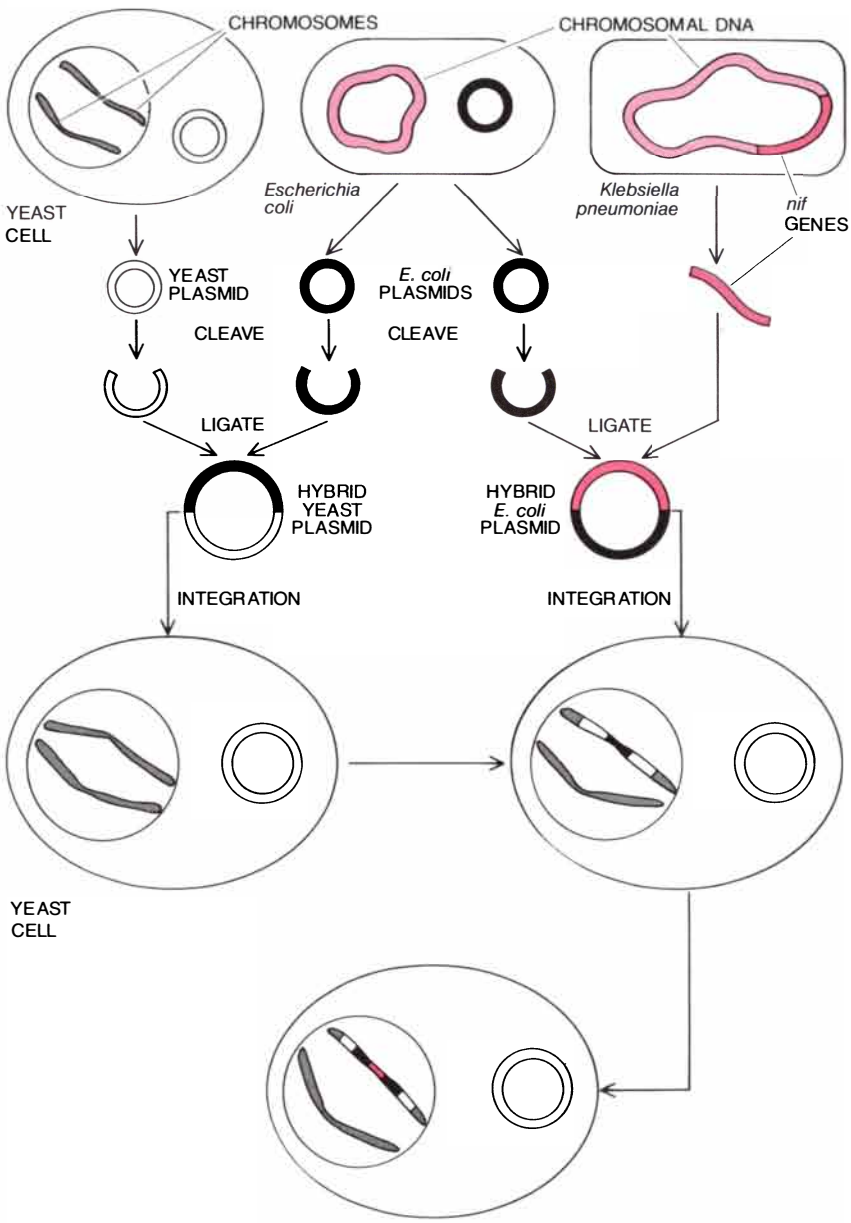
Doubts of this kind can arise even when it seems at first that the expression of a particular plant function calls for only one gene. The enhancement of protein quality in food is a major goal of agricultural research. The stored proteins in some grains and other seeds, for instance, are deficient in amino acids essential to human and animal nutrition. It was once thought that the insertion of a single gene, coding for a stored protein with a better balance of amino acids, would be sufficient to improve the quali-



plasmid would be cut open at a site within the T-DNA and the foreign gene would be spliced into it. The T-DNA is replicated when the tumor cells of a crown gall divide, and tumor cells grown in tissue culture continue to carry T-DNA. It has been possible in some cases to regenerate a plant from the cultured tumor cells; T-DNA is still found in the chromosomes of the regenerated plant. Moreover, the gene carried by T-DNA that codes for the enzyme opine synthetase is passed on to daughter plants as if it were an ordinary dominant gene. If foreign genes inserted into T-DNA are also transmitted to plant progeny, new plant strains could be genetically engineered.

ty of the protein. It is now understood that major seed proteins are often collections of numerous related proteins, each of the latter being encoded by a separate gene. In order to make a significant improvement in the overall quality of the stored protein many of the genes might have to be individually modified.

Although such technical problems may be difficult to overcome, they are probably not the limiting factors in the application of microbiology to agriculture. In the long run more stringent constraints will be the comparatively small financial commitment to basic research in agriculture and the loss of irreplace-



GENES FOR NITROGEN FIXATION have been inserted into the genome of a yeast in a two-stage process. In the first stage plasmids from the bacterium *Escherichia coli* and from a yeast cell are cleaved and then fused to form a single hybrid plasmid. The hybrid plasmid can be recognized by the yeast cell and integrated into its chromosomal DNA. In the second stage the genes to be introduced into the yeast are isolated from the chromosome of the bacterium *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, a nitrogen-fixing organism. The genes, collectively designated *nif*, code for some 17 proteins. Another *E. coli* plasmid is cleaved and the isolated *nif* genes are introduced to form a second hybrid plasmid. Because of the bacterial DNA already inserted into one of the yeast chromosomes the yeast cell recognizes the hybrid *E. coli* plasmid. The plasmid is then integrated into the yeast chromosome. The experiment was carried out by Aladar A. Szalay and his co-workers at Cornell University. Although the insertion of the prokaryotic *nif* genes into the eukaryotic yeast cells demonstrates that genetic material can be transferred between different biological systems, the nitrogen-fixing proteins are not expressed in yeast.

It pays to expand in Europe

*** Return on investment in manufacturing in Europe up 28%**
*** Return on investment in trading up 21%**
*** Return on investment in finance and insurance sectors up 26%**

Expand where it pays- in Redditch, England

and be in Shakespeare Country

The facts speak for themselves: Europe is taking on an increasingly significant role in the business strategies of U.S. Corporations as levels of investment and profit achieve new heights.

As a result, Corporate policy-makers are looking even more closely at investment and expansion opportunities in Europe.

For many of these Corporations, England is the obvious location for administrative functions.

And at the 'Hub of England' is Redditch, a thriving business community situate midway between Birmingham (England's second city) and Shakespeare's birthplace at Stratford- upon-Avon.

Redditch combines a first class modern working environment with a tradition of industry and enterprise stretching back hundreds of years.

Mail off the coupon for more information about Redditch - we may have the solution to your office needs in Europe.

** Source: Survey of Current Business Aug. 1979.*

REDDITCH
The Hub of England

Please send me further information about Redditch

Name _____

Position in Company _____

Company _____

Address _____

_____

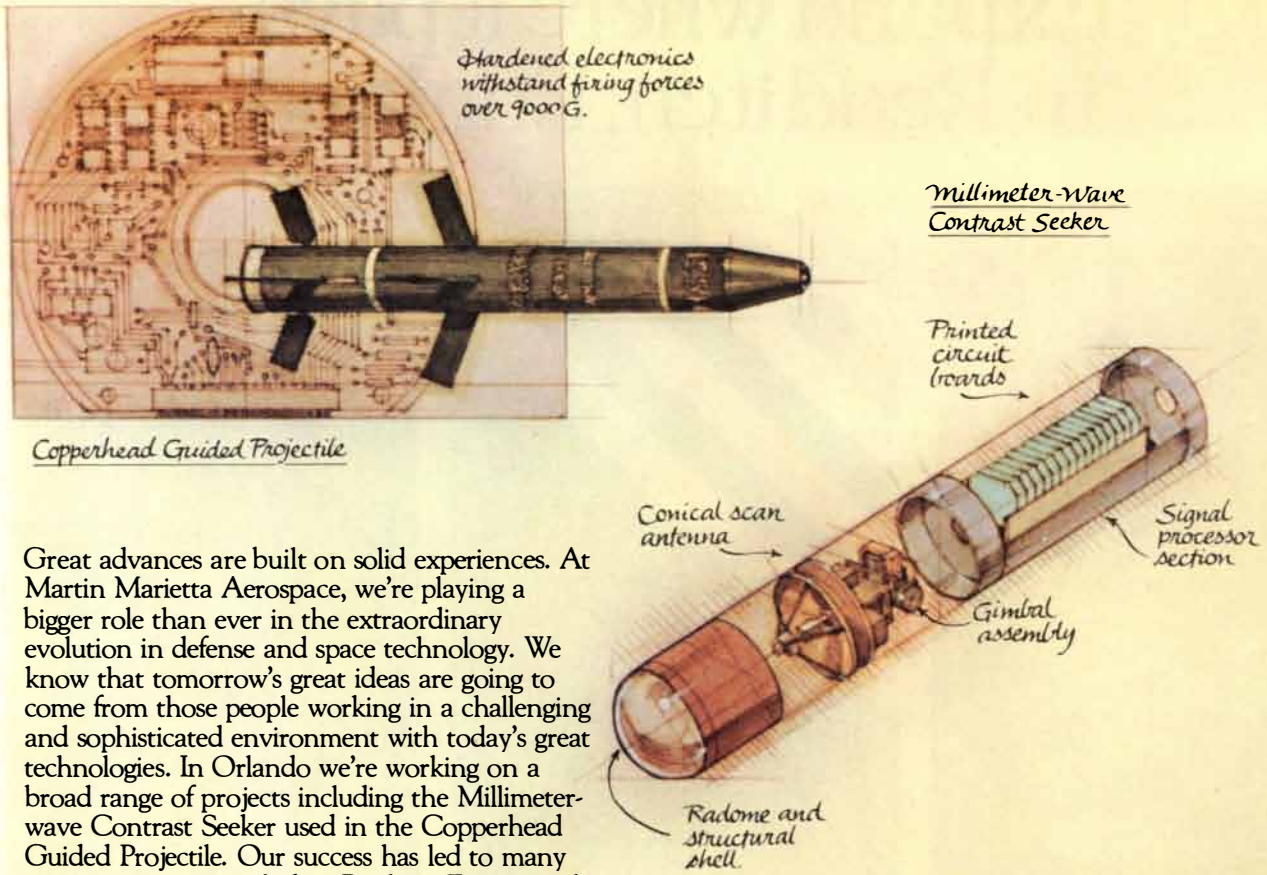
_____

Redditch Development Corporation,
c/o The Economist Newspaper Inc.,
75 Rockefeller Plaza,
New York. NY 10019 U.S.A.

REDDITCH

Engineers and other Aerospace Professionals

Your great ideas today could become a great advance tomorrow at Martin Marietta



Great advances are built on solid experiences. At Martin Marietta Aerospace, we're playing a bigger role than ever in the extraordinary evolution in defense and space technology. We know that tomorrow's great ideas are going to come from those people working in a challenging and sophisticated environment with today's great technologies. In Orlando we're working on a broad range of projects including the Millimeter-wave Contrast Seeker used in the Copperhead Guided Projectile. Our success has led to many on-going projects including Pershing II, a tactical interdiction system, and TADS/PNVS, a helicopter fire control system.

When you join Martin Marietta, you'll find the excellent salary and complete benefits coverage you'd expect from an industry leader. Learn about career opportunities in Orlando, or our other locations by sending your resume or a letter to the facility of your choice.

In Orlando: P.O. Box 5837-MP#9, Orlando, FL 32855; **In Denver:** P.O. Box 179, Mail #D-1311, Denver, CO 80201; **At Vandenberg AFB:** Box 1681, Vandenberg AFB, CA 93437; **In New Orleans:** Michoud Assembly Facility, Box 29304, New Orleans, LA 70189.

We are an equal opportunity employer, m/f/h.

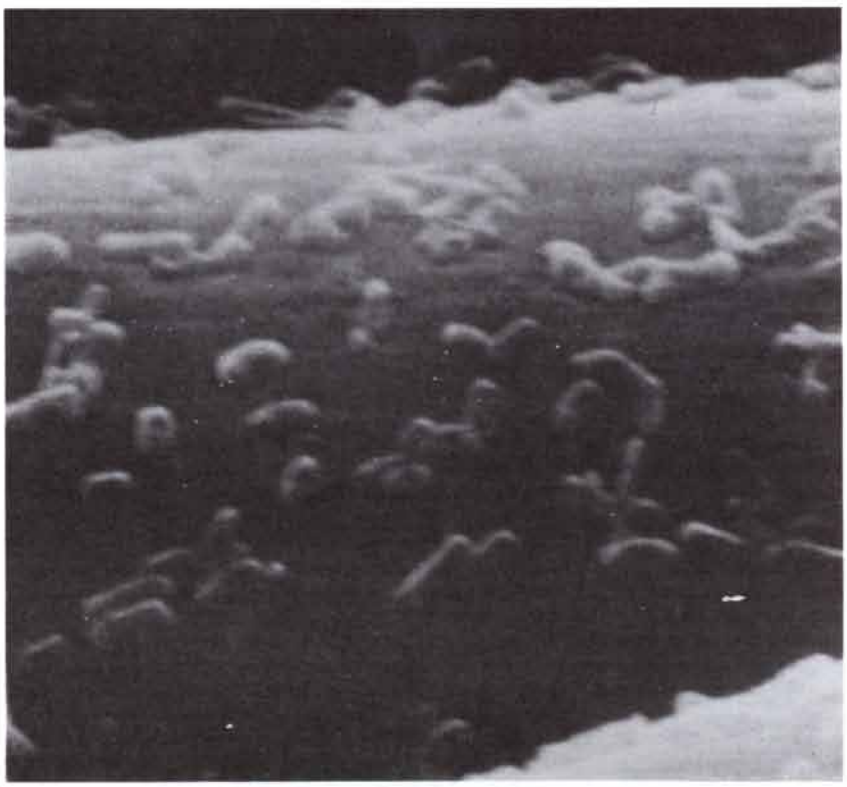
MARTIN MARIETTA

able genetic resources from the total gene pool.

According to an analysis prepared by the National Science Foundation, Federal support for research into all aspects of plant science was $206 million in the fiscal year 1977, 2.3 percent of the $8.8 billion spent by the Federal Government during that year for all basic and applied research. President Reagan's 1982 budget calls for a $691-million research allocation to the Department of Agriculture, a 5.3 percent share of the $13.1 billion now proposed for all basic and applied research in 1982. Of this, however, only a small fraction will be available for studies of agricultural applications of microbiology. For example, the Competitive Research Grants program of the Department of Agriculture will administer $26 million in basic research funds in 1982 for studies of nitrogen fixation, photosynthesis, genetic mechanisms of crop improvement, plant and environmental stress and the requirements of human nutrition. Microbiological studies will receive only $4.8 million. Of all recombinant-DNA investigations monitored by the National Institutes of Health, Federal grants for genetic engineering in agriculture amounted to only $1 million in the fiscal year 1980, compared with some $24.5 million for medical research and $27.5 million for general research.

The accelerated destruction of the gene pool is doubly ironic. It is caused primarily by the clearing of land in the tropical rain forest for farming. Moreover, it is happening at the dawn of an age in which such genetic wealth, until now a relatively inaccessible trust fund, is becoming a currency with high immediate value. Estimates place the annual extinction rate as high as 1,000 species per year, and there is still little organized effort for maintaining genetic reserves.

The microbiologist will be only one worker among many who will participate in the development of new field crops and agricultural practices. It is particularly important that the microbiologist work closely with the plant breeder, not only because of the experience of breeders with the effects of laboratory modifications on field crops but also because many of the techniques of the two disciplines actually overlap. Future work may disclose unexpected barriers to the application of microbiological ideas in agriculture, but it is at least as likely that such ideas can readily be put into practice.



BENEFICIAL BACTERIA attached to the root hairs of a sugar beet plant are enlarged 6,300 diameters in a scanning electron micrograph made by Trevor V. Suslow and Douglas G. Garrott of the University of California at Berkeley. The bacteria *Pseudomonas putida* suppress the growth of other microorganisms near the roots by extracting iron from the soil. The iron is tightly bound in molecules synthesized by the symbiotic bacteria and so becomes unavailable to fungi and other soil bacteria that could be harmful to the plant roots. Competition for essential nutrients is thereby reduced and significantly higher sugar beet yields can result.

THE AMATEUR SCIENTIST

Why do honey and syrup form a coil when they are poured?

by Jearl Walker

Pour a thin stream of honey onto a small pool of honey and you will probably see that the fluid forms a coil on the surface of the pool. Syrup, glue, oil and liquid chocolate are among the other viscous fluids that behave this way. As an alternative to coiling you may see the fluid fold back and forth in a ribbonlike pattern or wrap around in some other pattern.

The first study of these phenomena was made in the late 1950's by George Barnes, who is now at the University of Nevada at Reno, and two of his students, James MacKenzie and Richard Woodcock. They worked with a heavy oil (No. 140 transmission oil) that they poured into a dish. When the stream was circular in cross section, it coiled on reaching the pool. When it was fairly flat because it had been poured over an edge, it resembled a folded ribbon. If the stream fell onto a surface that was not horizontal, it formed a figure eight or a petal-like figure.

The frequency of coiling depended on the height from which the stream fell, being larger with a greater fall. This relation was linear for long distances but more complicated for short ones. A certain minimum fall was necessary. If the fall was less than the minimum, the fluid entered the pool without coiling. When the fall was more than the minimum, the stream reached the surface at a rate of speed higher than the rate at which the pool could absorb it, and so it began to form a coil.

When the stream fell quite far, the coiling generated a cone of oil that rose slightly above the surface of the pool. A stream that coiled quickly usually resulted in a relatively high cone, although the height was never more than a centimeter. A cavity formed at the top of a tall cone as the stream coiled there.

Barnes observed that a given particle of oil in a falling stream does not spiral around the central axis of the stream but instead is confined to a vertical plane. As the particle approaches the region of coiling it moves to the side and off the central axis before continuing on to the surface of the pool. Barnes tried to follow the motion of individual particles of fluid by inserting particles of aluminum into the stream, but the motion of the particles was too swift to monitor.

Barnes then directed the light of a stroboscope at the stream. When he matched the frequency of the flashing to the coiling frequency of the stream, each flash illuminated the stream at the same phase of coiling. To Barnes the coil appeared to be stationary. If the frequency of the stroboscope was slightly out of synchrony with the coiling rate, the coil appeared to turn slowly. Barnes could monitor a rapidly turning coil by effectively slowing it in this way.

The next investigation of liquid coils was made by Geoffrey Ingram Taylor, one of this century's leading investigators of fluid dynamics. He attributed the coiling to mechanical stress in the viscous stream as it approached a pool of fluid at fairly high speed. The fluid in a stream increases in speed as it falls because of the acceleration of gravity. The stream also becomes narrower. Both effects figure in Taylor's explanation of coiling.

To make sense of the narrowing one must compare the speed of the fluid as it passes through two cross-sectional slices of the stream, one near the bottom and the other near the top. The volume of fluid passing through a slice each second must be the same, but the speed is greater through the bottom slice than it is through the top one. Because the same volume of fluid must pass through each slice each second and also because the stream is moving faster through the bottom slice the bottom slice must have a smaller diameter.

If the stream is moving faster than the fluid can enter the pool, the stream begins to slow down and to widen a short distance above the pool. Each particle of fluid passing through the narrowest section of the stream must slow down. The force responsible for the slowing is stress in the part of the stream just below the narrowest section. Stress is the force per unit area of a cross section through the stream. It is greatest at the narrowest section because the area is smallest there. If the stream is sufficiently narrow, the stress causes the stream to buckle to one side.

The deflected stream also further buckles in a direction that will initiate a circular motion around the central axis of the stream. Coiling begins. More fluid enters the buckled region, waiting its turn to enter the pool, and the stream moves in a circle around the central axis.

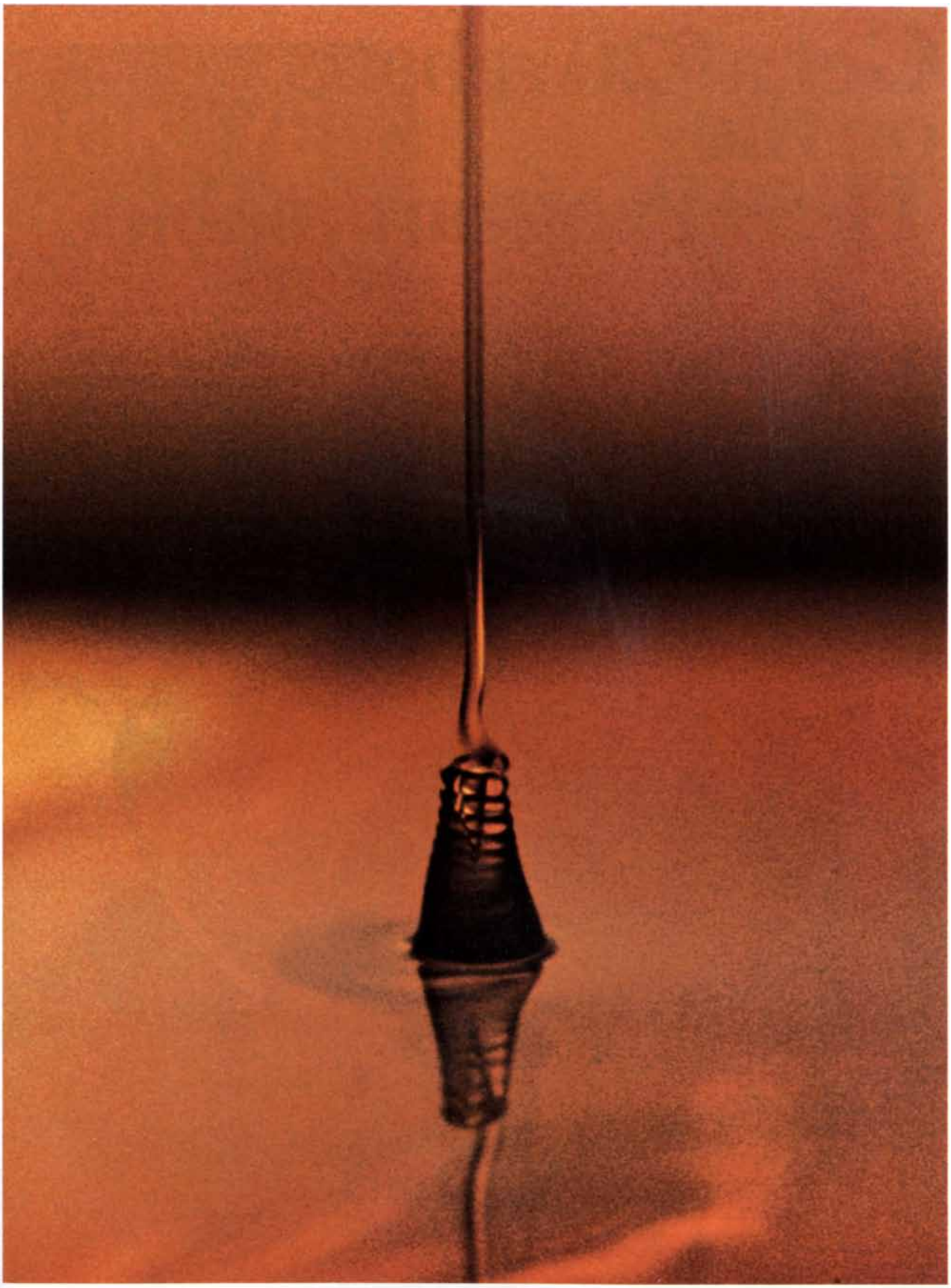
The coiling frequency depends on how narrow the stream becomes. A narrow stream buckles only slightly to the side, so that the radius of the coil it makes is small. Since the speed of the fluid particles in such a thin stream is relatively high, the fluid coils around the central axis with a high frequency.

In a stream with a somewhat wider narrow region the buckle is farther to the side, creating a coil with a larger radius. The frequency of coiling is lower because the speed of the fluid particles in a wider stream is lower. The size of the narrowest portion of the stream depends on the size of the stream as it leaves the container and the distance through which it falls. If one examines streams flowing from an aperture of a fixed size, only the height matters.

Suppose the container of fluid is initially just above the pool and is then raised. At first the distance of fall is too short to give rise to coiling. When coiling begins, the stream is still fairly wide even at its narrowest point. The coils have a large radius and the coiling frequency is low. As the container is raised more the thinnest section of the stream narrows, the radius of the coils decreases and the coiling frequency increases. Eventually the container is so high that the stream breaks up into drops.

Taylor made his studies primarily with streams of glycerin. When the glycerin fell through air, its acceleration was the normal acceleration of gravity: g. To vary the acceleration Taylor made a stream fall through a less viscous fluid. The acceleration of the stream was then less than g because the surrounding fluid provided an upward buoyancy. The acceleration of the stream was calculated from a comparison of the specific gravity of the stream and that of the surrounding fluid. The specific gravity of glycerin is about 1.255, of fresh water 1. The difference is .255, and so the acceleration of a glycerin stream falling through fresh water is .255 g.

Such a stream does not increase in speed as rapidly as it would in air. Suppose an experiment is designed to compare the coiling in the two cases. Glycerin will be poured through the same aperture and from the same height. When it falls through air, it coils at a certain fre-



A falling stream of corn syrup forming a tall coil on a pool of corn syrup

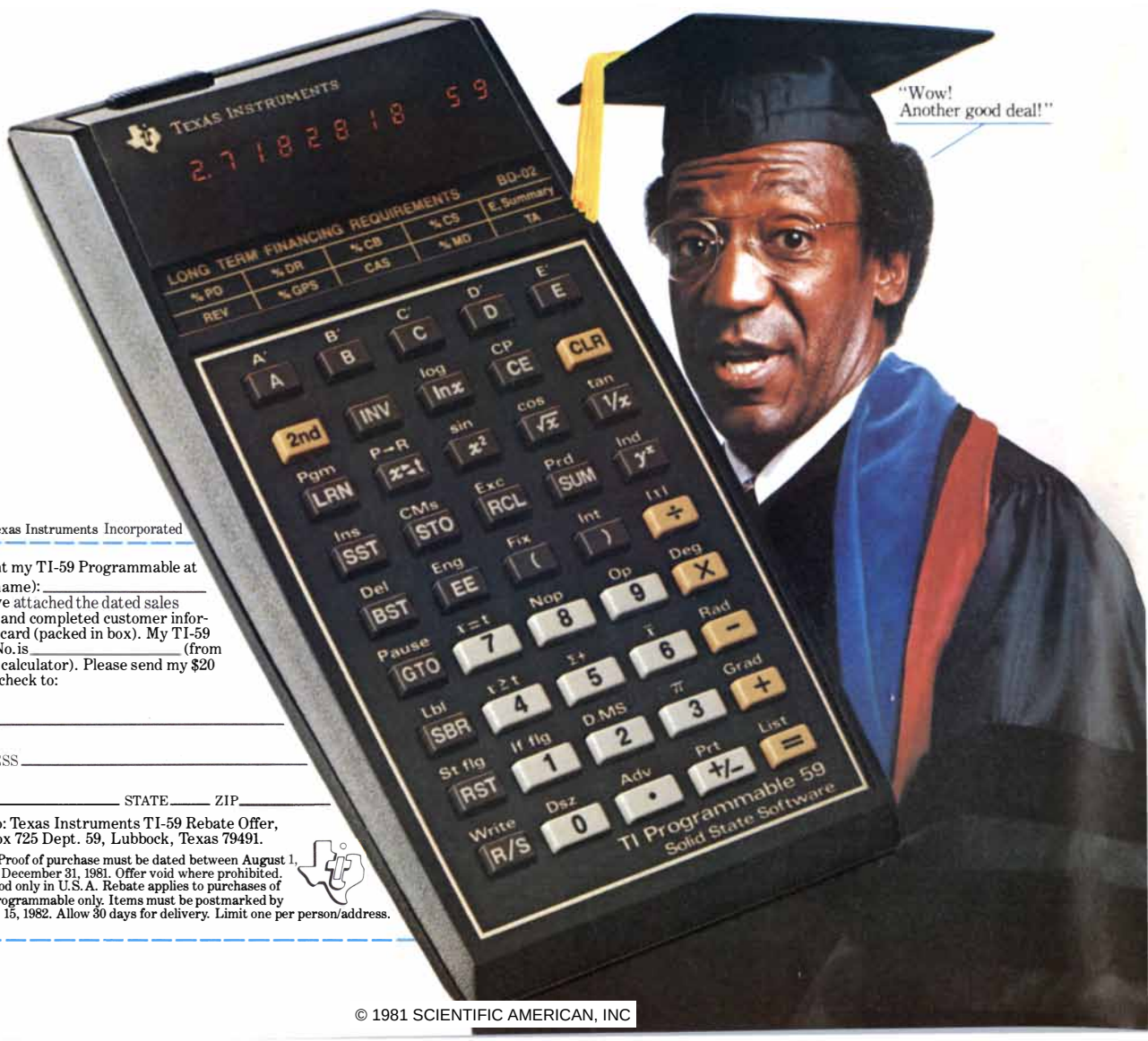
Get a $20 rebate on the TI-59 Programmable.

Even without the $20 rebate, the TI-59 is special—it's our most powerful programmable, and we've never offered it at a lower price.

The TI-59 gives you up to 960 program steps, or up to 100 memories, plus magnetic card read/write capability. You can also slip in one of TI's Solid State Software™ modules and successfully attack complex engineering, business, statistical and scientific problems. And by adding the optional PC-100C printer, you can record your calculations. But if that's not enough, any TI-59 owner can join our Professional Program Exchange for access to over 2500 additional programs.

So if you like the idea of having real programmable power, take us up on the rebate offer. Buy a TI-59 now, and fill out the coupon below. The offer ends December 31, 1981.

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
INCORPORATED



I bought my TI-59 Programmable at (store name): _____ and have attached the dated sales receipt and completed customer information card (packed in box). My TI-59 Serial No. is _____ (from back of calculator). Please send my $20 rebate check to:

NAME _____

ADDRESS _____

CITY _____ STATE _____ ZIP _____

Send to: Texas Instruments TI-59 Rebate Offer, P. O. Box 725 Dept. 59, Lubbock, Texas 79491.

NOTE: Proof of purchase must be dated between August 1, 1981 and December 31, 1981. Offer void where prohibited. Offer good only in U.S.A. Rebate applies to purchases of TI-59 Programmable only. Items must be postmarked by January 15, 1982. Allow 30 days for delivery. Limit one per person/address.

1001

quency. When it falls through water, the coiling frequency is lower because just above the pool of glycerin the stream moves slower than it does in air.

Taylor also made a stream of glycerin fall through two layers of fluid, each layer less dense than the glycerin. The stream coiled as it passed from the first layer into the second. The first layer had the smaller specific gravity, as was shown by the fact that it floated on the second layer. Thus the acceleration of the stream was larger in the first layer than it was in the second. If the change in acceleration at the boundary between layers was sufficiently large, the stream was stressed as it crossed the boundary. If the stream was sufficiently thin at that point, it buckled and coiled as it descended through the bottom layer.

Once a stream begins to coil, its downward speed changes. The ratio of the two speeds depends on the diameter of both the stream and the coil. The ratio is equal to the diameter of the stream divided by the product of pi and the diameter of the coil.

In my investigations of the coiling of viscous liquids I set up a ring stand to hold a paper cup inside an aquarium. Below the cup was a small plastic platform onto which a fluid stream fell from a hole in the bottom of the cup. The platform was convenient when I photographed the coiling stream because the draining of the fluid off the platform ensured that the coils would always be at the same height above the bottom of the aquarium.

I made the hole in the cup with the point of a pencil. I tried to make the hole smooth on the inside of the cup so that small flaps of paper would not alter the flow of the fluid. The diameter of the hole was about four millimeters. The cup, which I set snugly in a ring clamped to the stand, could be raised or lowered by adjustments of the clamps.

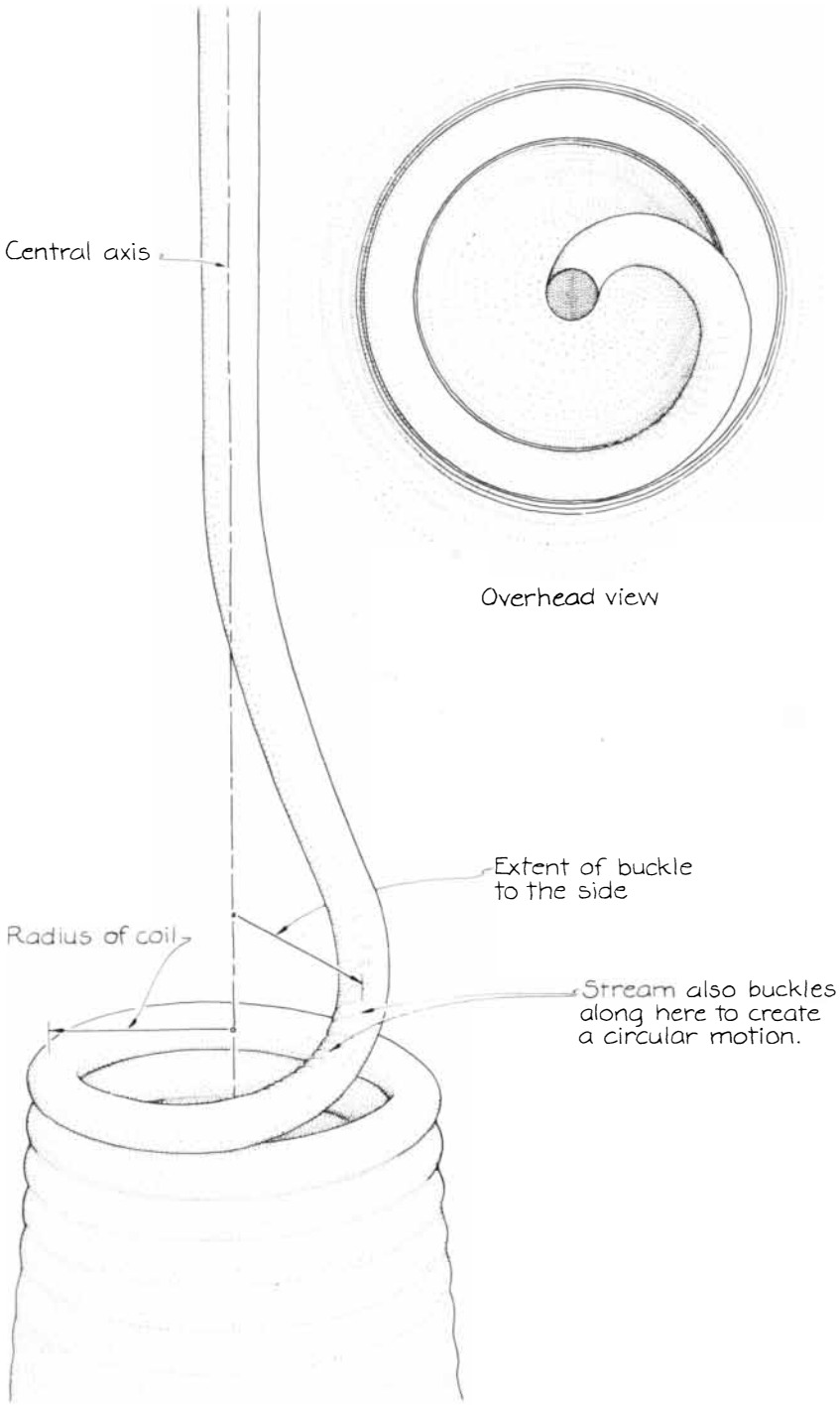
I started with Karo dark corn syrup. The stream of syrup fell through air and onto a shallow pool of syrup on the platform. The height of the fall was the distance between the platform and the top surface of the syrup in the cup. (Because of the fluid pressure on the syrup at the bottom of the cup a particle of syrup going through the hole has the same speed it would have had if it had fallen from the top surface of the syrup.)

When the height of the fall was between seven and 13 centimeters, the stream coiled as it hit the pool. With a shorter fall there was no coiling. With a longer fall the syrup emerged from the cup in spurts. Each spurt displayed some coiling or a more complex twisting, but there was no sustained coiling and no cone.

When the fall was fairly long, the stream was quite thin just above the platform and quickly built up a cone that extended about a centimeter above the platform. At the top of the cone the coiling of the stream was too fast for my eye to follow. The coiling could be in either direction, but once it started it would not reverse.

When the fall was shorter, the stream was relatively thick just above the pool. No cone developed and the rate of coiling was slow. The horizontal extent of the coiling also depended on the height of the fall. In a long fall the stream extended to the sides only a few millimeters; in a short fall it extended about a centimeter.

I partially filled the aquarium with tap water and repeated the experiments. The syrup fell through the air and then through the water. The fall was relatively long, so that the coiling was fairly



Areas of interest in a coiling stream

fast, although the rate was lower than it was when the syrup fell only through the air from the same height. The cone in the pool of syrup was considerably less well defined than it was in the preceding demonstration because the coiling was more erratic.

I increased the specific gravity of the water by stirring in salt. The acceleration of the stream through the salt water was less than it was through the tap water. After leaving the salt water undisturbed for a long time I repeated the experiments. The coiling frequency was somewhat less than it was in the tap water. Again the coiling and the formation of the cone were not well defined.

With strong back lighting on the impact area I saw the circulation of the salt water created by the coiling. Vortexes shed by the coiling made the salt water first swirl away from the cone and then move upward and back to the falling stream of syrup.

With a considerable distance between the cup and the surface of the water the syrup fell from the cup in bursts. The lower end of each burst was a fat glob of syrup, followed by a thinner stream that eventually broke away from the hole. When the stream entered the water, it formed quite complex shapes. The glob hit the bottom first and sent a shock through the thin stream, which stretched, twisted and turned, even occasionally bouncing from the pool of syrup. In a short time the stream slowed and merged with the pool.

In another experiment I poured a layer of transmission oil over the salt water. When corn syrup was poured into the aquarium, it passed through air and then through the transmission oil, entraining some of the oil. When it descended into the salt water, it had a much greater diameter because of the added oil. The stream coiled very slowly at the bottom.

Since the transmission oil was lighter than the salt water, the downward acceleration of the stream was less than it was when the syrup fell only through salt water. At times the acceleration appeared to be zero or even negative (upward). Whenever air bubbles were trapped in the stream, I could follow the motion of components of the fluid. Usually the bubbles moved downward, but sometimes adjacent parts of the stream moved in opposite directions. Occasionally the stream stopped coiling and broke, whereupon the lower end rose back to the layer of transmission oil.

I tried to create an inverted rope coil. After filling the aquarium with tap water I submerged a plastic squeeze bottle containing viscous motor oil. Because the oil was less dense than the water it rose when I squeezed it out of the bottle. I supposed that when a layer of oil had formed on top of the water, the rising stream of oil would coil as it reached the oil layer. The driving force would be the upward buoyancy on the stream. Little or no coiling occurred, presumably because the rising stream gained speed too slowly. When it reached the oil layer, it was still moving slowly enough to merge with the layer without the stress that causes buckling. If the tank of water had been deeper so that the stream was moving faster when it reached the oil layer, the demonstration might have worked.

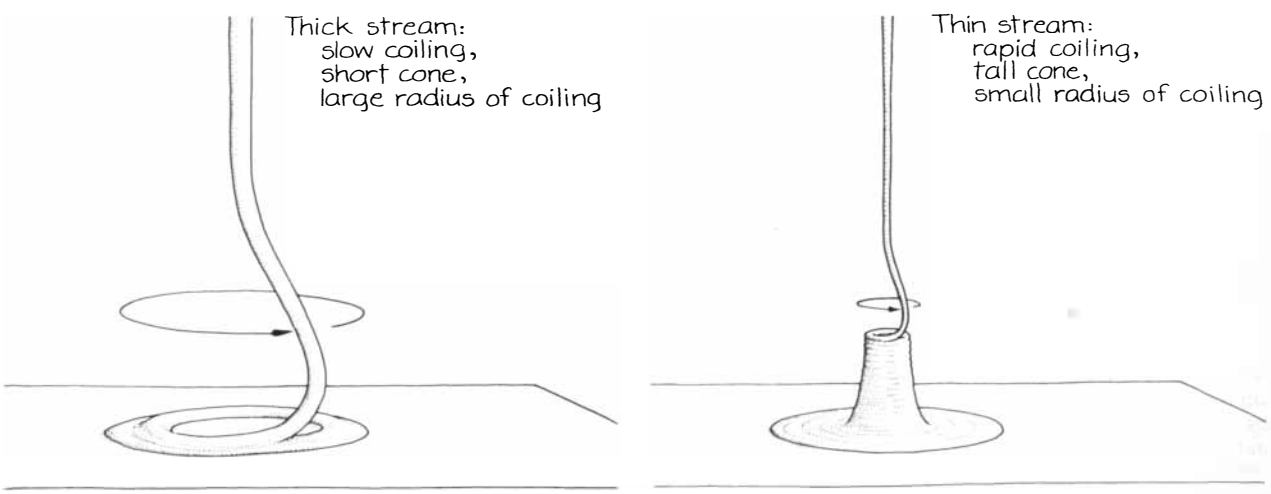
A drop of oil that emerged from the squeeze bottle rose to the oil layer and remained there for about 10 seconds. The reason for the delay was that after the drop reached the oil layer a thin layer of water remained between the two. The water layer had to be squeezed out before the drop could merge with the layer of oil. The flow of the water was hampered by the viscosity of the oil on the surface of the drop and the oil layer. Eventually the water escaped and the drop disappeared into the oil layer.

I did manage to achieve an inverted coiling with rubber cement. I submerged a small container of the cement and caused a thin stream to move upward to the surface of the water. As soon as a small area of cement was on the water surface the rising stream of cement began to coil. By adjusting the depth of the container I could control the rate of the coiling. (This demonstration makes a big mess. I ended up with rubber cement all over my hand and arm.)

I set up an experiment in which a stream of corn syrup fell through a layer of dilute ammonia (window cleaner dyed blue) and then through a layer of glycerin. The fluids were in a large beaker because filling the aquarium was getting too expensive. When I adjusted the height properly, a thin stream of syrup broke up into large, beautiful coils as it passed into the glycerin. The coils were not smooth and the planes of the successive coils were not parallel.

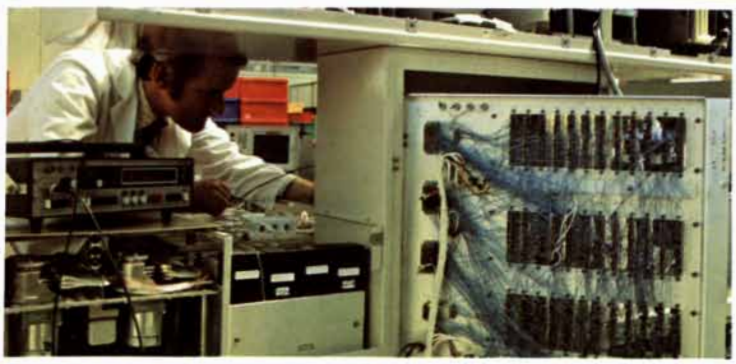
I left the demonstration in place for several days. When I returned, four distinct layers could be seen in the beaker. At the top was the blue fluid (from which the ammonia had evaporated). Next came a gray layer, then a layer of fairly clear glycerin and finally a layer of glycerin with a tint of syrup (or perhaps a dye from the syrup). I repeated my earlier experiment and then decided to lower the paper cup of syrup into the top layer of dyed fluid. The coiling of the stream entering the glycerin decreased in frequency because the stream was now thicker.

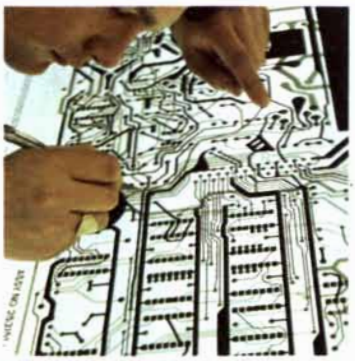
When I lowered the cup farther into the fluid, the pressure from the fluid in the beaker prevented any syrup from leaving the cup. I raised the cup above the fluid again. While the cup had been partially submerged some of the blue fluid had entered it, decreasing the viscosity of the syrup. The stream now coiled twice, once on top of the blue layer and again as it entered the region



Differences between thick and thin streams as they coil

IRELAND TODAY





Where high technology is a way of life.

Where you'll find some of the most progressive names in the electronics industry: Digital, Mostek, Dataproducts, Measurex, Analog, Amdahl, Fujitsu, Ericsson, Nippon Electronic and many more.

Ireland today, with the fastest growing population in Europe. Where 50% of the people are under 25. Where you'll find a skilled, English-speaking workforce and a close liaison between business and university research within the educational system – with particular emphasis on training facilities relevant to high technology industries.

Ireland today, the ideal environment for the successful design and manufacture of the electronic products of the future.

REPUBLIC OF IRELAND

The most profitable industrial location in Europe.

US Department of Commerce statistics for the period '74–'79 show a 29.4% average annual return on investment for US manufacturers located in the Republic of Ireland – twice the European average.

IDA Ireland
INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT AUTHORITY

The Irish government's industrial development agency has offices in New York, Tel (212)972-1000; Chicago, Houston, Los Angeles, Cleveland, San Francisco, Boston and Fort Lauderdale.

This announcement is published by IDA Ireland, 200 Park Avenue, New York, 10017, which is registered under the Foreign Agents Registration Acts, as amended, as an agent of the Government of Ireland This material is filed with the Department of Justice where the required registration statement is available for public inspection. Registration does not indicate approval of the contents by the United States Government

of clear glycerin. The first coiling was rapid and produced a small cone. The second coiling was much slower and made no cone.

Most of the fluids I investigated were of the kind termed Newtonian. The viscosity of a Newtonian fluid can be altered only by changing the temperature of the fluid. If the temperature is increased, the viscosity is decreased. To see the effect of temperature I warmed corn syrup and let it fall through air. With less viscosity the stream merged more readily with the pool. With less stress the stream buckled less. After several trials the syrup was so warm and the viscosity so low that the stream did not buckle at all and the coiling disappeared.

Two toy products made from highly viscous fluids are Slime and Silly Putty. They are so viscous that many people consider them to be solids. To see whether a descending stream of Silly Putty would coil I formed a thin roll of the stuff and hung part of it over the edge of a low table. The hanging strand descended slowly to the floor. When the lower end touched the floor, the stream began to coil into large, graceful loops. Then I put a quantity of Slime into a paper cup in the usual arrangement for generating a falling stream. The Slime emerged from the hole in the cup and then descended gradually to a tabletop, where it too began to coil.

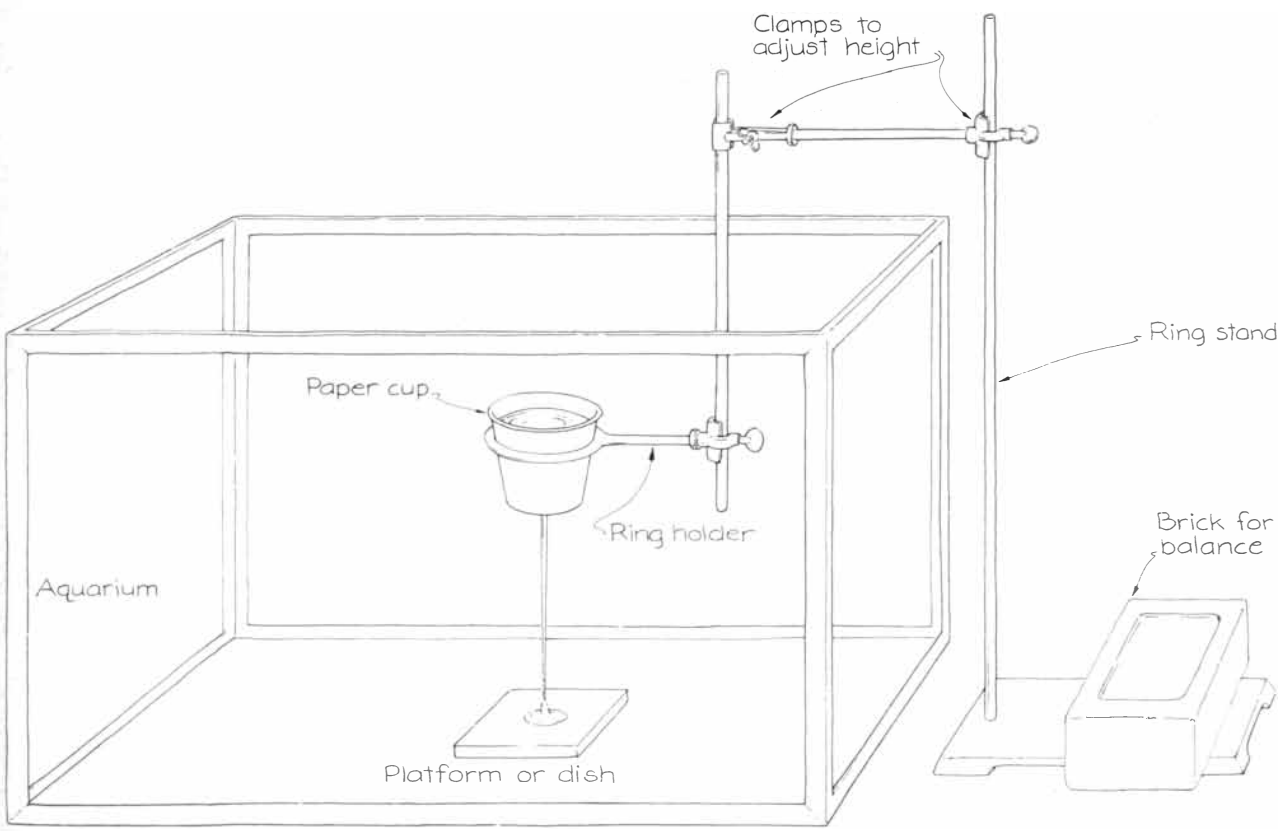
Both of these fluids are of the kind termed non-Newtonian. In such a fluid the viscosity depends not only on temperature but also on the stress on the fluid. The viscosity of Slime and Silly Putty is higher when stress is applied, but the stresses in the gradual flows I created probably did not much increase the viscosity. The effect of stress in a non-Newtonian fluid is more apparent in a mixture of cornstarch and water. When enough cornstarch is added to water to make a rather thick fluid, the fluid is noticeably non-Newtonian. (I discussed the strange behavior of the mixture in this department for November, 1978.)

I prepared a thick mixture of cornstarch and water and poured it into the paper cup to create a thin falling stream that landed in a beaker. When the height of the fall was adjusted appropriately, the stream reached the pool in the beaker at a rate of speed too high for it to merge with the pool. The stress in the lower part of the stream increased the value of the viscosity over the value higher up, and the stream merged slower than a comparable Newtonian fluid would have. It did not coil in a circle but instead oscillated from side to side. Occasionally the plane of oscillation changed orientation.

I do not know what determines the orientation of the plane, nor can I explain why circular coils do not develop. My guess is that stress buckles the stream to the side but also increases the viscosity too much for the mixture to buckle in such a way that it follows a circular path around the central axis. Oscillating to and fro like a folded ribbon must be the alternative.

I poured into a beaker a thick mixture of cornstarch and water, followed by a layer of corn oil about one centimeter deep. The paper cup delivered a stream of corn syrup. When the syrup entered the corn oil, it broke up into attractive coils. The coils did not, however, descend along a straight line. Instead the succession of coils itself coiled as it approached the cornstarch. The small coils arose from the stream's transition from air to corn oil. The coiling of the coils probably resulted from the impact of the smaller coils on the layer of cornstarch.

My results with ketchup, another non-Newtonian fluid, came as something of a surprise. The falling stream of ketchup coiled only when the height was between two and five centimeters. The coiling built up a large mound that blended slowly into the pool of ketchup. When I raised the height of the cup, I expected to see a higher rate of coiling and then a stream that disintegrated before it reached the pool. Instead I found that the coiling was replaced by a crater



A setup that facilitates the examination of a stream of viscous fluid

in the mound. The stream was still continuous.

Ketchup is a type of non-Newtonian fluid in which the viscosity decreases when the fluid is stressed. When the stream fell a considerable distance, its speed near the pool was high. The stress from the impact of the stream on the pool apparently decreased the viscosity of the ketchup in the lower section of the stream and the surrounding mound, with the result that the stream was able to dig out a crater. As the ketchup flowed away from the impact site its viscosity increased and the flow slowed, maintaining the surrounding mound.

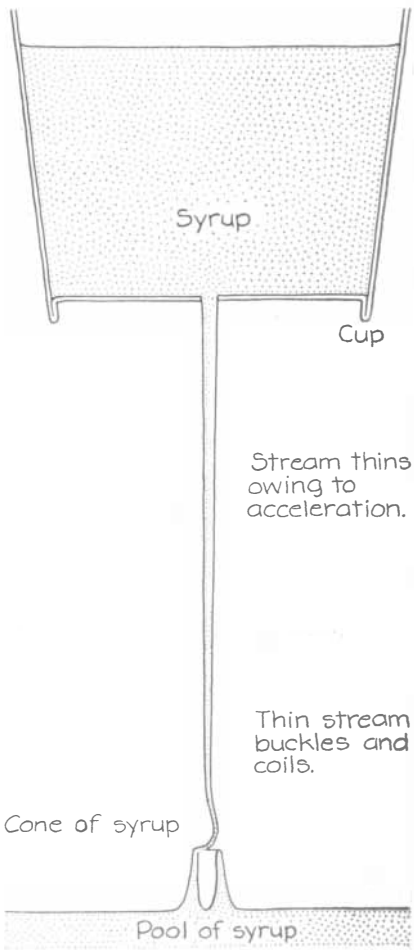
I also investigated how a pool in motion might affect the coiling of a viscous fluid. I figured that if the pool were turning, the coiling of a stream would be altered. I mounted a pie pan on an inexpensive record player, fastening the pan to the turntable with tape, and then positioned a paper cup above the center of the turntable. When syrup flowed into the pan from the cup, I turned on the player. With a few tries I made the pan turn in the opposite direction from the coiling of the syrup. I had little control over the speed of the turntable, and so I adjusted the height of the cup to vary the frequency of the coiling. When the frequency matched the rotational frequency of the pan, the coiling stopped. The stream was still buckled just above the pool of syrup, but the shape of the stream was stationary. The result demonstrates Barnes's point that the fluid particles in the stream do not themselves spiral around the central axis of the stream.

Among many other examples of coiling and ribboning of viscous streams, probably the most interesting arises in the preparation of an egg foam for, say, a cake. An egg foam is made from a mixture of egg yolks and sugar, beaten in order to lighten the mixture with air bubbles. The sugar absorbs water from the yolks, making the mixture syrupy and increasing its viscosity. If the mixture is not beaten enough, the yolks are not sufficiently denatured (their proteins are not fully unraveled) or dispersed through the mixture. The product is then a cake tasting like cooked egg. If the mixture is overbeaten, the yolks are denatured too much and the air bubbles are too large. The cake will then feel like cotton candy.

A good cook ascertains when the mixture is properly beaten by doing a simple test. The beater is lifted occasionally from the mixture so that a stream of the fluid flows back into the bowl. When the stream either coils or folds to and fro like a folded ribbon, the beating is complete.

In April I discussed the hydraulic jump, a shock wave in which a fluid switches from supercritical flow to subcritical flow. Wallace B. Riley of San Francisco wrote to me about how a circuit board is soldered with a hydraulic jump of molten solder. Transistors, integrated circuits and other electronic devices are mounted on the top of the board with their leads stuck through holes to the bottom, where interconnecting metallic pathways have been etched. Initially the leads are crimped to hold them in place.

To solder the lead to the interconnecting paths the boards are passed over a "wave soldering machine" that consists of a tilted channel down which molten solder flows. Near the bottom of the channel is an obstruction creating a stationary hydraulic jump of solder. The jump extends a bit farther from the channel than the rest of the descending solder. As a circuit board is carried down the channel by a conveyor, it is preheated by the thermal radiation from the hot solder. When it travels over the jump, the bottom of the board is bathed with solder. After the board leaves the channel the solder falls away from all but the leads and the interconnecting metallic paths and cools. The leads and the pathways are then permanently soldered together.



How a viscous stream buckles

SCIENCE/SCOPE

In studies with serious economic implications here on Earth, scientists at NASA's Ames Research Center conclude that the 900°F surface temperature on Venus is due to a greenhouse effect. They said sunlight easily pierces the planet's cloud layer, but, due to an atmosphere of 96 percent carbon dioxide, has difficulty escaping when converted to heat. The researchers noted that 80 years of burning fossil fuels increased the amount of carbon dioxide in Earth's atmosphere by 15 percent. Should that rate continue, average temperatures might climb 7°F in 50 years, leading perhaps to changes in rainfall with major consequences and enough melting of polar ice caps to flood coastal cities. The studies were based on data gathered by Hughes-built Pioneer Venus spacecraft.

A 100-kilovolt hydrogen ion source will play a vital role in fusion energy studies in the Tokamak Test Reactor at Princeton University. The source will create a 65-ampere beam of deuterium ions that subsequently will be neutralized by charge exchange to produce a beam of fast neutral particles. This neutral beam can cross the intense magnetic field lines that contain the plasma in the reactor. It will fuel and heat the plasma to the point where self-sustained fusion can take place. The reactor, when completed, will use 12 such ion sources. Hughes built the device under contract to the U.S. Department of Energy.

Certain military laser rangefinders should soon be improved now that researchers at Hughes have pinpointed long-suspected impurities in laser rods. Using a new dye laser technique in their spectroscopic studies of Nd:YAG (neodymium-doped yttrium aluminum garnet) laser rods, scientists uncovered a subtle crystal defect that cuts the laser's efficiency and brightness. They believe it will be possible to develop a process to increase the quantum efficiency of commercial Nd:YAG lasers from about 64 percent to the theoretical maximum of 91 percent.

Hughes Industrial Electronics Group offers the advantages and opportunities of a small company backed by the resources of a $2-billion company. Our facilities are in the Southern California communities of Carlsbad, Irvine, Newport Beach, Torrance, and Sylmar. Our programs incorporate 34 different technologies. They include silicon and GaAs semiconductor technologies, fiber optics, microwave and millimeter-wave communications, microprocessors, lasers, and solar cells. Send resume to B.E. Price, Hughes Industrial Electronics Group, Professional Employment, Dept. SSA, P.O. Box 2999, Torrance, CA 90509. Equal opportunity employer.

A new charge-coupled memory device, which can be made with only one additional mask, is now under study at Hughes. The chip is a CCD mask-programmable nonvolatile serial read-only memory. It's programmed by a two-step implantation into the region underneath the storage gate electrodes. The first implantation puts buckets of charge under the selected gates using an n-type dopant for n-channel devices and a p-type dopant for p-channel devices. The second implantation uses the same mask and an opposite polarity dopant. Its purpose is to offset surface potential changes that occurred as a result of the first dopant. Implanted regions retain information after start-up by the use of refresher circuits between input and output. The chip also can function as a standard CCD.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Readers interested in further explanation of the subjects covered by the articles in this issue may find the following lists of publications helpful.

METAMAGICAL THEMAS

HOW CAN MERLIN UNDERSTAND? Allen Newell and James A. Moore in *Knowledge and Cognition,* edited by Lee W. Gregg. Halsted Press, 1974.

THE PSYCHOLOGY OF COMPUTER VISION. Edited by Patrick Henry Winston. McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1975.

THE STRUCTURE OF ANALOGICAL MODELS IN SCIENCE. Dedre Gentner. Technical Report No. 4451, Bolt Beranek & Newman, July, 1980.

LANGUAGE AND MEMORY. Roger C. Schank in *Cognitive Science,* Vol. 4, No. 3, pages 243–284; July–September, 1980.

INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY

ECONOMIC MICROBIOLOGY: VOL. 1, ALCOHOLIC BEVERAGES; VOL. 2, PRIMARY PRODUCTS OF METABOLISM; VOL. 3, SECONDARY PRODUCTS OF METABOLISM; VOL. 4, MICROBIAL BIOMASS; VOL. 5, MICROBIAL ENZYMES AND BIOCONVERSIONS. Edited by Anthony H. Rose. Academic Press, 1977–80.

INDUSTRIAL MICROORGANISMS

BIOLOGY OF MICROORGANISMS. Thomas D. Brock. Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1970.

THE MICROBIAL WORLD. Roger Y. Stanier, Edward A. Adelberg and John L. Ingraham. Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1976.

THE LIFE OF YEASTS. H. J. Phaff, M. W. Miller and E. M. Mrak. Harvard University Press, 1978.

INTRODUCTORY MYCOLOGY. Constantine J. Alexopoulos and Charles W. Mims. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1979.

FUNDAMENTALS OF HUMAN LYMPHOID CELL CULTURE. J. Leslie Glick. Marcel Dekker, Inc., 1980.

MICROBIOLOGY OF FOODS. John C. Ayres, J. Orvin Mundt and William E. Sandine. W. H. Freeman and Company, 1980.

THE GENETIC PROGRAMMING OF INDUSTRIAL MICROORGANISMS

THE MOLECULAR BASIS OF MUTATION. John W. Drake. Holden-Day, Inc., 1970.

MOLECULAR BIOLOGY OF THE GENE. James D. Watson. W. A. Benjamin, Inc., 1976.

THE MANY FACES OF RECOMBINATION. D. A. Hopwood in *Proceedings of the Third International Symposium on Genetics of Industrial Microorganisms,* edited by O. K. Sebek and A. I. Laskin. American Society for Microbiology, 1979.

PLASMIDS. P. Broda. W. H. Freeman and Company, 1979.

GENETIC ENGINEERING: PRINCIPLES AND METHODS. Edited by J. K. Setlow and Alexander Hollaender. Plenum Press, 1980.

FRESH APPROACHES TO ANTIBIOTIC PRODUCTION. D. A. Hopwood and K. F. Chater in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London, Series B,* Vol. 210, No. 1040, pages 313–328; August 11, 1980.

THE MICROBIOLOGICAL PRODUCTION OF FOOD AND DRINK

MICROBIAL PRODUCTS IN FOODS: SYMPOSIUM CONVENED BY K. S. KANG, in *Developments in Industrial Microbiology,* Vol. 19, pages 69–131; 1978.

MICROBIAL TECHNOLOGY: VOL. 1, MICROBIAL PROCESSES; VOL. 2, FERMENTATION TECHNOLOGY. Edited by H. J. Peppler and D. Perlman. Academic Press, 1979.

MICROBIOLOGY OF FOOD FERMENTATIONS. C. S. Pederson. Avi Publishing Co., 1979.

THE MICROBIOLOGICAL PRODUCTION OF PHARMACEUTICALS

APPLICATIONS OF BIOCHEMICAL SYSTEMS IN ORGANIC CHEMISTRY. Edited by J. Bryan Jones, Charles J. Sih and D. Perlman. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1976.

ANTIBIOTICS AND OTHER SECONDARY METABOLITES: BIOSYNTHESIS AND PRODUCTION. Edited by R. Hutter, T. Leisinger, J. Nüesch and W. Wehrli. Academic Press, 1978.

PRINCIPLES OF GENE MANIPULATION. R. W. Old and S. B. Primrose in *Studies in Microbiology: Vol. 2.* University of California Press, 1980.

CONTROL OF ANTIBIOTIC BIOSYNTHESIS. J. F. Martin and A. L. Demain in *Microbiological Reviews,* Vol. 44, No. 2, pages 230–251; June, 1980.

RECOMBINANT DNA. Special issue of *Science,* Vol. 209, No. 4463; September 19, 1980.

THE MICROBIOLOGICAL PRODUCTION OF INDUSTRIAL CHEMICALS

PLASMIDS OF MEDICAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND COMMERCIAL IMPORTANCE. Edited by K. N. Timmis and A. Puhler. Elsevier North-Holland, Inc., 1979.

FERMENTATION: SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY WITH A FUTURE. Edited by A. I. Laskin, M. C. Flickingers and E. L. Gaden, Jr., in *Biotechnology and Bioengineering,* Vol. 22, Supplement; 1980.

IMPACTS OF APPLIED GENETICS: MICROORGANISMS, PLANTS AND ANIMALS. Office of Technology Assessment. U.S. Government Printing Office, 1981.

TRENDS IN THE BIOLOGY OF FERMENTATION FOR FUELS AND CHEMICALS. Edited by A. Hollaender, R. Rabson, P. Rogers, A. San Pietro, R. Valentine and R. Wolfe. Plenum Press, 1981.

PRODUCTION METHODS IN INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY

PRINCIPLES OF MICROBE AND CELL CULTIVATION. S. John Pirt. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1975.

INDUSTRIAL MICROBIOLOGY. Brinton M. Miller and Warren Litsky. McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1976.

FERMENTATION AND ENZYME TECHNOLOGY. Edited by Daniel I.-C. Wang, C. L. Cooney, A. L. Demain, P. Dunnill, A. E. Humphrey and M. D. Lilly. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1979.

AGRICULTURAL MICROBIOLOGY

NITROGEN FIXATION: BASIC TO APPLIED. Winston J. Brill in *American Scientist,* Vol. 67, No. 4, pages 458–466; July–August, 1979.

GENETIC IMPROVEMENT OF CROPS. Edited by Irwin Rubenstein, Burle Gengenbach, Ronald L. Phillips and C. Edward Green. University of Minnesota Press, 1980.

GENOME ORGANIZATION AND EXPRESSION IN PLANTS, 1979. NATO Advanced Study Institute on Genome Organization and Expression in Plants. Edited by C. J. Leaver. Plenum Press, 1980.

PERSPECTIVES IN PLANT CELL AND TISSUE CULTURE. Edited by Indra K. Vasil. Academic Press, 1980.

THE AMATEUR SCIENTIST

LIQUID ROPE-COIL EFFECT. George Barnes and Richard Woodcock in *American Journal of Physics,* Vol. 26, No. 4, pages 205–209; April, 1958.

HEIGHT OF FALL *VERSUS* FREQUENCY IN LIQUID ROPE-COIL EFFECT. George Barnes and James MacKenzie in *American Journal of Physics,* Vol. 27, No. 2, pages 112–115; February, 1959.

INSTABILITY OF JETS, THREADS, AND SHEETS OF VISCOUS FLUID. Geoffrey Ingram Taylor in *Scientific Papers of Sir Geoffrey Ingram Taylor,* edited by G. K. Batchelor. Cambridge University Press, 1971.

hexa·photo·cybernetic
The Possibilities are Endless.

Six-mode exposure control
System versatility. Newer electronics for wider applications

The Canon A-1 is one of the world's most advanced automatic SLR cameras. Combining the finest in optical and mechanical engineering with the most sophisticated electronics, it's technology applied to give you the ultimate in creative control. At the touch of a button.

Depending on your subject, you can choose from six independent exposure modes to achieve the results you want.

1 Shutter-Priority: You select the shutter speed, to freeze the action and prevent camera shake or create an intentional blur. The A-1 automatically selects the appropriate lens opening.

2 Aperture-Priority: Control the area in focus by selecting the lens opening for the effect you want. The A-1 matches with the right speed.

3 Programmed: When you need to shoot fast, just focus. The A-1 will select *both speed and aperture* for great results.

4 Stopped-Down: For extreme close-up or specialized photography, a bellows, a microscope or almost anything can be attached to the A-1. It's still automatic.

5 Flash: Totally automatic flash photography, of course, with a wide variety of Canon Speedlites to choose from.

6 Manual: Yes. For those times when you absolutely want to do it all yourself. To experiment. To explore the possibilities.

Programmed 350 9.5

There are over forty fine Canon lenses ranging from Fish Eye to Super Telephoto, plus accessories to meet every need. If you can't photograph your subject with a Canon A-1, it probably can't be photographed.

From the sophistication of its LED viewfinder display, to a ruggedness that allows up to five-frame-per-second motor drive, the Canon A-1 represents an incredible technology. At a price that makes owning one a definite possibility.

Canon® A-1

Canon USA, Inc., One Canon Plaza, Lake Success, New York 11042 · 140 Industrial Drive, Elmhurst, Illinois 60126 · 6380 Peachtree Industrial Blvd., Norcross, Georgia 30071 · 123 Paularino Avenue East, Costa Mesa, California 92626 · Bldg. B-2, 1050 Ala Moana Blvd., Honolulu, Hawaii 96814 · Canon Optics & Business Machines Canada, Ltd., Ontario

Perkin-Elmer minicomputers "shuttle" astronauts into space

When the NASA Space Shuttle goes into orbit for the first time, the pilot and crew will feel that they've been through it all many times before.

In a sense, they have—at the Johnson Space Center, where they are training in one of the most advanced flight simulators ever built. At the heart of the simulator are 23 Perkin-Elmer 32-bit minicomputers which deliver the real-time response needed to create a true sensation of flight. They also control and coordinate the simulation from takeoff to landing.

Minicomputers give crew the "feel" of real flight.

The simulator windows are actually high-resolution video screens. When the pilot moves the stick, feedback control coordinates video imagery with the motion of the simulator Crew members see, hear and feel the changes their actions cause—the jerks and bumps, for example, as thrusters are fired or air brakes let out.

The minicomputers also create appropriate instrument readings and simulate ground communication links. They can even tie the "flight" into NASA's worldwide communications network

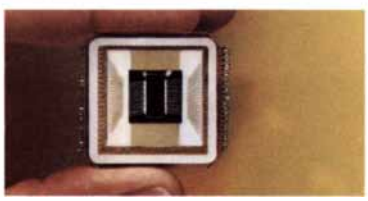
The high-speed data acquisition capability of Perkin-Elmer's 32-bit computers makes them ideal for the heavy input/output load of real-time, event-driven simulations. The unique Perkin-Elmer shared memory permits up to 14 computers to share a common memory; if one or more units become overloaded, others can pick up the workload.

Simulator allows the crew to practice such tasks as launching the Space Telescope

More than 25 commercial and military training simulators are now equipped with Perkin-Elmer 32-bit computers. Several computers have been ordered by the European Space Agency to simulate experiments to be carried into space by NASA's Shuttle.

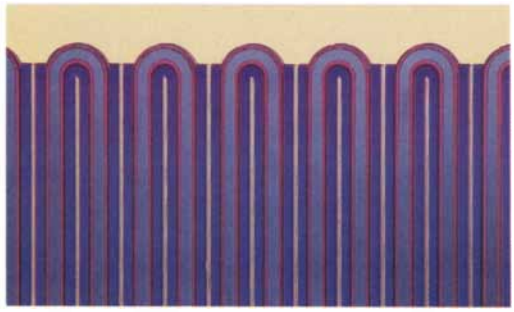
Sharp new eyes warn against laser-guided weapons

Highly accurate laser-guided weapons pose a new kind of threat to military aircraft, tanks and ships Effective countermeasures depend on fast detection and identification of the laser beams such weapons use to "zero in" on their targets.



Etalon, the "eye" that identifies the laser beam, is the small rectangle in the center of the detector array.

A compact laser warning receiver developed by Perkin-Elmer provides this kind of information swiftly and accurately. The receiver measures a laser beam's direction, wavelength, intensity and modulation characteristics. Its basic optical component is



a small interferometer called an etalon. The etalon refracts and reflects incoming laser light to form an interference pattern that is actually a unique identifying signature for each laser beam. It rejects false signatures such as light from the sun, lightning, searchlights, flares or explosives.

The laser warning receiver is not only efficient but, because of its modular construction, economical to manufacture. It is built with low-cost optical elements and reprogrammable microprocessor logic.

Magnified section of detector array in laser warning receiver.

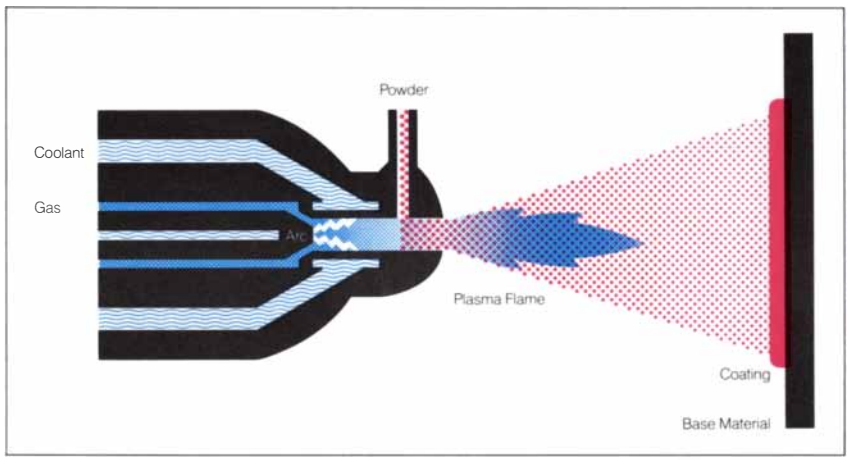
Plasma spray is a life saver for thousands of jet engine parts

When jet engines run, their finely machined parts encounter a variety of wear conditions. A process called plasma spraying—pioneered by METCO, a Perkin-Elmer subsidiary—prolongs the life of original parts and quickly restores worn parts to original dimensions.

In plasma spraying, a gas ionized by an electric arc creates a high-velocity plasma stream whose temperature can exceed 30,000°F. A powdered material is melted in the hot plasma and propelled onto a surface where it bonds and rapidly builds up to the required thickness.

The dense coating has superior resistance to wear and, in some cases, to corrosion and high temperature. For example, parts made of titanium, which has an excellent strength-to-weight ratio but virtually no wear resistance, can be protected with a material such as tungsten carbide. In higher temperature areas, chrome carbides are used.

Major jet engine manufacturers use this process to coat a number of components. And airline maintenance shops around the world rebuild more than 2,000 worn parts with plasma spraying to reduce downtime.



Plasma spray coatings are produced by injecting a powder into a plasma gas stream. The powder particles are melted and projected onto the surface being coated.

METCO's latest development is a vacuum-chamber plasma spray system, which opens up the potential for applying protective coatings in areas of high-temperature corrosion, such as turbine seals, blade tips and turbine airfoils.

Other industries with similar problems can follow the airlines' example.

Plasma coatings are finding increasing use in the automotive, chemical, mining, paper, power generating and textile industries.

With plasma spraying, these users can stretch service life and reduce maintenance for parts subjected to heat, wear and corrosion.

For More Information

If you would like to learn more about these products, please write. Corporate Communications, Perkin-Elmer, Main Avenue, Norwalk, CT 06856.

PERKIN-ELMER

Responsive Technology

Technics linear-tracking turntable. Program it to play any cut. In any order. Even upside down.

Technics direct-drive SL-15. It automatically plays the record selections you want and skips the ones you don't. It completely eliminates tracking error and is so advanced it can even play upside down.

The SL-15's microcomputer and infrared optical sensor let you play up to 10 cuts per side, in any order. Just press the program keys in the order of the selections you want to hear. And with the repeat button, the SL-15 can repeat the entire program or any selection.

The SL-15 performs virtually any function, automatically. It accurately selects the record size and speed, finds the lead-in groove and begins playback at the touch of a button.

More proof of the SL-15's accuracy is its quartz-locked, direct-drive motor and dynamically balanced, linear-tracking tonearm. In addition to tracking perfectly, the SL-15 plays a record as accurately upside down as it does right side up.

Technics also offers other linear-tracking turntables, including our famous SL-10 and SL-7. Audition one and you'll agree when it comes to linear tracking, Technics is a cut above the rest.

Technics
The science of sound